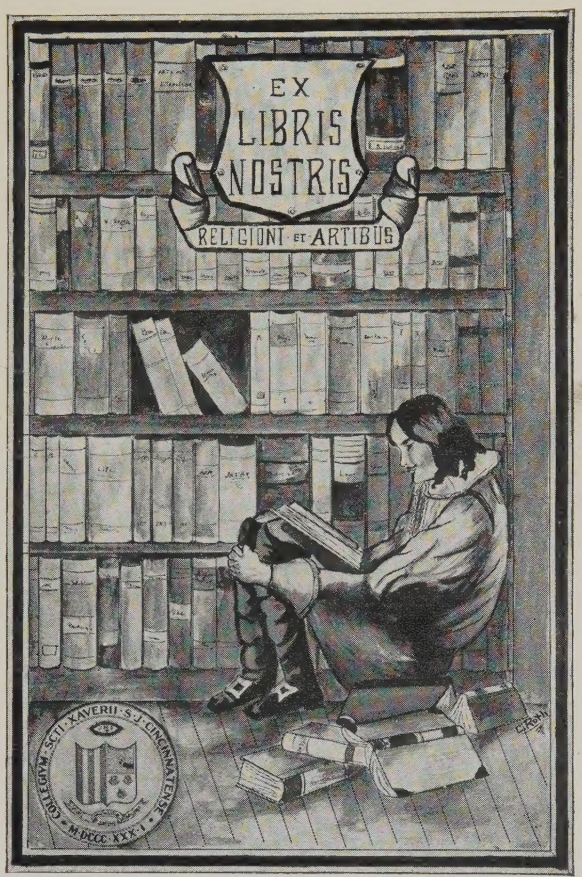
Greene County Public Library (Ohio)
0 53 85 0717602 1

STACKS


EX
LIBRIS
NOSTRIS
RELIGIONI ET ARTIBUS
COLLEGIVM SCTI XAVERII S.J. CINCINNATENSE
M·DCCC·XXX·I

Greene Co.Room 973 Irish

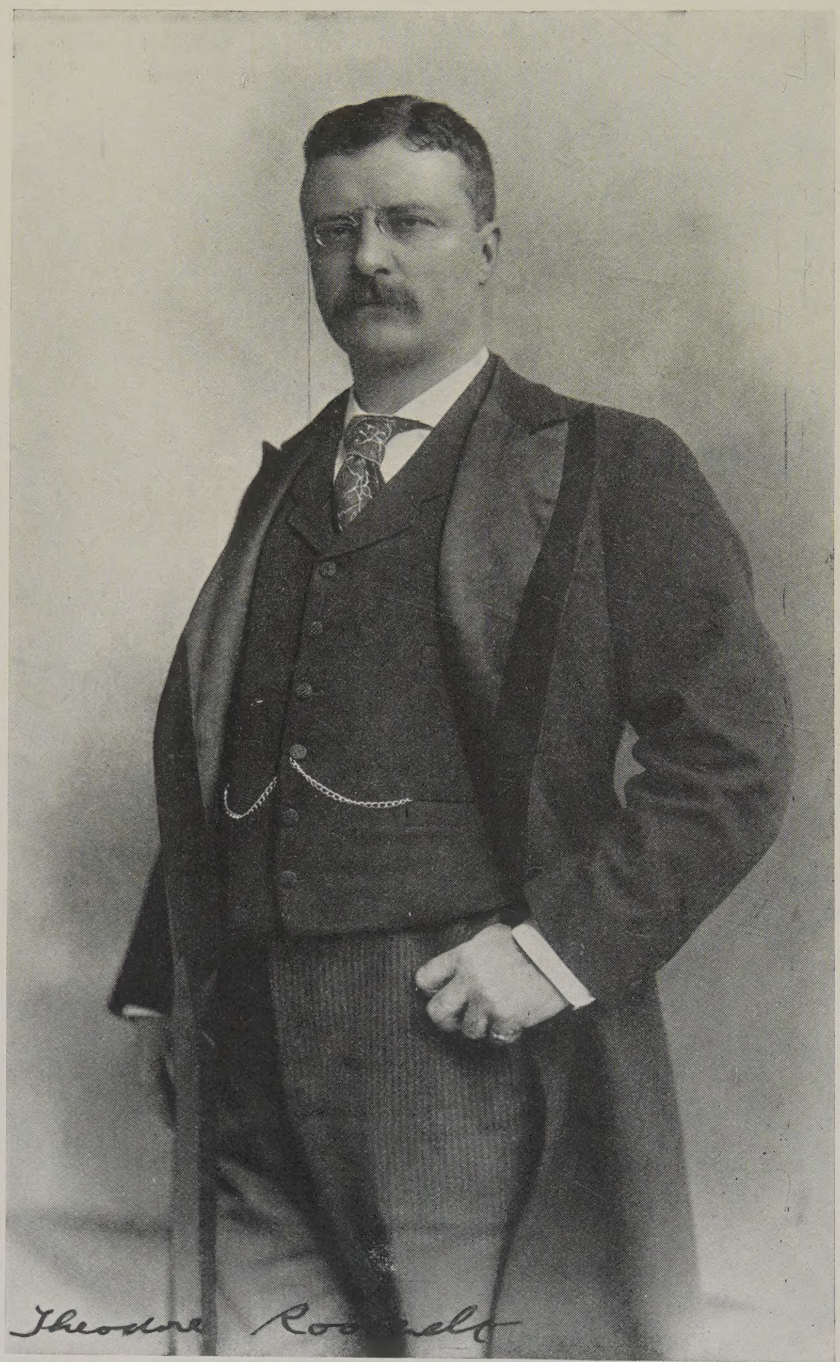
O'Hanlon, John, 1821-1905.

Irish-American history of
the United States
vol. 2 17.50

GREENE COUNTY ROOM
GREENE COUNTY LIBRARY
76 EAST MARKET STREET
XENIA, OH 45385

# IRISH-AMERICAN HISTORY
OF THE
# UNITED STATES.


E PLURIBUS UNUM




HIS EXCELLENCY
THEODORE ROOSEVELT
TWENTY-FIFTH PRESIDENT OF
THE UNITED STATES

# IRISH-AMERICAN HISTORY

OF THE

# UNITED STATES.

COMPLETE IN TWO VOLUMES.

BY THE

VERY REV. JOHN CANON O'HANLON, M.R.I.A.

WITH AN INTRODUCTION BY THE

VERY REV. THOMAS J. SHAHAN,

CATHOLIC UNIVERSITY, WASHINGTON, D. C.

VOLUME I.

NEW YORK:

P. MURPHY & SON,

279 CHURCH STREET.

1907.

1973
Ohi
v. 1

COPYRIGHT 1906
BY
P. MURPHY,
279 CHURCH STREET,
NEW YORK.

# INTRODUCTION

AND

# MEMOIR OF THE AUTHOR

BY

**The Very Rev. Thomas J. Shahan, D. D.**

CATHOLIC UNIVERSITY, WASHINGTON, D. C.

John O'Hanlon was born April 30, 1821, at Stradbally, in Queens County, Ireland. He received his early training in local and neighboring schools, and was sent at the age of seventeen to Carlow College. Four years later his studies were interrupted by the resolution to accompany some relatives to the New World. He landed at Quebec in 1842, but after a sojourn of some months went on to St. Louis. He soon entered (1843) the Ecclesiastical Seminary of that diocese, and was ordained to the priesthood by Archbishop Kendrick in 1847. For five or six years he devoted himself to the duties of his calling, arduous enough at that period of rapid national growth and economic expansion. But failing health turned his thoughts again to the land of his fathers, and in 1853 he returned to Dublin, where he was made curate at the Church of Saints Michael and John, a post that he occupied until 1880, when he was promoted to the parish of Sandymount. In 1885 he was made a Canon of the Dublin Cathedral by Archbishop Walsh. In 1897 he celebrated the Golden Jubilee of his priesthood. His death occurred on May 15, 1905, at the advanced age of eighty-four. He is buried in Glasnevin Cemetery, Dublin.

Canon O'Hanlon is remembered by his faithful flock as a devoted priest, to whom the beauty and glory of the house of God, the parish schools and property, the industrial schools of the neighborhood, were especially dear. Amid his learned occupations he never neglected the work of his sacred ministry, nor the care of the poor, sick and lowly. As an Irishman, he was one of the foremost patriotic figures of the nineteenth

century. He had heard O'Connell, as a boy of fifteen, in 1836, on the Great Heath at Maryborough, and was present at the banquet then given at Stradbally to the Liberator. He loved to recall the political ballads of that decade apropos of Sir Henry Parnell and his "History of the Penal Laws," and the melodious folk-tunes of the pre-famine period, many of which to his great regret, he lived to see perish from the popular memory. His love of Moore's Melodies was well-known to all his friends. He was also a great admirer of the "Young Ireland" poetry, and at his death was engaged on an edition of the fugitive writings of the patriot-poet, John Keegan. He was an active member of the committee on the centenary celebration in honor of O'Connell, and as secretary of the O'Connell Memorial Committee drew up the valuable report of its proceedings from 1862 to 1882. To him is owing in no small measure the splendid Dublin monument to O'Connell, the masterpiece of Foley's art, and one of the finest monumental sculptures in Europe. He was also active in the creation of memorials to the poets Thomas Moore and Denis Florence McCarthy. His earnestness in the work of the Gaelic League is well known, likewise his intelligent devotion to the historical monuments of Ireland, the manuscripts, records, books, and curious remains that still enshrine no little of the glorious past of the beloved island. He was for forty years an active and painstaking member of the Kilkenny Archaeological Society, to which he had been elected on the proposition of such an Irish antiquarian as Bishop Graves. Within the limits of his sacred calling he seems to have omitted no endeavor to serve his native country as a scholar, a poet, and a man of action.

The catalogue of Canon O'Hanlon's literary labors is a long one, and covers a period of more than fifty years of incessant study, research, and publication. He was a man of adamantine endurance, and though by his departure the Church of the United States surely lost a pen of great power, the larger world of ecclesiastical learning was proportionately the gainer. It may be stated at once that he never ceased to love the great

Republic, whose institutions and spirit he thoroughly understood and admired, as the work here offered to the reader will make clear. Among his published writings is a volume of reminiscences entitled, "Life and Scenery in Missouri" (Dublin, 1890). In 1897 he crossed the ocean to take part in the Golden Episcopal Jubilee of Archbishop Kendrick, who fifty years earlier had raised him to the dignity of priesthood. It would seem that Canon O'Hanlon became an historian out of the fulness of his conviction that the Christian history of Ireland is one of the noblest chapters of all theology. His first work was an "Abridgment of Irish History from the Final Subjection of Ireland to the Present Time" (Boston, 1849), written with the view, no doubt, of fixing on the mind of the young Irish emigrant the great religious lesson of his forefathers' patient endurance and fidelity. It was followed by "The Irish Emigrant's Guide to the United tSates" (Boston, 1851), long a very popular work among the unfortunate Irish wanderers in a new land. During the years of his American ministry he contributed frequently to literary magazines and newspapers, and was known, before he left us, as an ecclesiastical scholar and an antiquarian of promise. It will be admitted that, given the duties of the parochial service in the United States and the scarcity of good libraries of Irish lore, these first zealous efforts deserve special commendation. He was soon, however, to find himself in a centre where opportunity, talent and energy might combine to make of him, if not an historical genius, at least one of the most useful writers who have yet appeared on the soil of Ireland. Shortly after his return he began his career as the hagiologist of Ireland, and at the same time complimented his adopted city with a little volume entitled, "A Short Life of St. Lawrence O'Toole" (Dublin, 1857). A good judge says of it that "it dispelled the cloud of ignorance respecting the life of St. Lawrence, which had been created by the wanton misrepresentation of hostile, careless and faithless chroniclers, successfully refuted the false views which had been propagated by political or religious malevolence and set the character of the illustrious subject of his work in a true light before the

public." In a sense this judgment is applicable to all the good Canon's later writings. Two years later he brought out a "Life of St. Malachy O'Morgair" (Dublin, 1859), that had originally been undertaken in the Boston *Pilot* (1853). Then followed at various intervals other lives of famous ancient saints of Ireland: St. Dympna (Dublin, 1863); St. Aengus, the Culdee (*ibid.*, 1868); St. David (*ibid.*, 1869); St. Grellan (*ibid.*, 1881). One of his most useful books is his "Catechism of Irish History from the earliest times to the death of O'Connell" (Dublin, 1864).

This gifted priest was not only an excellent historian, but also a graceful poet, who knew how to clothe in pleasing metre the thousand and one traditions that everywhere cling to the soil of Ireland. In 1870 he published, under the *nom de plume* of Lageniensis (the man of Leix), a volume of poetry entitled, "Legend Lays of Ireland," in which old and familiar fairy legends of his people were treated with much success. In the same year he published a prose volume of popular traditions, "Irish Folk-Lore," which embraces "a vast amount of antiquarian and historical information connected with various periods of the national annals." The grave of the famous O'Carolan, the last of the Irish harpers, was visited by him in 1881, and suggested to him a new volume of verse, "The Buried Lady: A Legend of Kilronan." In 1893 he made a collection of all his metrical writings, under the title, "Poetical Works of Lageniensis," and dedicated the same to the Countess of Aberdeen, as a tribute to her genuine love for the Irish people. Another volume on "Irish Local Legends" appeared in 1895, and placed him among the most successful collectors of the rare and curious antique lore that has been so long drifting down the ages in Ireland, but that is now on the wane, and will perhaps not survive many more generations. In the meantime he brought the nation more deeply in his debt by new editions of two important works, Monck-Mason's "Essay on the Antiquity and Constitution of Parliaments in Ireland" (Dublin, 1891), and William Molyneaux's "The Case of Ireland's Being Bound by Acts of Parliament in England Stated" (Dublin, 1893).

The latter work, originally published in 1698, had been burned by the common hangman, and only one edition had since then seen the light. The tireless pen of this scholarly antiquarian seemed, indeed, never to rest. He compiled a "Catechism of Greek Grammar" and "Devotions for Confession and Holy Communion," almost as a rest from his many heavier labors. During his last illness he was still busied with a history of the antiquities of his native Leix (Queens County), on which, in his intervals of leisure, he had spent considerable research. He reminds us, indeed, of Saint Columbia and Saint Bede, both of whom died almost in the act of dictating to their brother scribes. It seems incredible that amid so many enterprises he found time to compose the work that is here presented to our readers. It will always possess an added interest from the fact that the original text perished in the fire that had consumed his publishers' premises in 1898. Nothing daunted, he sat down to the task a second time, rewrote the entire work, and published it as a large quarto (Dublin, 1903).

We have yet, however, to mention the great work on which his fame will forever rest, "The Lives of the Irish Saints." As early as 1857 he announced his resolution to compose a series of lives of the Saints of Ireland in twelve volumes, following the order of the calendar. It was to be for Irish history what Alban Butler's "Lives of the Saints" had long been for general ecclesiastical history, a vast and final work of reference and edification. The Jesuit Henry Fitzsimon, the priest Thomas Messingham, above all the Franciscans Patrick Fleming, Luke Wadding, Hugh Ward and John Colgan, had all toiled variously and with great success, in the first half of the seventeenth century, at a great compilation that was eventually to be known as the "Acta Sanctorum Hiberniae" or the "Lives of the Saints of Ireland." In the sad and dreary period that followed the "thorough" work of Oliver Cromwell the Irish clergy found no longer heart or occasion to take up a task so congenial to their temper and the character of their nation. It was reserved for the modest and laborious curate of Saints Michael and John to bend his shoulders to a work that

might well challenge the organized efforts of a community of writers. In 1872 he issued the prospectus of his enterprise, as a subscription work, and promised to bring it out monthly in parts of sixty-four pages each, profusely illustrated. He kept his promise, and finished the herculean undertaking shortly before his death. It includes the lives of about 3,500 saints of Ireland, some of them dealt with briefly, but many at very great length. The nine volumes before us number over six thousand large octavo pages, and the remaining parts, when they issue from the press as volumes, will probably raise this figure to eight thousand pages or more. It is a very unique performance in the department of hagiology, whether we consider the unbroken ardor of fifty years' toil, the faithful execution of a perilous promise, the uniform excellence of the work, or the admitted need and value of a history of Irish sanctity that shall correspond to our modern methods and attainments in the province of history. That he succeeded in endowing his native land with a monument that any Catholic people would forever cherish is allowed by all who are familiar with the field of labor, among others by the Bollandists, to whose scholarly company he must henceforth be accredited as an associate, at least in learning, faith, spirit, and good work. These volumes include the result of infinite research in all the departments of Irish history, for the Saints of Ireland, since St. Patrick, are its true heroes, its representatives, and the flower of its thought and action. In so old a land the identification of place and personal names is no slight task. A chief source of information is the collection of ancient maps and manuscripts belonging to the Irish Ordnance Survey Department in Dublin. Canon O'Hanlon had an intimate acquaintance with all this material; he was likewise master of the contents of the rich public libraries of his native city and of other cites, as well as of valuable private collections of books on the topography and antiquities of Ireland. In the course of his labors he was encouraged and often helped by such scholars as Dr. John O'Donovan, Professor Eugene O'Curry, Dr. Todd, and other Irish antiquarians of the first rank. The beautiful font of Irish

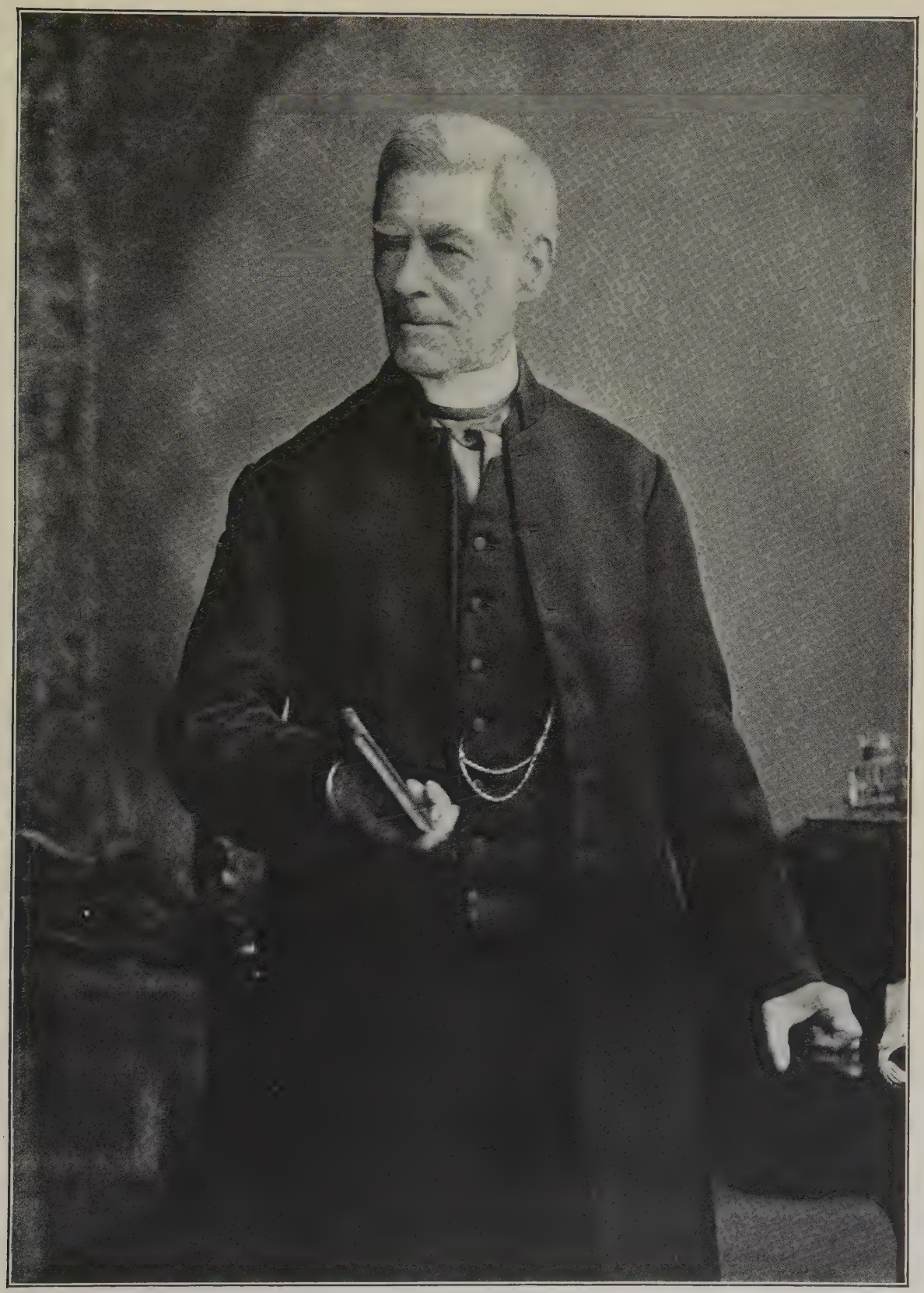
type occasionally used in his "Lives of the Irish Saints" was originally designed by Dr. Petrie for the Catholic University of Ireland.

The work of Canon O'Hanlon took on the character of a national monument. And as it progressed the learned world in general applauded the rare erudition, good judgment and moderation, skilful order and sense of proportion, grasp of environment and unflagging regularity of industry which he brought to the execution of this imperishable Hall of Fame, in which each of the model national worthies has his appropriate niche or pedestal. It has been truly said that the future ecclesiastical historian of Ireland—whoever he may be—must forever feel indebted to the good priest, whose labors for half a century have resulted in placing at his disposal an inexhaustible fund of well-digested and reliable information, not only concerning the personal history of the Irish Saints, but also about the social, political, literary and æsthetic life of Ireland during the period of her native independence and brilliancy. Archbishop Walsh, in commending the proposal to erect a suitable memorial to the deceased scholar, took occasion to state that in the erudite volumes of the "Lives of the Irish Saints," compiled with zeal and diligence in the spare moments of a busy missionary life, Canon O'Hanlon had "preserved for the instruction and edification of future generations all that has been handed down to us of the lives and labors of the recorded saints of our Irish Church."

As a writer Canon O'Hanlon was habitually painstaking and accurate. His information, when possible, was gathered at first hand, and the habit of composition enabled him to set it forth with good order and proportion. His style is lucid and simple, a good specimen of the historical narrative, and his diction always select and dignified. He siezes with ease on the salient and distinctive traits of a personality or a situation, and thereby relieves the reader of that vagueness and complexity that sometimes diminishes the satisfaction afforded by otherwise good histories. His spirit was ever aflame with the love of his native religion and his native land. Yet nothing glad-

dened him more through a long life than the consciousness that he was working, not alone for those who dwelt within the "four seas of Ireland," but also for that greater Ireland-over-sea, to whose children and whose children's children he would forever speak as a trustworthy herald of long-forgotten ages of glorious endeavor that might otherwise, perhaps, perish only too easily from the minds and the hearts of Irishmen in the United States of America, Canada, Southern Africa, United States of Australia, India and other parts of the world. May he rest in peace!





VERY REV. JOHN CANON O'HANLON, M. R. I. A.

# PREFACE.

It is universally admitted by those well informed and capable of entertaining a rational opinion, that the United States of America now stand foremost among all civilised nations of the world, in vastness of extent, in compactness of territory, in fertility of soil, in mineral wealth, in variety and general healthfulness of climate, in geographical position, in beauty of scenery, and in many other natural advantages. Far away from the Old World, and only conjecturally known to exist by the ancients, the earlier historic life of this grand Federation seems to have hitherto baffled the researches of ethnologists and antiquaries. For the last four hundred years however, few facts of interest are unrecorded, as relating to the migrations of European settlers, the steady growth of population, the spreading of civilisation, the rivalry of rulers, races and colonies, with those vicissitudes which brought the colonists from a state of subjection, and at length resulted in obtaining their complete independence. Nor are subsequent events less interesting from a social and political point of view, not alone to the people of the United States themselves, but to every intelligent student of history however far removed, as furnishing lessons by which he can fairly estimate their gradual and upward progress under free Republican institutions, to their present unexampled condition of prosperity and power.

For Irishmen at home and abroad, the consideration of these topics has a special attraction and interest, because our countrymen had a most important share in first discovering, and afterwards in drawing attention to those distant shores. Moreover, Ireland sent thither the earliest recorded settlers from Europe. Their acts and memories have alike perished through some unknown fatality, and for want of reliable historic record

Nevertheless, from early colonial days to the present, a stream of Irish emigrants constantly flowed westward; while the achievements of these settlers and of their descendants, known as Irish-Americans, have largely aided in shaping the destinies, and in developing the resources of the great Republic. Many of those were men of ability and renown, as likewise distinguished for their heroic and praiseworthy actions. In the general history of the American Commonwealth, and in the particular history of its several States, their names are prominent and of frequent occurrence. So far as can be ascertained, many previous unaccountable omissions to record their race and ancestry have been supplied in the present work.

Nevertheless, it seems strange, that no attempt has been hitherto made, to set before the people of Ireland, by writers or publishers, a general and complete History of the United States. Such a reproach on our country it is now desired to remove, and to place within reasonable compass accounts from the earliest known period to the commencement of the twentieth century. For several years the present writer was a resident and citizen in the trans-Atlantic Republic; moreover, he was an attentive student of its history, and an interested observer of the manners, habits, and usages of its inhabitants as also familiar with the various movements and changes taking place among parties and politicians. In this volume he has presumed to summarize the leading historic occurrences in an orderly and intelligible narrative, with the abundant materials supplied by our public Libraries in Dublin, and official documents obtained from the United States' archives in Washington. Every chief statement of the compiler throughout, invariably sustained by authorities frequently quoted, affords facilities for further research and for more extended inquiry regarding detailed information.

As this is intended to be a compendious History, ar d yet sufficiently complete, to afford a fairly exact narrative of events from the earliest accounts to the present day, the chief and best authors and works on the subject have been carefully and frequently consulted. Among those authorities for the early

and Colonial Days, Charlevoix, Robertson, Neal, Hutchinson, Washington Irving, Bancroft, Grahame, Parkman, John Gilmary Shea, and other standard writers, have been most used. Some of the last-named carried their narratives to the end of the American Revolution ; while this stirring period of National History has been illustrated by different contemporaneous accounts and by many valuable works subsequently published. Several of these have been examined, and their statements compared very carefully by the writer, before noting the conclusions at which he arrived. In due order of narrative, and desiring to be impartial, authorities on the English and American views of international questions are respectively indicated, but chiefly in the notes appended.

For purposes of historical investigation and accuracy—not formerly attainable by writers who have treated very fully these transactions—the author has carefully examined that invaluable late publication, B. F. Stevens' "Facsimiles of Manuscripts in European Archives relating to America." They are taken from unpublished documents in public and private collections, while they contain much confidential and most secret intelligence, informations and correspondence of the British Government with its political agents and spies. Especially are those documents absolutely necessary for a clear understanding of diplomatic phases and secret instructions, which served to direct the civil and military movements, that produced important final results. The current opinions of persons and the intelligence obtained of contemporaneous events, as related even in good faith by previous writers. must be considerably modified by such revelations, which often conflict with the received statements of historians. The secret intelligence and frequently intercepted letters obtained by and from England, France, Holland, and Spain, particularly during the period of the American Revolutionary war, sufficiently prove how deficient, without an examination of those records, had been the resources of previous writers, to convey complete and authentic information for the instruction of their contemporaries and of posterity.

A voluminous work of exceeding great value for the student of American History is the copious and critical narrative, edited by Justin Winsor, in which special articles or chapters have been inserted by some of the most capable and well-informed writers in the United States. To these several contributions are added notices of books previously published, bearing on and requisite to elucidate the various subjects treated.[1] Nevertheless, this work does not include particulars relating immediately to the last great Civil War, nor to any succeeding events.

So important and interesting in a national and political view are the causes and events which led to that grave disruption, and as these more recent subjects have occupied so large a share of public attention and comment, the chapters embracing such a special division of our narrative have been proportionately enlarged, while various conflicting authorities have been consulted to balance the weight of evidence for many of those statements, and which are intended to be both accurate and impartial as relating to matters of fact, both generalized and in detail. During the year 1866 appeared Bartlett's "Literature of the Rebellion," which gives a catalogue of more than six thousand books or articles relative to this civil war; and since that time, it is probable the number has been more than doubled. Besides this, during the war itself appeared a vast compilation, extending to twelve octavo volumes, by Frank Moore, styled "The Rebellion Record," and containing contemporaneous reports, narratives, correspondence and journalistic extracts; yet, unless where these are official documents, or of a confidential nature, all of these statements cannot be relied upon for historic accuracy. That publication appeared at New York from 1861 to 1868. The reports of General Lee and of his subordinates were published by the Confederate Government at Richnond in 1864; while after the war was over in 1865 and since, several Confederate publications and official documents

[1] See "Narrative and Critical History of America," in eight volumes. London: 1879 to 1889. Royal 8vo. Sampson, Low & Co., publishers.

were issued. All of those furnish materials for some future great History of that remarkable period. Much use has been made of the very interesting and elegantly written work of John W. Draper, M.D., LL.D., "History of the American Civil War,"[2] with its valuable introductory chapters to the subject proper, and which frequently contain sound political reviews regarding causes and results. An invaluable biographical work, "Abraham Lincoln: a History," written by the secretaries of that illustrious President, has been consulted with the utmost advantage, in reference to the various incidents and chief actors in the Civil War; nor have the opposite views and statements of Jefferson Davis, towards the close of his life, been withheld from the reader, when they were calculated to reflect any new light on those stirring events, in which he so prominently participated.

For details of distinguished men who figure in United States History, reference is often made to Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," in six closely printed double columns and large octavo volumes, published in New York.[3] This work, and "Irish Celts," by a Member of the Michigan Bar—a large octavo volume and closely printed in double columns[4]—have been frequently consulted for information regarding the race, origin and career of many historic characters, especially as serving to elucidate the note-worthy actions of Irishmen and of others claiming Irish descent. Moreover, the "Encyclopædia Americana" in four large quarto volumes contains a great number of interesting biographies, as also of technical articles, having special relation to the intestine war extending from 1861 to 1865. As the foregoing works of reference are accessible in most of our public Libraries, and as brevity had to be attained in the succeeding pages, it was deemed quite sufficient merely to quote their ample notices, in the chief number

[2] Published in three Royal 8vo volumes. London: 1871.

[3] We would recommend, likewise, Appleton's "Atlas of the United States," as most useful for reference in the study of this history, since it presents in a clear and an intelligible manner the various localities and positions herein mentioned, and on a sufficiently large scale. Besides, it is accessible in most of our public libraries. Published in New York, by D. Appleton and Co. 1888. 4to.

[4] Published at Detroit, Mich. 1844, 8vo.

of cases regarding individuals, many of whom were even personages of great historic renown.

Memoirs of celebrated public characters in the civil, military and naval service of the United States have been examined, with a view of discovering their personal motives, actions and influence on current events. Assiduously and attentively some of the best works of American historians, biographers, statisticians and writers on constitutional law have been studied, while exact information has been sought from every available source. A coloured Map of the United States appended to this edition, and of the most recent construction, must be found useful for general geographical and historical illustration. Various military and naval movements or positions, alluded to in the body of this work, are shown in maps specially engraved to elucidate the text; while portraits of the different Presidents, of the leading Statesmen, as also of the most distinguished military and naval Commanders, taken from approved likenesses, are introduced throughout to give additional interest and attraction to the volume.

St. Mary's Church, Star of the Sea,
Irishtown, Dublin.

# CONTENTS.


Page

PREFACE ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... v

CHAPTER I.

Early Irish Traditions regarding Hy-Breasail or a Great Western Ireland—Scandinavian Traditions—The Voyages of Saints Barind, Mernoc and Brendan to the Promised Land—Voyages of Saints Cormac Ua Liathain and Baithen—Probability of an Irish Christian Settlement on the Great Western Continent—Northman Voyages and Colonization—Extended Fame of St. Brendan's Voyage in Europe and in Asia ... ... ... ... 1

CHAPTER II.

The Aboriginal Races of America—The Red Men and Mound-Builders in the United States—Antiquities found there—The Voyage and Discoveries of Christopher Columbus—Subsequent Expeditions and their Results—Hernando de Soto's Adventures—Conversion of the Indians to Christianity ... ... ... ... ... 11

CHAPTER III.

The early Settlement of the American Colonies—The Plymouth and London Companies—Progress of Colonization—Virginia—Maine—New York—New England—New Hampshire—New Jersey—Delaware—Maryland—Connecticut—Rhode Island—North Carolina ... 25

CHAPTER IV.

Slavery first brought into Virginia—Formation of Colonies—Constitution granted to Virginia and afterwards withdrawn—Charter granted to the Governor and Company of Massachusetts Bay—Laws in that Colony—Indian War—Dutch Colonization—Missions in Maine 36

CHAPTER V.

Transportation of Irish Slaves to the American Colonies—Disturbances in Maryland and Virginia—Persecution of the Quakers—The Duke of York gets Possession of the Dutch Colony—The English Navigation Laws—Settlement of the Carolinas—Bacon's Rebellion—Quaker Settlements in New Jersey—French Explorations on the Mississippi River—King Philip's Indian War in New England ... 47

## CHAPTER VI.

Page

Misgovernment of Virginia—Settlement of Pennsylvania by William Penn—Explorations of the Chevalier de la Salle and Father Louis Henepin on the Mississippi—Abrogation of the Colonial Charters—Commotions in Maryland—Irish Colonization—William Penn's Rights restored in Pennsylvania—Progress of French Colonization—Witchcraft Prosecutions in New England—War between France and England ... ... ... ... ... ... 61

## CHAPTER VII.

French Settlements on the Mississippi—Missionary Enterprise—Intolerant Laws in New York—Breaking out of War between England, France and Spain, in 1702—Rebellion in North Carolina—French Western Colonization—Irish Eastern Colonization—Events in New England, Maryland, New York and the Carolinas—French Enterprise in Louisiana ... ... ... ... 76

## CHAPTER VIII.

Events in New England and in the Carolinas—Settlement of Georgia—Proceedings in New York—French Enterprise in Louisiana—Hostilities in the West between the French and Spainards—Irish Colonization in the early Part of the Eighteenth Century ... 92

## CHAPTER IX.

War between France and England in 1744—Peace of Aix-la-Chapelle—Renewal of Hostilities—Early Adventures of George Washington—Arrival in America of General Braddock—Expulsion of the Acadians from Nova Scotia—Defeat and Death of Braddock in 1755—Formal Declaration of War between France and England in 1756—English Reverses and Failures—Vigorous Measures taken by William Pitt, and Armaments assembled for Prosecution of the Contest—Expeditions against Canada—The Taking of Quebec in 1759—Conquest of Canada—The Treaty of Paris—Cession of Louisiana to Spain by France—Revolt of the Indian Chief Pontiac and his Death ... ... ... ... ... ... 110

## CHAPTER X.

State of the Colonies after the Seven Years' War—French in the Western Territories—Irish Colonists during the Reign of George III.—Taxation of the Colonies—Resistance—Repeal of the Stamp Act—Renewal of the Taxation and Disturbances in the Colonies—Excisable Tea thrown into the Harbour of Boston—Retaliation—Assembling and Proceedings of the First or Old Revolutionary Congress ... ... ... ... ... ... 132

## CHAPTER XI.

Precautions taken by General Gage—The Loyalists—Proceedings in England—Breaking out of the War at Lexington—Spread of the Revolt—Proceedings of the Second Continental Congress—First

Page

Success of the Patriots—George Washington appointed Commander-in-Chief of the American Forces—Battle at Bunker Hill—Organization of the American Army—Progress of the Insurrection—Expedition against the English in Canada under Command of Brigadier-General Richard Montgomery—First Success—Assault on Quebec—Montgomery's Defeat and heroic Death ... ... 154

CHAPTER XII.

The Siege of Quebec—Contests in the South—Preparations in England to crush the Rebellion—The Siege and Taking of Boston—Arrival of British Troops and Foreign Auxiliaries—Retreat from Quebec—The British Attempt upon New York foiled, and subsequent Failure at Charleston—Congress organizes a Navy—Agitation and Debates before the Declaration of Independence—Names of the Signers ... ... ... ... ... ... ... 182

CHAPTER XIII.

Invasion of New York by General and Admiral Howe—Battle of Long Island—American Evacuation of New York—Futile Attempt to establish Peace—Engagements in New York—Operations in the North—Taking of Fort Washington—The American Army retreats into New Jersey—Its weakened Condition—The Battles of Trenton and Princetown—The Americans recover Ground in New Jersey 208

CHAPTER XIV.

Distinguished Volunteers arrive from Europe—Congressional Commissioners sent to France—Ex-Governor Tryon's Expedition—English Plan of Campaign—General Burgoyne advances towards New York from Canada—The Battle of Bennington—Defeat and Surrender of Burgoyne's Army—General Howe's Expedition—Battle of Brandywine—Capture of Philadelphia—Battle of Germanstown—The Americans Winter at Valley Forge—The Conway Cabal ... ... ... ... ... ... 220

CHAPTER XV.

Financial and physical Difficulties of the United States Government—Alliance with and Aid from France—Overtures of Peace from England—Evacuation of Philadelphia by the British—Battle of Monmouth—Surprise at Wyoming—Arrival of Admiral d'Estaing—Combination to attack New York—Expedition against Rhode Island—Its Failure—Congress adopts Articles of Confederation—British Expedition against the Southern States ... ... 238

CHAPTER XVI.

Re-organisation of Washington's Army—War in the South—General Tryon's Descent on Long Island—Attack on Charleston—Capture of Granada by the French—Indian Hostilities on the Western Frontiers—Naval Exploits of Paul Jones—Military Operations in the North—Attack on Savannah—Defeat of the French and Americans ... ... ... ... ... ... 250

## CHAPTER XVII.

Page

Position of General Washington at the Opening of 1780—Siege and Capture of Charleston by Sir Henry Clinton—Financial Depression—General Gates in the South—Partisan Chiefs and their Raids—Brutality of Lord Cornwallis—American Victory at King's Mountain—Treason of General Arnold—Mutiny in the American Army ... ... ... ... ... ... ... 259

## CHAPTER XVIII.

The Action of Lafayette in France—Arnold's Invasion of Virginia—Operations of General Green and of Lord Cornwallis in the South—Battle of the Cowpens—Subsequent Manœuvres—Battle of Gilford Court-House—Various Encounters—Battle of Eutaw Springs—Lord Cornwallis marches to Virginia—French and American Combinations—Investment of Yorktown—Siege—Surrender of Lord Cornwallis and of his whole Army—Reception of the News in England and Ireland ... ... ... ... 268

## CHAPTER XIX.

Change of Ministry, and Overtures of Peace from England accepted by the Americans—Independence of Parliament obtained for Ireland, and Trade with the United States inaugurated—Peace proclaimed and Recognition of American Independence by the different European Powers—Evacuation of New York by the English, and Disbanding of the American Army—Formation of the United States Constitution—Washington elected First President—His Guildford Court-House—Various Encounters—Battle of Eutaw Administration and Policy—Indian Troubles on the Frontiers—Second Term of Washington's Administration—Wayne's Victories over the Indians—Retirement of Washington to private Life and Election of John Adams as Second President—Differences of the United States with other Powers—Death of Washington ... 281

## CHAPTER XX.

The Seat of Government transferred to Washington—Election of Thomas Jefferson as President—Treaty between France and the United States—Cession of Louisiana—War waged against the States of Barbary—Re-election of Jefferson as President—Aaron Burr's Conspiracy—Peace proclaimed between the United States and Tripoli—Injuries inflicted on American Commerce by France and England—Outrage on the Ship of War Chesapeake—Public Excitement against England—Failure of Negotiations to effect Peace—Indian Troubles in the North-West—Subsequent Events ... 299

## CHAPTER XXI.

War declared against England—First Invasion of Canada—Naval Engagements—American Preparations for another Invasion of Canada—Operations under General Harrison—English Fleet off the Eastern Coasts of the United States—Engagements in Canada—Commodore Perry's Victory on Lake Erie—General Jackson's Victories over the Southern Indians—Failure of Genearl Wilkinson's Expedition against Montreal ... ... ... ... 309

## CHAPTER XXII.

Page

Discontent of the Peace Party at the Continuation of the War—Renewal of the Canadian Invasion—Operations under General Brown—Battles at Plattsburg and on Lake Champlain—Propositions for a Peace—Campaign in the South—Great Victory of General Jackson at New Orleans—Treaty for Peace ratified—Commodore Stewart's brilliant Victory at Sea, and closing of the War ... 324

## CHAPTER XXIII.

War with Algiers—Progress of the United States—James Monroe elected President—General Jackson's Invasion of Florida and its Acquisition by the United States—Contest about the Admission of Missouri into the Union—Visit of La Fayette—John Quincy Adams elected President—Rise of the Anti-Masonic Party—General Andrew Jackson elected President—Indian Disturbances—John C. Calhoun raises the Question of State Rights—Nullification announced in South Carolina—The President's Proclamation and its Effects ... ... ... ... ... ... 338

## CHAPTER XXIV.

Re-election of General Jackson to the Presidency—He refuses a Charter to the United States Bank—Revolt of Texas from Mexico—Election of Martin Van Buren as President—General Harrison succeeds as President—On his Decease, John Tyler, the Vice-President assumes that Office—Disputes with Great Britain in Reference to the Boundaries of Maine and Oregon—James Knox Polk inaugurated President—War with Mexico—Victories of General Zachary Taylor—Operations of General Scott—Success of General Kearney in New Mexico and California—Battles of Cherubusco, Molinos Del Rey, Chepultapec, and Sierra Gordo—Triumphant entry of General Scott into the City of Mexico—The Mormon and Western Migrations ... ... ... ... ... 347

## CHAPTER XXV.

Peace with Mexico—General Zachary Taylor elected President—His Death—The Succession devolves on Millard Filmore, Vice-President—Irish Emigration to the United States—Franklin Pierce becomes President—The Native American Party—Agitation on the Subject of Slavery in the Free and Slave States—James Buchanan's Presidency—Raid of John Brown in Virginia—Contests in Kansas between the Slavery and Anti-Slavery Parties—Abraham Lincoln elected President—The South declares for Secession from the United States—Formation of the Southern Confederacy—Seizure of the Arsenals, Magazines and Forts of the Union—Proclamation of President Lincoln—Volunteering—The Irish Brigade formed ... ... ... ... ... 361

## CHAPTER XXVI.

Opening of the Rebellion in Missouri—The Confederate Constitution—Maryland—West Virginia—General Beauregard placed over the Confederate Army in Virginia—Provision made by Congress to carry on the War—The Confederates establish their Seat of Government at Richmond—General McDowell commanding the

Page

United States Troops advances to meet the Confederates—Battle of Bull Run—Defeat of the Federals—Reverses of the Federals in Missouri—Measures taken by Congress—Troubles in Kentucky—General Thomas West Sherman obtains a Victory over the Confederates in South Carolina—General Scott, Commander-in-Chief of the United States Army, resigns—Jefferson Davis elected President over the South—Action of Napoleon III. and of Lord Palmerston—Seizure of Messrs. Mason and Slidell—Preparations for War in the Northern and Southern States ... ... 375

CHAPTER XXVII.

The United States Government prepares for the coming Campaign—In January 1862 General Burnside conducts an Expedition to Albemarle Sound—Major-General Halleck and General Buell appointed to direct Military Operations in the West—Victorious Campaign in Kentucky and Tennessee—Generals Price and M'Culloch driven out of Missouri—Engagement between the Ironclads, Monitor and Merrimac—Preparations for an Advance of General McClellan against Richmond—The Shenandoah Valley—A new plan of Operations designed by General McClellan—The Confederate conscription Act—Movements of General Grant in the West—Battle of Shiloh or Pittsburg Landing—Expedition against New Orleans—Capture of Memphis by the Federals ... ... ... 389

CHAPTER XXVIII.

Preparations for the Attack on Richmond—Defences prepared by the Confederates—General Wool takes Possession of Norfolk—Federal Approach—The Chickahominy River—The Battle of Seven Pines—Seven continuous Engagements around Richmond—Federals retreat to the James River—Battle of Malvern Hill ... ... 407

CHAPTER XXIX.

Exhaustion of both Armies after the Seven Days' Battle—McClellan urges another Advance against Richmond—He is superseded as Commander-in-Chief by General Henry W. Halleck—General John Pope appointed to command the Army of Virginia—McClellan's Troops recalled from the Peninsula—Advance of the Confederates against Washington—Pope's Campaign—He resigns and McClellan succeeds in Command—Campaign in Kentucky and Tennessee—Operations in Arkansas and Missouri—Beauregard's Defences around Charleston ... ... ... ... ... 420

CHAPTER XXX.

Progress of Negro Emancipation—Internal and external Condition of Affairs relative to the United States—Advance of General Lee into Maryland—Battles of South Mountain and of Antietam—Retreat of Lee—General Banks succeeds General Butler at New Orleans—Confederate Invasion of Missouri—Secretaries Seward and Chase—Battle of Murfreesboro in Tennessee—General M'Clellan removed from Command—General Burnside succeeds—Conditions existing in Northern and Southern States—Defeat at Fredericksburg—Failure of the Federal Attack on Vicksburg—Confederates capture Galveston in Texas ... ... ... 436

## CHAPTER XXXI.

Page

Negro Emancipation—Confederate Government—General Hooker succeeds General Burnside in Command of the Army of the Potomac—Federal Conscription Bill—Factious Proceedings in Ohio—Treasonable Societies—Siege of Charleston—The Battle of Chancellorsville—General Banks in Louisiana—Admission of West Virginia into the United States ... ... ... ... 463

## CHAPTER XXXII.

Diplomatic Relations of France and England with the United States—Preparations for the Siege of Vicksburg—Battle at Champion Hill—Opening of the Siege at Vicksburg—Efforts of the Confederates West of the Mississippi River—Their Defeat at Helena—Surrender of Vicksburg—Siege and Reduction of Port Hudson—The French in Mexico—Confederate Privateers built in English Ports ... ... ... ... ... ... ... 476

## CHAPTER XXXIII.

Invasion of Maryland and of Pennsylvania by General Lee—Resignation of General Hooker—Succeeded by General Meade—Battles at Gettysburg—Retreat of the Confederates—Embassy of Alexander H. Stephens—Conscription Riots—Closing of the Eastern Campaign ... ... ... ... ... ... 492

## CHAPTER XXXIV.

Siege of Charleston—General Taylor in the South—General Rosecrans' Advance on Chattanooga—The Battle of Chickamauga—General Grant appointed to take charge of the new Military Division of the Mississippi—The Battle of Missionary Ridge—The Siege of Knoxville raised—General Bragg removed from Command, and General Johnston appointed to succeed him—Movement of General Lee on Mannassas—Suspension of the Eastern Campaign at the Close of the Year—The President's Annual Message and Reconstruction of the Revolted States ... ... 511

## CHAPTER XXXV.

Movements of General William Tecumseh Sherman in the West—Reconniasance of Mobile by Admiral Farragut—General Ulysses S. Grant appointed Lieutenant-General over all the United States Army—Preparations for an Advance against Richmond—Condition of the Northern and Southern States at the Opening of this Campaign—Capture of Plymouth, North Carolina, by the Confederates—Movements of Grant's Army—Battles of the Wilderness—Battle at Spottsylvania Court House—General Sheridan's Cavalry Raid—Fighting on the North Anna River—Battle of Cold Harbour ... ... ... ... ... ... 526

## CHAPTER XXXVI.

Page

**Military Engagements in the Kanawha and Shenandoah Valleys**—Campaign of General Butler in Virginia—Cavalry Expedition of General Sheridan—A new Plan of Operations devised by General Grant—Crossing of the James River—Siege of Petersburg—Failure of the Assault—General Early's Advance upon Washington and his Retreat—Confederate Plots in the North-Western States .. ... 540

## CHAPTER XXXVII.

**Selection by the Republican Party of Candidates for President and Vice-President**—The Red River Expedition—Massacre at Fort Pillow—General Sherman's Advance against General Johnston—Retreat of the latter, and Battle of Lost Mountain—General Johnston superseded by Jefferson Davis, and General Hood appointed to succeed—Investment of Atlanta by Sherman's Army—Its Capture—Naval Engagement between the Kearsarge and the Alabama ... 551

## CHAPTER XXXVIII.

**The United States Finances**—Operations of Major-General Canby, West of the Mississippi—The Attack on Mobile by Sea and Land—General Sheridan appointed to an independent Command—Invasion of Missouri by General Price—Raids of Forrest and Morgan—Operations of General Grant's Army—General Sherman recommends a new Movement—Hood marches towards Nashville—Sheridan's Campaign against Early—Victory at Winchester—Battle of Hatcher's Run ... ... ... ... — 565

## CHAPTER XXXIX.

**Party Selections of Candidates for the Presidency and Vice-Presidency**—Confederate Military Commands in the West—Purpose of General Sherman to march through Georgia eastwards—Burning of Atlanta Hood marches northwards—Battle at Franklin—Victory of General Thomas at Nashville — ... ... ... 581

## CHAPTER XL.

**Enrolment of Coloured Soldiers**—The Prisoners of War—Advance of General Sherman upon Savannah—Surrender of the City—Movements of Brevet Major-General Grierson in the South West—Expedition directed against Wilmington—Its failure—Renewal of the Attempt successful ... ... ... ... ... 594

## CHAPTER XLI.

**Amendment of the United States Constitution**—Decree of Universal Negro Emancipation—Directions of General Grant to draw the distant Armies for Convergence towards Richmond—Capture of Mobile—Sherman's Army moves northwards—General Lee appointed Confederate Generalissimo—Movements of Sheridan—Second Inauguration of President Lincoln—Movements of Stoneman—Conference between Generals Grant and Sherman—Combined Assaults around Petersburg—Its Capture ... ... 601

## CHAPTER XLII.

Page

Evacuation of Petersburg and Richmond—Pursuit of Lee's Army by General Grant—Battle of Farmville—Negotiations for Surrender of Lee's Army—Negotiations for Surrender of Johnston's Army—Successful Operations of Brevet Major-General James H. Wilson, in the South-west—Various Contingents of Confederates in the South lay down their Arms—End of the War. ... ... 612

## CHAPTER XLIII.

Assassination of President Lincoln—Fate of the Conspirators—Capture of Jefferson Davis—His Imprisonment and subsequent Release—Re-construction of the Southern States—The United States demand the French Evacuation of Mexico—Demands on the English Government for Compensation—Purchase of the North-Western Territory of Alaska from Russia—Indian Disturbances beyond the Mississippi .. ... ... ... ... ... ... 621

## CHAPTER XLIV.

General Ulysses S. Grant elected President—Settlement of the Alabama Claims—Re-election of President Grant—Foreign and Domestic Affairs—Centenary of American Independence—Rutherford B. Hayes elected President—Financial Equilibrium restored—James A. Garfield elected President—His Assassination—Chester A. Arthur succeeds—Election of Grover Cleveland as President in 1884—Benjamin Harrison elected President in 1888—Second Election of Grover Cleveland as President in 1892—The Great Columbian Exposition in Chicago—Subsequent Events ... ... 633

## CHAPTER XLV.

Republican Gains in the November Elections of 1894—The Venezuelan Boundary Question—Insurrection in Cuba—William McKinley elected President in 1896—His Cabinet and the State of Parties—Declaration of War against Spain—Commodore Dewey destroys the Spanish Fleet in the Philippine Islands—Blockade of its northern Ports and Invasion of Cuba—Conquest of the Island, Porto Rico and Manilla—Peace concluded between Spain and the United States—The President's Message ... ... ... 646

## CHAPTER XLVI.

State of Parties at the Opening of Congress in 1899—Treaty of Peace with Spain ratified by the United States Senate—The Venezuelan Arbitrators' Award—Temporary and Provisional Boundary Line between Alaska and Canada—The Island of Tutuila and other Islands of the Samoan Group ceded to the United States—The President's Message—Death of Vice-President Hobart—Regulations for Cuba and the Philippine Islands—Revocation of the Clayton-Bulwer Treaty by the Senate—Pacific Proposals of the United States Government for Peace between Great Britain and the Boer Republics rejected by the English Ministry—McKinley's re-election as President, and subsequent Message on December 4th, 1900—The Nicaragua Canal—Capture of Aguinaldo—Submission of the Philippine Chiefs—President M'Kinley's Assassination—Theodore Roosevelt succeeds as President—His Inaugural Message—Conclusion ... ... ... ... 662

# APPENDIX.


Page

No. 1.—Colonial Delegates' Address to the Irish People, issued on the 10th of May, 1775, and engrossed on the 28th July, 1775 ... i.

No. 2.—Declaration of Independence, proclaimed July 4th, 1776 ... v

No. 3—Constitution of the United States ... ... ... ... viii

No. 4.—Congressional Resolution of December 29th, 1780 ... ... xx

No. 5.—Presidents of the Continental Congress and of the Congress of the Confederation, 1775-1788 ... ... ... ... xx

No. 6.—Presidents, Vice-Presidents, and Cabinet Officers from the adoption of the Constitution to the present Time ... ... xx

No. 7.—The Twelfth Census of the United States ... ... ... xxvi

No. 8—Area of each State and Territory in the United States, Date of Organization of Territories, and of Admission of New States into the Union ... ... ... ... ... ... xxviii

Index ... ... ... ... ... ... ... ... xxxi

# PORTRAITS.


THEODORE ROOSEVELT, TWENTY-FIFTH PRESIDENT, U.S., Frontispiece.

PAGE

Christopher Columbus, Discoverer of America,
John Smith, Founder of Virginia,
Lord Baltimore, Founder of Maryland,
William Penn, Founder of Pennsylvania ... ... ... 16

George Washington, First President of the United States,
Benjamin Franklin, U.S. Ambassador to France,
Richard Montgomery, Brigadier-General U.S. Army,
John Sullivan, Major-General U.S. Army ... ... ... 112

Thaddeus Kosciusko, Colonel of Engineers in the Continental Army,
Marie-Jean-Paul-Roch-Yves Gilbert Motier, Marquis de Lafayette, Major-General U.S. Army,
George Clinton, Governor of New York,
Nathaniel Green, Major-General U.S. Army ... ... ... 224

Daniel Morgan, Major-General U.S. Army,
Alexander Hamilton, Secretary to the U.S. Treasury,
John Adams, Second President of the U.S.,
Thomas Jefferson, Third President of the U.S. ... ... 272

James Madison, Fourth President of the U.S.,
James Monroe, Fifth President of the U.S.,
John Quincy Adams, Sixth President of the U.S.,
Andrew Jackson, Seventh President of the U.S. ... ... 308

John C. Calhoun, Vice-President of the U.S.,
Henry Clay, Senator of the U.S.,
Thomas MacDonough, Commodore of the U.S. Navy,
Martin Van Buren, Eighth President of the U.S. ... ... 330

PORTRAITS.


William Henry Harrison, Ninth President of the U.S.,
Daniel Webster, Secretary of State,
John Tyler, Tenth President of the U.S.,
James Knox Polk, Eleventh President of the U.S. ... ... 352

Zachary Taylor, Twelfth President of the U.S.,
Millard Filmore, Thirteenth President of the U.S.,
Franklin Pierce, Fourteenth President of the U.S.,
Thomas H. Benton, Senator of the U.S., ... ... ... 360

James Buchanan, Fifteenth President of the U.S.,
Abraham Lincoln, Sixteenth President of the U.S.,
Jefferson Davis, President of the Confederate States,
Robert Edward Lee, Commander-in-Chief of Confederate Army, 368

Winfield Scott, Lieutenant-General of U.S. Army,
William Henry Seward, Secretary of State,
Benjamin Franklin Butler, Major-General of U.S. Army,
Michael Corcoran, Brigadier-General of U.S. Army ... ... 376

William Starke Rosecrans, Major-General of U.S. Army,
Winfield Scott Hancock, Major-General of U.S. Army,
David Dixon Porter, Admiral of the U.S. Navy,
Thomas Francis Meagher, Brigadier-General of U.S. Army ... 416

Ulysses S. Grant, Eighteenth President of the U.S.,
George Gordon Meade, Major-General of U.S. Army,
William Tecumseh Sherman, Major-General of U.S. Army,
Philip Henry Sheridan, Lieutenant-General of U.S. Army ... 432

George Henry Thomas, Major-General of U.S. Army,
David Glasgow Farragut, Admiral of the U.S. Navy,
Daniel Butterfield, Major-General of U.S. Army,
Andrew Johnson, Seventeenth President of the U.S. ... ... 488

Rutherford B. Hayes, Nineteenth President of the U.S.
James A. Garfield, Twentieth President of the U.S.,
Chester A. Arthur, Twenty-first President of the U.S.,
Henry Wadsworth Longfellow, American Poet ... ... 632

Grover Cleveland, Twenty-second President of the U.S.,
Benjamin Harrison, Twenty-third President of the U.S.,
William McKinley, Twenty-fourth President of the U.S.,
George Dewey, Admiral of the U.S. Navy ... ... ... 656

# WAR MAPS.


Attack on Fort Sumter ... ... ... ... ... 372
Campaign-ground in West Virginia ... ... ... ... 372
Battle-Field of Bull's Run ... ... ... ... 380
Baltimore and Washington at Opening of the War ... ... 380
Openings of the Chesapeake and Potomac Rivers ... ... 388
Opening Scenes of Grant's Campaign in Missouri and Tennessee 388
Naval Battle in Hampton Roads ... ... ... ... 394
The Shenandoah Valley ... ... ... ... ... 394
Battle-Field at Pittsburg Landing ... ... ... ... 402
Opening of the Mississippi River ... ... ... ... 402
Scenes of Seven Days' Battles around Richmond ... ... 410
Battle-Scene of Fredericksburg ... ... ... ... 410
Battle-Ground at Antietam or Sharpsburg ... ... ... 446
Battle-Field of Murfreesboro' ... ... ... ... 446
Federal Operations around Vicksburg ... ... ... 482
Siege Operations at Vicksburg ... ... ... ... 482
Battle-Field of Gettysburg ... ... ... ... 496
Battle at Chattanooga ... ... ... ... ... 496
Siege of Charleston ... ... ... ... ... 512
Battles of the Wilderness ... ... ... ... ... 512
Siege of Petersburg ... ... ... ... ... 546
Sherman's March through Georgia ... ... ... ... 546
Defences of Petersburg ... ... ... ... ... 612
Scene of General Lee's Surrender ... ... ... ... 623



# IRISH-AMERICAN

# HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES.

## CHAPTER I.

Early Irish Traditions regarding Hy-Breasail or a Great Western Ireland—Scandinavian Traditions—The Voyages of Saints Barind, Mernoc and Brendan to the Promised Land—Voyages of Saints Cormac Ua Liathain and Baithen—Probability of an Irish Christian Settlement on the Great Western Continent—Northman Voyages and Colonization—Extended Fame of St. Brendan's Voyage in Europe and in Asia.

THE Pagan Irish had remote and cherished traditions regarding some great magic Island, far away from them in the Atlantic Ocean. It was a land of enchantment for their imaginings, and in it lived an enchanted race of inhabitants. It bore a variety of names, and it was associated in their minds with vague mythological ideas.[1]

The early Firbolgian and Fomorian colonists[2] of Ireland—for the most part supposed to have been seafaring men—are thought to have placed their Elysium far out in the Atlantic Ocean. Sometimes they called it Oilean-na-m-Beo or Island of the Living, or Hy-na-Beatha, Island of Life. Again, it was designated Tir-na-m-Beo or Land of the Living, or Tir-na-Nog, the Land of Youth, where *Genii* dwelt, enjoying lives of perpetual happiness. It had a delightful climate, according to the ancient bards; while, the heroes of Irish romance dwelt there in enchanted places. Sometimes it is styled Tir-na-m-Buadha or Land of Virtues; again, it is poetically called the Land of Heroes or the Land of Victories. Always, it is idealized as a lovely region with Immortals inhabiting it, and roaming through an amber-lighted atmosphere, in an Elysium of every imaginable delight. It was called the Blessed Realm.[3] This fairy land obtained, likewise, the name Hy-Breasail or the Island of Breasal. It was often thought

[1] Much of the bardic lore of ancient Ireland may be found in Rev. Dr. Jeoffry Keating's "History of Ireland," several editions of which have been published.

[2] The "Leabhar-Gabhala" or Book of Invasions, which gives the fullest traditional and most ancient accounts of these people, is yet in manuscript, and it has not been published. The oldest copy extant seems to be that described by Rev. Dr. Charles O'Conor, in the Stowe Catalogue.

[3] Reminding us of the Μακάρων Νῆσοι, or Happy Islands of the Greeks.

to have been seen through the mist of ocean, from the mountain tops of Western Munster, Connaught and Ulster. "The Great Land" was a term applied to it, in the Irish bardic poems and stories—many of these yet untranslated and unpublished; while still around the southern, western and northern coasts of Ireland, various fireside traditions are told by the peasants regarding Hy-Breasail, as also relating to the Firbolgs, Fomorians and Tuatha-de-Danaans[4]—these fierce warriors of old, who have yet a fabled existence in the fairy or spirit-land of the Immortals. Hy-Breasail now dissolves, as a popular theme or vision; yet, through its mists, a more distant region reproduces the spell of an Irishman's enchantment.[5]

Nor were such notions confined to Ireland alone, for similar superstitions had spread among other people of the Old World. For nearly four hundred years before the Birth of Christ, the ancients held a belief regarding a lost island called Atlantis or Atalantis, said to have been greater than all Lybia and Asia together, lying out in that ocean to which it probably gave name. It is alluded to in the Timœus Dialogue of Plato.[6] The descriptions given of its situation are vague and indefinite, and are thought to have been derived from ships and mariners that had ventured out into the great Western Ocean. The Carthagenians are reported to have established colonies in and visited frequently an island, far distant from the Pillars of Hercules.[7] Diodorus Siculus mentions a western island of great extent, as also of surpassing beauty and fertility, far away from Lybia.[8] The recollection of this fabled land seems to have been forgotten in a measure, during the Middle Ages, as few writers have reference to it under the original name. However, islands and curious legends connected with them were still reported to have been in the remote waters of the Atlantic.[9] How far the aboriginal myths of Ireland had influenced maritime enterprise in Christian times is unknown; but it is possible, the Greek and Latin accounts of discovery had been read in the schools, and that

[4] Their ancestors' huge *cahirs* of stone, yet remaining on the Arran group of Islands and on various hill-sides of the mainland, are most certainly calculated to excite exalted notions of strength, size and prowess, while those heroes dwelt on earth. Still, they are popularly supposed to be suffering no decay, in the land of perpetual youth.

[5] See "Irish Folk Lore," by "Lageniensis," chap. xv. and chap. xxxii. where further cognate legends are set forth.

[6] He was born about 429 B.C., and died 348 B.C. The tradition held, that Atlantis was in the ocean opposite to the Straits of Gibraltar. There was an easy passage to it from other islands, which were adjacent to a large continent. In course of time, a great earthquake engulfed it and the inhabitants in the bottom of the sea.

[7] See Aristotle, Liber de Mirabilibus Physicæ Ascultationis, cap. lxxxiv. This writer was born at Stagyra in Macedonia, B.C. 384, and he died B.C. 322.

[8] See Hist. Lib. v., sect. 19. This writer flourished in the time of Julius Cæsar and Augustus.

[9] To have a very full understanding of the early geographical knowledge and descriptions regarding the great Western Continent, the reader is referred to vol. i. of the invaluable and scholarly compilation, "Narrative and Critical History of America," in eight roy. 8vo vols., edited by Justin Winsor. London, 1889.

both sources for information were availed of to form vague conceptions of a land of Promise or a Terrestrial Paradise, which still remained unexplored, and which was destined as a future dwelling for the Saints.

It is remarkable, likewise, that the Pagans of Iceland believed in a seat of the Immortals, where the sick should be restored to health, and where the old should again grow young.[10] Frequent intercourse took place in very remote times between Ireland and Iceland.[11] So far as historic accounts throw light on such transactions, the Irish seem to have been the pioneers of maritime enterprise, antecedent to the Scandinavian development of shipbuilding and of sea-roving. Long before the Northman colonization of Iceland, A.D. 874,[12] the Irish, for the sake of its productive fisheries, had reached its distant shores.[13] With still nobler aspirations to guide them, Irish hermits had settled there, when probably it was devoid of inhabitants ;[14] and the Christian religion was found to be established, when Gardar the Dane, and of Swedish origin, was the first Northman who discovered Iceland in 863,[15] and when the Norwegian Ingolf began the colonization of that country in 874.[16]

The people of Iceland and the Northern races of Europe have for many remote ages preserved national documents, in which there are very curious narratives of discoveries and of navigations relating to America, long antecedent to the times of Christopher Columbus.[17] In those ancient chronicles, reference is often made to Ireland and Irishmen, in various pages, and in relation to American maritime adventures. Those Sagas have recorded various wonderful stories regarding an extensive Western Continent, and daring efforts of their hardy seamen to reach it. Even ancient Scandinavian records have

[10] See the "Hervarar Saga ok Heidrekskongs" or the History of Hervöra and of King Heidker, drawn from the manuscripts of the Legate Arna-Magnæan, and edited by the Icelandic Stephanus Biörnon, cap. i., pp. 2 to 5 ; Hafn, 1785, 4to.

[11] Some ancient accounts assure us, that Iceland had been inhabited so early as the fifth century. See Playfair's "Geography," vol. iii., p. 144.

[12] See David Crantz's "History of Greenland : containing a Description of the Country and its Inhabitants," &c., vol. i.. book iv., chap. i., sect. ii., pp. 242, 243. Translated from the High Dutch. London, 1767, 8vo.

[13] This may be found in Peyrere, "Relation de l'Islande," a Mons. de la Mothe le Vayer, sect. xliii.

[14] The origin of Christianity in Iceland is set forth, in the "Icelands Landnamabok" or Book of Iceland's Origin, part i., cap. xiv.. xv., xvi.

[15] According to the translated work of Professor Rudolph Keyser, "Nordmændenes Religionsforfatning i Hedendommen" or the Religion of the Northmen, by Barclay Pennock. See Introductory Chapters by the Translator, cap. iii., pp. 77, 78. New York, 1854, 8vo.

[16] See Arngrym Jonas' "Hystoria Islandiæ," and Ara Multiseius' "Schedæ de Islandia," cap. ii.

[17] Readers who are inquisitive will consult "Antiquitates Americanæ sive Scriptores Septentrionales Rerum Ante-Columbianarum in America." This work has been ably edited by C. C. Rafn, a member of the Royal Society of Northern Antiquaries. The documents are found in the Latin, Danish and Icelandic tongues, with plates and maps included. It was published at Hafn, A.D. 1837, in royal 4to.

applied the name "Great Ireland"[18] to a distant Western Continent, which Columbus had not yet discovered.

Not many generations had seen the light, after the first introduction of Christianity into Erin, when the adventurous and saintly men Barind or Barinthus and Mernoc,[19] whether by accident or with a set purpose of discovery in view, reached the distant shores of the Land of Promise—the earliest Irish and Christian designation of America. They were enabled to return once more to the island from which they had sailed, about the commencement of the sixth century. Wonderful were the rumours spread abroad, and the narratives of those navigators filled the minds of others with restless desires, to witness scenes so graphically described, and yet so vaguely portrayed.[20] Among the many who sought information from the voyagers was one having manly courage and tenacity of will to second a lively imagination and an enterprising genius. Holy Brendan, in all our hagiological references called "The Navigator," formed a pious resolution to seek this distant land, there to spread the light of Christianity.[21] He sailed from the coast of Kerry, with a crew of sixty religious men, in quest of the unknown Western Continent.

It is probable this adventurous mariner took his departure for the Land of Promise, from near that majestic headland, and from out that bay, now bearing his name. Both lie about seven miles northwards from Dingle.[22] There is no mountain throughout that region of country

[18] See C. C. Rafn's "Antiquités Américaines d'après les Monuments historiques des Irlandais et des anciens Scandinaves." Kopenhagen, A.D. 1845, in 8vo. See Jean George Théodore Graesse's "Trésor de Livers Rares et Précieux ou Nouveau Dictionnaire Bibliographique," Tome i., p. 149.

[19] See Father John Colgan's "Acta Sanctorum Hiberniæ," xxii. Martii. De Egressione Familiæ S. Brendani, pp. 721 to 725. A French writer, Louis Tâchet de Barneval has recorded the story of Barind's voyage to the Land of Promise, and the account received from his lips of those strange adventures that befell the wanderers until land appeared.

[20] This great and distant land God had promised to give His saints, as it was rumoured and at some future time.

[21] It seems strange, that only a slight allusion is made to the voyage of St. Brendan, and in reference to the early discoverers of America, in the work of R. H. Major, F.S.A., which was edited for the Hak-luyt Society. This notice is only found in the Introduction, at p. xxvi.; and it is prefixed to "Select Letters of Christopher Columbus, with other original Documents, relating to his four Voyages to the New World," published at London, 1870, 8vo, second edition.

[22] St. Brendan's Mountain is regarded as one of the highest in Kerry county, it being little inferior in altitude to the Reeks of Mangerton at Killarney. When the tops of other mountains are clear from clouds and mists, that mountain is frequently covered with them. Its exposed situation over the Atlantic Ocean occasions the interception of vapours that roll above its summit and down its sides. When the top is visible, people regard it as a certain token of fine weather. When our saint hoisted sail, such possibly had been its condition, and as brightly it arose on "the poet's warm thought," he thus describes it:—

"Sweetly the morning lay on tarn and hill,
Gladly the waves played in its golden light;
And the proud top of the majestic hill
Shone in the azure air—serene and bright."

supposed to approach in height St. Brendan's Hill in Kerry; nor which commands so extensive a view of the Shannon, nor of its entrance to the ocean.[23]

The merest abstract of St. Brendan's Trans-Atlantic Voyage shall be sufficient for the purposes of this History.[24] Before weighing anchor, and having stored provisions in his galley, we are told that the renowned abbot and navigator ordered his brethren, in the name of the Father, Son and Holy Ghost to embark.[25] When he had embarked, his mariner monks unfurled the sail, and began their voyage, steering towards the summer solstice. The wind was favourable, and they had merely to hold their sail. After a fortnight the wind fell, and they took their paddles till their strength was spent. Brendan encouraged them saying, "Fear not, for God watches over us, and He guides our bark; trim the sail and let her float; God will do what He wishes with His servants, and with His bark."[26]

As when, many centuries subsequent, the mariners of Columbus bound on a like voyage of discovery gave away to anxiety, hope and fear, under favouring winds, transient clouds and showers; so the disciples of their resolute master Brendan must have felt nervous and uneasy, when leaving vast tracts of ocean behind them. They knew not to what part of the world their vessel bore them. Every evening they took some food; forty days had elapsed, and their provisions were nearly exhausted. But, in this great extremity, suddenly an island appeared to them, and it was crowned with towering rocks. From the midst of this isle many streams ran down to the sea. Exhausted with hunger and thirst, the monks wished, even before they found a landing place, to dip up water.[27] Brendan said, "Beware, brethren; what you would do must lead to madness. God has not even deigned to show you the port, and yet you desire to steal a march upon His Providence. In

[23] Hence, it is thought to have been confounded with the Knock Patrick mentioned by an ancient writer, called Necham.

[24] For a full account of the incidents given in the Voyage of St. Brendan, whose festival is held on the sixteenth of May, the reader is referred to "Lives of the Irish Saints," by the present writer, vol. v., Sixteenth Day of May, art. i. There, too, additional particulars are given regarding the early colonization of America by Irishmen.

[25] As he remained alone on the bank, and blessed the spot of their departure, three brothers came from the monastery, and fell at his feet, saying, "Father, permit us to follow thee whither thou goest, or else we are resolved to die here of hunger and thirst." Seeing them thus pressing, and even offering violence to his feelings, the Saint bid them enter his ship.

[26] Under these circumstances, the poetic thought, afterwards so happily expressed by Ireland's illustrious bard Thomas Moore, often filled the mind of the holy man:—

"And as I watch the line of light that plays,
Along the smooth wave tow'rd the burning west,
I long to tread that golden path of rays,
And think 'twould lead to some bright isle of rest."

[27] Archbishop Ussher truly declares that there are most prodigious fables in the narrative of St. Brendan's Seven Years' Voyage to the Western Land. See "Britannicarum Ecclesiarum Antiquitates," cap. xvii., p. 494.

three days, our Lord will point out a spot, where we may land, and where the wearied shall regain their strength." For three days, in consequence, they coasted around that island, and on the third day they disembarked in a small port;[28] possibly somewhere on the eastern shores of the present trans-Atlantic Republic.

The holy man Brendan then landed on the shores of a vast territory, the extent of which was unknown; and, after a long term—seven years are said to have been spent in exploration—he and his hardy mariners returned to Ireland. Strange were their adventures, indeed, as chronicled in a well-known story of the Middle Ages, "The Voyage of St. Brendan." But, this seems to have been noted down originally from oral tradition, and afterwards it was encumbered with various wild fancies.[29] Several Latin versions of St Brendan's voyage are still in manuscript, and many of these are ancient.[30] Never was popular romance more eagerly read in modern times than was this composition, not alone in Ireland but throughout Europe. It was recited in the Irish language; it was sung in the Norman-French;[31] while it has been translated into various dialects, and published in prose and poetry.[32]

The traditions of St. Brendan's voyage haunted the imagination of Irish navigators after his time; and a new-born zeal to spread Christianity in that distant land excited the ardour of many inmates in the monastic establishments. Several vain attempts were made by St. Colman Ua Liathain,[33] in the sixth century, to reach the Promised Land, but he was as frequently driven back to the shores of Ireland by opposing winds and waves. In a light sea-boat this same Cormac left Columba's monastery for a cruise in quest of the Land of Promise. After great dangers encountered he touched at the Orkney Islands, and he returned after an absence of several months to Iona. Before a south wind he sailed for fourteen days, without making land, into the northern seas. He came to a region where the ocean seemed alive with loathsome creatures, which crowded on the oars, and stung the hands of those attempting to remove them. Those were, doubtless, a harmless shoal of Medusæ, so commonly seen in the still summer-sea. Again he returned

[28] To the "Acta S. Brendani" the reader must be referred for the conclusion of this most imaginative and mystical legend. See a full account of all manuscripts in Achille Jubinal's "La Légende Latine de S. Brandaines," avec une Traduction inédite en prose et en poésie romanes. Paris, 1836, 8vo.

[29] See L. Tâchet de Barneval's "Histoire Légendaire de l'Irlande," chap. xxxiii. Paris, 1856, 8vo.

[30] See Right Rev. Bishop Moran's "Acta Sancti Brendani," published at Dublin, in 8vo, A.D. 1872.

[31] See a notice of the published version, in Blackwood's Magazine, for 1836. Vol. xxxix., June, No. ccxlvii.

[32] Our own talented countryman, Denis Florence McCarthy, has elegantly rendered "The Voyage of St. Brendan" into English verse, in rythm of surpassing harmony, and in a form well calculated to impress it on the imagination and memory of every tasteful reader.

[33] The festival of this holy Abbot of Durrow is held on the 21st of June. For a more particular account of his voyages, the reader is referred to the Rev. Dr. Reeves' Adamnan's "Life of St. Columba," Lib. i., cap. 6, p. 30; Lib. ii., cap. 42, p. 166 to 171; Lib. iii., cap. 17, and Additional Notes E pp. 270 to 275

safely from this adventurous voyage.[34] Another disciple of St Columba and his successor as Abbot of Iona, St Baithen sailed out to seek a desert in the great ocean.[35] He asked St. Columba's blessing before his departure He returned however, unsuccessful in the object of his search, and having seen many great sea-monsters during his voyage. We find it stated, likewise, that one Maelduin, the son of a Munster chief, with a number of young men, wandered for three years and seven months on the Atlantic.[36]

There is good reason for supposing, however, that several Irish Christians had reached the trans-Atlantic shores at an early period.[37] That they had settled there is on record, and it is even probable that they had propagated Christianity among the aboriginal inhabitants —then chiefly composed of the tawny or Red Men of the forest,[38] whose origin, descent, and migrations have so often exercised, and still baffled, the researches of American ethnologists and historians.[39]

From Ireland, the accounts of the Promised Land, and of other visionary islands in the great ocean, spread throughout Europe. The Irish navigators had early and frequent intercourse with the Northmen of Iceland and of Scandinavia; and these daring seamen were anxious to hazard their lives around the coasts of Greenland to the points indicated.[40] Attributing the honour of a first discovery to our countrymen, and foreshadowing the Great Land as a colonial dependency, justly belonging to the country of their birth, the Northern Sagas called it, Irland-it-Mickla, or Great Ireland.

The route towards it, commencing from the north of Europe, is described in this manner. The Sagas and Eddas relate, that to the south of habitable Greenland, enormous icebergs were to be found floating. Then wild tracts and uninhabitable wastes extended. Beyond

[34] See Joseph Andrew's "Scotland in Early Christian Times," Lecture iv., pp. 141 to 143.

[35] See Rev. Dr. Reeves' Adamnan's "Life of St. Columba," Lib. i., cap. 20, pp. 49, 50.

[36] This account is given in the Trinity College Manuscript, Dublin, and classed H 2. 16. There is only a fragment of this tale in the Leabhar na h-Huidhre, edited by John T. Gilbert, in 1870, Dublin, fol.

[37] See some interesting statements, with reference to this subject, in Thomas D'Arcy M'Gee's "History of the Irish Settlers in America, from the earliest Period," chap. i.

[38] See Joseph Buchanan's "Sketches of the History, Manners, and Customs of the North American Indians; interspersed with numerous Anecdotes of these curious People; Account of their Languages and singular Customs," A.D. 1824, 8vo.

[39] One of the most gorgeously illustrated works published and relating to them is Henry R. Schoolcraft's "Historical and Statistical Information respecting the History, Condition, and Prospects of the Indian Tribes of the United States." The first volume appeared in 1851, and it was published in Philadelphia by authority of Congress, in royal 8vo shape. The illustrations are by S. Eastman, Capt., U.S.A., and by other eminent artists, while several other volumes have already been issued.

[40] See "A Popular History of the United States. From the first Discovery of the Western Hemisphere by the Northmen to the end of the Civil War. Preceded by a Sketch of the Pre-historic Period and the Age of the Mound Builders." By William Cullen Bryant and Sydney Howard Gay, in four imperial 8vo volumes.

these, the country of the Scrælings lay. A region called Markland extended beyond their territory; while Vinland the Good stretched beyond the country just noticed. Icelandic records, and especially the Landnamabock,[41] indicate the Scrælings' land to be identified with the country of the Esquimaux; Markland with the present Labrador or Nova Scotia; Wineland[42] or Vinland the Good with the New England States; and a tract called Huitranmanaland or Albania, denominated also the White Man's Land, is thought to have comprised the present Southern United States. Formerly, vessels are said to have gone from Ireland, while their crews landed in this particular region. Helleland is also a denomination found, but its situation is not so easily determined.[43] However, it has been thought identical with Newfoundland, and that it was so called from its flat stones.[44] Centuries before the Spaniards landed in Florida, and at a very early period, Irishmen had settled in that southern portion of North America, and had introduced a civilization, the traces of which remain.[45] Even so far back as the eighth century, a people speaking the Irish language[46] was found there; while, according to a probable conjecture, that country lying along the eastern coast, and stretching from Chesapeake Bay to the Carolinas and Florida, had been inhabited by Irishmen.[47] Even the Shawanese Indians, who formerly lived in Florida, had a tradition that white men anciently occupied that region, and that they were possessed of iron implements.[48] In fact, the numerous antiquities discovered in various parts of the Eastern, Northern and Southern States prove, that a race of civilized beings were resident there, and possibly anterior to the Indians.[49] How they have disappeared as a race now seems to be unknown. It is probable, they had been destroyed by the Red Men; or as some

[41] This old Scandinavian chronicle was compiled in the thirteenth century, and apparently from older documents.

[42] So called from the wild vines there discovered in the woods.

[43] See "Antiquitates Americanæ sive Scriptores Septenriönales Rerum Ante-Columbianarum in America."

[44] See "The Religion of the Northmen," by Rudoph Keyser, Professor of History in the University of Norway, translated by Barclay Pennock. Introduction, chap. iii., p. 79.

[45] Ancient and indigenous remains indicate such a conclusion, as stated by N. Ludlow Beamish in "The Discovery of America by the Northernmen in the tenth Century, with Notices of the Early Settlements of the Irish in the Western Hemisphere." London, 1841, 8vo.

[46] According to the statement of Professor C. C. Rafn, of Copenhagen.

[47] Such is the opinion of Dr. Von Tschudi, in his work on Peruvian Antiquities. Also, Lionel Wafer states, that there was a wonderful affinity between the Irish language and that spoken by the Indian people living in the Isthmus of Darien. He relates many other particulars to show that an early Irish colonization of the great western Continent must have occurred.

[48] See "Antiquitates Americanæ sive Scriptores Septentriönales Rerum Ante-Columbianarum in America," edited by Professor Rafn Preface, p. xxxvii.

[49] Among these are traces of forts, supposed to have been built by Northern European settlers; while it is remarkable, that various warlike instruments and domestic implements have been discovered, resembling in nearly every important particular similar objects preserved in the Irish and Scandinavian museums.

ethnologists have supposed, that intermarriages with native women took place, which merged the white completely in the coloured race.

That old Icelandic Scandinavian chronicle the Landnamabock relates that Ulf the Squinter, son of Hogni the White, occupied the whole of Reykianess—a south-west promontory of Iceland—which was situated between Thorskafiord and Hafrafell. He had a wife named Biorg, who was daughter to Eyvind the East-countryman. They had a son named Ari, and he was driven by a tempest to Huitranmanaland, which some called Irland-it-Mickla or Great Ireland.[50] This region was placed in the western ocean, near to Vinland the Good, and westwards from Ireland. Ari is said to have been baptized in this newly-discovered country. If so, it must have been by Irish missionaries, and among Irish colonists. He was held there in great respect, and elected as a chief, nor would the inhabitants permit him to take his departure from among them. Besides the foregoing, many Northmen, settled in our Island and in Northern Europe, frequently sailed to those distant shores.[51] A Northman merchant of Limerick called Rafn, and his kinsman Ari Marson, Biron or Biorn,[52] with a person named Gudlief,[53] besides Madoc,[54] a prince in Wales, with Antonio Zeno, a Venetian,[55] and others, are said to have landed there, at various times, during the Middle Ages.[56]

[50] See Frederick Henry Alexander Baron de Humboldt's "Cosmos," vol. i. The first volume of this great work appeared in Germany, 1845. It was translated into French by M. H. Faye, and published at Paris, in 8vo.

[51] See that interesting work of Joshua Toulmin Smith, "The Discovery of America by the Northmen in the Tenth Century," chap. v., with the illustrative map prefixed. Second edition, London, 1842, 8vo.

[52] He flourished about the beginning of the eleventh century. He was an adventurous Icelander, and a voyager of great experience. He was driven by a tempest from his course to Greenland, far to the south-west, when he discovered a flat country, free from rocks, but covered with thick woods. These characteristics render it probable, that he touched at the present Newfoundland.

[53] Sometimes called Lief, the son of Eric Raude or Red Head, a Danish chief. He sailed from Greenland, with Biorn as a pilot, and twenty-five men on board his vessel. This was in the year 1002, and after a south-west course, they arrived in Helleland and Markland, as also in Vinland.

[54] He is said to have been the son of Owen Gwynneth, Prince of North Wales. Having prepared certain ships, with men and provisions on board, they all sailed westwards, leaving the shores of Ireland to the north, about the year 1170. They at last landed on unknown and uninhabited shores, where they found a pleasant and fruitful country. The account of these adventures is to be found in Hakluyt's Voyages, the first edition of which was published A.D. 1589, and the second in 1600.

[55] In the year 1380, he sailed from the Mediterranean Sea northwards, reached Frisland, thence he voyaged northwards to Engroenland or Greenland, where he found a monastery of Friars and a church dedicated to St. Thomas. Hearing a report, that one thousand miles westward from Frisland there was a large inhabited island called Estoliland, Antonio Zeno sailed thither on a voyage of discovery, and after encountering heavy gales, his crew arrived at strange lands, which they found to be inhabited.

[56] Some accounts of these adventures are to be found in Dr. Jeremy Belknap's "Biographies of the Early Discoverers

The drain of emigration, which has contributed so materially to increase the wealth, progress, power and resources of the vast trans-Atlantic Republic, thus seems to have originated in Ireland, having first diffused the blessings of Religion and civilization, at a very remote time, and when darkness and paganism overspread the great Western Continent. The eagerly read "Navigatio Sancti Brendani" was found in every monastic and great public library of Europe, long before the invention of printing.[57] This narrative of his voyage had been a received tradition in France, in the Netherlands, in Italy, in Germany and in Spain, for centuries before the birth of Columbus.

The fame of St. Brendan's adventures even reached to Asia. We have nearly conclusive reasons for believing,[58] that this legend was known at an early period to the Arabs. Some of the Arabian geographers describe the "Island of Sheep," with the "Island of Birds," and in words, which must have been taken from those accounts remaining, in reference to our Christian Ulysses and his Odyssey. This latter narrative exercised a greatly imaginative influence, especially on the western inhabitants of Europe.

Nebulous traditions, very generally accepted in the past, have certain truthful bearings on the real facts of history. There is sufficient reason to infer, as we have seen, that many believed in the existence of a Great Ireland extending far towards the west, even long before Columbus' discovery of America. Assuredly, if they were only in a relative measure mistaken, we are in a fair way to see the doubtful vision of their days become a reality; for, there are few Irish families, at the present time, whose kindred have not found and formed alliances with that dream-land of the west, the United States, and whose dearest hopes are not bound with its progressive life and vigour. Those forecasts and influences, likely to be exercised on the current of modern and future civilization, are thus blended with Ireland's early historic memorials in the past; while they are largely caused and continued by Irish emigration, especially during the latest centuries.

of America." This writer, however, like most of the early American Historians, appears to have been ignorant of St. Brendan's celebrated voyage, as a source for information, while compiling his work.

[57] Jacobus de Voragine, who was born about A.D., 1230, and who became Provincial of the Dominicans and Bishop of Genoa—the native city of Columbus—gave St. Brendan's Land a special prominence in the thirteenth century, by writing his "Golden Legend," in which a notice of it may be found.

[58] According to Thomas Wright, editor of the Forty-eighth publication of the Percy Society, entitled "St. Brandan; a Medieval Legend of the Sea." It contains an early English metrical version of the famous Voyage, as well as a prose version, which is almost identical with that which Denis F. McCarthy copied from Caxton's Golden Legende, and which was published in the *Dublin University Magazine*, vol. xxxix., at p. 556, *et seq.* There is a valuable preface to the body of that work.

## CHAPTER II

**The Aboriginal Races of America—The Red Men and Mound-Builders in the United States—Antiquities found there—The Voyage and Discoveries of Christopher Columbus—Subsequent Expeditions and their Results—Hernando de Soto's Adventures—Conversion of the Indians to Christianity.**

It is known that the Continent of North and South America had been inhabited, at a very early period; yet, by what peculiar tribes, or from what particular countries, however plausibly discussed, would seem nevertheless very uncertain.[1] The generic races of Indians or Red Men found there, by the first European colonizers, were distinctive from those living in other parts of the world; while there are specific differences in stature, features, language, manners and customs, still known to exist among the various tribes.[2] The aboriginal inhabitants of North America probably belong to various nations. It is generally thought, that a great majority of the early colonists crossed over from Eastern Asia through Behring's Straits, at a very remote era. They are supposed to have arrived, at different periods.[3] Certain writers believe, that the Phœnicians and Scythians sailed thither and settled there in times very distant from our own; but, that those ancient mariners found themselves unable to return or to communicate their adventures after they had landed.

The earlier inhabitants of America are deemed to have been those most advanced in knowledge and skill. There can be no doubt, that a civilized race had flourished—especially in the midland and southern parts of the North American Continent—at a very remote time,[4] as proved by the remarkable pyramids, dykes, causeways, idols, temples,[5]

[1] On this subject, the reader may consult the very elegantly written and learned "History of America," first published by Dr. William Robertson, A.D., 1777, in two 4to volumes. It has since passed through numerous editions.

[2] See George Catlin's "Lectures and Notes on the Manners, Customs and Condition of the North American Indians." In two beautifully illustrated 8vo volumes. London, 1842.

[3] Such opinions have been advanced by a writer in the "Universal History from the earliest Accounts to the present Time." Compiled from original Authors. Illustrated with Charts, Maps, Notes, &c. Second edition, 8vo. Ancient Part of Universal History, in eighteen volumes. London, 1779 to 1781. Modern Part of Universal History in thirty-eight volumes. London, 1780 to 1784. See vol. xxxviii. of America, cap iv., sec. ii.

[4] See William Hickling Prescott's "History of the Conquest of Mexico, with a preliminary view of the ancient Mexican Civilization, and the Life of the Conquerer Hernando Cortez." New York, 1843, in three 8vo volumes.

[5] The Rt. Hon. Edward King, Viscount Kingsborough, eldest son to the third Earl of Kingston and born in the County of Cork, produced a truly magnificent work, intituled "The Antiquities of Mexico: comprising Fac-Similies of Ancient Mexican Paintings and Hieroglyphics preserved in the Royal Libraries of Paris, Berlin and

hieroglyphics, paintings, and sculptures,[6] as also other monuments found in Mexico,[7] Yucatan[8] and Peru.[9] Their agriculture and manufactures were considerable, while their social and civil state was remarkably well-ordered.

Curious remains of antiquity abound in a variety of places throughout the United States, but those indications afford only objects for doubtful investigation. Mounds, monuments, earthworks, stone-cased graves, stone implements, flint spear and arrow-heads and rock-carvings are the chief antiquities hitherto discovered.[10] They have been ascribed to various races and to different periods. In connexion with primitive United States history, the Red Men seem to occupy the chief claim on our consideration. Since the white colonization many works have appeared, but these are almost solely descriptive of their habits and manners.[11] The aborigines of America have an obscure history[12]—if indeed it can at all be investigated[13]—yet perhaps existing monuments and antiquities may help to throw some light on their origin and race.[14]

When the European colonists landed in the United States, the Huron and Iroquois tribes—including the Five Nations of New York—occupied a territory adjoining the Algonquins, with whom they were constantly at war. The Cherokee Indians inhabited the region of

Dresden; in the Imperial Library of Vienna; in the Vatican Library; in the Borgian Museum at Rome; in the Library of the Institute of Bologna; and in the Bodleian Library of Oxford; together with the Monuments of New Spain, by M. Dupaix; with their respective Scale of Measurement and accompanying Descriptions." The whole illustrated by many valuable inedited Manuscripts by Lord Kingsborough. The Drawings on stone by A. Aglio, London, imperial folio volumes i. to vii., 1831, volumes viii. and ix., 1848. These volumes were originally published at the rate of £140. The first seven volumes cost Lord Kingsborough £32,000 to produce. This munificent nobleman was arrested for debt in Dublin, and thrown into prison, where he was seized with typhus fever, which terminated fatally in 1837.

[6] See Charles Knight's "English Cyclopedia." Geography, vol. i Art. Mexico, col. 789.

[7] See Desire Charnay's "Ancient Cities of the New World, Travels and Explorations in Mexico and Central America," 1857-1882, translated from the French by J. Gonino and Helen S. Conant, with upwards of 200 fine illustrations. London, Chapman and Hall. Roy. 8vo.

[8] See "Pre-Historic America," by the Marquis de Nadaillac, translated by N. D'Anvers, and edited by W. H. Dall. Illustrated with 219 engravings. London, 8vo.

[9] See Justin Winsor's "Narrative and Critical History of America." Vol. i., chap. iii., pp. 133 to 282.

[10] The Smithsonian Institution at Washington, D.C., has already contributed much towards the antiquarian knowledge of the United States.

[11] See Francis S. Drake's "Indian Tribes of the United States, their History, Antiquities, Customs, Religion, Arts, Language, Tradition, Oral Legends and Myths." In two volumes. Roy. 4to.

[12] See James Adair's "History of the American Indians," published in a quarto volume, at London, in 1775.

[13] See Georgius Hornius' "De Originibus Americanis," Lib. iv. Published at the Hague in 1652. 12mo.

[14] See Alexander W. Beadford's "American Antiquities and Researches into the Origin and History of the Red Race." New York, 1843, 8vo.

Alabama, Georgia and Carolina. The Mobiles were near them in the south. But, as all were nomad and migratory tribes, it is now difficult to fix the extent of their respective territories in ancient times. The Indians spoke different languages or dialects, and lived under chiefs, usually selected for their bravery and wisdom. They recognised one supreme being, whom they called the Great Spirit, but they did not worship him. They had also some idea regarding a future state. They believed, likewise, in a Bad Spirit, whom they feared, and whom they sought to propitiate by witchcraft and magic practices. The Sioux or Dacota tribes furnish the type of language and customs for a group of Indians, embracing the Iowas, the Pawnees, the Aurickarees, the Omahas, the Otoes, the Minnitarees, the Mandans, the Osages, the Kansas, the Quappas, the Winnebagoes, the Missouries, and a great circle of prairie tribes. It is not contended that these tribes can always converse understandingly together ; but, so far as it has been compared by vocabularies, their language is distinctly traced through one ethnological chain.[15] The Dacota tribes,, about the beginning of the seventeenth century, seem to have inhabited a vast range of country, extending from the eastern slopes of the Rocky Mountains to the western banks of the Mississippi, and even northwards from the sources of the Missouri River. The Algonquin tribes were east and north of the Mississippi, while their range of country was even still more extensive. They spread over Canada and along the Atlantic seaboard. The Illinois, in the state so named at present and their kindred people, belonged to this latter group. The course of migration of the Dacotas appears to have been from south to north ; but they began to retreat, in course of time, before the north-western rush of the Algonquins. Now the Sioux or Dacotas are driven far away towards the Rocky Mountains, and various sub-divisions of their tribes have nomad tents, or they dwell in villages far beyond the western bounds of the Mississippi River.[16]

Runic forts, tombs[17] and inscriptions have been discovered, especially in the eastern and middle states. Those indications furnish evidence of a Scandinavian colonization. Axes, spears and arrow-heads have been found in great numbers, especially in the middle, western and northern states. Numerous pre-historic monuments known as Indian mounds, rise throughout the midland districts of North America. Frequently these are of considerable height and dimensions. Several have been explored, and they were found to contain human remains[18] of

[15] It is possible, that philologists hereafter may trace some connexion between it and some tongues of the other continents, especially of Europe or Asia.

[16] See Henry R. Schoolcraft's "Historical and Statistical Information respecting the History, Condition and Prospects of the Indian Tribes of the United States."

[17] One of these has been brought to light near the falls of the Potomac River, and it is said to have had an inscription in the Runic character, purporting to be the burial place of Susie or Susa, a daughter to one of the Northmen expeditionary chiefs.

[18] In the year 1880, one of these was opened and examined in Brutish Creek

gigantic proportions. But, the great ethnological problem, as to the race and period contemporaneous with their erection, remains to be solved; nor does it seem likely, that the nomadic habits of the Red Men could bear any relation to a state of society existing when those monuments were raised to such imposing heights. The earth-works and artificial mounds of Missouri are singularly interesting, as belonging to the remote builders, whose history can scarcely be investigated, at the present time.[19] The most extensive remains are to be found probably in south-eastern Missouri, and along the western bank of the Mississippi.[20]

It has been supposed, that the mound-builders were a race of people, whose remains indicate a state of advancement in the arts and manufactures, far superior to the savage tribes who succeeded them. Some archæologists have adopted an opinion, that the mound-builders were not an extinct people, but were the ancestors of existing tribes. Numerous wedges, chisels, hammers, and other implements have been found in the ancient mining pits of Keweenaw Point, Lake Superior, and at Isle Royal. Artistic forms of copper implements, both cast and hammered,[21] cannot fail to impress the observer, that a race of men existed in early times, and whose origin is enveloped in mystery, but whose skill rivals that of man in historic times, assisted by all the inventions of this iron age. Recent discoveries have shown that various forms of copper implements had been deposited in their burial places by the mound-builders, with markings similiar to those left by moulds in the process of casting. That these people were acquainted with the art of smelting copper,[22] besides that of hammering it, has been inferred, on what seem to be reasonable grounds.[23]

Township, State of Ohio, by a historical society of the district, under the direction of Dr. Everhart. The mound is said to have been eight feet in height and some sixty-four by thirty-five feet wide at the top. In one part of it was found a kind of clay or brick coffin. Skeletons of enormous size were found. These were buried, each corpse in a separate grave. Resting against one of the rude coffins there was a stone tablet, with characters engraved upon it, and which show in the opinion of Dr. Everhart, that the giant race must have been Sun worshippers. An account of these preceedings will be found in the "Kansas City Review of Science."

[19] Several very singular specimens of ancient pottery have been found throughout the State. Those of south-eastern Missouri have been described by Dr. Edward Evers, and they are illustrated by lithographed plates.

[20] See "Contributions to the Archæology of Missouri," by the Archæological Section of the St. Louis' Academy of Science, Part i. Pottery, Salem, Mass. 1880, 4to.

[21] Professor Lewis has remarked, that much the greater number of prehistoric copper hammers were evidently produced by hammering.

[22] Colonel Whittlesey mentions, that in all the pits examined by him traces of fires were to be seen on the sides thereof, and fragments of charcoal and wood in the *debris*, indicating the use of fire in assisting the action of the wedges and in extracting the masses of copper. The melting point of copper is about 1·98 degrees centigrade, which, no doubt fused the small points of copper attached to the larger masses, and which the quick perception of these aboriginal people noticed, and thus it led them to utilize those particles in casting.—"Smithstonian Contributions to Knowledge for 1833."

[23] The fact, that in a collection made

The legend of St. Brendan had a reflex and shadowy light to throw on geographical science, down to a comparatively late period.[24] Through the clouds of Irish recorded traditions, and through recent historic investigations, we may now trace the facts, but slightly obscured by the vivid cross-lights of old legend-mongers.

Soon after the invention of printing, Great Ireland was set down and also the Isle of St. Brandan,[25] on conjectural Italian charts as lying opposite to Europe and Africa. In an ocean space between the south of Ireland and the end of Guinea it was represented. There can be little doubt, that from a very distant period, the inhabitants of Ireland had entertained widely-spread ideas about the existence of a great and far-removed western continent. Some had even reached it and landed, still their adventures were unrecorded, and therefore during long ages a void continued in the history of those lost tribes. Thus, to the Genoese Columbus belongs the glory of disenchanting the ocean, and of bringing two hemispheres into contact, although historically separated from the beginning of remote time. A land of great extent was then rendered accessible to humanity. It was opened by one of the most illustrious examples of patience, intelligence, fortitude and courage ever exhibited by man. Born in 1447, in Genoa, this illustrious explorer became a mariner at the early age of fourteen.[26] Columbus sailed to the north of Europe, where he penetrated even to the polar seas.[27] His well cultivated mind,[28] disciplined by a superior education, desired to be correctly informed regarding the traditions which remained, and which were even noted in chronicles, as also to ascertain that knowledge possessed by the hardy sea-

by Mr. Perkins, he saw copper implements of mound origin, and which bear well-defined traces of the mould, is stated by Professor Foster. "It is impossible," he adds, "to infer, after a careful examination of the specimens, that the ridges have been left in the process of hammering or oxidation. The more I examine their arts and manufacture, the stronger becomes my conviction that they were something more than a barbaric people."—"Prehistoric Races of the United States."

[24] In the Middle Ages, seven cities, with bishops and a great number of Christians, were thought to have been in the Land of St. Brendan, having fled thither in ships, at the time when Spain and Portugal had been conquered by the Moors.

[25] On the Map of the World, traced by Martin Behaïm, A.D. 1492, and on most Charts in the time of Columbus, it is noted See a reproduction of several ancient Charts and an account of the pre-Columbian explorations in Justin Winsor's "Narrative and Critical History of America," vol. i., chap. ii.

[26] Washington Irving has written a most elegant and interesting "History of the Life and Voyages of Christopher Columbus." This was published in four octavo volumes by Murray of London, A.D. 1828. In an Appendix, No. xxiii. to the Fourth Volume, we find some account respecting "The Imaginary Island of St. Brendan." It abounds in various inaccuracies, concerning the saint and his adventures, and those mistakes have been very generally followed by American historians.

[27] Columbus made a voyage to Iceland in February, 1477. This was fifteen years before the Spanish Court fitted out his American expedition.

[28] See "Historie del S.D. Fernando Colombo, nelle quali s' ha particolare, et vera Relatione della Vita et de' Fatti dell' Ammiraglio D. Christofero Colombo, suo Padre," cap. iv. Venice, A.D. 1571, 8vo.

men of those distant shores and harbours. He received enlightenment from the Scandinavin mariners[29] who had ventured far out on the western main, and especially concerning the shadowy far-off land, very generally known to have existed long before his time.[30] He afterwards made a voyage, so far south as the coast of Guinea, in Africa. Versed in geometry and navigation, in history and natural science, he had excellent opportunities for studying astronomy and cosmography, in a practical manner.

Our celebrated countryman St. Virgil, Bishop of Saltzburgh,[31] had many centuries before this period taught, that the earth was a globe, and his theory of the Antipodes meant its being inhabited at opposite extremes.[32] Columbus had only believed in the sphericity of the earth, with possible islands, lying very far westwards in the great Atlantic. He had longed for the opportunity of exploring that waste of waters; and finally at his earnest suit, King Ferdinand and Queen Isabella of Spain furnished him with a decked vessel called a carrack, and with two caravels or open boats.[33] With a crew of ninety sailors and a year's provisions, Columbus sailed from Palos, a port of Spain on the Mediterranean the 3rd of August 1492, and clearing the Straits of Gibraltar, he reached the Canary Islands on the 12th of that same month. Here he was engaged refitting and laying in stores of food and water; but, on the 6th of September, he sailed out to the west, on his celebrated voyage of discovery. The stories of St. Brendan's voyage specially entered as important and cheering elements into the imagination and feelings of those Spanish sailors of Christopher Columbus, when they went forth to gain renown, in connexion with their discovery of America. The traditions of Scandinavian settlement were not unknown to their able and learned commandant.[34]

[29] It is a remarkable fact, that Irland-it-Mikla is marked on primitive maps published at Copenhagen, and it is represented as standing out in the Western Atlantic Ocean.

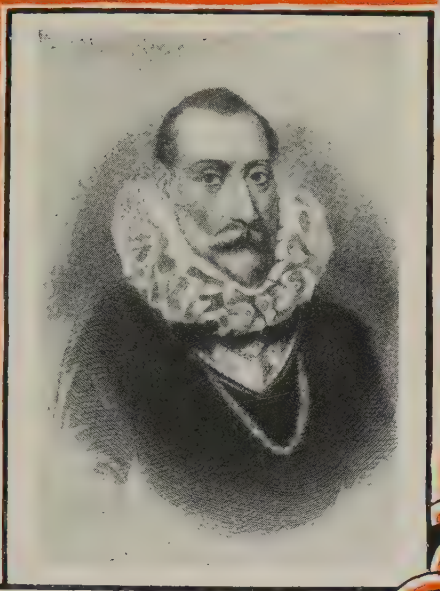
[30] Paulo Toscanelli, a celebrated geometrician of Florence, made a map for and corresponded with Columbus, long before he embarked on his first voyage, in 1492. The idea of both was to find a western route to the Indies. On it, the customary space was occupied by the land of St. Borondon Barind, or Brendan. After his vessel sailed and under every gloom of disappointment, this Chart and the outlined territory probably fired the imagination and sustained the hopes of Columbus.

[31] This illustrious man, distinguished both for his learning and virtues, flourished in the eighth century. Born in Ireland about its commencement, and having studied in its schools, he passed on to France, during the reign of Pepin-le-Bref, from A.D. 741 to 768. This King bestowed on him various marks of his favour. St. Virgil was consecrated Bishop of Saltzburgh, A.D. 746, and he died about A.D. 780. His feast occurs on the 27th of November.

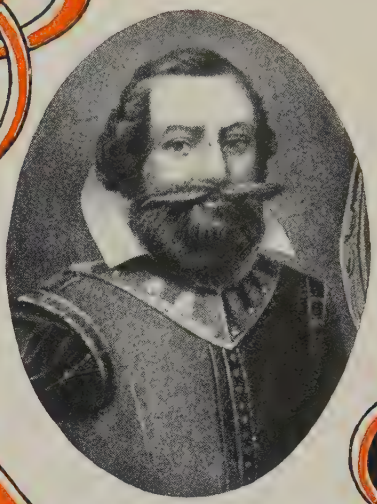
[32] Before his time, various conjectures regarding the shape and extent of the earth had exercised the minds of ancient writers. Many of these thought a great continent lay far out in the Atlantic. See Alexander de Humboldt's "Examen critique de l'Histoire de la Geographie de Nouveau Coutinent." Tome i. Paris, A.D. 1836. This work appeared in five octavo volumes; the last volume was published A.D. 1839.

[33] See William Hickling Prescott's "History of Ferdinand and Isabella the Catholic" for particulars of their aid to Columbus. This elegantly written and esteemed work appeared in 1833 at Boston and at London, in three vols., 8vo.

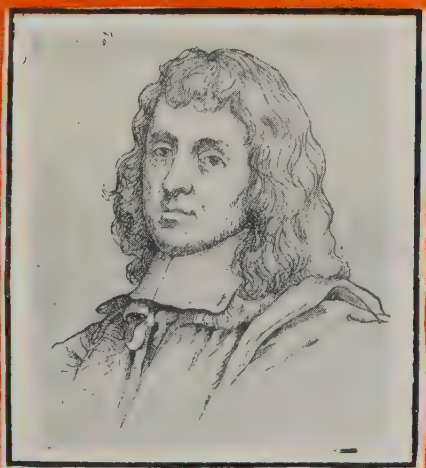
[34] Regarding the discovery of the



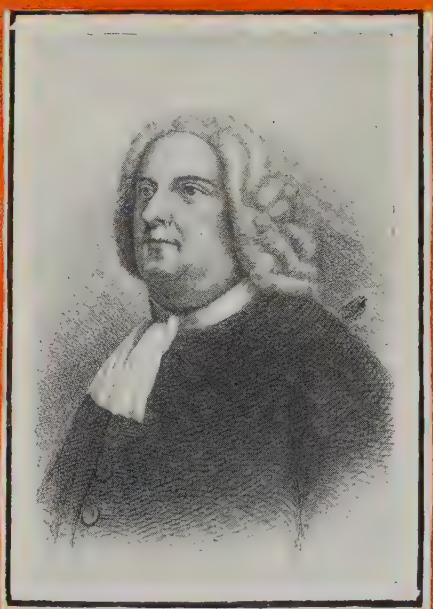
CHRISTOPHER COLUMBUS
Discoverer of America.



JOHN SMITH,
Founder of Virginia.



LORD BALTIMORE,
Founder of Maryland.



WILLIAM PENN,
Founder of Pennsylvania

973
On1
v. 1



With great steadfastness of purpose and presence of mind, he contrived to encourage the spirits of his crew, and to allay their fears, while so many days had elapsed before they obtained sight of land. At last, on the night of October 11th, Columbus himself perceived a light, which he deemed to be on shore, and the following day land was clearly visible. This was one of the present Bahama Islands, and afterwards it was called Guanahana. Several other islands were soon discovered, in that group distinguished as the West Indies,[35] it being then supposed, that a continuous number of such islands reached onwards to the East Indies. Columbus spent some months in coasting among the newly-discovered lands, and in noting the particulars of his voyage. The following year, leaving a colony behind him, he resolved on returning to Spain. There he safely arrived in March, 1493, and he was received with the most distinguished honours by the court and by the Spanish nation. He then prepared a special report regarding his voyage and discoveries.

The singing birds, the green vegetation, and tropical luxuriance so greatly celebrated in the voyage of St. Brendan, are frequently mentioned in the letter which Columbus addressed to his sovereign.[36] Again, this adventurous man returned with a considerable fleet, and 1,500 persons on board, to colonize the possessions thus secured for the crown of Spain. Afterwards, he discovered the continent of South America, in 1498; but his closing career, marked by the ingratitude of his sovereign and the treachery of those he had befriended, brought him back to Spain in irons. He died at Valadolid, on the 20th of May, 1506, in the fifty-ninth year of his age, and his body was buried in the cathedral of Seville. Although from his name the great western continent has been often poetically called Columbia; yet, it has more generally received the denomination America, from one Amerigo Vespucci,[37] Latinised Americus Vespucius, a Florentine navigator, also

American coast by the Northmen, frequent mention has been made since the time of Adam of Bremen, but Torfeus in his "Historia Vinlandiae" (1705), furnished the account of it which Malte Brun and Pinkerton followed; they, however, identified the locality mentioned with the coast of Labrador or Newfoundland. Dr. Robertson ignored the subject entirely in his "History of America." The German J. R. Foster, in his "Discoveries in the North," published during the last century, and Henderson, in his "Residence in Iceland" (1814-15), both give currency to those accounts, which, in an appendix to his "Life of Columbus," Irving rather guardedly dismissed as untrustworthy in his original editions, and as guardedly allows to be of possible importance in later issues of his work.

[35] See Herrera y Tordesillas, "Historia general de los Hechos de los Castellanos en las Islas y Tierra firme del mar Oceano." This work appeared at Madrid, A.D. 1601, in four folio volumes. The greatly admired History of Herrera comprises eight Decades, and with geographical Tables, it includes chronologically from A.D. 1472 to A.D. 1554. Towards the end of the second folio, there is a description of the West Indies.

[36] In that mystical sense, used by Jacobus of Voraggio, the Promised Land is here described, but in a more realistic form.

[37] See Le Vicomte de Santarem's "Rescherches historiques, critiques et bibliographiques sur Americ Vespuce et ses Voyages." Paris, 1842, 8vo.

in the service of Spain. He sailed from Cadiz, May 20th, 1497, according to his own account, when he voyaged to the coast of Paria, and even so far as the Gulf of Mexico. In reality, he did not set out until 1499, with Ojega, a Spanish officer, who had voyaged under Columbus. They sailed in a fleet of four vessels, despatched from Seville. After the death of Columbus, Vespucci published a book and chart, regarding the newly discovered Continent. He thus acquired a false celebrity, while, like many a great originator who fails in gaining the fame and merit justly due to his genius, another obtains or usurps the title, and who had little claim to such an honour. However, the first European discoverers of the great Western Hemisphere were Irishmen; although, it seems more than probable, they were not the first permanent inhabitants.

So firm was the popular belief in St. Brendan's Land, celebrated in mediæval romances,[38] that various expeditions were organised for its exploration after the return of Columbus to Europe. Portuguese and Spanish accounts concur in testimony regarding this prevailing opinion and the hopes to which it gave rise.[39]

The discovery of Columbus led to other great maritime enterprizes and results.[40] John Cabot and his son Sebastian, who were Venetians,[41] had been engaged by King Henry VII. of England to adventure in discovery of a shorter passage to the East Indies, but in a north-western direction.[42] Towards the close of June, 1497, they

[38] The people of the Canary Islands believed, that in those mirages which often arose far out in the Atlantic Ocean and towards the west, the Islands of St. Brendan and of the fabled Seven Cities could be seen in the distance.

[39] This is shown in the depositions taken before Pedro Ortes de Funes, Grand Inquisitor of the Canaries. Don Gaspar Dominguez, taking two friars on board his vessel, conducted the last of these voyages to St. Brendan's fancied land so late as 1721. During that year, leaving the populace in a state of anxious and indescribable curiosity, the able commandant and his apostolic chaplains sailed from the Island of Teneriffe. But, unsuccessful as preceding vessels, their ship returned from this cruise, without discovering the Greater Ireland of their quest.

[40] See Washington Irving's "Voyages and Discoveries of the Companions of Columbus." London, 1831, 18mo. It forms the Third Volume of the "Life and Voyages of Christopher Columbus," in the Geoffrey Crayon edition of his complete works. London, 1881, sm. 4to.

[41] See that curious and interesting work of Richard Haklvyt, Preacher, "The Principal Navigations, Voyages, Traffiques, and Discoveries of the English Nation, made by Sea or ouerland to the remote and farthest distant Quarters of the Earth, at any time within the Compasse of these 1600 yeres," &c. Published at London, in three folio volumes, A.D. 1599, 1600. In the third of these volumes, there are details of the Voyages of Christopher Columbus, of John and Sebastian Cabot, and of the subsequent English and other navigators to the shores of the Western Continent. An edition of this rare work was published in London in five folio volumes, A.D. 1809-1812. Later still, A.D. 1889-1890, under the editorship of Edmund Goldsmith, F.S.A. (Scot.), another edition appeared in Edinburgh in four octavo volumes. This latter edition is the one chiefly quoted.

[42] See J. G. Kohl's "Popular History of the Discovery of America, from Columbus to Franklin, translated

landed on a coast, now generally supposed to be that of Newfoundland.[43] Sebastian Cabot at a much later period visited the coast of Brazil.[44] In 1524, John Verazzani, a Florentine in the service of France,[45] ranged the new Continent along its eastern coast from Florida to Newfoundland.[46] He called this extensive but unexplored region New France. In 1534, at the instance of King Francis I., James Cartier of St. Malo sailed westwards, landing at Newfoundland, and afterwards entering the River St. Laurence. Then he returned to give an account of his discoveries. He sailed once more from France in 1535, and subsequently in 1540, when he explored a considerable portion of that country, now known as Canada.[47] Discovered by Juan Ponce de Leon, A.D. 1513,[48] the Spaniards were the first Europeans to colonize permanently the United States, after the discovery of America by Columbus. In 1565, they settled at St. Augustine in Florida. The earlier European adventurers were often men addicted to violent courses, and many were little better than pirates and buccaneers. Although Catholic Missionaries left Europe with them for the purpose of spreading the Gospel among the native races,[49] these latter had fully divined the rapacious characters and avaricious objects of their countrymen; so that the vices and immoralities of the colonists only served to excite their hatred and disgust, while leading mostly to bloodshed and reprisals.

Received historic accounts leave the central parts of America in possession of numerous tribes of savage Indians, before the French

from the German, by Major R. R. Noel." Published at London, in 1856, 8vo.

[43] Long before his time, it is now known, that Norman, Breton and Basque mariners had resorted to that Island, and that they had fished off its celebrated banks.

[44] See Berewoot's "Novus Orbis, id est, Navigationes Primæ in Americam," pp. 71 to 132. Published at Rotterdam in 1616, 12mo.

[45] See Rev. Dr. Jeremy Belknap's "Biographies of the early Discoverers." Vol. i.

[46] He arrived there in 1525, and he took possession of it, in the name of King Francis I. In a subsequent voyage, he was cut to pieces and devoured by the savages.

[47] The interesting story of his adventures and discoveries is told in "Brief Recit de la Navigation faicte ès Isles de Canada," &c. It was published in Paris, 1545, 8vo.

[48] The French attempted to colonize Florida, which they called Carolina in compliment to their monarch Charles IX. Subsequently, they were driven out by the Spaniards, who extirpated that colony. See "The Popular Encyclopedia; or Conversations Lexicon," vol. iii. Art. Florida, pp. 214, 215.

[49] A Franciscan Juan Juarez had been consecrated Bishop of Florida, A.D. 1528, and with several missionaries, he set out with Panfilo de Naravez. All perished without an opportunity for making an establishment. The Dominicans landing in Florida, A.D. 1549, were put to death by the Indians. At a still later period, the Jesuits also failed to Christianize the native races in Florida. A very complete account of those transactions may be found in the learned and most researchful work of John Gilmary Shea, "History of the Catholic Church within the Limits of the United States," vol. i., Book ii., chap. i., pp. 100 to 182. Published at New York, in four royal 8vo. volumes, 1886 to 1892.

and Spaniards commenced the work of white colonization. Spain was then the greatest monarchy of the Old World, and France almost rivalled her greatness, when the maritime discoveries of the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries urged both nations to extend their possessions in the New World. Christianity was thus planted in America. There, too, the Church was soon destined to extend her benign influence; although at first, in their quests for gold, the Spaniards especially were guilty of great outrages on the native tribes, who were distributed as slaves among the conquerors. Avarice and rapacity constantly thwarted missionary work, while the adventurers were busily engaged planting colonies in various parts of the South. Great efforts were made, however, to repress their cruelties, crimes and abuses, especially by Bartholomew de Las Casas,[50] the first priest ordained in the New World, and by the celebrated Cardinal Ximenes,[51] chief minister of the Emperor Charles V.

The history of those various colonies established in the New World is peculiarly interesting as to their origin, increase and extension, but we cannot here detail their several vicissitudes.[52] It is only with the colonization of the United States we have now to treat.

When the Spaniards had succeeded in founding various colonies in Southern America, Hernando de Soto was appointed by the Emperor Charles V.[53] of Spain as Governor over the Island of Cuba and President of Florida. This Spanish governor conceived the idea of exploring the Lower Mississippi. He passed as far north as the mouth of the Arkansas River, accompanied by 900 infantry and by 350 cavalry soldiers, in 1539. He even took the resolution of sailing up White River, crossed the Ozark Ridge, thus entering probably the south-western parts of the present Missouri. After passing the Mississippi at the lower Chickesaw bluffs, De Soto marched five days over the alluvions of that great river, and he then went to the hilly

He wrote "Brevissima Relation de la Destruccion de las Indias." His complete works appeared under this title, "Las Obras de D. Barthel. de Las Casas," at Seville, 1552, 4to. They have been re-published with a French translation, by Llorente, at Paris, in four octavo volumes. A Life of Las Casas is prefixed.

[51] See Flechier's "Histoire du Cardinal Ximenes." Paris, 1693, 4to. Also "The Life and Times of Cardinal Ximenes," translated from the German of Dr. Von Hefele, by John Canon Dalton, chap. xxv., pp. 495 to 517. London, 1885, 8vo.

[52] James Grahame wrote and published in London "The History of the Rise and Progress of the United States of North America till the British Revolution in 1688." This work appeared in two volumes 8vo. Afterwards a new edition was published in 1836, and with a continuation, which brought his history down to the year 1776, in four octavo volumes. This was republished in Philadelphia in 1845, in four volumes 8vo; in 1846, in two volumes 8vo; and in 1848, in two volumes 8vo. The second American edition contains a Memoir of the author, by President Josiah Quincy, LL.D. This work contains very ample accounts, written with perspicuity and discrimination, regarding the early American settlements and colonists.

[53] See Dr. William Robertson's "History of the Reign of the Emperor Charles V.," first published in 1769, in three volumes, 4to.

country adjoining the present St. Francis. He reached the site, called Casqui, probably a location of the Kaskasia Indians. He then proceeded north-east-wardly against Capahas, probably the Quappas, on a bayou of the Mississippi. Then he returned south-west to Casqui, and next he marched south to Quiguate, probably near Black River. Hearing fresh reports of mineral wealth, he proceeded north-west to Coligoa, near the source of the St. Francis. This was his utmost northern point, at the foot of the high granitical peaks of St. Francis County, Missouri. Afterwards, he marched south, in search of a rich province called Cayas, where he probably crossed the White River valley at Tanico. He thence proceeded through a hilly country to Tula, in the fine valley of Buffalo Creek, where he found the Indians tattooed, ill-favoured and ferocious. For twenty days he there recruited, and next he passed an uninhabited region westward for five days, over the elevations of the Ozark chain. He found fertile praries beyond, inhabited by Indians, called Quipana, Pani, or Pawnees.[54] A few days' further march brought him to the Arkansas River, near the Neosho, which appears to have been about the present site of Fort Gibson. Thus De Soto and his companions seem to have been the earliest white explorers of Missouri.

De Soto spent the winter of 1541-42 on the plains or prairies beyond the Ozark range, and probably in the western tracts of the present state. Doubtless, Catholic missionaries accompanied him. He named the country through which he passed "Florida," as he had set out from that territory, already so called by the Spaniards. It is thought, that smelting had been carried on by the Spaniards.[55] There is no question about De Soto having crossed the Ozark range of mountains in each direction. He left, however, in April 1542 for the Mississippi River, taking the hot-springs of Arkansas on his way. It is almost certain his successor Don Luiz de Moscoso visited likewise that country west of the Ozarks, A.D. 1542. When he had reached the Mississippi, De Soto ascended the river so far as the present site of New Madrid. But this enterprising man soon afterwards died on the river, and to conceal his death from the Indians, it is said his companions buried the body of the discoverer of the Mississippi beneath its deepest waters.[56]

[54] See Nathan H. Parker's "Missouri as it is in 1867: an Illustrated Gazetteer of Missouri," p. 39. Philadelphia, 1867, 8vo.

[55] In Vernon County, near the dividing line between the States of Missouri and Kansas, were descried in 1849 some remains of earth-works, supposed to have been the site of De Soto's encampment. These consisted of four ditches, four or five feet wide, extending in four right parallel lines, about a quarter of a mile in length. These terminated at the commencement of three parallel curved ditches of like dimensions. Again, these latter terminated at the beginning of two others, inversely curved, and about 200 yards in length. Those embankments are on a prarie, between the waters of the lower Dry Woods and Clear Creek. Furnaces, with stone foundations and a quantity of cinders, as also silver ore and some gold, have been there discovered.

[56] His Life has been written by

Thus, it will be seen, that portion of the Mississippi River forming the eastern boundary of Missouri State was discovered by Spanish explorers. These, it is thought, were the first white men that had floated upon the Mississippi. After the death of De Soto, succeeded the disastrous retreat of Louis de Moscoso de Alvarado, with the remains of the Spanish governor's expedition. In the year 1543, and on the 22nd of December, after many dangers and hardships, he arrived in Mexico, with only three hundred and eleven survivors.[57] This result seems to have discouraged adventure on any large scale from the south.

So early as 1544, Catholic missionaries had entered Texas; they had also formed establishments in Florida, in New Mexico, and they had even attempted the conversion of the Indians in California, where the Carmelites and Jesuits laboured. The latter fathers had formed a settlement on the Chesapeake or Bay of St. Mary, but they were massacred by the natives in 1571.[58]

During the reign of Queen Elizabeth, several English navigators adventured to the New World. Martin Frobisher sailed with two vessels in quest of a north-west passage to India in June 1576, and after touching the southern part of Greenland, he reached the strait which still bears his name. Returning to England, another expedition consisting of three vessels set sail in May, 1577, and again having visited the Esquimaux the ships arrived home in September. A fleet of thirteen vessels was afterwards placed under his command, and leaving England in May 1578, Frobisher voyaged towards the north-west, returning in October, having failed in the objects he had in view.[59] Having obtained letters patent from the Queen, June, 1578, Sir Humphrey Gilbert[60] and his half brother the renowned Sir Walter Raleigh put to sea; but they were obliged to return, having lost one of their ships in an engagement with a Spanish squadron. Gilbert sailed a second time from England in 1581, to form settlements in America, however, he was obliged to put back with his expedition through stress of weather.[61] Sir Walter Raleigh[62] had formed the

Garcilasso de la Vega, whose "Historia del Adelantado Hernando de Soto" has been published at Madrid, in 1723, fol.

[57] See Garcilasso de la Vega, "La Florida del Ynca," Lib. ii., Par. ii., cap. 1 to 7, and 17 to 38; Lib. iii.; Lib. iv., cap., 1, 2, 5, 8 to 16; Lib. v., Par. i., cap. 1 to 8, and Par. ii., cap. 1 to 22; Lib. vi., cap. 1 to 22. Published at Lisboa, 1605, 4to.

[58] See John R. G. Hassard's "History of the United States of America," chap. ii. New York, 1881, 8vo.

[59] See an account of those several voyages in Hakluyt's "Navigations, Voyages," &c. Vol. i., pp. 74 to 108.

[60] He wrote a Tract or Discourse to prove the existence of a passage by sea to the north-west leading to Cataia or China and to the East Indies. It was published in 1576, and doubtless it induced Martin Frobisher to set out on his voyage of discovery, as it did the author himself two years afterwards.

[61] Again he sailed with two frigates and three brigs, June 11th, 1583, from Portsmouth, and arrived at St. John's, where he found thirty-six vessels, belonging to different nations; yet, he took possession of Newfoundland, in the name of the Queen of England, notwithstanding the pre-

scheme of exploring and colonizing the eastern coast of America north of the Gulf of Florida. Having obtained the approbation of the Queen and her council, he fitted out two vessels at his own expense, and these sailed for North America in the month of April 1584,[63] under the direction of his brother-in-in-law, Sir Richard Grenville.[64] He landed in Virginia and took possession of that territory which was so named in compliment to the Queen. Other colonists soon afterwards arrived. Thus were the earliest settlements of the English begun in Virginia.[65] They were attended, however, with great reverses.[66] Afterwards, Bartholomew Gosnold,[67] Christopher Newport,[68] John Smith,[69] Henry Hudson,[70] and some other adventurers, attempted the colonization of different regions; while the French, Dutch and Spaniards[71] were equally busied in extending the authority of their respective governments on various parts of the Continent, during the

vious claim of John Verzzani and of James Cartier, on behalf of France. Gilbert chased all the Portuguese from the Island, and began to establish penal laws to maintain the supremacy of Queen Elizabeth. However, he was obliged to leave, and in seeking a return to England, he perished in a tempest at sea, the 10th of September 1584. See Haklvyt's "Principal Navigations," &c., Vol. i., sect. xxxiii. to xxxix.

[62] See "The Works of Sir Walter Raleigh, Knight, now first collected;" to which are prefixed the Lives of the Author, by Oldys, and Birch. Oxford, 1829, eight volumes 8vo.

[63] He sailed himself in 1595 to the West Indies and to Guianna, but he soon returned to engage in other adventures. See Whitehead's "Life and Times of Sir Walter Raleigh." London, 1854, 8vo.

[64] He sailed again April 9th 1585, for the West Indies and South America. Afterwards, he returned to Virginia, leaving 108 colonists on Roanoke Island, and then he sailed for England the same year. Again, he returned to Virginia A.D. 1586. In a naval engagement with the Spaniards he was killed A.D. 1588. See Short's "Account of the First Settlements in Virginia."

[65] See Haklvyt's "Voyages of the English Nation to America," Vol. ii., sect. xxiii. to xxxiii.

[66] See Smith's "History of Virginia." Book i.

[67] In March 1602, he sailed from Falmouth in Cornwall, and on the 14th of May following he landed on the shores of the present State of Massachusetts. He returned to England, where he landed at Exmouth, July 23rd of the same year. Afterwards he sailed for Virginia, where he died A.D. 1607. See Rev. Dr. Jeremy Belknap's "Biographies of the Early Discoveries," Vol. i. Bartholomew Gosnold.

[68] He sailed from the Thames for Virginia on the 19th December 1606, but he did not arrive in Chesapeake Bay until April 26th, 1607. Captain John Smith sailed in company with him.

[69] This very resolute and remarkable man may be regarded as the true founder of the English Colony in Virginia. At the request of Sir Robert Cotton, he published A.D. 1629 "The True Travels, Adventures and Observations of Captain John Smith." He died in London A.D. 1631.

[70] After various unsuccessful attempts to find a north-west passage, he sailed from Amsterdam on the 25th of March 1609, and reached the eastern shores of the present United States the following August. He sailed up the Hudson River in September, and gave name to it. See L'Abbe Prevost's "Histoire General des Voyages," Tomes xiv., xv.

[71] See that admirable work of John W. Monette, M.D., "History of the Discovery and Settlement of the Valley of the Mississippi." Vol. i., Books i., ii., iii., iv. New York, 1846, 8vo.

time of James I.[72] Especially Samuel de Champlain, who entered the St. Lawrence for the first time in 1603, and who founded Quebec in 1608, laboured assiduously during many subsequent years, for the interests of France.[73] Religious zeal, not less than commercial ambition,[74] influenced the French to colonize Canada,[75] while the traders and missionaries of France[76] penetrated among the Indian nations to the north and west. Their relations with those tribes, who were allied to them, became of a very friendly character; while the religious Fathers succeeded in bringing them over to embrace the Christian doctrines and practices. While engaged in exploring the country, even to the distant Mississippi, the Jesuits,[77] with other religious orders[78] converted great numbers of the natives to Christianity.[79]

When Champlain returned from France to Canada in 1604, he landed at Acadia—formerly named Norimbergue—there he spent three subsequent years in explorations, and in seconding the efforts of his countrymen while founding colonies throughout New France. In the former year, he started from the French settlement of St. Croix,[80] at the mouth of the river so named, and on the boundary line between New Brunswick and Maine. He ranged along the western coast in a pinnace, until he entered the mouth of the Penobscot River. On the 18th of June, 1605, he again set forth and explored the whole northern coast of New England so far as Cape Ann, which he called St. Louis. He then crossed to Cape Cod, which he named Cape Blanc. However, he did not attempt any settlement in these places. On the 12th of March, 1613, a small French vessel commanded by La Saussaye having forty-six sailors and colonists on board, with two Jesuits,[81] sailed from Honfleur, and afterwards from Port Royal.[82] After a long delay

[72] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. i., chap. ii., iii., iv., and Vol. ii., chap. xv. This very complete and popular work appeared at Boston in 1834, when the first 8vo volume was published. It was followed by other volumes during the various years succeeding. The history of the Colonization of the United States is comprised in the three first volumes.

[73] See Père Pierre Biard's "Relation de la Nouvelle France," Lyon, 1616, 12mo.

[74] See John Gorham Palfrey's "History of New England," Vol. i., chap. vi., and Vol. ii., chap. vi., xi. London, 1859, 1861, 8vo.

[75] See Parkman's "Pioneers of France in the New World."

[76] See "The Making of New England, 1580-1643," by Samuel Adams Drake. London, cr. 8vo.

[77] See Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. iii., chapter xx., for a most interesting and edifying account of those missionaries.

[78] See the very interesting account of Père Labat "Nouveau Voyage aux Isles de l'Amerique." Published at the Hague, A.D. 1724, six vols. 12mo.

[79] See P. Paul Raguenau's "Relation de ce qui est passe en la Mission des Pères de la Compagnie de Jesus aux Hurons, pays de la Nouvelle France, les annes 1648 et 1649." A Paris, A.D. 1650.

[80] Some priests are known to have served this mission.

[81] These were Father Quentin and Brother du Thet.

[82] Now Anapolis in Nova Scotia. Here Fathers Biard and Masse joined the expedition. The former had already visited the Penobscot. See John Gilmary Shea's "Catholic Church in Colonial Days." 1521-1763. Vol. i., Book iii., chap. i., pp. 216 to 223.

occasioned by foggy weather, the crew steering for the Penobscot entered Frenchman's Bay, on the east side of Mount Desert, in the present State of Maine. The company went on shore, and proceeded to form a settlement, which was called St. Saviour. Hardly had they made a beginning, when a piratical expedition under the infamous Samuel Argal of Virginia bore down upon them with a superior force. An engagement ensued, the colonists were defeated, and their settlement was destroyed,[83] The French Commandant La Saussaye, Father Masse and some others of the settlers were sent adrift in a small bark, from which they were providentially rescued by a French fishing vessel. In this they were brought to France. The other survivors, with Fathers Biard and Quentin, were carried as prisoners to Virginia.

---

## CHAPTER III.

**The early Settlement of the American Colonies—The Plymouth and London Companies—Progress of Colonization—Virginia—Maine—New York—New England—New Hampshire—New Jersey—Delaware—Maryland—Connecticut—Rhode Island—North Carolina.**

AFTER the time of Columbus, the French Huguenots were the first Europeans to build a fort, A.D. 1562, in the present South Carolina. Under the guidance of John Ribaud or Ribault,[1] they had planted a small colony at Port Royal Inlet. By direction of King Philip II. of Spain,[2] orders were transmitted, that the Spaniards should destroy all French settlements in those territories which they claimed. Under the command of Admiral Pedro Melendez, the Spaniards marched against the French Fort Caroline, and took it by surprise. Most brutally the conquerors put the garrison to the sword, only a few escaping from that horrible massacre.

During the latter part of the sixteenth century, various futile attempts were made, especially by Sir Walter Raleigh, to colonize Virginia.[3] The early English settlers—abusing the hospitality of the native tribes—were soon involved in war with them. Many immigrants

[83] Brother du Thet was killed in this skirmish. In order to extirpate the French Settlements, Sir Thomas Dale, Governor of Virginia, sent Argal back with a considerable force, and having completed the destruction of St. Saviour, he demolished the post of the Croix Island and that at Port Royal.

[1] In the "Narratio Regionum Indicarum per Hispanos devastatarum," published by Th. de Bry, A.D. 1590-1598, there is a "Relation du Voyage de Capitaine J. Ribaud a la Floride."

[2] See San Miguel's "Historia del Rey D. Felipe II." Madrid, 1844, 1845. In four volumes 4to.

[3] See Robertson's "History of Virginia and New England," published in 1796.

returned again to England,[4] while others who had settled in Roanoke Island mysteriously disappeared, nor was anything known concerning their fate.[5] An attempt made to colonize the eastern coast of America in 1602, by Bartholomew Gosnold, likewise proved a failure; although it caused several rich men in England to form an Association, to which in 1607, King James I. issued letters-patent for colonizing and possessing the northern territory. It was called the Plymouth Company, because most of the proprietors lived in Plymouth. A London Company was likewise formed to plant the more southern territory. However, no very precise bounds were specified in the respective grants. Each colony formed was to be governed by a resident council of thirteen members nominated by the King, these having power to chose their president. Their laws were subjected to revision by the King or his council in England. It was furthermore required, that the religion recognised in the American colonies should only be that of the Protestant Establishment.[6]

The Plymouth Company's expeditions in 1606, 1607, and 1608, turned out to be complete failures. The London Company despatched a fleet of three small vessels in December, 1606, and under the command of Captain Christopher Newport.[7] These carried one hundred and five colonists, and no women were among them, for it was then difficult to recruit for settlers.[8] After a long voyage—extending nearly to four months—their vessels entered Chesapeake Bay, April 26th 1607. Sealed instructions from the Company—opened after their arrival—had named Gosnold, John Smith, Wingfield, Newport, Ratcliffe, Martin and Kendall members of the Council. These elected Wingfield as their President. In May, the site selected for their settlement was on King's River, as then called; afterwards, it was known as James River, in honour of the reigning monarch of England who had favoured their enterprise.[9] Soon afterwards, Newport returned to England with the ships, and leaving in Virginia a party, among whom discontent and factious feelings began to prevail.[10] The colonists were afterwards exposed to many and great perils. Several of those were idle gentlemen

[4] Tobacco was first brought to England from Virginia when the voyagers returned. It is well known James I. was so much opposed to the use of this weed, that he wrote the famous "Counterblast against Tobacco.'

[5] See Sir Walter Raleigh, "Voyage to Virginia, 1585," small fol., with a large Map and many curious plates, published in 1588.

[6] See Arthur Wilson's "Life and Reign of King James the First, King of Great Britain."

[7] See Rev. Jeremy Belknap's "Biographies of the Early Discoveries," Vol. ii.

[8] See Smith's "History of Virginia," Book vi.

[9] For an excellent account of the colonization of Virginia, the student is referred to George Bancroft's "History of the United States, from the Discovery of the American Continent," Vol. i., chap. iv. The nineteenth edition of this admirable work, published in Boston, 1862, *et seq.*, is that generally quoted throughout the present volume.

[10] See R. Beverley's "History and Present State of Virginia," published 1705, 8vo.

and vagabonds, little disposed to engage in manual labour. Their hopes were chiefly directed to discover gold, and the tillage of land was neglected, so that famine soon began to threaten them. In 1607, Jamestown was founded by Captain John Smith, who began to acquire an ascendancy, owing to his energetic and resolute character. His adventures were indeed remarkable. He made several excursions from Jamestown, and in one of these he was captured by the Indians, who led him from one village to another, until he was brought to a powerful chief named Powhatan. He was ordered for instant execution, but at that moment, the chief's young daughter, Pocahontas, interceded for his life. This was spared, and he returned to Jamestown after an absence of seven weeks, only to find the colonists in extreme misery.[11]

In 1608, Smith was regularly elected as President of the Council, and under his management matters were better arranged, but he soon departed for England and did not return.[12] He left behind him four hundred and ninety colonists, but in six months only sixty remained. In June 1610, the survivors, besieged by the natives, resolved on abandoning Jamestown.[13] In some small vessels they embarked for Newfoundland, but they met a fleet coming to their aid from England. On board was Lord De la Warr—otherwise Delaware—who had been appointed Governor of Virginia for life, under a new charter granted to the London Company. He brought a large number of colonists, together with an abundance of supplies. The departing settlers then returned, when lands were distributed amongst them and among the new arrivals. Meantime, Pocahontas had been treacherously captured by Captain Argall after the departure of Captain Smith, and he shamelessly demanded a ransom from her father. This was indignantly refused.[14] In captivity, however, she was baptized, taking the name of Rebecca, and she married John Rolfe, one of the colonists, who took her to England. There she was presented at Court. When about returning to America, Pocahontas died suddenly, but she left a son who became the ancestor of a distinguished family in Virginia.

The condition of affairs henceforward improved; industrious pursuits began to engage the attention of the new settlers; plantations were commenced near the James River; while respectable young women were sent out from England, who became wives to the planters. However,

[11] Under the name of Th. Watson, Gent., he wrote an interesting personal narrative thus intituled: "A Trve Relation of such Occurrences and Accidents of Noate as hath hapned in Virginia, since the first Planting of that Colony which is now resident in the South Part thereof, till the last Returne from thence, written by Th. Watson, Gent., one of the said Collony, to a worshipful Friend of his in England." London, 1608, 4to.

[12] See Captain John Smith's "Historie of Virginia, New England, and the Summer Isles," published in 1627, sm. fol.

[13] See S. Clark's "Description of the World, America described, Virginia, Florida, Jamaica, Narratives of the Inhumane Cruelties on the Indians in America," published in 1657, sm. fol.

[14] See "A True Discourse of the present State of Virginia," by Raphe Hamor, p. 4.

Lord Deleware was obliged to return home, leaving Percy in command. Sir Thomas Dale soon afterwards arrived with fresh men and supplies. The latter ruled as Governor for some time, when on his departure, A.D. 1616, the arbitrary and tyrannical Captain Argall succeeded to the government. At length, so many complaints regarding him reached the Company,[15] that he was superseded, and Sir George Yeardley was elected Governor. The colonists began to demand a constitution more in accord with their British origin, and accordingly the Company authorised the new Governor not only to form a council but to convene delegates, who with them and himself should constitute a representative assembly. Nevertheless, the Company in a new constitution controlled the representatives, by reserving to itself a negative on their decisions.

The coast of Maine had been visited by Captain George Weymouth in 1605, and he carried off five Indians by fraud and force. On returning to England, he represented how suitable that country should be for settlement. Accordingly, in 1607 the Plymouth Company sent out two ships commanded by Sir George Popham and Raleigh Gilbert, son to Sir Humphry, with a crew of one hundred and twenty persons, who settled near the mouth of the Kennebec. The winter was intensely cold, and their stores were soon consumed.[16] Next year this settlement was abandoned, while Sir George Popham died in Maine.[17] His nephew, Sir Francis, sent out other expeditions at his own private expense, but these were all unsuccessful. In 1617 a French vessel was wrecked near Cape Cod, and all who reached the shore, except three, were massacred by the Indians. The survivors were sent from one sachem to another in triumph. Two sank victims to disease, as a consequence of their trials and hardships. The third, supposed to have been a priest, lived longer, and he endeavoured to convert the Indians from vice, but their obdurate hearts were proof against all his appeals.[18]

The State of New York was first founded by the Dutch, who commenced in 1614 the building of Albany on the Hudson River, having first erected in 1613 a temporary fort on Manhattan Island, the present site for the City of New York.[19] The Dutch claimed all that coast from New Jersey to the Bay of Fundy, and it was called New Netherland on the strength of Hudson's discoveries. The settlers kept up a friendly intercourse with those Indians adjoining the Hudson River, and commenced a trade in furs. The merchants engaged in this traffic were afterwards incorporated in 1621, under the designation of the Dutch West India Company, and with powers of government for that colony.

[15] See Hugh Murray's "United States of America; their History from the earliest Period, etc." Vol. i., chap. iv. In three Volumes. Edinburgh, 1844, cr. 8vo.

[16] See Bancroft's "History of the United States." Vol. i., chap. viii., pp. 267 to 269.

[17] See "A Brief Relation of the Discovery and Plantation of New England," by the President and Councell. London, 1622.

[18] See Fitton's "Sketches of the Establishment of the Church in New England."

[19] See "History of New York, the First Peopling of America." 1821, two vols. 8vo.

During the reign of James I., the laws against recusancy on the part of English and Irish Catholics coercing them to conform and adopt the Reformed worship were most tyrannically and arbitrarily enforced by fines and imprisonment. Those laws were also levelled against Protestant Independents and Separatists from the Church established by law. Those outrageous enactments were endured with courage and constancy, especially in Ireland; but they furnished a motive for seeking in more distant lands a place of refuge and of peace in securing the rights of conscience.[20] Although the Reformation involved an extensive exercise of private judgment, yet it was not accompanied by any express recognition of that right, or of any general principle sanctioning toleration.[21] Wherefore, the prevalence of sectarian bigotry, party and political exclusiveness in older England urged several Puritans to embark for New England, and to make it the country of their future abode. These inclined to Calvinistic dogmas and practices. Those sectaries were so called, because they refused to acknowledge the established form of worship, which they said retained too many Romish ceremonies and practices.[22] Many of them fled to Holland, thus hoping to escape the penalties enforced for recusancy. In 1617 they sent a deputation to England offering assent to the doctrines of its Established Church, although unwilling to adopt its forms of worship provided they were allowed a patent for settling in America. They failed in their efforts, notwithstanding, but afterwards some London merchants opened negociations with them, for establishing there a trading, fishing, and planting company.[23]

The Puritan pilgrim fathers sailed from Southampton, and arrived in the "May Flower" on December 25th, old style, 1620, to find the present site of Plymouth[24] in the State of Massachusetts covered with snow. There a town was built, after the lapse of a few years, and it is the oldest in New England. The first settlers suffered incredible hardships, while half the number of one hundred and two, men, women, and children, perished during that winter and the following spring.[25] Among these was the governor, John Carver, whom the colonists had chosen before landing.[26] During the spring, a friendly Indian named Samoset,

[20] See Ogilby's "America," Book ii., chap. ii. London, 1671, fol.

[21] See Hugh Murray's "United States of America; their History from the earliest Period." Vol. i., chap. vi., p. 182.

[22] See Daniel Neal's "History of the Puritans, or Protestant Non-Conformists: from the Reformation to the Death of Queen Elizabeth," &c. Published in 1732-33-36-38, four vols., 8vo.; also republished in 1754, in two vols., 4to, Dublin.

[23] For a particular account of the settlement of New England, the reader is referred to Bancroft's "History of the United States," vol. i., chap. viii., ix.

[24] Bartholomew Gosnold had already touched there, but he made no settlement. Oldmixton's "British Empire in America," Vol. i.

[25] In 1625-6 appeared Samuel Purchas' "Pilgrims," in five books and in five vols., fol., London. This work gives a very complete account of the early New England colony.

[26] See Cotton Mather's "Antiquities and History of New England, Lives of Divines, Acts and Monuments of

and another called Squanto, brought a powerful chief Massasoit to them, when a treaty of friendship and alliance was formed. William Bradford was now elected governor, and in November, 1621, the ship "Fortune" arrived, bringing a reinforcement of thirty-five persons, with a patent for the colony. A plentiful harvest succeeded in 1622, while other emigrants arrived during that year. A settlement was made at Wessagusset—now Weymouth, near Boston—but the misconduct of the settlers caused the Indians to conspire for their destruction. However, Massasoit gave warning of this plot in good time, and Captain Miles Standish marched from New Plymouth with eight men to Wessagusset, where he alarmed the settlers, who were now sufficiently on their guard. That settlement was soon afterwards abandoned. Gradually the number of immigrants began to increase, and within ten years about 21,000 had arrived in 198 vessels. Dissensions and religious differences next began to prevail; so that those who differed in opinion from the older settled Puritans were exposed to insults and persecution. As a consequence, several voluntarily left that colony, or were banished from it by order of the other colonists.

From the Council of New England, Sir Ferdinand Gorges and John Mason obtained a grant of territory between the Rivers Merrimac and Kennebec, in 1621. This they named Laconia,[27] and they also formed a company of merchants, who sent thither a colony of fishermen the following year. In 1623, the first English settled at Dover and Portsmouth, in New Hampshire. Gorges and Mason divided their grant; the former taking the land east of the Piscataqua, which he named New Somerset,[28] while the latter took lands lying to the west, and this division he named New Hampshire. The progress of this colony was slow, few settlers arriving in it. In 1629, Mason obtained a fresh patent for his portion, and again in 1635, when the partnership with Gorges was dissolved. He died in 1638, and his family derived little benefit afterwards from his extensive donation.[29]. When the company had broken up, Sir Ferdinand procured for himself that whole territory from the New Hampshire line to the Kennebec, and in 1639 a patent for it from the king was obtained. It then received the denomination of Maine. From 1619 to 1624, the French Recollects or Observantine Franciscan Fathers, from their central mission on the River St. John, occasionally extended their labours to the Penobscot. This mission, however, was abandoned in 1624. The Danes, moreover, settled at Bergen, in New Jersey, during this year. The Swedes also made early settlements in the county of Salem, where some of their descendants long remained, and where names of places given by them

the Church, Wars, Wonderful Providences on divers Persons in New England." This curious work, in Seven Bookes, was published in London, A.D. 1702, in one Vol. fol.

[27] See Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. i., chap. ix., pp. 327, 328.

[28] This tract was afterwards included in the State of Maine.

[29] See Belknap's "History of New Hampshire," Vol. i.

are still retained.[30] The Swedes and Finlanders settled at Cape Henlopen, in Delaware, A.D. 1627, encouraged by their celebrated king Gustavus Adolphus. The Dutch governor of the New Netherlands, William Kieft, protested against their settlement as infringing on his jurisdiction, but this was not followed by any hostile demonstration.

Influenced by his queen Henrietta Maria, Charles I. King of England granted that tract, now known as Maryland,[31] to Sir George Calvert[32] the Secretary of State under James I. and an eminent statesman.[33] He was then created an Irish peer, and titled Lord Baltimore. This grant gave him an extensive region, which the colonists of Virginia considered to be their own. It extended from the southern bank of the Potomac River northwards to the 40th degree of latitude.[34] It thus included the upper part of Chesapeake Bay, and the whole of Delaware Bay. The terms of his charter could only be obtained by a court favourite. Ample powers were conferred in it to be exercised by the proprietor, with the assent of freemen or their deputies, whose assembly was to be selected and formed as he thought best. In case of emergencies, when there was no time for calling them together, Lord Baltimore could himself make "fit and wholesome ordinances," which were "to be inviolably observed." He might also train, muster, and call out troops, as also exercise all the functions of captain-general. In case of rebellion or sedition, he had power to proclaim martial law. Likewise, the nomination of the judges, and of all other officers, was reserved to him. Notwithstanding the high claims regarding royal prerogative and privileges at home, Charles reserved neither the law-making nor the taxing powers; he only claimed mines where discovered as royalties. But one of the most ingenious clauses—evidently suggested by Lord Baltimore himself—empowered him to found churches and chapels "according to the ecclesiastical law of England." This was intended to blind the public there, but in reality, it was projected to promote religious toleration for all creeds.[35] Thus, Lord Baltimore the proprietor was able to boast that Maryland had become a separate monarchy.[36] Before the patent was completed, however, that nobleman died. Then it was given to his eldest son Cecil, who succeeded to his titles, and who applied to the task of founding his colony, resolving to place it solely on an agricultural basis. He proclaimed, that every colonist who carried out five persons, male or female, and paying their expenses—estimated at £20 each—was to

[30] See "The Popular Encyclopædia; or Conversations Lexicon," Vol. v., Art., New Jersey.

[31] In compliment to the queen, that colony was so called.

[32] See an account of him in Wood's "Athenæ Oxonienses," pp. 522, 523.

[33] He had become a Catholic, and, as a consequence, he was afterwards excluded from office.

[34] For particulars of the colonization of Maryland, the reader may consult Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. i., chap. vii.

[35] This Charter is in the British Museum, and although without title-page, it is dated 20th June, 8th year of Charles I., which means A.D. 1632.

[36] See Hugh Murray's "United States of America," Vol. i., chap. v., pp. 144 to 146.

receive 1,000 acres. Those who defrayed their own charges were to obtain 100 acres for themselves, and the same quantity of land for each adult member of their family, or for children under six years 50 acres. For each 100 acres a rent of 2s. was charged. Care was taken chiefly to select English and Irish Catholics as adventurers in this expedition.[37]

Notwithstanding, Cecil Lord Baltimore did not then visit the colony; but his brother Leonard Calvert sailed in a large vessel, November 1633, with about 200 persons on board, and the February succeeding he reached Point Comfort in Virginia. There he entered the Potomac, in the month of March 1634. He then sailed up the river to Piscataqua,[38] but, on reflection, he returned to a tributary, then named St. George. There he chose the present site of St. Mary for his first settlement. By the natives, those white strangers were hospitably received, and not only did they obtain lands for settlements, but they were supplied with provisions in exchange for articles of very trivial value.[39] For a great number of years succeeding, this friendly intercourse was maintained. In the year 1633, the family of Neale, with several others from Ireland, emigrated with Leonard Calvert, brother to Lord Baltimore.[40] Having thus commenced the settlement of this State, Lord Baltimore appointed Leonard Calvert his brother as governor. For over forty years, however, Lord Baltimore directed the affairs of that colony. A free toleration of religion there caused Protestants, who were persecuted for conscience sake by other Protestant sects, to take refuge in Maryland. When its General Assembly was constituted, the right of appointing the governor, and of approving or of disapproving its legislative acts, was reserved to the family of Lord Baltimore. It was continued with some short interruptions to the period of the Revolution.

Meantime, in the more northern parts of the Continent, the French were singularly successful in establishing their power and influence. Especially they cultivated friendly relations with the Indians, in the neighbourhood of their settlements, while they brought many of them to embrace the Christian religion.[41] The French missions in Maine were restored in 1630, and a Capuchin mission was established on the Kennebec in 1643.

A Dutch navigator, Adrian Block, had discovered the Housatonic and Connecticut Rivers in 1614, and people of their nation afterwards began to trade with Indians, living on the shores of Long Island Sound. They purchased land from the natives, and they built Fort Good Hope on the Connecticut, near the present site of Hartford. They were soon

[37] The second Lord Baltimore states, that he spent upon this project £20,000 of his own money, and an equal sum raised among his friends.

[38] Then an Indian settlement, nearly opposite the present Mount Vernon.

[39] In 1634 was published in London, "Relation of the successful Beginnings of Lord Baltimore's Plantation." In 1635 appeared likewise in London, "A Relation of Maryland." The general statements contained in the text are set forth in greater detail in those tracts here mentioned.

[40] Scharf's "Chronicles of Baltimore," A.D. 1874.

[41] See Charlevoix's "Histoire General de la Nouvelle France," Tome i.

disturbed, however, by the arrival of other intruders from New England, and they were obliged to surrender their claims. The English thereupon began the settlement of Connecticut at Windsor, in the year 1633. It was hoped, that here an advanced station might be formed, to check the troublesome incursions of the Pequod Indians.[42] Much about the same time, those English colonists from New Plymouth proceeded to claim all that tract of country. Soon a large reinforcement arrived, when settlements were formed at Hartford and Wethersfield. Meanwhile, a company of lords proprietors in England obtained a grant of all that coast, extending one hundred and twenty miles west of Narragansett Bay, and which embraced the whole of Connecticut, with the greater part of Rhode Island. A fort was built and named Saybrook—after Lord Say and Lord Brook, two of the proprietors—and it was erected at the mouth of the Connecticut River.

In June, 1636, arrived a caravan of about one hundred immigrants, led by Thomas Hooker, "The Light of the Western Churches," and in the Puritanical phraseology of the time, "a son of Thunder."[43] A party of strict English Nonconformists, dissatisfied with the Puritan tenets in the Massachusetts colony, left Boston under the Rev. John Davenport, and these founded New Haven in 1638. Those sectaries resolved to have no legislation except what they could find in the Bible, while they admitted none but members of their sect to share in the government. Hence emanated the Blue Laws, which were so designated, on account of their excessive rigour. According to those colonists, each one of their villages and congregations was a house of wisdom, resting on its seven pillars, and aspiring to be illumined by the Eternal Light. They also prepared for the second coming of Christ, which was then confidently expected.[44] After some time, the colonists in those parts crossed over the bay, and they planted various settlements in Long Island. Wherever they went, churches were erected on the model of the Independents.[45] However, the Indians combined and attacked their settlements. But under the command of John Mason, the Pequods' chief fort was burned, when about six hundred of the natives, men, women, and children, perished in the flames, or were ruthlessly cut down by the English weapons.[46] Having

[42] See Trumbull's "History of Connecticut," Vol. i., chap. iv.

[43] According to Nathaniel Morton's account, pp. 239, 240. He wrote "New England's Memorial; or, a Brief Relation of the most Memorable and Remarkable Passages of the Providence of God manifested in the Planters of New England in America, with Special Reference to the first Colony thereof, called New Plimouth;" &c. This was printed at Cambridge, N.E., A.D., 1669, in sm. 4to. It was reprinted in London, the same year; and in Boston, 1721, 12 mo. Supp. by Josiah Cotton. Another edition appeared at Newport, 1772, 12 mo. In 1680, the same writer published "A Brief Ecclesiastical History of the Church at Plymouth."

[44] See Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. i., chap. ix., pp. 403, 404.

[45] See James Grahame's "History of North America," Vol. i., Book iii., chap. ii.

[46] See E. R. Potter's "Early History of Narragansett," p. 24.

met in convention at Hartford in 1639, a written constitution was adopted by those settlers for the colony of Connecticut. A committee of twelve was selected, to chose seven men, qualified to be framers of their government. Among the latter were Theophilus Eaton their Governor and Rev. John Davenport, with all of those alluded to as the Seven Pillars for the new House of Wisdom in the wilderness.

In New England, it must be acknowledged, various arbitrary and oppressive enactments were issued by the colonial government;[47] and as a matter of course, miserable and unhappy consequences ensued.[48] The whole power, legislative and executive, had been vested in a governor, deputy-governor and thirteen assistants, to be chosen by members of the Company, according to their original charter. These were to meet at least four times a year, to decide on all important concerns. However, when the sittings of the Company had been transferred to America, the members were held to be the entire body of settlers, limited only by the spiritual qualification of Church membership. The government of the colony now assumed the characteristics of a pure democracy, while the freemen elected all their executive officers and exercised supreme legislative functions. A meeting of two deputies from each township was arranged, to assist in framing laws, which nevertheless displayed an aristocratic and arbitrary tendency. New England thus virtually became a representative republic.[49] Although professing to leave England in order to enjoy religious freedom, the Puritans became most intollerant to those who differed from them in creed, when they had formed their new settlements.[50] The King and English Government were anxious to promote prelacy and conformity to the Established Church; but the colonists inclined rather to the teachings of Calvin, and constituted every congregation with the ministers and elders of its own election independent of all other ecclesiastical power. They framed laws regarding doctrine and discipline, to which their people required to conform.[51] On mere suspicion of being a papist, Sir Robert Gardiner was summarily seized and sent out of the colony, without any form of trial in 1631. Their severe restrictions also pressed heavily on Protestant Episcopalians, and remonstrances were addressed to the King and his Council; but, the dissensions now arising between Charles I. and his Parliament stayed further proceedings. However, strange doctrines

[47] See Burnet's "Collection of Papers relating to the present Junction of Affairs in England," 1689, 4to.

[48] See a narrative in the sixth collection of the work previously quoted.

[49] See Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. i., chap. viii., pp. 322, 323.

[50] "Seldom has religious tyranny assumed a form more oppresive than among the Puritan exiles. New England Protestantism appealed to liberty: then closed the door against her."—Parkman's "Pioneers of France in the New World," p. 396.

[51] Thomas Hutchinson, LL.D., wrote a "History of the Colony of Massachusetts-Bay, from the first Settlement thereof in 1628 until its incorporation with the Colony of Plymouth, Province of Main." The second edition of this work in two volumes appeared in London, 1760-8, 8vo.

and teachers soon appeared, while fanaticism urged these zealots, to spread their opinions broadcast throughout the colony. Many who approved the principles and practices of prelacy and royalty left New England, and returned to the mother country.

The sectarian intolerance of the Puritans in New England drove Roger Williams, a young minister of Salem, and those who adopted his doctrinal views, to a wild tract, where they commenced in 1636 the erection of a town called Providence, now the capital of Rhode Island. He proscribed all human learning, as a preparation for the work of the Christian ministry, and he abominated the very name of scholar in a Divine sense, or colleges as "seminaries of hirelings and of mystical merchants."[52] He fled to the wilderness in mid-winter, and there he found kind treatment from Massasoit, the Indian chief. Williams set up the first congregation of Baptists in America, and established his colony as a simple democracy. All laws were enacted there by the votes of the majority. At last in 1643, he obtained a charter from England, and thus was formed the colony of Rhode Island. Moreover, the same Roger Williams, who has so often been held up as the father of religious toleration in America, declared the cross to be "a relic of Antichrist, a popish symbol, and not to be countenanced by Christian men." In the height of their zeal, his followers actually cut the cross out of the English flag, refusing to march or live under anything that bore the symbol of man's Redemption. Gradually settlers were attracted to him, although it may well be doubted, if Williams fulfilled in action his expressed desire, that Providence "might be a shelter for persons distressed for conscience."[53]

At first, under the name of Florida, had been included the present North and South Carolina. Both the Carolinas were so called from the reigning Spanish monarch Charles IX. North Carolina was first settled by the English, in the year 1650, at Albemarle. Their settlers came from Virginia. So early as 1630, Sir Robert Heath had obtained a patent for the colonization of that territory, but subject to certain conditions. These however he was unable to fulfil, and consequently the patent was declared to be forfeited.[54] A second English colony arrived from Massachusetts in 1661, and the colonists settled at Cape Fear, having purchased a district surrounding it from the Indians.[55] For some time those immigrants struggled with all the difficulties of a pioneer life in the wilderness, before they obtained any settled form of government.

[52] His peculiar tenets are set forth in a tract published in London, 1644, and intituled "Mr. Cotton's Letter Examined and Answered." Again, in "The Hireling Ministry," by Roger Williams, London, 1692.

[53] Backus, Vol. i., p. 94, is quoted for this expression. See Bancroft's "History of the United States," chap. ix., p. 379.

[54] See Williamson's "North Carolina," Vol. i., pp. 84, 85.

[55] See Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. ii., chap. xiii., pp. 130 to 133.

## CHAPTER IV.

**Slavery first brought into Virginia—Formation of Colonies—Constitution granted to Virginia and afterwards withdrawn—Charter granted to the Governor and Company of Massachusetts Bay—Laws in that Colony—Indian War—Dutch Colonization—Missions in Maine.**

ALREADY an English expedition had been projected so early as 1562, to procure negroes from the coast of Africa, and to convey them for sale to the West Indian plantations. This infamous traffic in the human species was commenced by Sir John Hawkins, who was even rewarded for the supposed benefit conferred on his country. Soon the practice thus approved found imitators, and led to the atrocities which so long continued, bringing disgrace on the nations and communities that tolerated such an unchristian and immoral usage. We have now to record, that in the year 1619 a Dutch vessel from the coast of Guinea brought a cargo of slaves to Virginia, where these were sold to the planters.[1] This first gave rise to the evil of slavery in the colonies. However, thirty years after this importation of Africans, the increase was inconsiderable. Virginia contained fifty whites to one black man. A conditional servitude under indentures or covenant had already existed there, from the period of its first settlement,[2] but this was only an apprenticeship to terms and restrictions for labour.

When Sir Thomas Gates came over as Governor, he sent Sir Thomas Dale with newly arrived immigrants up the river, where he formed the settlement of Henrico, thus named in honour of Henry Prince of Wales. Here it was intended to erect a college, and Patrick Copeland[3] was elected as its Rector;[4] however, the Indian outbreak, and subsequent dissolution of the Virginia Company, prevented him from undertaking the duties of his office, so he went to Bermuda.[5] In like manner, Charles City had been founded and so called after Prince Charles, afterwards King Charles I. Great efforts were then made to direct

[1] See Robert Beverley's "History of the Present State of Virginia."

[2] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. i., chap. v., pp. 175-177.

[3] He entered the service of the East India Company in 1614." In 1621, he collected from the passengers of the Royal James' £70 8s. 6d., for the Virginia plantation. The Virginia Company decided to use this money in the erection of a school at Charles City, Va. to be called the "East India School."

[4] He corresponded and sympathised with Roger Williams. Among the papers, MSS. His. Coll. Wintropp I., 5th series, dated December 4, 1639, he alludes to twelve New England Indians sent to him to be educated.

[5] Anderson in his "History upon the Colonial Church," says: "Upon a MSS. survey of Bermudas made in 1662, there is a tract of land in Paget's District marked 'given to the Free School by Patrick Copeland, sometime minister of the World in his tribe.'"—Duyckinck's "Cyclopedia of American Literature."

colonization towards Virginia by the London Company and by King James' Council. We learn, that Irish Catholics, and others engaged in insurrections, were transported about this period; as also, all British criminals "under the rope," bankrupts, idle and dissolute persons of doubtful character, and others who had no means of support.[6] In 1619, twelve ships conveyed no fewer than 1261 persons, being more than double the number actually residing.[7] Proprietors of a different class, however, occupied large tracts of land, and employed many of the dissolute and poverty-stricken to work on their farms or to serve them as tenants. The Established Church of England was the form of worship proclaimed in this colony, and attendance at its services was made compulsory. Novelties in religion were prohibited, and dissenters were fined or sent out of the colony. No "popish priests" were allowed to remain in Virginia. An estate had been set apart on the James River. This was intended for the endowment of a college to educate the Whites and Indians. A number of settlers had been engaged to take charge of it, but these were massacred by the savages. This delayed the foundation of the institution until 1693, when the college of William and Mary was established at Williamsburg, Virginia.

The first constitution granted to the colonists was that given to Virginia by the London Company in 1621. This, however, was of a very restricted character. The Governor and Council there were appointed by the Company, while an Assembly consisted of the Council and a House of Burgesses elected by the people. The laws enacted by them required assent from the Governor and the Company in England. Moreover, these obliged the colonists to ratify their orders.[8]

Finding the constantly increasing colonists were making inroads on their hunting grounds, and asserting a right to all the land they could enclose, the Indians entered into a plot, after the death of Powhattan, to exterminate all the white settlers, whom they had hitherto tolerated.[9] They suddenly attacked the scattered settlements[10] on the 22nd of March 1622, and massacred about 350 persons. An alarm had been conveyed to the Government house at Jamestown, in time to warn the nearer colonists in the thickly planted districts about their danger. This saved the settlers from utter extermination. Such occurrences naturally led to a war of reprisals. While the Indians suffered severely in that contest, the colonists sustained great losses likewise both in life and property.

[6] See James Grahame's "History of the United States of America," Vol. i., Book i., chap., ii., p. 71.

[7] See "A True Declaration of the state of the Colonies in Virginia," by His Majesty's Council, 22nd June, 1620, p. 9. n.p. 2.

[8] See George Chalmers' "Political Annals of the Present United Colonies, from their Settlement till 1763," Book I. This was all that he published in 1780, in 4to. The work was republished with additions and an introduction at Boston, 1845, in two volumes, 8vo.

[9] His brother Opecancanough was the chief instigator of this murderous design.

[10] See Robert Beverly's "History of the Present State of Virginia," London, 1705, 8vo, in 4 parts.

While restricting popular rights in Virginia, the London Company had been anxious to procure privileges for themselves at home. This excited jealousies in the mind of James I., who now resolved to exercise his prerogative in an arbitrary manner. After various disputes, in 1624 he cancelled their charter, on the pretext that the Company had mismanaged the colony. He issued a writ *quo warranto*, and he brought the case before the Courts, then composed of judges removable by the Crown. As might have been suspected, a sentence was passed declaring the charter to be forfeited. The Company was thus dissolved.

In the year 1628, a Royal charter was obtained from Charles I., and it was granted March 4th, under the name of the Governor and Company of Massachusetts-Bay in New England.[11] The first governor and his council were named by the king.[12] Soon the Company transferred the governing power from London to the colony itself. Afterwards, several emigrants of distinction, of education and of respectable means emigrated to New England. Nearly all of these being strict Calvinists were hostile to the established Government and Church in England.[13] Among these, the earliest settlers beyond the Atlantic, were some Irish Puritans, as we find it recorded; the emigrants that left Ireland for this distant colony however seem to baffle any attempt at an exact enumeration. About one thousand colonial settlers came out, with John Winthrop as their governor, in the year 1630. As many of these belonged to the town of Boston in Lincolnshire, they founded a city of future historical renown, and distinguished for its commerce, in the United States. To this new town they gave a similar name; but the immigrants suffered great hardships and privations there, before they could fix on proper places for their permanent settlements.[14]

During those times, and subsequently, religious polemics and doctrinal expositions prevailing in the mother-country,[15] and brought by

[11] See "The History of the Colony of Massachusetts-Bay, from the first Settlement thereof, in 1628, until its Incorporation with the Colony of Plymouth, Province of Maine, &c., by the Charter of King William and Queen Mary, in 1691." By Mr. Hutchinson, Lieutenant-Governor of the Massachusett's Province," Vol. i., chap. i., p. 9. The second volume of this is intituled "The History of the Province of Massachusetts-Bay, from the Charter of King William and Queen Mary in 1691, until the year 1750."

[12] See James Grahame's "History of the United States of North America," Vol. i., Book ii., chap. i., p. 205.

[13] See Daniel Neal's "History of the Puritans; or, Protestant Nonconformists; from the Reformation in 1517, to the Revolution in 1688: comprising an Account of their Principles; their attempts for a farther Reformation in the Church, their Sufferings, and the Lives and Characters of their most considerable Divines," Vol. i. Part ii., chap. iv., pp. 532 to 537. New edition, London, 1837, in three vols., 8vo. It has gone through several editions, both in Europe and in America.

[14] See Hutchinson's "History of the Colony of Massachusetts-Bay," Vol. i., chap. i., pp. 14 to 23.

[15] In Samuel Butler's satiric poem, "Hudibras," the opinions and manners of the English Puritans of this period are set forth with inimitable humour, but, of course, in a vein of grotesque caricature.

zealous propagandists into the new, seem chiefly to have engaged the ministers and congregations throughout the various colonies.[16] The Scriptures were diligently searched and studied; while the quaint and strained meanings often attached to several passages, with their application to passing occurrences and to the every-day usages of life, convey an amusing and instructive elucidation of Puritan life and thought.[17] So strict were the regulations for membership in the colonial churches, that not more than a fourth part of the adult population attained it, while no man was regarded as deserving to be a citizen or a voter, unless he could produce such a qualification. The elders of the Churches were consulted by their congregations on all important temporal affairs.[18] The ministers had granted a privilege to their hearers, however, to ask questions "wisely and sparingly" at the end of their sermons. This was soon found to be attended with great inconvenience, for several interrogatories were put in the various congregations, by individuals who became convinced of their capacity to treat doctrinal questions of the most abstruse kind, and to discover errors in the teaching of their most learned divines.[19] The magistrates had authority in both civil and religious affairs, while very strict laws were enacted to maintain their authority.

Notwithstanding the stringency of those laws and regulations, religious harmony was soon disturbed by a lady of good birth and great energy of character, Mrs. Hutchinson, originally from Lincolnshire, who had become a zealous inquirer, and who, as a consequence, had been excluded from her congregation. However, she called together every Sabbath evening a numerous meeting, and soon she began to teach that the ministers and colonial congregations were alike in total darkness, while they must undergo a radical change before they could hope to enjoy divine favour. She also maintained, that salvation depended wholly upon an unconditional election, which was made known to its object by a supernatural assurance, while this rendered reformation of heart and conduct altogether superfluous, even as a test of the Christian's spiritual state. Her brother-in-law, Mr. Wheelright, became a zealous propagator of those views, which were termed Antinomian, and while expounding them his church became thronged with hearers. Although each congregation had hitherto acted almost as a separate body, yet a general synod was convened to assemble in Cambridge. Preachers, deputies from the congregations and magistrates met on the 30th of August, 1637. Great numbers of the people were present, as also the accused Schis-

[16] See Cotton Mather's "Magnalia Christi Americana; or, the Ecclesiastical History of New England from its first Planting in the year 1620 unto the Year of Our Lord 1698."

[17] This may be observed, as well illustrated, in the early chapters of George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. i.

[18] See Daniel Neal's "History of New England, containing an Impartial Account of the Civil and Ecclesiastical Affairs of the Country to the Year of Our Lord 1700," Vol. i., chap iv., pp. 141 to 145. This work appeared in 1720, at London, in two vols.; and in a second edition, with many additions, at London, 1747, in two vols., 8vo.

[19] See Hugh Murray's "United States of America," Vol. i, chap, vi., pp. 209, 210.

matics. Eighty-two abstract propositions had been prepared for condemnation. For three weeks, stormy debates and recriminations ensued; but, the result was a synodal decree of condemnation.[20] This proceeding did not prevent Mrs. Hutchinson from holding her meetings, nor Mr. Wheelright from preaching in his church; and since both were regarded as persecuted saints and prophets, by vast crowds of the people, so their opinions became the more diffused. Mr. Wheelright was first prosecuted by the magistrates, and he was ordered to depart from the colony within a fortnight. Next Mrs. Hutchinson was arraigned, and she defended herself with remarkable ability; but being closely pressed and warmed by discussion, declared she had received revelations which enabled her to distinguish between the true and false religion. Having been found guilty of holding twenty-six of the eighty-two condemned propositions, she was ordered to leave the colony within six months. After causing much commotion in the congregations, she retired with a number of her followers to Rhode Island, where she received a kindly welcome from Roger Williams. Six years later, she and her whole family were surprised in her home and murdered by a band of Indians.[21]

It was considered an idolatrous practice by the New Englanders to observe any of the holidays prescribed by the Catholic or by the English Established Church. Nay more: differences in religion would no longer be tolerated, and a law was actually passed which enacted the punishment by death against such heretics as should attempt to seduce others.[22] A law was enacted by the General Court in 1647, whereby Jesuits were forbidden to enter the colony of Massachusetts. If found within its jurisdiction, they were expelled, and if they ventured to come a second time, they were liable to be hanged.[23] The sympathies of the colonists were strongly on the side of the Parliamentarians of England, in their struggle with the King. As deemed disloyal, they were regarded with especial disfavour and suspicion by the Royalists. Many of the latter party were to be found in the colony, who dissented from the rigorous rules there prevailing, and who were otherwise dissatisfied with their own exclusion from place and position. One of the extraordinary superstitions which took possession of the New England Puritans was a belief in the existence of witches and of witchcraft among them. The celebrated minister Increase Mather, who was president of Harvard College, wrote several books on that subject. The reading of these greatly tended to increase the popular delusion. His son Cotton Mather frequently preached against witchcraft, the sinfulness of which he denounced in no measured terms. Several laws were enacted, which made its practice a capital offence. Six or eight persons, supposed to be witches, suffered death

[20] See Cotton Mather, Part vii., p. 16.

[21] See Daniel Neal's "History of New England, containing an Impartial Account of the Civil and Ecclesiastical Affairs of the Country to the Year of our Lord 1700." Vol. i., pp. 191 to 194.

[22] See "An Abstract of the Lawes of New England," p. 10. London, 1641.

[23] See Fitton's "Sketches of the Establishment of the Church in New England."

between 1648 and 1655. Several trials and condemnations are recorded, as having taken place in Boston, Charlestown and Hartford, solely in reference to this imputed crime. Owing to complaints about the Puritans which reached the Royal ears, Charles I. had desired to take away their Charter, and to govern them by a Royal Commission. About the same time, a prohibition was put forth, to prevent the Puritans of England from transporting themselves to the New England settlements.[24] Whereupon the colonists began to manifest a spirit of political independence, which had been constantly fanned and strengthened by the constant arrival of new immigrants. They likewise manifested a mutinous and rebellious feeling, by voting £600 to fortify the settlements on Massachusetts-Bay. Even they took measures to provide for their military defence. However, the troubles at home soon diverted the attention of the Crown to matters of more pressing and serious importance. Thus, the colonists remained unmolested, to pursue their own ideas regarding local and general polity.

The establishment of seminaries for learning had early engaged the attention of the colonists. In 1638[25] Harvard College was founded[26] for higher education. Afterwards, schools were opened in every considerable town. In 1639, the first printing press was set up in the United States. For many subsequent years, the art of printing had not much extension beyond New England, and there the first productions of the press were mostly religious and controversial tracts.

Unlike the French colonists, the settlers of New England took very little real interest in attempts to christianize the Indians.[27] However, one of the first Boston preachers, the Rev. John Elliot, devoted a long life to missionary enterprise among the savages. He acquired great influence over them. The labours of Thomas Mayhew among them are also to be commended for earnestness in the work of civilization.[28] The settlers succeeded for a time, in keeping on terms of friendship with most of the tribes; but, many of the colonists behaved so ill, that the natives began to feel a dread of their encroachments, and only for the exertions of Massassoit, a friendly chief, it seems likely, open hostilities could not be averted. The Governor, Edward Winslow, acted with much tact and prudence, in the effort to secure those few colonists who in the outset laboured under many privations. By degrees, fresh arrivals strengthened the population and the range of settlements greatly extended.[29]

[24] See Daniel Neal's "History of New England," Vol., i., chap., iv., pp. 168, 169.

[25] See Hutchinson's "History of the Colony of Massachusett's-Bay," Vol. i., chap. i., p. 90.

[26] By a minister of Charlestown, who gave name to it.

[27] A very interesting account of the twenty or thirty different nations there, and regarding their appearance, habits, customs and traditions, may be found in Daniel Neal's "History of New England, containing an Impartial Account of the Civil and Ecclesiastical Affairs of the Country to the year of our Lord, 1700," Vol. i., chap. i., pp. 22 to 49.

[28] See James Grahame's "History of the United States of North America," Vol. i., Book ii., chap. iii., pp. 274 to 281.

[29] See Hugh Murray's "United States

The New England colonists became embroiled with the powerful and warlike confederacy of Pequod Indians, in 1636. Their chief seat was on the Pequod river—now the Thames—in Connecticut. These were on bad terms with the whites. After a succession of raids and murders, the Pequods endeavoured to concert with the Narragansets a general massacre of the colonists.[30] This plot was defeated by the influence which Roger Williams exercised over the Narragansets, and he was the first to warn the Governor of Massachusetts regarding the impending conspiracy.[31] The whites now determined to wage war upon the Pequods, and to strengthen their bands, they secured an alliance with the Narragansets and Mohegans. An expedition was planned, and accordingly, a gathering of armed men assembled at Narraganset Bay. These consisted of twenty men from the Massachusetts colony, under the command of Captain Underhill; ninety men collected from the Connecticut towns, under Captain John Mason; while sixty Mohegan Indians were led by their chief Uncas, and two hundred Narragansets formed under Miantonomoh. After a march of two days in May 1637, the allied force came upon one of the principal Pequod strongholds. This village was surrounded by a rude fortification, formed only of trees and brushwood.[32] The Pequods were surprised in their sleep, and hemmed in on every side. They fought bravely however until Mason, crying out, "We must burn them," thrust a firebrand into one of the wigwams. The whole village was soon in flames. This appears to have given intense satisfaction to the Narragansets who danced and whooped all the while, as they witnessed the sufferings of their dying enemies.[33] The attack now became a massacre, and about six hundred of the Indians fell. The New Englanders kept up the fight within the fort, where most of their enemies perished miserably in the flames. Their Indian allies struck down those fugitives who attempted to escape from their enclosure.[34] A fortnight later, more troops arrived from Boston. The remnant of the Pequods was now pursued to the swamps. There, they had vainly taken refuge, for they were closely pursued and hunted from their lairs. Their ruin was now completed. Eight or nine hundred were killed or taken. The captives were then sold into slavery. Sassacus, their head sachem, fled for protection to the Mohawks. These put him to death, and his country became a province of the English. The confederacy of Indians was entirely annihilated,[35] so that during a considerable period, the colonists remained safe from their incursions.

of America," Vol. i., chap. vi., pp. 190 to 196.

[30] See Hutchinson's "History of the Colony of Massachusetts-Bay," Vol. i., chap. i., pp. 58, 59.

[31] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. i. chap. ix., p. 398.

[32] See E. R. Potter's "Early History of Narragansett," p. 24.

[33] See Daniel Neal's "History of New England," Vol. i., chap. v., pp. 173 to 178.

[34] See William Hubbard's "Narrative of the Troubles with the Indians from 1607-77," published A.D. 1677, 4to. This contains an old Map of New England.

[35] See Hutchinson's "History of the Colony of Massachusetts Bay," Vol. i., chap. i., pp. 76 to 81.

For a better protection against future Indian attacks, and to advance their interests generally, a confederation designated "The United Colonies of New England," was formed in 1643. Delegates were chosen from Plymouth, Connecticut and New Haven. These met at Boston, with the General Court of Massachusetts. It was arranged, that two Commissioners from each colony should meet alternately at Boston, Plymouth, Hartford and New Haven. Their desire was to protect themselves from the encroachments of the Dutch and French colonists, most likely to be more powerfully aggressive and dangerous than were those of the Indians. The Commissioners could only be Church members, according to their rules of confederation. These officials chose their own president, while they had charge of Indian affairs and of war; thus assuming a superior jurisdiction in the commonwealth,[36] where they were regarded as responsible for its peace and security. Being by far the most powerful colony, Massachusetts was allowed to take precedence over the other provinces. The settlers of Rhode Island and of Maine were not admitted to have any part in that league. The confederacy was important in its moral consequences, as the first step towards a federal union. But the Commissioners assumed no right to interfere in the internal jurisdiction of any of the States; they had even no power to enforce their decrees; they could only consult, advise and report to the confederated bodies. With these it rested, to reject or to execute their resolves. After assembling for some years, however, and without accomplishing what was expected from it, the New England Confederacy dissolved.

The Dutch, meantime, were equally enterprising and active as the New Englanders in planting towns and villages along the Hudson River.[37] Their National Company granted extraordinary privileges to encourage the formation of trading and farming settlements. Under such inducements, several proprietors from the Netherlands had taken out colonies of fifty or more persons, at their own expense. The affairs of this new colony were to be managed by a governor or director-general and a council, who were appointed by the Company, and in whom all the legislative, executive and judicial powers were vested. The first governor was Peter Minuit, who bought the Island of Manhattan—the present site of New York City—from the Indians. There he built a fort,[38] and he called the settlement New Amsterdam. According to the constitution of their colony, no religion was to be tolerated, except that of the Dutch Reformed Church. However, the law was not strictly enforced, and many other Protestant sects procured admission into their settlements. Those emigrating capitalists were known as patroons or patrons, who obtained large tracts of territory, on which they settled tenants, and over whom they exercised absolute control. In course of time, great dissensions arose between the company and the patroons, who

[36] See *ibid.*, pp. 124 to 126.

[37] For further details the reader is referred to Moulton's "History of the Colony of New Netherlands."

[38] This stood on a spot now well-known as the Battery.

were mostly Belgian and Flemish Protestants. Owing to those troubles the Dutch Governor Peter Minuit was recalled. After this, he entered the service of Sweden, and sailing to the Delaware river with a company of Swedes, he built a fort, near the present site of Wilmington. He erected another on an island, below the present city of Philadelphia. An earlier settlement in the southern part of Delaware had been destroyed by the Indians, and it was now sought to repair that damage. The Governor Minuit was succeeded in the year 1629 by Wouter Van Twiller, who had been sent out by the West Indian Company. Under his administration a long term of peace succeeded, which enabled the Dutch to engage in the process of colonization and of other industrial pursuits. Towards the close of his administration, the New Englanders had begun to extend their settlements beyond the boundaries of Massachusetts into the territory of Connecticut, then claimed by the Dutch as a portion of their possessions; and, against these encroachments, the Governor entered a protest, which was entirely disregarded by the English.[39]. The third governor of New York—appointed in 1637—was William Kieft, a man of choleric and intractable temper. In the earlier years of his rule, he had some disputes with the Connecticut colonists. In the year 1643, a treacherous attack was made by the Dutch upon some Indians assembled at Hoboken, when one hundred and twenty of them were barbarously massacred during the night. Notwithstanding his disputes with the English, Kieft availed of Captain Underhill's services, to aid him in his encounters with the Indians. At the head of a mixed troop of English and Dutch, that brave mercenary leader slew great numbers of them on Long Island and on the mainland. These provocations led to a terrible Indian war against the Dutch, and it lasted more than two years.[40] In 1643, Father Isaac Jogues, a Jesuit missionary who had been rescued from the Mohawks, came to New York City,[41] but he only found there two Catholics—a Portuguese woman and a young Irishman from Maryland.[42] With him came Father Bressani, another Jesuit missionary, who had been ransomed by the Dutch at Fort Orange, now Albany. Both of these were kindly received and entertained by Governor Kieft at New Amsterdam.

So much dissatisfaction had been given to the company, that Kieft was superseded in 1646.[43] Peter Stuyvesant, a brave and an able man, was appointed to succeed him in 1647. He contrived to keep peace with the Indians. The new Governor was distinguished, however, for his arbitrary although honourable character. In the year 1655, he led an expedition against the Swedes, who were settled on the Delaware.

[39] See James Grahame's "History of the United States of North America," Vol. ii., Book v., chap. i.

[40] See *ibid.*, pp. 168, 169.

[41] See John Gilmary Shea's "Catholic Churches of New York City, with Sketches of their History and Lives of the present Pastors," &c. Introduction, p. 21. New York, 1878, 4to.

[42] This he states, in a letter written to Father Lalemant, and dated from Rensselaerwick, August 30th, 1643.

[43] See Hugh Murray's "United States of America," Vol. i., chap. viii., p. 284.

He soon compelled their submission to Dutch authority, which he represented. Their settlement, which had been designated New Sweden, now became annexed to New Netherland, as the Dutch colony had been designated. Again, the Dutch were soon embroiled with the English, and especially with the settlers of Connecticut and New Haven. Moreover, several English families had already settled in and near New Amsterdam. These began to demand popular forms of government, while the Dutch inhabitants began to imbibe some relish for the political ideas which then prevailed in New England. Without asking the Governor's permission, deputies chosen by each village in New Netherlands assembled at New Amsterdam, in December 1663.[44] This agitation had nearly caused a Revolution. To the governor, the people addressed claims, only to be taxed with their own consent, to have representative institutions, to have legislative powers, and to appoint their officers. These demands were rejected by the governor, who asserted, that his right to govern them was derived from God and from the West Indian Company. At length, he consented to grant the popular demand for a representative Assembly, but the concession came too late to inspire public confidence, as an emergency had arisen to make the concession a matter of necessity.

In August 1646, the Jesuit Father Gabriel Druilletes journeyed from Quebec to labour among the Abenakies, in Maine. Some of these had visited the Christian Indians of Sillery, near Quebec. Having become converted, and returning home, those rude missionaries preached the faith to their countrymen so effectively, that these sent to Quebec to ask for a resident missionary priest. Having reached the waters of the Kennebec, Father Druilletes descended that river from Norridgenock to the first English trading port, where Augusta now stands. Thence he continued his journey to the sea, and he followed the coast in a canoe to the Penobscot, visiting seven or eight English posts on his way, where—notwithstanding the intolerant colonial laws—to his great surprise he was very well received. At the Penobscot, he found several Capuchin friars, under their superior Father Ignatius, who welcomed him with the utmost cordiality. Returning he again ascended the Kennebec to the English port at Augusta. On a spot three miles above, the Indians had gathered in considerable numbers, and there they built him a hut. He remained with them until midwinter, when he went with them on their grand hunting expedition, and he camped with them on Moosehead Lake. Early in the summer, he returned to Quebec, and during the two following years, the Abenakies were without a priest.[45]

It was found, that the growing trade and commerce of the colony in Massachusetts required extensian beyond its limits; and accordingly authorised agents had applied to the French officials at Quebec, with a view to the reciprocity in mercantile transactions, while the Abenakis

[44] See the New York Historical Society's edition of Smyth's "History of New York."

[45] See "Relation de la Nouvelle France," 1647, chap. x., pp. 51 to 56, Quebec edition.

needed the protection of the English colonists under whose jurisdiction they now found themselves. Father Druilletes was then sent in a double character, both as envoy of the government at Quebec and as agent of his Abenakis flock. He had powers given him also to negociate a treaty.[46] In the first days of September, 1650, he set forth from Quebec, with a Christian chief of Sillery. He crossed forests, mountains and torrents, and reached Norridgenock, then the highest Abenakis settlement on the Kennebec. Thence he descended to the English trading house at Augusta. There the Puritan commandant John Winslow, whom he had met on his former visit, gave him a warm welcome. Winslow accompanied the missionary, and at a great personal inconvenience, so far as Merry-meeting Bay, where they parted. Then the priest embarked in an English vessel for Boston. The passage was stormy and the wind was ahead. Father Druilletes was forced to land at Cape Ann. Thence, partly on foot and partly in boats, travelling along the shore, he made way to Boston. In December the priest crossed in a boat to Boston from the neighbouring peninsula of Charleston. Edward Gibbons, a Boston merchant, for whom Winslow was agent in Maine, received Father Druilletes kindly. He also entertained and lodged him during his stay, and gave him the key of a chamber, in order that he might pray and perform the other exercises of religion after his own fashion, without fear of disturbance.[47] Father Druilletes visited Govenor Dudley in Roxbury, and was entertained by him at dinner, in company with the magistrates. This Jesuit afterwards went down by land to Plymouth to see Governor Bradford, by whom he was received with great courtesy and kindness. He was invited by the Governor to dine with the magistrates, and as it was Friday, they considerately gave him a dinner of fish. Returning by land to Roxbury, now a part of Boston, and arriving at night, he was obliged, according to the usual custom, to take lodging with the minister. He happened to be the celebrated Puritan missionary John Elliot, by whom he was well received and most hospitably entertained. The priest visited Salem, in company with the minister of Marblehead. Thither he had gone by water from Boston. He had an interview with Endicott, by whom he was kindly treated and well entertained. There is not a word in the narrative, which Father Druilletes has left, to show the existence of a single Catholic at Boston, Plymouth, Salem, Marblehead, or elsewhere; indeed, the only Catholic whom he seems to have met during his whole journey was a French sailor, whom he found in York, Maine. Father Druilletes returned to Norridgenock in 1656. The following spring, that mission seems to have been abandoned. Many of the Abenakis, at the suggestion of the Jesuits, emigrated to the Catholic settlements in Canada.[48]

[46] See John Gilmary Shea's "The Catholic Church in Colonial Days," 1521, 1763, Book iii., chap. i., pp. 241, 242.

[47] Mr. Shea judges from this expression and other indications, that the Jesuit envoy brought with him the means for celebrating Mass, which was then—that is towards the end of the year 1650—probably offered for the first time in Boston.

[48] See Parkman's "Pioneers of France in the New World."

## CHAPTER V.

**Transportation of Irish Slaves to the American Colonies—Disturbances in Maryland and Virginia—Persecution of the Quakers—The Duke of York gets Possession of the Dutch Colony—The English Navigation Laws—Settlement of the Carolinas—Bacon's Rebellion—Quaker Settlements in New Jersey—French Explorations on the Mississippi River—King Philip's Indian War in New England.**

When the Parliamentarians had succeeded in subjugating the Irish in 1649[1] and 1650, and when those in power had condemned many of the leaders to death, a decree of banishment sent some thirty or forty thousand[2] of the Catholic officers and soldiers into foreign service.[3] Several thousands of the population remaining were sold as slaves.[4] The priests were condemned to exile or death. Among other events of this period, the merchants of Bristol[5] had agents treating with the government for men, women, and girls, to be sent to the sugar plantations in the West Indies and to New England.[6] From every part of Ireland, the Irish Papists were transported in crowded vessels, and kept as bondsmen in the American colonies, while scenes like the slave hunts in Africa must have been witnessed.[7] At last, however, this evil became too shocking and notorious, particularly when those dealers in Irish flesh began to seize the daughters and children of the English themselves, and to force them on board their slave ships. Then, at the end of four years, those orders

[1] Thirty lives were saved only after the capture of Drogheda by Oliver Cromwell this year, and these were reserved to be sent as slaves to Barbadoes. See Captain Thomas Southey's "Chronological History of the West Indies," Vol. i. p. 321. In three volumes. London, 1827, 8vo.

[2] See Rev. John Lingard's "History of England," Vol x., chap. vi., p. 366, and not

[3] The King of Spain sent over his agents at this time to treat with the government for the Irish Swordsmen.

[4] In the West Indies these Irish slaves were condemned to work in twisting tobacco, and at other servile occupations. See "Cambrensis Eversus," by Archdeacon John Lynch, Vol. iii., chap. xxviii., pp. 198, 199, Rev. Dr. Kelly's edition. Dublin, 1851 to 1853, 8vo.

[5] Among them, Messrs. Sellick and Leader, Mr. Robert Yeomans, Mr. Joseph Lawrence, and others, all of Bristol, were active agents.

[6] The Commissioners of Ireland gave them orders upon the governors of garrisons, to deliver to them prisoners of war; upon masters of workhouses for the destitute in their care "who were of an age to labour, or if women were marriageable and not passed breeding;" and they gave directions to all in authority to seize those who had no visible means of livelihood, and deliver them to those agents of the British merchants.

[7] One Captain John Vernon was employed by the Commissioners for Ireland into England, and he contracted in their behalf with Mr. Daniel Sellick and Mr. Leader, under his hand, bearing date 14th September 1653, to supply them with 250 women of the Irish nation above twelve years and under the age of forty-five, also 300 men above twelve years of age and under fifty, to be found in the country, within twenty miles of Cork, Youghal and Kinsale, Waterford and Wexford, to transport them into New England.

were revoked. It is estimated, that one hundred thousand[8] were exiled after this fashion; thus leaving Ireland almost completely denuded of her native population.[9] Then, it was found necessary, even to encourage some of the Trans-Atlantic colonists to return and to occupy the direlict lands. In the early part of the year 1651, when, according to their own description given to the Council of State, that whole island was a scene of unparalleled waste and ruin,[10] the Commissioners of Ireland affectionately urged Mr. Harrison, then a minister of the Gospel in New England, to come over and reside in Ireland, which he would find experimentally was a comfortable seed-plot[11] for his labours.[12] Mr. Harrison was unable to come, but subsequent proposals were made in 1655, for the planting of Sligo town, and the entering on land thereabouts with families from New England.[13] Moreover, lands on the mile line, together with the two little islands called Oyster Island and Cooney Island, were leased for one year,[14] for the use of English families from New England in America.[15] During the May and July of this year, several persons who had come over from that province to replant Ireland were received as tenants of State land near Garristown, in the County of Dublin, about fifteen miles northward from the capital. Others followed their example. We are informed likewise, that in 1656, several families, arriving from New England at Limerick, had the excise of tobacco brought with them for the use of themselves and families remitted.

A trader from Virginia named William Clayborne[16] had established himself on Kent Island in Chesapeake Bay, before the time of Sir George Calvert's arrival. The Virginians claimed that tract, for which Lord Baltimore had obtained a patent, and now Clayborne refused to acknowledge the new proprietor's authority. He had already expended over £6,000 on his establishments, and he had even a patent from the King for trade, but not for plantation. Clayborne appealed to the Virginian Council, who expressed their astonishment. Soon afterwards, its members presented a remonstrance to the English government, regarding the severance of their territory, which already they had partly

[8] "Ultra centum milia omnis sexus et ætatis, equibus aliquot milia in diversas Americæ tabaccarias insulas relegata sunt."—Bruodin's "Propugnaculum," p. 692. Pragæ, A.D. 1669.

[9] Sir William Petty states, that of boys and women alone, six thousand were thus transplanted to the Tobacco Islands, as they were called.

[10] See "The Great Interest of England in the Well Planting of Ireland by English people," p. 3.

[11] Such is the expression used.

[12] Letter of the Commissioners for the Affairs of Ireland, dated from Dublin, September 18th, 1651.

[13] On this subject, see Very Rev. and Ven. Archdeacon T. O'Rorke's learned work, "History of Sligo: Town and county,' Vol. i., chap. vii., pp. 179, 180. In two volumes. Dublin, 1889, 8vo.

[14] From the 10th April, 1655

[15] See John P. Prendergast's "Cromwellian Settlement in Ireland." Part iii. Of English Planters invited back by the Government from America, pp. 120, 121. London, 1865, 8vo.

[16] He was originally a surveyor, and sent by the London Company to make a map of Virginia. See William Waller Hening's "Statutes of Virginia, 1619—1792." Vol. i. p. 116. In thirteen Vols. 8vo. Richmond, 1809 to 1823.

occupied. A number of Puritans, who were expelled from Virginia as non-conformists in religion, took refuge in Maryland, where freedom of conscience and of worship had been proclaimed. Those espoused the cause of Clayborne, who drew around him several discontented persons, and at length they broke out into open rebellion. A bloody skirmish on one of the rivers near Kent Island ensued. Being defeated, however, Clayborne fled to Virginia, and thence he escaped to England. The Maryland Colonial Assembly, convened in January 1638, passed an act of attainder against him. The first Assembly there had vindicated the independent jurisdiction of that colony; a second asserted its claims to originating legislation; while the third, convened in 1639, framed a declaration of rights, established a system of representative government, and asserted for the general Assemblies in the province all such powers as might be claimed by the Commons of England.[17] During the contests between the King and his parliament, Clayborne sided with the popular party, and he was enabled to excite another rebellion in Maryland, A.D. 1644. Calvert was obliged to fly from the province, early in the following year, as the insurgents were then triumphant. Disorder and misrule followed, while most of the public records were lost or embezzled[18] under the new domination. In the year 1646, having collected a body of troops, Calvert returned to Maryland. His authority was now re-established; when the governing power exercised a wise clemency, by granting a general amnesty.[19]

In the year 1649, the Catholic Assembly of Maryland passed an Act of toleration for persons of all religions. The Protestants were admitted to all offices of the colony equally with Catholics. This was indeed a great advance on the intolerance elsewhere prevailing. The disfranchised friends of prelacy from New York, and the Puritans from Virginia, were welcomed to equal liberty of conscience and political rights in the Catholic province of Maryland.[20] The Puritan settlers, distinguished for insubordination, were chiefly planted at Providence, near the present site of Anapolis.[21] In 1650, a separate county of Anne Arundel was laid out for their possession; and afterwards, Charles County was assigned them, when their numbers had considerably increased. After the death of Leonard Calvert, Lord Baltimore appointed a Protestant named Stone as governor over his colony. The governing authorities and the Catholics of Maryland sided with King Charles I. against the Parliament. Accordingly, after his execution,[22] the Commonwealth being

[17] See Rev. Thomas Bacon's "Laws of Maryland," 1638-9, chap. i., ii.

[18] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States, Vol. i., chap. vii., p. 255.

[19] As serving to illustrate the history of this period, the reader is referred to Colonel Norwood's "Voyage to Virginia, 1649," with large Mappe of Virginia and Maryland, the Plantations, Houses, Settlements, Towns, &c.

[20] See Bacon's "Laws of Maryland," 1649, chap. xii., and n., also 1650, chap. i.

[21] See "A short Account of the first Settlement of Virginia, Maryland, New York, New Jersey, and Pennsylvania, by the English." London, 1735, 4to.

[22] On the 30th January, 1649.

established, Commissioners were sent out in 1652, to report regarding the plantations within Chesapeake Bay.[23] Their real object, however, was to overthrow the existing order of affairs. Notwithstanding, after much altercation, Stone with three of his council was permitted to retain the executive power, until further instructions should arrive from England.[24]

One of the Commissioners sent out by the Parliament, and most hostile to the Maryland rulers, was their old enemy Clayborne. The rights of Lord Baltimore had been reinstated in their integrity by Stone and his friends, who introduced the old council. Yet, in July, 1654, Clayborne and Bennett appeared in Maryland, and compelled the governor to surrender his commission, when a board of ten Commissioners was appointed, and to these the administration of that colony was intrusted.[25] A new Assembly convened at Patuxent now acknowledged Cromwell's authority, and it also disfranchised the Catholics A force was collected by Stone, to re-assert the supremacy of Lord Baltimore. Both opposing parties came to a collision at Providence, when the Puritans triumphed. The governor Stone was then deposed, and having been captured with many others, he was imprisoned in 1655. He remained in confinement during the greater part of Cromwell's administration.[26] Several of Lord Baltimore's adherents were hanged, and among these were four of the chief men in Maryland. The following year, however, one Josias Fendall was commissioned, and apparently with Cromwell's sanction, to establish the proprietor's authority there. Nevertheless, Crayborne was reinstated at Kent Island, while his partisans sustained the rule of Puritanism. There his authority and influence reigned supreme, and he had many partisans to uphold it.[27]

A new Government was now set up, where the Puritanical party being in the ascendant arrogated the right to rule. It had been declared by them, that no Catholic should sit in the Assembly, or vote for any of its members; while an act concerning religion proclaimed freedom of conscience, provided the liberty were not extended to "popery, prelacy, or licentiousness" of opinion.[28] It was also decreed, that all Papists and Prelatists should be excluded from any benefits in the Statute of Toleration. Thus, the Puritans had neither the gratitude to respect

[23] See George Alsop's "Character of the Province of Maryland." London, 1666 12mo.

[24] See Langford's "Clear Refutation of a False and Scandalous Pamphlet," & pp. 7, 8.

[25] See Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. i., chap. vii., p. 260.

[26] There are two conflicting accounts of these transactions; one of them having a partisan character, while reflecting the sentiments and opinions of the Puritans, by John Strong, and intituled "Babylon's Fall in Maryland," while the other was a tract written as a rejoinder, by John Langford, and intituled "Clear Refutation of a False and Scandalous Pamphlet, entitled "Babylon s Fall in Maryland." Both appeared in 1655, 4to.

[27] See Salmon's "History of America; its Discovery by Columbus, first Peopling of America, Wars, Manners, Religions, &c." This work appeared in two vols., 8vo.

[28] It is said Cromwell did not approve this decree, and that he commanded the Commissioners "not to busy themselves about religion, but to settle the civil government." – George Chalmers' "Political Annals of the Present United Colonies," p. 236.

the rights of the government, by which they had been received and fostered, nor magnanimity to continue that toleration, which procured their residence in the colony.[29] For three years afterwards, a state of civil war prevailed therein; one government having been recognized at St. Mary's by Fendall, under Lord Baltimore's patent; while another was organized at Providence, and this latter was ruled by the Puritan Commissioners.[30] On the restoration of Charles II., the rights of Lord Baltimore were again established in Maryland, and his brother Philip Calvert was nominated governor. At this time, A.D. 1660,[31] the population of this colony had been variedly estimated at eight thousand and at twelve thousand inhabitants. This year also the representatives of Maryland proclaimed the power of the people in their Assembly, which was subject alone to the King of England.[32] The Act of Toleration was again revived, and everywhere tranquility prevailed during the reign of Charles II., as also during that of his brother James II.[33]

The inhabitants of Virginia, for the most part Royalists, sympathised with King Charles I. in his struggle with the Parliament.[34] When the Commonwealth had been established, several of the Royalist party in England emigrated to Virginia, and it was the last colony that submitted to the new order of things.[35] A war, which had been waged between England and Holland from 1651 to 1654[36] scarcely disturbed the tranquility of the colonies; for, before the English fleet destined to take possession of the settlements on the Hudson had arrived, the European Republics had composed their strife. When the Commonwealth had been established, the colonists of Virginia were allowed political liberties such as were enjoyed by the people of England, and among these was the right of electing their own governor by an enlarged constituency, and of transacting business as formerly in their own Assembly. No taxes or customs might be levied, except by their own representatives.[37]

[29] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. i., chap. vii., p. 261.

[30] See Dr. Richard McSherry's "Early History of Maryland." New York, 8vo.

[31] Robert Pollock, the first of the Pollock or Polk family in America, came from Ireland to Baltimore in the seventeenth century. Subsequently members of this family removed to North Carolina. From this Family sprung General William Polk, of Mecklenburg fame, who was an Irish-American, as also Robert Polk, a distinguished naval officer.

[32] See Rev. Thomas Bacon's "Laws of Maryland," A.D. 1659, 1660, published in 1765.

[33] See John O'Kane Murray's "History of the Catholic Church in the United States." New York, 8vo.

[34] For the particulars of this eventful reign, the reader may consult Guizot's "Histoire de la Revolution d'Angleterre, depuis l'Avenement de Charles Ier jusqu' a la Restoration de Charles II." Paris, two tomes, 1826, 1827, 8vo.

[35] See John Hammond's "Leah and Rachael; or the two fruitful sisters Virginia and Maryland; their present condition stated," p. 16. This work appeared in London, 1656, 4to.

[36] See an account of this war, in C. M. Davies' "History of Holland and the Dutch Nation, from the Beginning of the Tenth Century to the End of the Eighteenth," &c. Vol. ii., Part iii., chap. vii. In three volumes. London, 1851, 8vo.

[37] See Henning's "Statutes of Virginia," Vol. i., pp. 363 to 368. Also Thomas Jefferson's "Notes on Virginia." This work in 8vo., was first printed at Paris, in 1784. It has since passed through several American editions.

This gave great umbrage to the land owners and to the aristocratic party, who were mostly Royalists; but, popular liberty triumphed, and Virginia framed her own laws uncontrolled, while she enjoyed freedom of commerce with the whole world, until the death of Oliver Cromwell.[38] When Charles II. had been restored,[39] the privilege of voting was restricted to land owners, and these kept the Assembly in power, regardless of the term for which they had been elected.[40] According to the usual custom of that time, when money exchanges were unknown or inconvenient, those members of the Assembly received as a salary two hundred and fifty pounds of tobacco each per day. According to the present value of money, this allowance should be calculated at about forty-five dollars, no inconsiderable sum for the official labours of those colonial legislators. In addition, severe taxes were imposed on the people, who felt greatly discontented with the acts of their rulers.

Members of a new sect called the Society of Friends appeared in Boston, so early as 1656. Soon these religionists showed themselves in other colonies. About the year 1648, the celebrated George Fox their founder began to propagate his opinions in England, and soon he succeeded in bringing many people there to adopt them. He was frequently arrested and treated with great severity, for unusual novelty in religion was there equally persecuted as were the oldest forms of worship. He formed a sect known as the Society of Friends, but denominated Quakers, on account of their trembling mode of delivery. Many of these people emigrated to New England, where they spoke and acted too freely in public, so as to incur popular odium. Members of the Quaker sect became in consequence objects of peculiar aversion. Especially from 1656 to 1660,[41] they were denounced for their opinions and practices.[42] They met everywhere the most severe treatment, and the laws of Massachusetts provided that they should be whipped at the cart's tail from town to town. They were to be branded with the letter R—meaning Rogue —and if they still returned they were to be hanged. But in spite of persecution, they continued to come. In 1673, George Fox,[43] visited the American colonies, and he preached in many of the settlements.[44]

[38] See Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. i., chap. v., p. 130.

[39] For his reign, see Romney's "Diary of the Times of Charles II." London, 1843, 8vo.

[40] For many interesting particulars relating to early Virginian history, the reader is referred to the later chapters of Vincent Le Blanc's "World Surveyed, or his famous Voyages and Travels, the whole enriched with authentic Histories." Printed in 1660, sm. fol.

[41] From the title of a work published this year, we may learn how hostile had been the feeling evoked against them: "The Heart of New England rent, at the Blasphemies of the present Generation; A Treatise concerning the Doctrine of the Quakers," by J. Norton. London, 8vo.

[42] See Hutchinson's "History of the Colony of Massachusetts-Bay," Vol. i., chap. i., pp. 169 to 205.

[43] In 1671, when he visited Barbadoes, he advocated the cause of the negro slaves and recommended the planters to give them freedom "after certain years of servitude."

[44] The Jews had arrived in America long before this period, and in considerable numbers, as appears from a work, written by one Elliot, and published in London, 1660, 4to.

Having come to the English throne, Charles II.[45] assumed the Dutch occupancy of North America to be a usurpation, and on March 12th 1664, he granted the entire territory they possessed to his brother James, the Duke of York.[46] The colony of New Netherland then comprised about ten thousand settlers, who were thinly scattered over a great extent of territory along the Hudson and Delaware rivers, as also in Long Island and in New Jersey. The population of New Amsterdam at that time consisted only of about one thousand five hundred persons.

In the years 1660 and 1663, the English Parliament passed most oppressive navigation laws, which forbade the colonists to buy or sell in any country except England, or to export their produce in any vessels except those that were English. These laws were procured through the avarice of English merchants and manufacturers, and of course the monopoly pressed heavily on American colonial industry.[47] Everything the colonists required to purchase was thus raised in price, while everything they sold was greatly lowered in value. Those unjust laws gave great dissatisfaction to the settlers, but they were powerless to offer any effective resistance, and they had to accept accordingly such burdens as were imposed upon them.

In the midsummer of 1664, the Catholic Duke of York, Lord High Admiral, sent out a squadron of four English vessels. These entered the Bay, to claim for himself the trans-Atlantic colony in the name of his brother King Charles II. When the English troops arrived for the purpose of taking possession in August 1664, and under the command of Colonel Richard Nicolls,[48] he summoned the Dutch colonists there to surrender. Stuyvesant desired to resist him. The Dutch would not fight however, and the English declared for their own countrymen. The town surrendered without any resistance. Colonel Nicolls assumed the office of governor. The name of New Amsterdam was then changed to New York. Thus, its garrison, with all the other Dutch settlements on the Hudson and Delaware rivers, as also in New Jersey, promptly surrendered, while the whole Dutch colony passed peaceably under English rule. In the year 1664, the Duke of York conveyed the territory between the Hudson and Delaware rivers to Lord Berkeley, brother to the governor of Virginia, and to George Carteret, governor over the Island of Jersey in the English channel. In compliment to the

[45] He became king *de facto*, May 29th, 1660.

[46] In exile, this King had written his own Memoirs, but they are said to have been destroyed at the period of the French Revolution. Charles James Fox has published a well known work, "History of the Early Part of the Reign of James the Second," London, 1808, 4to.

[47] Even in 1666, when heavy duties and prohibitions had been imposed on Irish products and commerce, it was forbidden to trade "with the English plantations." —Catherine Macauly Graham's "History of England from the Accession of James I. to the Revolution," Vol. vi., chap. iii., p. 220. London, 1781, 4to.

[48] It is remarkable that in the Papers or memoirs of James II., he is called Colonel Richard Nicholas. See "The Life of James the Second, King of England, &c., collected out of Memoirs writ by his own hand," &c. By Rev. J. S. Clarke, LL.B. Vol. i., Tome ii., p. 400. This interesting historic work was published in London, 1816, in two 4to vols.

latter, the district was also named New Jersey. That same year, some Englishmen from Long Island had planted Elizabeth Town, which was so named in honour of Lady Carteret. On July 12th 1665, the City of New York was incorporated by a special charter.

In the year 1663, King Charles II. erected a vast and vacant territory, comprising North Carolina, South Carolina, Georgia, Alabama and a part of Florida, into the province of Carolina. He bestowed this great tract upon eight proprietors.[49] These were the Prime Minister, the Earl of Clarendon, General Monk Duke of Albemarle, Lord Ashley Cooper, who was afterwards Earl of Shaftesbury, Lord Berkeley, Sir George Carteret, Sir William. Berkeley, Lord Craven, and Sir John Colleton. Under the Clarendon grant, the Albemarle County colony was set up in 1664, when plantations began in the present North Carolina. On the present site of Wilmington, some New Englanders had already settled, and these were joined by colonists from Barbadoes, who established themselves near the mouth of Cape Fear river. These formed the Clarendon Colony.[50] They soon engaged in felling the pine woods of that region, and thus they formed a branch of trade and commerce, in the preparation and exportation of boards, staves and shingles. The celebrated English philosopher John Locke had been instructed by the Earl of Shaftesbury, to frame a form of government for the province of Carolina. This code provided for a feudal nobility and for aristocratic institutions, while the established Church of England was to become the prevailing form of religion. The people at large were to be tenants or serfs to the lords' proprietors.[51] However, this form of constitution in that distant country soon led to disputes between the proprietors and the tenants, relative to the rents and taxes. Various quarrels and disorders arose, during the course of which more than one open insurrection broke out in North Carolina. The settlers there asserted the right of managing their own affairs and of governing themselves.

South Carolina was so called from Charles II., in whose reign it was first settled at Port Royal by the English, and in the year 1670. The settlements in the present South Carolina were formerly known as the Carteret Colony under the Clarendon Grant. After their first settlement however on the Ashley River, the colonists removed to a better situation, at the junction of the Ashley and Cooper Rivers, where they founded the present city of Charleston. Soon after its formation, immigrants began to arrive from New York, Holland and Scotland. Also Presbyterians from the North of Ireland arrived in great numbers. A colony of Irish under Ferguson, lured by the fame of South Carolina's fertility, received a hearty welcome, and soon these settlers were merged among

[49] See "Fundamental Constitutions of Carolina." London, 1669, 4to.

[50] See "Briefe Description of the Province of Carolina, on the Coasts of Florida, and of a new Plantation begun by the English at Cape Feare." Lond., 1666, 4to.

[51] See the edition of "Works of John Locke" in nine volumes, vol. ix. The Fundamental Constitutions of Carolina, pp, 175 to 199. London, 1794, 8vo.

the other colonists.[52] In 1686 and 1687, Huguenots or French Calvinists came in great numbers. The original settlers however regarded them with jealousy, so that several years elapsed, before they were received there as privileged citizens. Turbulent proceedings among the people in this province caused frequent revolts against the proprietors.[53] In the year 1671, slaves were introduced from Barbadoes to South Carolina, which was mostly inhabited by planters.[54] These employed them on their several plantations. The trade in negro slaves was then in full vigour, for the mother country had already permitted the introduction of slave labour into her North American colonies.[55] The peculiarities of climate and of soil tended to promote manufacturing industry, chiefly in the Northern Provinces, and agricultural occupations more in the Southern States. Possessing few of those qualities, which are so essential to excel in manufactures, and being peculiarly suited for field labour in the South, the enslaved negro by degrees gravitated southwards. The Southern and Northern States in course of time became almost as distinctly defined, by the terms of slave-holding and non-slaveholding States, as by their geographic positions. After a series of conflicts with the people, their governor James Colleton was banished in 1690, by a meeting of the representatives of South Carolina. One of the North Carolina proprietors, named Sothel, and who had been expelled from his own place, was next chosen as governor. Only two years elapsed, until he was in turn impeached. The next Governor Ludwell was likewise expelled, for there was then no regular force to restrain the proceedings of those colonists. Several immigrant Irish families settled in North Carolina, after the Williamite and Jacobite war in Ireland.

Charles II. had granted to Lord Culpepper and to the Earl of Arlington in 1673, and for a period of thirty-one years, the quit-rents and escheats of Virginia, without any regard of existing colonial rights and privileges.[56] On the borders of Maryland, an Indian war broke out in 1675, and the Virginians were now obliged to arm for defence. They chose a popular young planter, named Nathaniel Bacon, for their leader. At this time, Sir William Berkeley was governor, and he greatly mistrusted Bacon's intentions. The latter had marched against the Indians, whom he easily overcame. The governor now proclaimed him a rebel, as he had collected a military force to oppose the ruling authorities. A rising of the popular party to resist aristocratic ascendancy obliged government to dissolve the Assembly, which had then sat for an exorbitant time. A new one was elected, universal suffrage was restored, arbitrary taxation was abolished, while various legislative and adminis-

[52] See George Chalmers' "Political Annals of the Present United Colonies," p. 543.

[53] See Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. ii., chap. xiii., pp. 172 to 187.

[54] See "An Account of Carolina," by T. A. London, 1682, 4to.

[55] See Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. i., chap. v., pp. 159 to 193.

[56] See Hugh Murray's "United

trative abuses were suppressed. Meanwhile, Bacon marched against Jamestown, which he burned to the ground in September, 1676, having forced Sir William Berkeley to evacuate the place, and to retire with his whole force to the eastern shore. Bacon now declared the governor to have abdicated, and he summoned an Assembly in his own name. It was resolved to resist any attempts from England to restore Berkeley's power, and it was almost intended to throw off the foreign yoke. Nothing remained but to cross the river, and to crush the remnant of Berkeley's forces. In the midst of his successes, however, and after a short illness, Bacon died of fever.[57] His followers, thus discouraged, were dispersed and soon overcome. Many of them were made prisoners. The Governor treated those insurgents with the greatest severity, and he caused no less than twenty-two to be hanged. He was exceedingly unpopular, while ruling in Virginia. After these transactions he returned to England, where he died in disgrace. Meanwhile, Colonel Jeffereys was sent out with two other Commissioners, to enquire about and to report on the condition of Virginia. The result was a censure, pronounced on the government and on several members of the Council, after a searching examination. The conduct of the insurgents was likewise strongly condemned. During the brief period of his administration, Jeffereys had the credit of putting an end to the Indian war.[58] In the year 1673, the people of New York were again in a state of insurrection. At that time, the Dutch and English had been at war. A small Dutch fleet, commanded by Evertzen, entered the Bay of New York, and without any difficulty the crew obtained possession of that town. Under the English governors, Nicolls and his successor Lovelace, a court of assizes, composed of a council and justices of the peace appointed by themselves, held supreme sway. The whole power legislative, executive and judicial vested in the governor and in that body. When peace was proclaimed however, the territory of New Netherland was ceded to England.

The western half of New Jersey was sold by Lord Berkeley to the Quakers.[59] They found security there, by settling a colony of their own in the year 1675. Later still, they bought East Jersey from Carteret. This division had been for the most part settled by the Puritans.[60] A family of Thompsons and one Robert Zane—who appear to have been Quakers—left Ireland in 1677, and settled in Salem, where through their industry, they attained a good living. A few years afterwards, some Friends that dwelt in Ireland and others that came thither from England resolved on removing to the New World. In order thereto, they sent from Dublin to one Thomas Lunkin, a Friend in

States of America," Vol. i., chap. iv., p. 139.

[57] See "Strange News from Virginia, being a full and true Account of the Life and Death of Nathaniel Bacon, Governor of Virginia." London, 1677, 4to.

[58] See George Chalmers' "Political Annals of the present United Colonies," pp. 337, 338.

[59] See Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. ii., chap. xvi., p. 355.

[60] See "A Briefe Account of East Jersey," London, 1682, 4to.

London, and commander of a punk. He came and made his arrangements, to transport them into New Jersey, viz.: Mark Newby, Thomas Thackeray, William Bate, George Goldsmith and Thomas Sharp,[61] then a young man and single. But while the ship lay at Dublin, Thomas Lunkin getting sick remained behind, and putting the command under his mate John Daggar, the latter set sail on the 19th of September. Having safely landed, they were well entertained at the house of the Thompsons. The newly arrived immigrants there resided for the winter, which proved to be moderate. At Wickacoa—now Philadelphia—they purchased a boat of the Swansons, and so went on to Burlington. They sought land Commissioners, from whom they obtained a warrant of survey. The Surveyor-General was one Daniel Seeds. After some considerable search to and fro, in what was then called "the third place of the Irish tenth," those immigrants at last pitched upon that spot, then called Newtown. This happened before the settlement of Philadelphia. In the spring of 1682, all removed from Salem, together with Robert Zane, who had before gone with the Thompsons from Ireland, and who also had been expecting the newly arrived from that same country. Thus was began their settlement; and though they were at times pretty hard pressed, having to fetch all their provisions from Salem by water, yet they were preserved in health and from any extreme difficulty. A meeting was immediately set up at the house of Mark Newby,[62] and in a short time it grew and increased. A Mr. Cooper and his family that lived at the Poynte also resorted to that assembly. The writer of this account adds, that they had then zeal and fervency of spirit, although they had some dread of the Indians, as a savage people.

Religious freedom was proclaimed, in the reign of James II.; and Colonel Thomas Dongan an Irish Catholic gentleman [63] was appointed governor of New York,[64] in 1682. His instructions were to conciliate the French, and to give no countenance to hostile Indian tribes. However, he was accused of inciting the Five Nations to war. In 1688, he was obliged to resign his office.[65]

A long lapse of time occurred, after the failure of De Soto's expedition, before the Mississippi Valley was further explored by the French from New France, now Canada. The Western Indians had made known to them the existence of a great river, which flowed from north to south.

[1] He is the writer who furnishes this account.

[62] This Newby brought out many halfpence in 1680, which were called Patrick money, and some of them were preserved by Joseph O. Cooper in Newtown. See Watson's "Annals of Philadelphia," and note. Appendix.

[63] He was born in Castletown, County of Kildare in 1634.

[64] See John Gilmary Shea's "The Catholic Churches of New York City, with Sketches of their History and Lives of the present Pastors," &c., Introduction, pp. 21 to 23.

[65] He returned to England three years later, and he died in London, December 14th, 1715. See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," edited by James Grant Wilson and John Fiske. Vol. ii., p. 200. This invaluable work for the elucidation of American History and Biography was published at New York, in six large imperial 8vo. volumes, double columns, by Appleton and Co., 1887 to 1889.

Accordingly, Jean Baptist Talon Intendant of Canada engaged Father Marquette, a French Jesuit, with Jolliet, a merchant citizen of Quebec, and three others, to set out from a bay off Lake Michigan—probably that now called Green Bay—to explore the Mississippi River.[66] At first, they ascended Fox River in a birch-bark canoe, and reached a point near its source. Afterwards, guided by some Algonquin Indians, and carrying on their backs canoes, they reached the Wisconsin River and continued down this stream to its junction with the Mississippi, which opened on their view the 17th June 1673, near the present site of Prairie du Chien, in the State of Wisconsin. Then they floated down the mighty current, holding friendly intercourse with the Illinois, Missouri and other Indian tribes. To these Father Marquette announced the truths of the Gospel, and taught them a necessity for believing in and adoring the great Creator. After some occasional delays, they reached the mouth of the Arkansas River.[67] There they found Indians in possession of firearms and steel axes, which were taken to be evidences of their intercourse with the Spaniards in Florida, or with the English in Virginia. Returning from the mouth of the Arkansas, Marquette and his companions passed up the Illinois River, and discovered much of the adjoining country in July 1674. Jolliet returned to Quebec with a report of their success; but Father Marquette remained in the country about Chicago, announcing the truths of salvation to the Miami Indians. At Mackinaw, on the 19th of May 1675, and on the banks of that river which now bears his name, the holy missioner calmly expired in the loneliness of the forest; but, without a human eye to witness his angelic departure. He had just finished the celebration of Mass on the shore, and then he retired to pray in the depth of the woods. His two companions sought him half-an-hour afterwards, but they only found his lifeless body. Their grief and surprise were extreme.[68] They dug a solitary grave and deposited his remains near the waters of Lake Michigan.[69]

Petty warfare often disturbed the industrial occupations of the hardy backwoodsman,[70] when the passions and jealousies of the Red Men had been roused. A new and more terrible Indian war than any yet experienced broke out in 1675. The Whampanoags, or Pokanokets, on

An interesting account of their travels may be found in that most learned and admirable work of John Gilmary Shea, "The Catholic Church in Colonial Days." Vol i., Book iii., chap. v., pp. 310 to 320.

[67] See John Gilmary Shea's "Discovery and exploration of the Mississippi Valley." New York, pp. 3 to 52, 1852, 8vo.

[68] Such is the account of his death as given in an article written by Rev. Martin J. Spalding—afterwards Catholic Archbishop of Baltimore—and intituled, "Discovery of the Mississippi," and published in the "Catholic Cabinet," Vol. i., No. 4, p. 196. St. Louis, 1843, et seq 8vo. It differs in details, however, from that furnished, regarding the departure of Father Marquette, in John Gilmary Shea's "Catholic Church in Colonial Days." Book iii., chap. v., pp. 317, 318.

[69] See John Gilmary Shea's "Early Voyages up and down the Mississippi," Albany, N.Y., 1861.

[70] See William Hubbard's "Narrative of the Indian Wars in New England" Published at Boston in 1775.

the east side of Narraganset Bay, were then ruled by the nephew and successor of Massasoit, and who was named Pometacom, but he was better known to the colonists as King Philip. This celebrated Indian Chief had been jealous of the white colonists and their encroachments, and besides some of his tribe had been hanged by them on charge of murder. He resolved to wage a destructive war, which commenced in the month of June, and which was directed against the New England settlers.[71] A body of Massachusetts volunteers pursued Pometacom through the swamps and forests. He escaped, however, into the interior of Massachusetts. There the Nipmuc tribe had likewise taken arms against the whites, and they prepared for war. In a short time, there was a general rising of the Indians all over New England. They were never more dangerous than at that time, because the colonists had supplied many of them with arms, which they had learned to use with skill. Brookfield, Northfield and Deerfield were burned. At Deerfield, Captain Lathrop and eighty men were killed in an ambuscade.[72] The people of the outlying settlements felt dreadfully alarmed. Those immediately abandoned their backwoods' homes, and fled to the larger towns.

An attempt was now made to revive the New England Union. A thousand men, and half of these to be mounted dragoons, were levied at the joint expense of the confederated colonies. A second thousand were voted for a special expedition against the Narragansets, who had given aid and shelter to the hostile tribes. Small parties of troops on the march were cut off and destroyed. In December 1675, thirteen companies of troops from Massachusetts, Plymouth and Connecticut were commanded by Josiah Winslow, Governor of Plymouth. He attacked the Narragansets, in one of their ancient strongholds. The fort was built on a rising ground and in the midst of a swamp. It was surrounded by a palisade, and by a close hedge, which was fifteen or sixteen feet in thickness. The only approach to it was through a narrow entrance. This pathway was defended by a tree which had been thrown across, while there was a blockhouse of logs in front and another on the flank, to protect their chief position. As the colonists advanced to the attack, they were met by a severe fire. Many of them fell dead and wounded. After two hours fighting, they at length forced an entrance. They set fire to the wigwams. Numbers of the unfortunate Indians perished in the flames.[73] In killed and wounded the colonists lost about two hundred and forty men, during this severe engagement. The site of

[71] An interesting narrative of this war was printed at Boston, in 1716. It is intituled: "The entertaining History of King Philip's War, which began in the month of June, 1675. As also of Expeditions more lately made against the common Enemy, and Indian Rebels, in the eastern Parts of New England: with some Account of the Divine Providence towards Col. Benjamin Church:" by Thomas Church, Esq., his Son. Several editions of this graphic work have since appeared in the United States.

[72] Dr. Increase Mather has furnished a detailed account of these transactions, in his "History of the Wars with the Indians in New England. June 24th 1675, to August 12th, 1676." London, 1676, 4to.

[73] See Cotton Mather's "History of New England," London, 1702, 4to.

that Indian fort is now the town of South Kingston in Rhode Island.

Their misfortunes exasperated the Narragansets more, and these revenged themselves upon the isolated settlements. More dreadful than ever, this contest assumed new features of horror. Warwick was then burned. Providence was attacked and partly destroyed. The whole colony of Plymouth was overrun. Simultaneously and from all quarters, the Indian onslaughts were made. In March 1676, Captain Pierce and fifty colonists with some friendly Indians were destroyed. While trying to cover the Plymouth towns, those men fell into an ambush. In April, Captain Wadsworth and fifty men were surprised and killed, while they were marching to the relief of Sudbury. In May, Captain Turner, who had been returning from a slaughter of Indians on the Connecticut, was entrapped. He was slain together with thirty-eight of his men. At Hadley, Massachusetts, the savages made a sudden descent upon that settlement. The people were assembled in their church at that time. In the midst of their confusion, an old man with a long beard rallied the terrified colonists and took command of the defence. He was a stranger in the place, but he manifested the most determined bravery. So soon as the Indians had been beaten off he disappeared. Many of the settlers were under an impression that they had been miraculously saved by an angel of the Lord. Afterwards, they discovered his identity and his reasons for concealment. He was General William Goffe, one of the regicides or Puritan judges who condemned King Charles I. to death, and who now sought refuge among the New Englanders.[74] After the restoration of the Stuarts, he fled to America, with his father-in-law, Whalley. He was there hunted from town to town, and from forest to cave, with a price set on his head. For the last fifteen years of his life, he had been concealed at Hadley.

This war of surprises lasted for more than a year. Many persons were massacred in the settlements, while those Indian raids continued. The General Court of Massachusetts regarded it as a punishment for the sins and extravagances of the people. Among other offences, they mentioned pride, profanity, cheating and the wearing of long hair by the men. Toleration of the Quakers they also held to have been a heinous offence. The persecution of the Quakers was again renewed. Still more effectual methods for defence were taken. The colonists called out troops and placed garrisons in the towns. Bands of Mohegans and other friendly Indians were kept in training and reserve.

After long evading the English by the rapidity of his movements, King Philip returned to his own stronghold at Mount Hope or Pokanoket. There he was supported by his relative Witamo, who was the female sachem of Pocasset. On the 1st August 1676, the camp of Philip was surprised by Major Church, with a body of English and Indian volunteers. Philip escaped however; but his wife and son were

[74] See that interesting narrative of President Stiles, "A History of Three of the Judges of King Charles I." These lived concealed among the colonists.

captured; the boy was sold as a slave in Bermuda. More than a hundred of the Whampanoags and most of Witamo's followers were killed. Witamo herself was drowned in trying to get away. Her head was afterwards cut off and set up on a pole in Taunton. A few days later and towards the closing of August, being sought for in his haunts, and attacked again by Church, Philip was betrayed and afterwards killed in a swamp, by one of his own people, who had deserted from his chief. The head of Philip was carried in triumph to Plymouth, and one of his hands was given to the man who had shot him. Soon afterwards, Major Church succeeded in capturing Annawon, who still ranged the woods with his Indian band. This chief was afterwards put to death by the English. More than two thousand of the Indians were killed or captured, during these protracted struggles. Most of the captives were either hanged or reduced to slavery. In this disastrous war, the colonists lost fully six hundred men in battle. Twelve or thirteen towns were entirely ruined, others were partly burned. The losses in money were estimated at about one million of dollars. On the other hand, when King Philip's war ceased, the power of the savages in New England was for ever broken.[75] After this war, great suffering prevailed in New England. From Ireland was received a small contribution about that time, to relieve in part those distresses felt by the Plymouth colony.[76] From this time forward, the tribes in New England fast dwindled away, nor were the Indians remaining ever capable afterwards of seriously molesting the white settlers.

---

## CHAPTER VI.

**Misgovernment of Virginia—Settlement of Pennsylvania by William Penn—Explorations of the Chevalier de la Salle and Father Louis Henepin on the Mississippi—Abrogation of the Colonial Charters—Commotions in Maryland—Irish Colonization—William Penn's Rights restored in Pennsylvania—Progress of French Colonization—Witchcraft Prosecutions in New England—War between France and England.**

THE American Colonies were too distant from, and their affairs were badly regulated or controlled by, the parent country. Favouritism and influence in England enabled monopolising individuals or companies to take advantage of their local opportunities to ingratiate themselves with the government, irrespective of that interest which should be felt for the welfare and just sensibilities of dependent subjects. In the year 1680, Lord Culpepper, although vested with extraordinary privileges and powers, yet reluctantly went out as Governor of Virginia. In order to enrich himself, he raised the governor's allowance to an exorbitant

[75] See Caleb Moore's "War in New England ended." London, 1677, fol.

[76] See Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. ii., chap. xii., p. 109.

amount, and he loaded the colony with fresh burdens. He enforced in a grasping manner his proprietary patent, while he altered the value of the coin. His avarice was truly shameless. His stay in Virginia however was but of short continuance, nor did he like it as a residence. Having no sympathies in common with the colonists, we need scarcely wonder that he became exceedingly unpopular. Heavy complaints regarding his conduct were sent to King Charles, and Culpepper's commission of governor was declared to be forfeited. Then Virginia was treated as a royal colony, no future ruler being allowed to hold office except at the pleasure of the Crown. In the year 1683, Lord Howard of Effingham became the next governor. Under his rule, the misery of the people there was increased, and poverty widely spread. His own profit was secured by excessive fees and by the meanest acts. Among the humbler classes especially, murmurs of discontent were very prevalent, but no prospect seemed to be afforded for any improvement of their condition. Under James II. his arbitrary rule was continued, until the Assembly and people brought heavy charges against him. Lord Howard of Effingham returned to England in 1688. Notwithstanding the accusations incriminating him, King William III. had that lord reinstated; but his functions were discharged through a deputy Colonel Nicholson. At first he sought to promote the welfare of the colonists, yet afterwards his course of action became changed in their regard.[1]

As we have already seen, the Quakers had long been persecuted in England.[2] At length a leading member of their community turned his thoughts to the trans-Atlantic regions, and he resolved there to form a colony. The son of a renowned English Admiral, William Penn[3] had been sent to Ireland in 1666, to superintend the management of his father's estates. At Cork he attended the instructions of a celebrated preacher Thomas Lee, and afterward the young man made a public profession of his doctrines. Also called William Penn, he was one of the most distinguished converts of the Quaker sect, besides being a man of wealth and family.[4] Notwithstanding his public preaching in the streets, and even his imprisonment in the Tower of London, Penn had obtained from King Charles II., in 1681, a charter to establish a colony west of the Delaware. To his designated tract was given the name of Pennsylvania.[5] This concession was made in payment of an old debt, which had been due from the Crown to the Penn family. Over the colony he was appointed sole proprietor, and he was also invested with the dignity of governor. Reserving the sovereignty of the Crown and its claim to allegiance, the

[1] See Hugh Murray's "United States of America," Vol. i., chap. iv., pp. 139 to 142.

[2] See John F. Watson's "Annals of Philadelphia," published in that city, 1830. One volume, 8vo.

[3] He was a native of Bristol and born in 1621. He was greatly distinguished in the naval wars carried on against the Dutch, during the Protectorate of Oliver Cromwell.

[4] Thomas Clarkson. has written "Memoirs of the Public and Private Life of William Penn." London, 1813, in two volumes, 8vo.

[5] Penn had wished to call it Sylvania, or "Land of Forests;" but, against his protests, the king insisted

proprietor was allowed to dispose of his lands in fee-simple, to erect courts of justice, to levy taxes with consent of the freemen or their delegates, and to raise forces for defence of the province by sea and land. An appeal from the courts to the king in council was reserved, as also the right of the English Parliament to levy custom-duties. The charter granted to him was copied from that of Maryland; civil and religious liberty, with other advantages, having been guaranteed to all who desire to avail of the laws and regulations made for his colony. The first party of emigrants, chiefly recruited from England and Wales, sailed in 1681, to begin the work of settlement in Pennsylvania. For these, Penn sent commissioners to treat with the native tribes, whose natural rights to the soil he recognised and desired to purchase. Those agents were furnished likewise, with friendly and affectionate letters for the Indian chiefs. A large number of settlers—chiefly Friends or Quakers from Dublin and places adjacent in Ireland—arrived at Elsingburg, near Salem, about this time. Among these, John and Andrew Thompson with one Robert Gane had settled there; others went up to Burlington; while several of them settled at Newtown Creek, where the Indians were shy at first, but after becoming better acquainted, they were very kind, friendly and beneficial to the new settlers.[6] In the year 1682, Penn started for America.[7] He brought with him a colony of English—chiefly Friends—amounting to 2,000 persons. In the course of the first year, no fewer than twenty-three ships loaded with passengers arrived; and, in two years, the population amounted to 7,000, including those settlers who were already on the ground when the colony had been originally organized.

The present state of Delaware was then known as "the Territories," and it belonged to New York, but, it was added to Penn's dominion in 1682. A few weeks after his arrival, Penn held a conference with a large assembly of the Indians. They met under an elm tree at Shackamaxon, in what is now Kensington, Philadelphia. There he formed with them a treaty of friendship. This treaty was never broken,[8] so that the kindly intercourse between the Quakers and the savages was rarely, if ever, disturbed. That same year, Penn founded on the River Delaware the city of Philadelphia. Its name signifies "brotherly love." He summoned likewise, a legislative General Assembly, elected by the people. Its first session was held at Chester. A council of seventy-two was elective, and having a third of their number renewed each year, that body was divided into four committees, viz.:—of plantation, of trade, of justice and of educa-

that "Penn" should be added to that denomination.

[6] See Proud's "History of Pennsylvania," published at Philadelphia, 1745, in two vols., 8vo. An edition was published in London, 1793, in one vol., 8vo. An edition in two volumes was issued, also, in 1797, at Philadelphia.

[7] See Duponceau's "Discourse on the Early History of Pennsylvania." Philadelphia, 1821.

[8] See Proud's "History of Pennsylvania."

tion.[9] In conjunction with the proprietor—who was allowed three votes—that council formed the executive. The members prepared those bills and propositions which were submitted to the General Assembly. Lands were sold to settlers in large and small lots, at about five pence an acre, and subject to a small annual quit-rent. Poor men were allowed 50 acres at one half-penny per acre.[10] In December 1682, Penn proceeded to Maryland, to adjust with Lord Baltimore the bounds of their respective provinces. After a difficult negociation, ultimately referred to the Committee of Plantation, it was decided, that the 40th degree of latitude in its real direction must be the boundary. This decision removed Pennsylvania from a sea-board on Chesapeake Bay. Having established there a representative government, Penn framed a code of laws, before he returned to England in 1684. When James II. soon afterwards succeeded to the throne, having had a great feeling of friendship for Admiral Penn, his son also received the monarch's highest esteem and favours. As a consequence, jealousies and calumnies were excited against Penn. His best and most virtuous acts of beneficence—exercised on behalf of those condemned by the courts—were alleged to have been a traffic in pardons granted to the prisoners.[11] Even was he accused of having been a Jesuit in disguise, and of holding intriguing correspondence with the Court of Rome.

The first emigrants to Pennsylvania were mostly Quakers, including some from Germany and Holland, but toleration was promised to all Christians. This pledge does not appear to have been regarded as applying to Catholics, yet some arrived, and they were not molested. They had even a kindly recognition by the Philadelphians; for at this time, the hostile feeling evinced in England against members of their persecuted creed had been greatly allayed. Several Irish Catholics were among the primitive Pennsylvanian arrivals. Mass was celebrated in Philadelphia, so early as 1686.[12] Commissioners had been appointed by Penn to rule in his absence, but discord between them and the General Assembly soon ensued. This was chiefly owing to charges of corruption and of other misdemeanours brought by the latter against one Moore, a leading proprietary officer. In 1686, Penn instructed his agents to dissolve the constitution he had granted, superseding the commission likewise, and sending out a deputy governor named Blackwell, to support his authority. This man, a dexterous and an unscrupulous politician, succeeded in gaining over some of the General Assembly members, so as to carry on an arbitrary course of government.[13]

After communicating his project to Count de Frontenac, Governor

[9] According to "Frame of the Government of Pennsylvania, 1682," pp. 1 to 3.

[10] According to "Some Account of the Province of Pennsylvania, in America," p. 5, London, 1681.

[11] See Thomas B. Macaulay's "History of England from the Accession of James II." Vol. i., chap. v., pp. 502 to 509. London, 1849, et seq.

[12] See John R. G. Hassard's "History of the United States of America," chap. xiii., p. 96.

[13] See Proud's "History of Pennsylvania," Vol. i., p. 340.

of Canada, Robert de la Salle sailed for Europe, filled with the idea of establishing a chain of posts extending from Canada to the Gulf of Mexico. Thus, he hoped to bind the French possessions securely together, and the project was regarded as eminently deserving encouragement from the home government. Having obtained the sanction of Louis XIV., he fitted out an exploring expedition, consisting of Father Louis Hennepin, a Franciscan, and M. Dugay, with six others, to advance from the Illinois to the head waters of the Mississippi River. On the 28th February 1680, those entered the latter and then took a northward course. Hennepin went no further in that direction than to Saint Anthony's Falls, which name he gave them in honour of his patron, St. Anthony of Padua. Thence, after a variety of strange and dangerous vicissitudes, those voyagers descended the Mississippi, it is said, to the mouth of the Arkansas. Some have asserted that they went farther south, even to the sea.[14] According to another statement,[15] they returned to Green Bay, after enduring almost incredible fatigues and hardships. La Salle had obtained the title of Cavalier from the French monarch, for the intelligent interest he took in French affairs, and now he was about to adventure in person on his new voyage of discovery. On the 2nd of February in the year 1682, after making a tour of exploration down the Illinois River, La Salle entered the valley and sailed on the great River Mississippi. His course lay southward. To the "Father of Waters" he gave the name of St. Louis, and to the country traversed by it that of Louisiana. This was intended, as well to consecrate the whole territory to the patron saint as to do honour to the King of France. When he arrived at the mouth of the Missouri River, he gave it the name of St. Philip. Continuing down the "St. Louis," on the 4th March, he took possession of the country of Akansas, the origin of the modern name Arkansas. Without unnecessary delay, he proceeded still southwards, and on the 7th of April succeeding, he planted the colours of France near the Gulf of Mexico. On the 9th, he reached the mouth of the Mississippi, while formally and solemnly the commandant claimed the territory for France. He then began to ascend the river, but owing to sickness, he did not reach Quebec before the spring of 1683. Soon after, he returned to France, to make arrangements for colonizing Louisiana. These he had accomplished by July 1684, for he had received a very favourable reception from the French court. He obtained a company of two hundred persons, including even missionaries, when his fleet of four vessels left the port of Rochelle in France, July 24th 1684.[16]

[14] Father Louis Hennepin published his adventures in a work: "Description de la Louisiane nouvellement découvert au sud-ouest de la Nouvelle France, avec la Carte du Pays, les Mœurs et la Manière de vivre des Sauvages." Paris, 1685, 12mo. A second edition appeared in 1688. It was translated into Italian, and published at Bologna, 1686, 12mo. It appeared in German at Nuremburg, 1689, 12mo. An addition to this work was published at Utrecht, 1697, and at Amsterdam, 1698, 12mo.

[15] That of John W. Monette, in his "History of the Discovery and Settlement of the Valley of the Mississippi," Vol. i.

[16] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States." Vol. iii., chap. xx., p. 168.

His brother La Salle, a Sulpician, was one of those missionaries. But, various dissensions arose, between the captain of the ship Beaujeu, and the Chevalier de la Salle, who had command of the entire expedition. Obliged to return to Rochelle, after having sailed out to sea, the adventurers refitted, and left once more on the 1st of August. They reached St. Domingo on the 27th of September, yet had the misfortune to lose one of their vessels, captured by two Spanish pirates. La Salle became indisposed, but when recovered from illness, the voyage was resumed on the 27th of November. They doubled Cape Antonio, off the Florida coast, on the 28th of December, coasting towards the west. Failing to recognise the mouth of the Mississippi, as they passed it, their company landed at the Bay of Matagorda. La Salle had already perceived the mistake, but he could not persuade Beaujeu to alter his course. The subsequent history of the Chevalier la Salle is full of melancholy interest. While attempting a landing there, one of his three remaining vessels was lost, with nearly all her cargo. The Indians also attacked the French when they disembarked. There La Salle hastily constructed a fort, in which he left a small garrison. He also erected another fort, which he called Fort St. Louis, giving the command of it to an officer named Joutel.[17] Under an erroneous impression that the Mississippi discharged its waters into the Bay of Matagorda, he coasted along its shores in two small boats. During his absence, the last remaining vessel ran aground and sank.

Seeing all his projects for an extension of French colonization ruined by the loss of his ship, La Salle called his companions together, and urged the necessity for his attempting a journey to Canada by land. Leaving the forts in possession of the main body, he selected twenty companions for his adventurous course to the Illinois River. He set out from Fort St. Louis, on the 12th of January, 1687.[18] His brother, his two nephews, Sieur Joutel, and Father Anastasius left with him. Small as the company was, a feud existed among them, which terminated in the murder of Moranger, La Salle's nephew; and this inhuman deed was followed up by the villains who executed it, in shooting the cavalier himself through the head, on the 19th of March. The brave and pious La Salle had barely time to make a part of his confession to Father Anastasius, who gave him absolution, when he expired. The body was buried in the wilderness, and a cross was erected over his grave.[19]

The assassins and their accomplices soon quarrelled among themselves; two fell victims to violence, while the seven, not implicated in these shocking outrages, pursued their trackless journey, enduring all manner of dangers and privations. On the 20th of July, they ap-

[17] He has left an interesting work, embellished with a curious map, and intituled: "Journal historique du dernier Voyage que feu M. de la Salle fit dans le Golfe du Mexique pour trouver l'Embouchure et le Cours de la Riviere du Missicipi," Paris, 1723, 12mo.

[18] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States." Vol. iii., chap. xx., p. 172.

[19] His tragic history is contained

proached the Arkansas River, and here they met two of their countrymen among the Indians of that territory. After a short delay, their small company ascended the Mississippi, and entered the mouth of the Illinois on the 3rd of September. They passed that winter near Lake Peoria, and on the opening of spring continued their journey to Quebec. There most of them took shipping for France in 1688. Those who had been left at the Bay of Matagorda were taken prisoners by the Spaniards. Such were the results of Chevalier la Salle's ill-fated expedition, which in the beginning had excited the most sanguine expectations.

The French laid claim to and actually possessed vast territories in the west, with those of Canada in the north.[20] This claim embraced an immense tract of country, called Louisiana, extending from Hudson's Bay on the north, and from the shores of the St. Lawrence River to the Gulf of Mexico on the south.

In 1683, the Duke of New York—it is stated through compulsion[21]—had allowed the people of New York to meet in Assembly, and to enact a code of fundamental laws, known as the Charter of Liberties. This gave to the people a right to vote, to tax and to rule themselves, as also to practise any Christian form of religion without molestation. About this time, the first legislative Assembly of New York was convened. During the latter part of his reign, however, Charles II. desired to destroy American Colonial liberty, by taking away the charters already granted, and by converting the colonies into Crown provinces. When his brother James II came to the throne in 1685, he resolved to prosecute the same object, and he required Sir Edmond Andros to execute such a project. The New England Colonies were now required to surrender their charters. Towards the end of 1686,[21] Andros arrived at Boston with the title of Governor General of New England. Moreover, New York and the Jerseys were added to his jurisdiction. The first important act of his administration proclaimed the Royal Declaration of Indulgence, which granted toleration to Catholics, Episcopalians, Baptists, Quakers, and all other Protestant sects. This decree, however, greatly excited the resentment of the Puritans. Their indignation was further increased, when all the New England Colonies were obliged to give up their charters. However, Connecticut refused this demand, and accordingly, the Governor-General marched to Hartford, in November 1687, with sixty soldiers. As the Assembly was then sitting, he entered their hall in the evening and demanded their charter. This document was produced and laid on the table. When Andros was about to take it, the lights were suddenly put out, and the document disappeared. By preconcerted action, it had

in Charlevoix's "Histoire de la Nouvelle France."

[20] See Burke's "Account of the European Settlements in America, with a History of the Discovery of that part of the World," in two volumes, published in 1765.

[21] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States." Vol. ii., chap. xvii., pp. 413, 414.

been taken away, and then hidden in a hollow tree. This was afterwards known as the Charter oak. The Governor-General never found the document.[22] Andros now became exceedingly unpopular. He was a bad ruler, and he issued the most tyrannical orders. He imposed oppressive taxes, and he arbitrarily exceeded his authority, by constantly interfering with private rights.

Notwithstanding his liberal concessions while Duke of York, when James II. became king, he exercised the same despotic authority in New York as he had practised in New England. The people of this latter province were ready to rebel against his arbitrary rule. When the welcome news arrived, that he had been dethroned in England, and that William and Mary had succeeded, the people of Boston immediately imprisoned Andros with about fifty of his partisans. They were afterwards sent to England for trial, but the Government came to no decision in the case. Afterwards, and by their own authority, the colonies resumed their charters. King William was too much engaged at home, to pay any great attention to American affairs, and the colonists were left in a measure to manage on their own behalf. About this time, Nicholson was Lieutenant-Governor of New York, and a deputy of Andros. However, when James was dethroned, a rich German citizen named Jacob Leisler and a captain of militia riotously put himself at the head of a rabble, and he seized upon the fort of New York. He also took possession of the public money, and constituted himself a military dictator, proclaiming that what he did was for the preservation of the Protestant religion. Leisler had commenced the revolt by refusing to pay his taxes, and chiefly on the ground that the collector was a Catholic. At this time, there were three Jesuit priests in New York, and they had established a Latin School for the teaching of youth. The prejudices of the Protestants were then aroused, and the rumour of Popish plots for their destruction was put into circulation. In 1689, Leisler led an expedition against Albany, to compel the northern settlements to recognise his authority, as Nicholson had fled to England. He also took a vigorous part in opposition to the French and Indians. However, this insubordination was soon overruled by the Home Government, and William III. sent over Colonel Henry Sloughter as Governor of New York. He arrived there in March, 1691. Immediately, Leisler was arrested, together with his son-in-law and Secretary Milbourne. They were afterwards tried for high treason, found guilty, and hanged.[23]

This very same year, the New York Assembly repealed the charter of Liberties, and enacted a Bill of Rights, which gave complete toleration for all Protestant sects, but which excluded Catholics from its scope. When the Revolution took place in 1688, the order of things was again reversed in Maryland. The Puritan faction now spread false and scandalous reports, that the Catholics were engaged in a plot to massacre

[22] See Theodore Dwight, jun., "History of Connecticut," New York, 18mo.

[23] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States." Vol. iii., chap. xix. pp. 50 to 56.

all the Protestant colonists. As a result, the minds of the latter were highly excited. A Puritan named Code organized an Association in Arms for the defence of the Protestant religion. He also raised an insurrection throughout Maryland, in 1689. His adherents marched upon St. Mary's and captured the Fort of St. Inigoe or St. Ignatius. A convention was then called together, and its delegates declared the authority of Lord Baltimore to be forfeited. In the year 1691, the grant to Lord Baltimore was revoked by King William III., who then erected Maryland into a royal province. The capital was removed from St. Mary's, and thenceforth it was fixed at Annapolis. The established religion of the colony was declared to be that agreeing with the Church of England. The Catholics were disfranchised likewise, and thus deprived of those privileges, which the early founders had been willing to share with all their other fellow-citizens.

It is quite surprising, how a belief in witchcraft and sorcery prevailed—especially in New England—at this period. In 1688, the fear of witches created another great popular excitement in Boston, where a panic began in the family of a citizen named John Goodwin, whose children pretended that they had been bewitched by an old Irishwoman. The Reverend Dr. Cotton Mather[24] and other ministers were charged with the investigation of this case. The old woman was found to be a Roman Catholic, who spoke Irish, but who could not say the Lord's prayer, except in Latin. She was adjudged to be a witch, and accordingly she was sentenced to be hanged.

Long before the time of Columbus, Keltic blood, from the Anglo-Briton and Norman Stock, had completely dominated in England and in Scotland. In Ireland also, the aboriginal tribes were still less mixed with Teutonic blood. The early colonists with Keltic elements of race, and afterwards largely increased from Ireland, are unmistakably the source of American heroism, character and prosperity, in a very marked degree. Such results are within the historian's ken and the statistician's Census of our own days, and fail not the researches of ethnologists, to establish their dominance of numbers and of power, in a population of over seventy millions. Previous to the Revolution, no very complete memorial has been transmitted to us, regarding particulars of those emigrations which took place from Europe to America. However, from accessible records, they seem to have been amazingly copious.[25] So early as 1690, one Doherty, an Irish trader from Virginia, had visited the Cherokees. Afterwards, and for a number of years, he lived among them.[26] During the reign of William III. and of Queen Mary, the Woollen trade and manufactures of

[24] He was the son of Increase Mather, while he wrote and preached much. One of his works is intituled: "The Wonders of the Invisible World: being an Account of the Trials of several Witches lately executed in New England, and of several remarkable Curiosities therein occurring." This curious book was published in London in 1693, 4to.

[25] See Rev. J A. Spencer's "History of the United States." Vol. i.

[26] See Ramsey's "Annals of Tennesee."

Ireland being greatly discouraged, several families emigrated. While many of the Catholics removed to France and Spain, the Northern Protestants sought Germany;[27] moreover, it has been estimated, that 3,000 males left Ulster yearly for the American colonies, soon after the beginning of the eighteenth century. About 1660, Robert and Magdalen Pollock, together with their six sons and two daughters, set sail from the County of Donegal, Ireland, for America, and settled in the then colony of Lord Baltimore within Somerset County, Maryland, at a place now known as Dane's Quarter. In America, the name was contracted to Polk.[28] All the sons married and became the progenitors of numerous families. The Carrolls who founded Carrolltown, in Maryland, emigrated from Ireland before 1689,[29] and several names of those, who settled in this colony at an early date, indicate the country of their origin.

Meantime, the French were industriously engaged in spreading their settlements along the southern shores of the St. Lawrence, and especially within the bounds of the present State of Maine. This was then regarded as a sort of neutral and undefined territory; but, equally coveted by the English and French. Baron Vincent de Castine built a fort at Panawiske, an old Indian town on the Penobscot, and he married the daughter of the Sagamore Modockewando. Thus, he had acquired great influence among the Indians. Towards the year 1681, Father Louis Pierre Thury a secular priest, and connected with the Seminary of Quebec, established a mission there among the Indians. With him was associated Father Henri Honore Deschambeault, from 1696 to 1699. During this period also, French missions had been successfully established in various stations along the Northern Lakes and in the Western wilds.[30]

[27] See Arthur Dobbs, "An Essay on the Trade and Improvements of Ireland," Part i., p. 6. Dublin, 1729, 8vo.

[28] From one of the sons were descended President James K. Polk, General Thomas Polk, of Mecklenburg fame, Bishop and Lieutenant-General Leonidas Polk, and others. From another son, descended Governor Charles Polk, of Deleware, and from another, Governor Trusten Polk, of Missouri. From Robert the fifth son of Robert and Magdalen, is descended the artist. This Robert—of Robert and Magdalen—married a Miss Gailette, and had a son Robert, who married Miss Peale, sister of Charles Peale, the founder of Peale's Museum. This latter Robert, father of Charles Peale Polk, was a distinguished naval officer in the French war, and was mortally wounded on board his ship by a splinter during a desperate engagement.—See *Potter's American Monthly, May*, 1876.

[29] Daniel Carroll, a native of Littamourna, in Ireland, was a government clerk in England during the reign of James II., and on emigrating to America, in the latter part of the seventeenth century, he settled in Maryland, at a place afterwards called from his family name Carrollton. By Lord Baltimore he was appointed as agent to receive the rents of that proprietor, while he was constituted judge and registrar of the land office. His son Daniel was born there in 1702, as also his still more celebrated grandson Charles Carroll of Carrollton, signer of the Declaration of Independence. See N. Dwight's "Lives of the Signers of the Declaration of Independence," Maryland, p. 262 Published at New York, 1851, 8vo,

[30] For a very complete account of

While these events were occurring, Penn had been involved in political troubles after his return to England.[31] His province was taken from him, when the Revolution of 1688 had succeeded. Four different times was he arraigned before the judges, and charged by his enemies with being engaged in political and religious intrigues. Nevertheless, he justified himself in such a manner as to escape sentence. One named Fuller had preferred a false accusation against him, and for three years —so violent were party passions—he deemed it necessary to remain in concealment. However, in 1693 Penn demanded an enquiry into his conduct, when, before the King and his council, being examined, he was honourably acquitted.[32] Meantime, his jurisdiction and privileges beyond the Atlantic had been iniquitously sequestrated. Afterwards, Pennsylvania was ruled by Benjamin Fletcher, the Royal Governor of New York, for two years. In April 1693, he assumed this authority, when soon commenced altercations between himself and the Assembly. The members of this latter insisted on the validity of those laws founded on letters-patent, which the new governor declared to be abrogated. The Assembly also resisted the demands made for money, and arrogated to themselves the privilege of originating bills. About this time, dissensions prevailed among the Quakers themselves, and disturbances took place.[33] The rights of the proprietor were at length restored, in 1696. Having lost his first wife, Penn married again. He then made a second visit to America, with his family, resolving to settle there in 1699. At the demand of the people, who wished for greater political privileges, he granted a new constitution. Meantime, the English minister had introduced a bill to the House of Lords which was designed to annul the charter of Penn, and to vest the local governments of America in royal patronage and authority. After a stay of two years, Penn felt himself obliged to leave in 1701 for England, where he hoped to counteract the injustice sought to be perpetrated. Notwithstanding some favours he received from Queen Anne, the extraordinary expenses he had incurred, in the enterprise of establishing his colony and of protecting his rights, overwhelmed him with debt, during the closing years of his life.[34] James Logan of Lurgan in

these missions, the reader may be referred to the learned and researchful work of John Gilmary Shea, "The Catholic Church in Colonial Days," Book iii. "The Catholic Church in French Territory," chap. i. to v., pp. 216 to 343.

[31] The character of William Penn is best revealed in his collected works—comprising a great number of small tracts—and which have been published in folio, A.D. 1726, preceded by a life of the author. His writings—under the title of Choice Works—have been reproduced in London, A.D. 1782, in four volumes.

[32] See Rev. Dr. Jeremy Belknap's "Biographies of the Early Discoverers," Vol. ii., William Penn.

[33] See "Account of great Divisions among the Quakers of Pennsylvania, 1692, 1693," Trials of Peter Ross, George Keith, &c. London, 1693.

[34] He died in England, the 30th of July, 1718, aged seventy-four. He was buried at Jordan, Buckinghamshire. See J. Marsillac's "Vie de Guillaume Penn," Paris, 1791, two volumes, 8vo. This biography was translated into German, by J. Friedrich, and published at Strasburg, 1793, in 8vo.

Ireland, and who had accompanied William Penn to Pennsylvania in 1699, became governor of that colony for two years after the death of Penn.[35] He enriched its infant capital of Philadelphia, by bequeathing to it his own fine library;[36] while he also left an honoured name to posterity, owing to his very tolerant rule over Irish Catholic immigrants, and because of his benificent acts when placed in authority.

For a long period after the immigration of European colonists and adventurers had set in, under the different claims of discovery and conquest, North America was held by a species of tenancy in common between England, France and Spain. In a country of such vast extent, where the population was sparse, where localities were unexplored, and where, from the very nature of things, the extent of the boundaries claimed by those different powers could not be ascertained with anything like geographical precision, misunderstandings, jealousies and collisions between them became unavoidable. Nor could diplomacy settle these differences in all cases. Were the colonists allowed to form independent governments of their own, it is probable, an appeal to arms might often have been avoided; however, complications among the great powers of Europe, to whom they respectively owed fealty, were only aggravated by disturbances arising among their colonial subjects, and which were solved by cabinets, ignorant of the real causes and situation, or of the remedies requisite to arrive at a peaceful solution. Immediate exploration of the Lower Mississippi was interrupted, through a war carried on by the Iroquois Indians and the British colonies against the province of Canada, from 1689 to 1696.

However, fully alive to the advantages of further colonization in the New World, the French Government again fitted out two ships, under the command of the brave and able commandant Lemoine D'Iberville and the Marquis Châteaumorand.[37] These sailed from Rochefort, on the 17th of October 1698. They reached San Domingo on the 11th of December following, sighted the coast of Florida on the 12th of January 1699, and after some explorations along the southern bounds of North America, D'Iberville entered the mouth of the gigantic Mississippi, on the 2nd of March. Châteaumorand followed him at a distance, but he was despatched to St. Domingo with news of the recent explorations. Lemoine D'Iberville ascended the river, so far as the present site of Donaldsonville, in the state of Louisiana. There building a fort in the Bay of Biloxi, and leaving it in command of his brother Lemoine de Bienville, then Lemoine D'Iberville returned to France.[38]

[35] Madame Debora Logan published the correspondence of William Penn with James Logan, to which she has added notes.

[36] For a view of the old Loganian Library, 1745-50, and the history of its foundation, the reader is referred to "Public Libraries in the United States of America, their History, Condition and Management," Part i., pp. 5 to 9. Washington, Government Printing Office, 1876, 8vo. Special Report, Department of the Interior, Bureau of Education.

[37] For an account of this expedition, the reader is referred to Le Pere Charlevoix's "Histoire de la Nouvelle-France."

[38] See an account of this celebrated man, who was born at Montreal,

An English ship entered the Mississippi soon after these events, but was met by Bienville seventy-five miles from the sea; this afforded sufficient proof of the prior right of France to the discovery. Not long afterwards, one Tonti and twenty Canadians, who had been stationed in the Illinois, descended the great river. To their intense and mutual rejoicing, greetings and congratulations took place between them and their fellow-countrymen, who had entered the Mississippi through the waters of the Atlantic.

The discovery of the Mississippi by the Canadian French gave France a conventional claim to navigate the great river and its principal tributaries, as also to occupy and settle in the country traversed by them. Then France was in possession of the Canadas, and she claimed the country bordering on the Mississippi southwardly: that region having been explored by persons who were her subjects, and having been partially settled under her auspices, she commenced by endeavouring to connect her Canadian with her southern possessions. To do this, a chain of defences had to be established; and this, under the superintendence of her civil and military engineers, was effected through means of military posts. These extended along the lakes, while the Ohio and Mississippi rivers were regarded as important natural lines for communication and supply.

While the march of exploration continued, Catholic colonists were among the first to land, to erect the standard of the cross, and to select from the Church calendar the names for districts, towns and rivers. Thus have we the river of the Holy Cross, the river of St. Mary, the rapids of Sault Ste. Marie, the St. Lawrence River, the Sacramento and Trinity Rivers, Corpus Christi, Santa Fé, St. Louis, St. Joseph, St. Augustine, San Francisco, San Antonio, with many similar Catholic denominations. The French and Spanish missionaries were active in extending the triumph of the Gospel, from Canada to Florida, and from the eastern and southern coasts to those of distant California. Dominicans, Jesuits and Franciscans laboured in establishing missions among the various Indian tribes; schools were even opened for their instruction, where they were taught to read and write,[39] while their several native languages were acquired by the European priests, and specially with a view to impart a knowledge of the great truths of Christianity to those children of the forests and of the prairies.

Again, are we obliged to notice a superstition of this period, and which was alike disgraceful to civilization and to religious feeling.

Canada, 1642—where his father, a French-Norman gentleman Charles Lemoine de Longueil, had settled in 1640—and who died at Havana on board his ship Le Juste, July 9th, 1706, in Leon Guerin's work, "Les Marins illustres de la France, et Les Navigateurs Francais," two volumes, Roy. 8vo. Paris.

[39] Documents among the Spanish archives prove this assertion. See John Gilmary Shea's article, "The Catholic Church in American History," *American Quarterly Review*, Vol. i., No. 1., pp. 149, 150, January, 1876. Philadelphia, Hardy and Mahony, publishers, Royal 8vo.

The Revd. Mr. Parzis of Salem village, now Danvers, had a daughter and a niece, who accused two friendless old women and a squaw named Tituba, with having bewitched them. The three accused persons were accordingly sent to prison. This mania broke out in the latter end of 1691.[40] On the mere word of children, or through the malicious accusations of enemies, a number of women and a few men were thrown into jail, accused of being witches and wizards. Even the Governor of Massachusetts Sir William Phipps shared in this delusion.[41] A town committee was then formed to search for witches, while a special court was organized at Salem to try the accused. Some of the witnesses swore, that they had been thrown into spasms, by glances from the evil eyes of the witches and wizards; also, that, they had been tormented by spectres and by strange visions. Meantime, Cotton Mather continued his frantic denunciations on this subject from the pulpit. Under the influence of fear or frenzy, some of the accused tried to save their lives by stating they had meetings with the devil, and even some gave the names of neighbours they pretended to have seen at those interviews. Some pretended they had ridden through the air on broomsticks. In a single year, one hundred and fifty persons were in prison, and charged solely with witchcraft, while twenty persons had been executed for that offence, and eight more were under sentence of death. Many who were suspected and accused fled away to distant parts of the country. This delusion and reign of terror at length disappeared. Some of the judges and ministers—among these the Rev. Mr. Parzis—acknowledged the erroneous notions under which they had acted, and those prisoners in confinement were accordingly released.[42] The Governor proclaimed a general pardon, for all persons who had been prosecutors, lest public dissensions might arise from retributive proceedings against the accusers and their witnesses. Afterwards, it was found impossible to revive prosecutions that had excited such painful remembrances.[43]

For some time, mutual jealousies had estranged the French and English colonists in America. Aggressions and reprisals were constantly recurring, especially in the northern provinces, where both parties had engaged Indian allies for their hostile purposes. Deplorable massacres were perpetrated, while many settlements were ravaged and destroyed.[44] This led to a war, when King William ascended the throne. The French Governor of New France Count Frontenac led parties of French against the colonists, who received very little support from England

[40] Some of the most extraordinary proceedings ever recorded afterwards took place, in which fear, superstition, credulity and vindictiveness were mingled. See Daniel Neal's "History of New England," Vol. ii., chap. xii., pp. 124 to 170.

[41] See Mather's "Life of Sir William Phipps."

[42] These extraordinary delusions are set forth, and in a more detailed manner, in George Bancroft's "History of the United States, from the Discovery of the American Continent," Vol. iii., chap. xix., pp. 34 to 99.

[43] See James Grahame's "History of North America," Book ii., chap. v.

[44] See Daniel Neal's "History of New England," Vol. ii., chap. x.

during this struggle. However, Massachusetts, Plymouth, Connecticut and New York had organized an expedition, which was placed under the command of Fitz-John Winthrop, son to the Governor of Connecticut. Moreover, Massachusetts had fitted out a fleet, which was commanded by Sir William Phipps. The land expedition was led by Schuyler with a party of Mohawks to attack Montreal, but this attempt was frustrated by Frontenac, then seventy-four years of age. He led an army against the attacking party, and it was obliged to retreat in 1696.[45] Meantime, Sir William Phipps ravaged the coasts of Acadia and other French settlements. On the 25th of May 1690, Phipps attacked Port Royal, which surrendered to him,[46] it being in no capacity to stand a siege. With additional vessels—numbering in all between thirty and forty—and about two thousand men, he then sailed up the St. Lawrence to surprise Quebec. He did not arrive there until October 5th, and it was then too late in the season. Moreover, Frontenac had reached Quebec before him, and that English attempt proved to be a complete failure. The vessels were obliged to set sail again for Boston; but stormy weather came on, and the fleet was scattered, when some of the ships were wrecked or lost, while others were blown off to the West Indies. Those that remained in company with Sir William reached Boston in November. The government was utterly unprepared for this result, and having no money to pay the forces on their return, these were in a state of mutiny. An experiment was made to issue paper notes, but these were greatly depreciated in value at the time. Wherefore, Sir William Phipps did not remain long in Boston, and he embarked for England, to urge another expedition against Canada.[47]

On the borders, a war of reprisals was fiercely waged. One Colonel Church led an expedition from New England into Maine, where he attacked the Indians with some success. He killed numbers and made prisoners of many others. Some of these he put to death, not even sparing women and children. The Indians in turn retaliated.[48] Owing however to French influence, they were instructed only to make prisoners of those they surprised, and to conduct them into Canada, where they were sold as servants, but otherwise they were kindly treated by their masters and mistresses. In travelling through the forests, those prisoners suffered great hardships and exposure, especially the women and children; for their long marches were often made in the depth of winter. The New England settlements on the French borders were almost wholly abandoned. Even in the interior,

[45] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States" Vol. iii., chap. xxi., pp. 189 to 191.

[46] On this occasion, he carried off the two Catholic Priests residing there, the Rev. Louis Petit and the Rev. Claude Frouve. The former was brought to Boston, which one of his associates the Rev. M. Goffroy had previously visited in 1687, on his way to France.

[47] See Hutchinson's "History of the Colony of Massachusetts-Bay," Vol. i., chap. iii., pp. 397 to 403.

[48] See Hutchinson's "History of the Province of Massachusetts-Bay," Vol. ii., chap. i., pp. 94 to 96.

the houses were barricaded, through apprehension of an Indian surprise, and when the New Englanders went out to field work, the men took their muskets with them, to be prepared for any emergency. Although both nations suffered severely, while carrying on those raids, yet neither gained any solid advantage. At length, peace was concluded between France and England at Ryswick, in September 1697, and this for a time ended war in the colonies. In America, France retained all Hudson's Bay, and all places she possessed at the beginning of the War, besides Canada and the Valley of the Mississippi. However, the exact boundary lines on the colonial frontiers were reserved as subjects for wrangling among the commissioners;[49] nor, under the circumstances then existing, could it have been an easy matter to determine their exact demarcation.

---

## CHAPTER VII.

French Settlements on the Mississippi—Missionary Enterprise—Intolerant Laws in New York—Breaking out of War between England, France and Spain, in 1702—Rebellion in North Carolina—French Western Colonization—Irish Eastern Colonization—Events in New England, Maryland, New York and the Carolinas—French Enterprise in Louisiana.

Soon after the termination of that war, which ended at the close of the seventeenth century, Louis de Baude Comte de Frontenac,[1] then Governor-General of New France, proceeded to occupy the Valley of the Mississippi. In 1697, he had located colonies at several points, both north and south. This able and brave man, notwithstanding his advanced age, continued to manifest extraordinary energy of mind and activity of body, in forwarding the prosperity of the Canadian French. Various efforts were made to gain over the Five Nations on his side, but English influences were strongly exercised to retain them as allies. He had usually to contend against them in war, while supported by other Canadian Indians. When seventy-six years of age, he conducted an expedition against Western New York, and having obtained some successes over the Onondages and Oneidas, his army returned to Montreal.[2]

[49] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. iii., chap. xxi., pp. 191, 192.

[1] He was born in France, 1620. He served in Holland, under the Prince of Orange, and at the age of twenty-three, he was colonel of the Normandy regiment. He was distinguished in various battles and sieges. Having been wounded several times, he was raised to the rank of brigadier, and having gained a high military reputation, in 1672 he was made Governor of Canada, with all the other countries then designated as New France. In 1682, he was recalled to France, but the necessities of the State caused him to return in 1689 to Canada. See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. ii., pp. 553, 554.

[2] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. iii., chap. xxi., pp. 190, 191.

While the Franciscan and Jesuit Fathers heroically prosecuted their Indian missionary toils in Canada [3] and in other parts of North America, many among the Hurons, the Algonquins, the Chippewas, the Abenakis, the Onondagas, the Cayugas, the Oneidas, the Mohawks, the Sioux, Miamis, the Illinois, the Pottowattomies, the Sacs and the Foxes, with other aboriginal tribes, were added to the fold of Christ.[4] Those settlements formed in the Illinois country east of the Mississippi, by Father La Salle, were annually on the increase. Fearless and energetic Canadian adventurers, who had heard of the fertile lands and of a more temperate climate, were desirous of proceeding there. Before the close of the seventeenth century, "Old Kaskaskia" was known, not only through all the Illinois country—of which it was for several years the capital—but throughout Canada; while those Catholic mission posts established by La Salle had grown into parishes. The tide of emigration, and the fair fame of the country, introduced numbers of French blood and race among the native Indians.[5] After the death of Father Gabriel Druilletes, April 8th 1661, we find the names of Fathers James and Vincent Bigot, Julian Binnetean, Louis Pierre Thury and Henri Honore Deschambeault, as serving the missions in Maine, from 1687 to 1699. In the West, Marquette had already established a mission; Joutel founded a garrison at Fort St. Louis in 1687; while throughout the territory of Illinois, French influence prevailed. Until the beginning of the eighteenth century, settlements in New France were confined entirely to the eastern side of the Mississippi; but, reports made by a few wandering explorers, that both gold and silver were abundant in those regions—now called Missouri and Arkansas—induced the French to turn their attention towards them.[6] Accordingly, towards the close of the eighteenth century, Count de Frontenac prepared an expedition to visit the mines of Upper Louisiana.[7] A fort was there erected and settlements were commenced. However, prejudices and jealousies of the savages were soon excited. Their demonstrations of hostility induced the French to abandon that part of the country, without making any permanent settlements. Still, motives of national policy and prospective advantages urged them to select particular sites, where strongholds should be built. Soon were established military and trading posts at Detroit, Peoria, Vincennes, Cahokia, Kaskaskia and Natchez, while Canadians flocked thither in various capacities.

After the peace of Ryswick, misunderstandings and disputes regard-

[3] See "Relation de ce qui s'est passè en la Nouvelle-France és Annèes 1664 et 1665, envoyée au R. P. Provincial de la Province de France." Paris, 1666, 8vo.

[4] See John Gilmary Shea's "History of the Catholic Missions among the Indian Tribes of the United States, 1529—1854." New York, 12mo.

[5] See Bacqueville de la Potheric's "Histoire de l'Amérique Septentrionale," Paris, 1722, four tomes, 12mo.

[6] See John Gilmary Shea's "Early Voyages up and down the Mississippi." New York, 4to.

[7] This able man closed his adventurous career at Quebec, 1698.

ing their respective boundaries still disturbed the French Canadians and the English Colonists. That line between New France and New York was one difficult of adjustment. While the Iroquois deemed themselves to be an independent confederacy, the English envoy claimed their lands as belonging to the province of New York; and, he even asserted, that those countries to the West so far as Mackinaw belonged to England. The French denied this claim, however, as the influence of the Jesuits, who had missions among the Five Nations, was sufficient to turn their sympathies in that direction.[8] Meantime, Louis Hector Calliéres Bonnevue[9] had been appointed Governor-General of Canada in 1699, and he maintained unimpaired the ascendency acquired by Frontenac, having founded Detroit, and having secured the friendship of the Western tribes by negociations, while he checked the hostile demonstrations of the Iroquois.

It is to be regretted, that the bigoted policy and intolerant spirit of the old country found imitation in the legislative colonial enactment of the new. In the year 1700, Richard Coote known as Lord Bellamont, an Irish Peer,[10] who had been appointed Governor of New York in 1695 by King William III., influenced the Assembly to pass an Act declaring, that every Jesuit or other popish priest coming into the province should be liable to perpetual imprisonment.[11] The pretext was, that the Catholic priests favoured French interests.[12] If a priest broke jail, and was retaken, the penalty was death. A fine of £200, with three days in the pillory, was the punishment decreed for harbouring a priest. Again, by a law passed in 1702, slaves were forbidden to meet together in greater number than three, except when assembled for labour. The manumission of slaves was discouraged by a heavy fine. The slaves were also disqualified from bearing evidence against any body but slaves; while no Indian, negro or mulatto, even when free, could hold or possess lands, tenements or hereditaments. Although by law, masters were enjoined to baptize their slaves, and were encouraged to do so by a provision, that their baptism should not entitle them to freedom; yet, in legislation, they are distinguished from Christians, and classed with the Indians.[13] During Bellamont's administration, piracy greatly prevailed on the seas surrounding colonial possessions, and this kind of lawless privateering was supposed to have been greatly encouraged by residents along the coast. One of the duties assigned to him was to suppress this custom; still, as none of the King's ships

[8] See Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. iii., chap. xxi., pp. 192 to 194.

[9] He was born in France, 1639, and he died at Quebec, May 26th, 1703. See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. i., p. 506.

[10] Born in 1636. He died in New York, on the 5th of March, 1701. See Frederick De Peyster's "Life and Administration of Richard Earl of Bellamont." New York, 1879, 8vo.

[11] See John O'Kane Murray's "History of the Catholic Church in the United States."

[12] See Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. iii., chap. xxi., p. 193.

[13] See James Grahame's "History of North America." Book v., chap. ii.

could be placed at his disposal before leaving England, he had a sanction to accomplish the matter by private enterprise. Wherefore, he formed a company and sent out a sloop under command of William Kidd,[14] an adventurer who turned pirate himself. He was finally captured, and sent to England for trial; and in 1701 he was there executed, with nine of his accomplices.

The King of Spain Charles II.[15] had destined Philip[16] Duke of Anjou to be his successor, before his death, which occurred on the 1st of November 1700. This arrangement greatly alarmed William III.,[17] King of England and Stadtholder of Holland, who feared the alliance of those two powerful kingdoms of France and Spain, directed by the celebrated and enterprising monarch Louis XIV.[18] Alliances were sought by both kings, and mutual jealousies or ambitions caused the breaking out of a devastating war, which commenced in Italy and extended over a great part of Europe, as also to Asia and America. Organized on a gigantic scale, before hostilities had well commenced, however, William III. died, and his sister-in-law Queen Anne ascended the English throne.[19] The celebrated John Churchill, afterwards Duke of Marlborough,[20] was generalissimo of her armies and those of her allies on the Continent of Europe, where he contended ably and with varying success against the forces of France and Spain. England was assisted by the forces of Holland and of Austria, and the object of this tremendous contest, called the War of the Grand Alliance of the Succession, was expressed by the House of Commons to be for preserving

[14] He was a Scotchman by birth, and it is thought a native of Greenock.

[15] He reigned from the year 1665, when an infant, to that of his death. See "Spain under Charles II. Extracts from the correspondence of Alexander Stanhope, British Minister at Madrid from 1690 to 1700." London, 1840, 8vo.

[16] He ascended the throne of Spain as King Philip V., in 1700, and reigned to 1746. See Targe's "Histoire de l'Avenement de la Maison de Bourbon au Trône d'Espagne." Paris, 1776, in six tomes, 12mo.

[17] He reigned from February 13th, 1689, to the 8th of March, 1702. See Walter Harris' "History of the Life and Reign of William-Henry, Prince of Nassau and Orange, Stadholder of the United Provinces, King of England, Scotland, France and Ireland, &c. Dublin, 1749, folio.

[18] This celebrated monarch, born in 1638, came to the throne of France at a very early age, and reigned seventy-two years, having died at Versailles, September 1st, 1715, at the age of seventy-seven. The chief events of his life and reign are set forth in classical French by Voltaire, in his most interesting national work, "Siecle de Louis XIV." Of course his actions are the subject-matter for many French histories and memoirs during the last two centuries, and they may be largely gleaned from "Œuvres de Louis XIV.," in six volumes, 8vo. Paris, 1806.

[19] Her reign continued from March 8th, 1702, to August 1st, 1714. See Macpherson's "Original Papers containing the Secret History of Great Britain from the Restoration to the Accession of the House of Hanover," in two volumes, 4to. London, 1772. Also Earl Stanhope's "History of England comprising the Reign of Queen Anne until the Peace of Utrecht." London, 1871, 8vo.

[20] His career is set forth in William Coxe's "Memoirs of John, Duke of Marlborough," in three volumes. London 1818, 1819.

the liberties of Europe, and for reducing the exorbitant power of France.[21] The allied French and Spaniards in America engaged in war with England and her colonies A.D. 1702. By this time, the French had established posts at different advantageous positions along the northern lakes and even so far as the distant Mississippi. Along its course, forts had been built. The Spaniards likewise were in possession of Florida. The Five Nations were at peace with both France and England. By a mutual contract of neutrality, those Indians were favourably placed for defending the north-western parts of New York.[22] The French had formed treaties of alliance with most of the Indian tribes to the west. The English-American colonists now found themselves hemmed in on all sides, and they received little aid from England. However, in September 1702, an expedition from South Carolina anticipated hostilities, and under the command of Governor James Moore, his vessels appeared before St. Augustine.[23] Two thousand pounds had been devoted to defray all expenses, while six hundred militia and six hundred Indians were embodied for the enterprise. Colonel Daniel was engaged to co-operate by land. The Spanish garrison had stored the castle with four months' provisions, being apprized of the design. The invaders wanted battering artillery to besiege it, and Daniel now set out for Jamaica to procure some, but he narrowly escaped capture. The appearance of two Spanish men-of-war from Havanna at the mouth of the harbour terrified the Governor, who abandoned his own ships, and then fled without delay to Carolina. As a result of this rash undertaking, the colony had to bear a debt of six thousand pounds, to be discharged by bills of credit, redeemable in three years, out of a duty on liquors, skins and furs.[24]

In the year 1704, an Act was passed to prevent the increase of Popery in the province of Maryland, and it was made an offence to celebrate Mass in any but private houses. The priests were forbidden to receive converts into their church, or to discharge any other duties of their ministry. Moreover, Catholics were forbidden to teach. They were also taxed in the double, as compared with assessments levied on Protestants. Another insulting enactment prevented them approaching within one hundred yards of the State House. In that land, which the Catholics had opened to Protestants flying from fanatical persecu-

[21] Thus stated, in the Parliamentary History, Vol. vi., p. 4. See Henry Hallam's "Constitutional History of England from the Accession of Henry VII. to the Death of George II." Vol ii., chap. xvi., p. 562. Edition of 1827, London, in two vols. 4to.

[22] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States." Vol. iii., chap. xxi., p. 209.

[23] See Rev. Dr. William Henry Foote's "Sketches of North Carolina, Historical and Biographical." New York, 1846, 8vo.

[24] See David Ramsey's "History of of South Carolina, from its Settlement in 1670 to the year 1808," Vol. i., p. 129. This work was first published at Trenton, 1785, in two 8vo. vols., under the title "History of the Revolution of South Carolina from a British Province to an Independent State." This was also translated into French by Lefort, and published at Londres et Paris, 1787.

tions themselves, the Catholic inhabitant was now the sole victim to Anglican intolerance.[25] Notwithstanding those penal statutes, Catholic missionaries continued to labour among their respective flocks, while the faith was zealously preserved by the members of their different congregations. With good judgment, and on a fine site, the present Baltimore was laid out in 1729 as a town. It gradually grew to be erected into a city in 1797.[26]

In 1705, French explorers ascended the Missouri, to the mouth of Kansas River. There, they met with kind and hospitable treatment from the Indians, whose forbearance on this occasion soon obliterated the remembrance of that opposition offered by the savages on the Mississippi. The war in Europe at this time demanded all the resources of France. It required likewise all their attention and a strain on the people, both in old France and in "New France." Unable to keep up the usual advances, Louis XIV. had allowed his colony of Louisiana to become reduced, almost to the last degree of penury. To contribute either men or money for its support was out of the question. Still, the king was intent upon keeping Louisiana from the hands of his enemies. This country, it was believed, must contain inexhaustible mines of gold and silver. When opened, these ought not only place the colony upon a permanent basis; but, it was calculated, they should be more than sufficient to remove the great war-debt of France. During the reign of Louis XIV. this heavy burden had increased to upwards of two thousand millions of livres.

In the Carolinas a mixed population had settled, and factions prevailed during the latter part of the seventeenth and the early portion of the eighteenth century. While the proprietors were inclined to introduce and propagate the doctrines of the English episcopal church, the great body of the people—denominated by the oligarchical party, "Quakers, atheists, deists, and other evil-disposed persons"—strenuously resisted their pretentions. In 1700, James Moore[27] was governor of South Carolina. The governor of this province usually appointed his deputy to rule in North Carolina. However, in both divisions anarchy generally prevailed, and between the proprietaries and the people, it was found to be a difficult task to settle their differences. The son of Governor Moore[28]—also called James—had early acquired renown in his campaigns against the Indians. In 1702, he undertook an expedition against the Spaniards, at St.

[25] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. iii., chap. xix., p. 32.

[26] See "An Historical View of the Government of Maryland, from its Colonization to the present Day." Baltimore, 1831.

[27] He was a descendant, it is said, of the celebrated Roger Moore, and born in Ireland about 1640. He emigrated to America in 1665, and settled at Charlestown, S.C. He died there in 1721. See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. iv., p. 381.

[28] He was born in Charlestown, S C., in 1667, and he died near Cape Fear, N.C., November 10th, 1740. See *ibid.*

Augustine in Florida, which was unsuccessful. Again, in 1703, he embodied a force of fifty whites and one thousand pagan Indians ;[29] he then marched against the Appalachees,[30] who were Christian Indians, instructed and baptized by the Spanish missionaries. Those had been civilized, and they had formed settlements as farmers and herdsmen in middle Florida.[31] Their villages were then burned, the churches were pillaged and destroyed, while the converts, numbering two thousand, were forcibly removed to Georgia.

Very early in the eighteenth century, Irish immigrants began to seek their homes in the colonies.[32] Want of access to local United States histories and family records prevents more than merely a meagre enumeration and an account of particular persons who are celebrated, or of the general numbers who entered the country as actual settlers. The following incidents of early colonization serve only to illustrate the ubiquitousness of Irish-American life in the colonies. A free and a noble-hearted Irishman, named Henry Wileman, owned a patent for three hundred thousand acres, granted in 1709, and he commenced the early settlement of Wilemantown, New York.[33] The first settlers on the Shenandoah Valley were from Ireland. One of these named John Lewis had a bloody encounter there with an oppressive land-holder under whom he was lessee, and he fled in the first instance for refuge to Portugal. He brought his wife Mary Lynn, having four sons and one daughter, when he settled on a creek running into the middle forks of Shenandoah River. His residence was a few miles below Stanton, standing on Lewis Creek, so called after the first settler. He located land in different places, and he usually made judicious selections. Much about the same time, John Mackey took up his residence at Buffalo Gap, while John Salling settled at the forks of James River, below the Natural Bridge.[34] Among the early settlers in Newburgh, New York, were the following Irish emigrants, Wauch, Sly, McCollum, Denniston, Wear, Burnet, Ireland, Batie, Crowell, and Ross.[35] About the year 1710, numerous Irish immigrants began to settle about the Blue Ridge Mountains, in the present counties of Patrick and Rockbridge. Several Virginian localities, such as the two Rivers, Mayo,

[29] See John Lawson's "History of Carolina, with its Natural History, Journal of a Thousand Miles' Travels among the Indians from South to North Carolina, Dictionary of their Languages." London, 1714, sm. 4to.

[30] In George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. iii., there is a historic Dissertation on the Aborigines east of the Mississippi, and a Map setting forth their geographical distribution. See Chap. xxii. pp. 235 to 318.

[31] See Charlevoix's "Histoire de la Nouvelle France," Tome iii., p. 473

[32] In 1672, Sir William Petty estimated the Irish population at 1,320,000. In the beginning of the last century, the inhabitants had increased to over 2,000,000, and of this number, several made their way to America.

[33] See Eager's "History of Orange County, New York," pp. 260, 261.

[34] See Rev. William Henry Foote's "Sketches Historical and Biographical of the Presbyterian Church in Virginia." Published at Philadelphia, in 8vo. First Series, 1849, Second Series, 1855.

[35] See Eager's "History of Orange County, New York." p. 92.

McGaheysville, Healys-town, Kennedys-town, Lynchburg, McFarlands-town, and Kinsale, are undoubtedly of Irish origin; while the McDowells, McDuffys, McGruders and Breckenridges, with several other families, came from Ireland.[36] About the year 1711 or 1712, an eminent preacher among the Quakers came from Ireland, and settled in New Garden, Chester County, Pennsylvania. He travelled much in their service being greatly esteemed and loved.[37] One of the original settlers, in Newbury Colony of Massachusetts, and named John Kelly, was of Irish descent. Many of his descendants are found in New Hampshire, as also in most of the New England and other States.[38] An eminent preacher among the Quakers, named Thomas Lightfoot, came from Ireland in 1716. He was much beloved for his piety and virtues. He died at an advanced age, A.D. 1725, at New Garden, in Pennsylvania.[39] The first settlement in Kinawha County, Virginia, was made by an Irishman named Kelly, and after him it was called Kelly's Creek, twenty miles above Charleston.[40] The first Presbyterian minister, who regularly settled in Virginia, was a Mr. Craig, born August 17th, 1709, in the parish of Donagar, County of Antrim, Ireland.[41] A very large emigration from the North of Ireland to Pennsylvania took place, between the years 1720 and 1730. The emigrants at once pushed on to the frontiers of Chester County, and they settled along Chicques, Alungo, Swatara, and Paxtang Creeks, in the township of Donegal.[42] The town of Dublin, New Hampshire, was named from the metropolis of Ireland. Most probably many—if not most—of its earliest citizens hailed from the latter city. In a petition for incorporation, it is described as a tract of land, commonly called and known by the name of Dublin or Monadock.[43] In the year 1729, several Longford families took shipping at Dublin, and sailed with a brutal mariner, Captain Rymer. He refused to land them, until he extorted extra payment, and then he set them ashore at Cape Cod,

[36] See Thomas D'Arcy McGee's "History of the Irish Settlers in North America," chap. ii., p. 26, Boston, 8vo.

[37] See Robert Proud's "History of Pennsylvania, from 1681 till after the Year 1742." An edition appeared in 1797, and in 1798, at Philadelphia, in two vols. 8vo.

[38] See Coffin's "History of Newbury."

[39] See Proud's "History of Pennsylvania."

[40] Among the earliest settlers were the Morrisses, whose descendants afterwards formed a tenth of the population of the county. Joseph Carroll, John Young, Andrew Donnelly, Michael Shee were also very early settlers For many years they subsisted chiefly on buffalo, bear, elk, deer, raccoon meat and Indian corn, broken in stone mortars. See "Historical Collections of Virginia," for an account.

[41] See Foote's "Sketches Historical and Biographical of the Presbyterian Church in Virginia."

[42] The following are some of the names mentioned, Daunport, Cartridge, Baily, Gordon, Harris, Burt, Hendricks, Galbraith, Croghan, Lowry, McGinty, &c. The two latter travelled Kentucky both ways, and explored that territory before Gist made his appearance south of the Ohio. See Potter's *American Monthly*, for March, 1875.

[43] See "History of Dublin, New Hampshire," p. 13.

whence some of them moved to the banks of the beautiful Hudson River. Charles Clinton [44] was one of these, and even then, he had two sons [45] and a grandson,[46] who were destined to become distinguished historical characters, in the subsequent annals of New York. So early as 1730, we find in the interior of the State of Pennsylvania, townships called Derry, Donegal, Tyrone and Coleraine, to indicate districts, whence the settlers came from the old country. And, it is remarkable, that for the year ending December 1729, while only 267 English and Welsh, 43 Scotch, and 343 Germans, had arrived at the port of Philadelphia, no less than 5,655 Irish landed there [47]—nearly nine early Irish immigrants to one from all the other European nationalities.[48]

During the latter part of the seventeenth century, the Indians of Maine, resenting the occupation of their lands by English settlers, took revenge by massacre and burning their houses.[49] The New Englanders sent parties of armed men against those Indians, but seldom succeeded in reaching them in the woods which they held.[50] Several inroads on New England were made by the French and by the Indians at a later period. Some towns and villages were burned, while many of the colonists were killed.[51] Although the French priests, naturally attached to the interests and honour of their nation, sought by every means to restrain such excesses; still the ferocity of their savage converts could not always be restrained, especially on their war expeditions. However, the people of New England attributed very generally those marauding excursions, to the agency of the fathers living among their foes. The Indians in Maine naturally felt indignant that any encroachment on their lands should be made. The Abenakis there had long been Christians, while the French priests maintained churches and flourishing missions on the Penobscot and on the Kennebec. Adjoining the latter river, there was a settlement at Norridgewock. For nearly thirty years, it was under the direction of the Jesuit Father Sebastian Rasles.[52] In the year 1705, a party of New Englanders had burned the church and village of Norridgewock in Maine, but these were soon rebuilt.

Meanwhile, the needy and profligate Edward Hyde [53] Lord Cornbury had been sent out in 1702, as Governor of New York and New Jersey; [54] but, he was charged with appropriating money to his own

[44] He was born in the County of Longford, Ireland, in 1690, and he died in Orange Country, N.Y. November 19th, 1773.

[45] These were General George Clinton, and General James Clinton.

[46] See Hoozack's "Memoir of De Witt Clinton," New York, 1829, 8vo.

[47] Gordon's "History," pp. 207, 208,

[48] See Holme's "Annals of America," Vol. i.

[49] See William Hubbard's "Narrative of the Indian Wars in New England." Boston, 1775.

[50] See Daniel Neal's "History of New England," Vol. ii., chap. xiii., pp. 171 to 191.

[51] See Hutchinson's "History of the Province of Massachusetts-Bay," Vol. ii., chap. ii., pp. 134 to 147.

[52] See Charlevoix's "Histoire de la Nouvelle France," Tome ii.

[53] He was a kinsman to Queen Anne, being grandson of Lord Chancellor Clarendon, her grand-father on the mother's side.

[54] The proprietors had recently surrendered its government to the crown.

use, which the Assembly of New York had raised at his instance, for the erecting of batteries at the Narrows. He also continued to charge enormous fees, while he demanded money repeatedly, and then misapplied it. At the expense of other sects, he sought to establish Protestant episcopalianism in every quarter of his province. Soon a bitter quarrel arose between himself and the Assembly. The members passed a resolution, "That the imposing and levying of any moneys upon Her Majesty's subjects of this colony, under any pretence or colour whatsoever without their consent in General Assembly, is a grievance, and a violation of the people's property." At length, the united complaints of New York and New Jersey induced the Queen to recall him in 1706.

An expedition had been fitted out at Havanna, conjointly by the French and Spanish governments, to take possession of Carolina. It was placed under the command of M. Le Feboure, captain of a French frigate, having four other armed vessels and eight hundred men to second the effort. Aware of these preparations, Sir Nathaniel Johnson the Governor began to erect works of defence about the harbour of Charlestown, where the enemy was expected to land. In 1706, while approaching the place by sea, a force of militia and Indians had been collected for its defence. The French and Spaniards attacked Charlestown three several times. They were repulsed however by the inhabitants, who captured a French frigate, with a number of their men.[55] An expedition was fitted out likewise by Governor Dudley of Massachusetts and New Hampshire in 1707, to ravage the settlements of Acadia and to take the French fort at Port Royal. Connecticut contributed her quota towards the 1,000 men, who sailed on the 13th of May from Nantasket, in twenty-three transports under convoy with two ships of war. Under the command of Colonel March, they reached Port Royal in a few days. This attempt proved to be a failure, for on reconnoitring the place, it was deemed too strong for any hostile assault, and the troops that had landed there again re-embarked, having spent ten days in fruitless parade about the fortress. A similar hostile enterprise was planned the following year, and the English ministry having promised to send five regiments of regular troops, twelve hundred men raised in Massachusetts and Rhode Island were held in readiness to sail from Boston for Quebec. The colonies southwards were expected to furnish fifteen hundred men, to march by way of Lake Champlain against Montreal. After waiting many months for the arrival of the British troops, and learning at last, that the necessity for supporting the great European war had obliged England to send them to Portugal, the colonists found it impracticable to continue longer in arms, and that project was then abandoned. Meanwhile the Irish Catholic settlers in Maryland became so numerous in 1708, that the Protestant inhabitants there took umbrage. They passed

[55] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. iii., chap. xxi.

an intolerant act, which imposed a fine of twenty shillings as a poll-tax on Irish servants, to prevent importing too great a number of Irish Papists into the province.[56] Notwithstanding the violation of every principle of justice and of every sound maxim of policy, such legislation prevailed in various other colonies at this time.

It was deemed expedient once more, to organize an expedition against the French, and the colonists of New England applied to the Queen for support. Accordingly, Colonel Nicholson, who had commanded those troops destined for Montreal the year previous, came over from England with five frigates and a bomb-ketch. He was joined by three regiments of New England troops. They sailed from Boston on the 18th of September 1710, and arrived before Port Royal on the 24th of that month.[57] An attack, which was supported by ships of war, resulted on the 5th of October in the surrender of Port Royal, which was afterwards called Annapolis, in honour of the reigning sovereign. Acadia was also ravaged. Immediately afterwards, General Nicholson annexed it, under the title of Nova Scotia, to the British crown.[58] Soon afterwards, he returned to England, where his representations and influence resolved the ministry to plan an invasion on a still larger scale.

In the year 1711, a great effort was made, in combination with the colonists, to take possession of Canada. Large sums of money were raised by New York, Massachusetts and Pennsylvania, while a strong body of colonial militia was held ready to march. A fleet consisting of fifteen warships and forty transports, having seven veteran regiments of Marlborough's army on board, now arrived in Boston harbour. At this this time, the population of Canada hardly numbered twenty thousand, while that of the English colonies might have been near four hundred thousand. Notwithstanding, the French made strenuous efforts for measures of defence.[59] Provisions were impressed for use of those about to take part in such expeditions, while Massachusetts issued £40,000 in bills of credit, to bear her portion of the charges. This extravagant issue, in the existing state of her resources, afterwards caused great financial embarrassments, and it soon produced a depreciated currency. New York had also contributed £10,000 in bills of credit, while she incurred debts to a still greater amount. Fifteen hundred colonial soldiers were assembled at Albany, with eight hundred warriors of the Five Nations,[60] for an intended attack on Montreal. The fleet sailed from Boston for Quebec, on the 30th of July, under the command of Admiral Hovenden Walker, and carrying seven thousand soldiers, under the command of the British General Hill. Great anticipations of success had been

[56] See the "History of Baltimore."

[57] See for details of this expedition, Hutchinson's "History of Massachusetts-Bay," Vol. ii., chap. ii., pp. 180 to 184.

[58] See Haliburton's "Historical and Statistical Account of Novia Scotia." Halifax, 1829.

[59] See Charlevoix's "Histoire de la Nouvelle France," Tome ii., pp. 351-361.

[60] For an account of these Indian tribes the reader is referred to Cadwallader Colden's "History of the Five Indian Nations depending on the Province of New York," Published at New York, 1727, 8vo.

formed by the English ministry, but these were doomed to disappointment.[61] The Admiral and General were court favourites, and as such, they had been selected for the high commission entrusted to them. Both were equally inefficient and through culpable negligence,[62] the former ruined all their prospects. A part of the fleet was wrecked in the River St. Lawrence, and one thousand men then perished. Ten transports were cast away on Egg Island, August 23rd. Whereupon, Admiral Walker abandoned the expedition, and, not daring to attack the French at Cape Breton, he returned to England. This untoward occurrence prevented an intended movement of the land forces under Nicholson.[63] At this time also, a war with the Five Nations was apprehended, and rumours of a conspiracy among the slaves greatly excited the people of New York. Owing to the harshness of treatment, with which those unfortunate beings were harrassed by their masters, a formidable insurrection broke out, in the year 1712,[64] but it was speedily suppressed. After the failure of the English expedition against Canada, the colonies were greatly exposed to French depredations, especially on their northern frontiers.[65] In the year 1713, however, a treaty of peace was signed at Utrecht, and proclaimed on the 5th of May.[66] This ended the war in America, France retaining possession of Canada, but ceding Acadia and Newfoundland, while making over to Britain her claims to the sovereignty of the Five Nations.

The special privileges granted by the crown, for the encouragement of emigration to Carolina had been published throughout Great Britain and Ireland, in the earlier part of the eighteenth century. This bounty induced multitudes of industrious labourers and husbandmen in Ireland, who had been oppressed by their landlords, and through the existing state of the laws there, to embark for Carolina, where they hoped to procure a comfortable subsistence for themselves and for their families.[67] Of all other countries, Ireland furnished the province of South Carolina with the greatest number of early inhabitants. Hardly a ship sailed from any

[61] When St. John, afterwards Lord Bollingbroke, heard that the fleet had safely arrived at Boston, he wrote exultingly to the Duke of Orrery, "I believe you may depend on our being masters, at this time, of all North America."

[62] In Bishop Burnet's "History of his own Time," the author attributes incorrectly the loss of the fleet solely to a storm. See Vol. ii., Book vii., p. 578. This work was published in London, 1724 and 1734, in two folio vols.

[63] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. iii., chap. xxi., p. 224.

[64] See James Grahame's "History of North America," Book v., chap. ii.

[65] In the year 1713, H. Moll's "Atlas of Maps" appeared, and in it are many folding Maps engraved on copper. Ten of these are devoted to America, and these include the English dominions in that country.

[66] The details of this treaty are very minutely set forth in Dean Swift's "History of the Four last Years of Queen Anne," Book the fourth, and to be found in Thomas Roscoe's edition of his works, Vol. i., pp. 473 to 490.

[67] See "Rise and Progress of Carolina and Georgia," by Alexander Henrett, London, 1779.

of its ports, that had not been crowded with men, women and children.[68] Williamsburg on the Black River was peopled by Irish in 1734, as also Camden on the Wateree. In the Indian districts of Waxhaws on the Santee River, a considerable Irish colony settled; and from these colonists are derived the historic names of Rutledge, Jackson, and Calhoun.

In the year 1715, the fourth Lord Baltimore—whose family name was Benedict Charles Calvert—being a Protestant recovered proprietary rights, and these remained vested in his family to the period of the American Revolution. Notwithstanding the penal enactments of a previous date, these did not prevent the influx of Irish Papists into Maryland; and we find, that in 1717, another Act of proscription even more stringent was passed against them.[69]

The proprietors of the Carolinas had been long involved in disputes with their tenants, the latter having well founded charges expressive of their grievances to allege against Lord Granville the Palatine, who was a bigoted churchman. He impoliticly aggravated this quarrel during the war and until his death, which occurred in 1707. He was succeeded by Lord Craven, who was a more liberal and tolerant member of the same denomination. The settlers in North Carolina, having encroached on the Indian lands, found themselves engaged in war with the Tuscaroras, from 1711 to 1713. At length, that tribe was driven out of the country, and these Indians retired to western New York. There, they were admitted into the confederacy of the Five Nations. After this, the Indians composing it were often known as the Six Nations.[70] The Yamassees, Catawbas, Cherokees and Creeks ravaged the outlying settlements in South Carolina, thus obliging the planters to retire on Charlestown for protection in 1715. Finally, about six thousand of the Yamassees, encountered at a place called Salt Catchers, were completely routed and driven into Florida. In the course of a short time succeeding, the other tribes made peace.

It was now resolved by the Assembly, that a barrier should be opposed to the return of the Yamassees, by offering their territory to all adventurers, who should come and settle in it. Those Indians having been expelled by the proprietors from South Carolina, the council announced in England and Ireland, that their lands should be partitioned and given to actual settlers. This offer induced 500 persons to remove from Ireland, but only to find, that the proprietors were false to their promises. Many of those immigrants having spent their money were reduced to the extreme of misery, and they were famished with hunger, while others who had saved something removed thence to the northern colonies.[71] But all settlers were not disposed to yield submission to the adverse condition

[68] See Ramsey's "History of South Carolina."

[69] See "History of Baltimore."

[70] See Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. iii., chap. xxiii. pp. 319 to 322.

[71] See Ramsey's "History of South Carolina."

of affairs. The proprietors there opposed the electoral laws of the legislature, and the issue of paper money. Besides they sent instructions to the Governor Robert Johnson, to approve of no legislative measures, until these had been first laid before them. A popular insurrection took place in Carolina A.D. 1719, as a consequence of these and other arbitrary orders. The occasion was furnished, when it had been rumoured, that an expedition was being fitted out in Havana, and that its destination was Carolina. Governor Johnson proposed preparation for this emergency, by raising a subscription among the inhabitants for repairing the forts in Charlestown harbour. Meantime, the proprietors had sent an order, that the Assembly should remove a duty of five per cent. which had been levied on British manufactures. The Assembly protested against their right to revoke the laws of the province, and they asserted, that receipts from the duties should suffice for the projected works. A violent altercation then arose between the Governor and the Assembly. Private meetings were held to concert measures for resistance. The militia unanimously subscribed a pledge of association, while the people engaged to stand by each other, in the assertion of their rights and privileges. At the next meeting of the Assembly, the proprietors were declared to have forfeited their rights of government, while the Hon. Robert Johnson was desired to accept the governor's office, but in the name of the King. After a vain effort at conciliation, he proclaimed the dissolution of the Assembly, but this proclamation was torn from the officer's hands. The Assembly thereupon elected Colonel John Moore as their chief magistrate. The Governor had retired into the country; but when he came to Charlestown, for the purpose of holding a militia review, the men paraded in the public square openly celebrated the inauguration of Moore as the King's Governor. The Assembly then chose their own council, and deliberately set about the transaction of public business. The people were on their side almost unanimously, while their English agent obtained a decision from the King's council, that the proprietors had forfeited their rights. Soon afterwards, a Mr. Francis Nicholson was sent out as royal Governor, to the great delight of the provincials.[72]

Mutual friendship and confidence had been established between the French—whose capacity for colonization is so proverbial—and all the Western tribes of Indians. Emigrants from the St. Lawrence continued to enter the Illinois district, which was then settling up rapidly. Old Kaskaskia had become the capital of that country. The authorities, during 1712, issued land titles for a "common field," while deeds and titles were made out to aid the people in the pursuit of important public and private enterprises. In view of present prosperity and a promising future for the Illinois, the French then looked upon it as a terrestrial paradise. Mines of precious ores were believed to exist, on either side of the great river. The monarch of France Louis

[72] See J. A. Doyle's "English in America," Chap. xii., pp. 437 to 508. London, 1882, 8vo.

XIV. at last granted the exclusive privilege in all the trade and commerce of the province to Anthony Crozat, a wealthy and an influential merchant of France.[73] He had prospered in opulence, to the astonishment of all the world. His charter embraced sixteen years, dating from the 26th of September 1712, to the 26th of September 1728. As then held by France, Louisiana embraced the entire Mississippi valley, from the Alleghanies to the Rocky Mountains, and even northwards to the lakes in Canada. At that time there were less than 380 Europeans in the lower half of the district described; yet, Crozat entered upon his projects, and with an energy which exhibited his confidence in this gigantic and hazardous undertaking. He adopted for government of the country the laws, usages and customs of Paris. These were the first covenants of civilized society that were ever in existence between the Gulf of Mexico and the Falls of St. Anthony. They were principally copied from the Roman civil law.

In 1712, M. de la Motte Cadillac was appointed Royal Governor of Louisiana by Louis XIV. He arrived in Louisiana in 1713. In order to enlist his zeal in the commerce of the colony, Crozat associated La Motte as a partner in his own operations. However, La Motte was a self-important and an egotistical man, whose elevation, from obscurity in France to the position of "Royal Governor of Louisiana," rendered him almost unfit even for association with his superiors. When he was ordered by the ministry to assist the agents of Crozat in establishing trading posts on the Wabash and Illinois, he at once got into bad humour. He had the hardihood to write back to the ministry, that Crozat's instructions to his agents seemed to have issued from a lunatic asylum. He declared, that for useful or profitable purposes, boats could not run up the Mississippi into the Wabash, the Missouri, or the Red River. This M. de la Motte, the first governor under the new grant, and an escort arrived in the Illinois country, which also comprised Missouri, in 1713. Anticipating an astonishing profit from the mines, which the French hourly expected to find, little attention was given to agriculture, except by a few individuals. Large investments were therefore necessary to purchase provisions. These, with other expenses of the colony, greatly exceeded the profits of its trade. After a trial of five years, having failed in all his plans, Crozat resigned his charter.[74]

Soon after this relinquishment, the colony of Louisiana was granted by a patent, containing similar privileges and restrictions, to the "Compagnie de l' Occident," or "Company of the West." This organization obtained an extravagant authority, to monopolize all the trade and commerce of Louisiana and of New France, to declare

[73] See "Memoires sur la Louisiane et la Nouvelle Orléans, accompagnés d'une Dissertation sur les Avantages que le Commerce de l'Empire doit tirer," &c. Paris, 1804, 8vo.

[74] By decree of the Royal Council 23rd August, 1717. He returned to France and died in Paris, June 7th, 1738. See "Memoires de Saint-Simon," Tome xiii., p. 328, Paris Edition of 1829, 1830.

and to prosecute wars, to appoint officers, and to exercise almost sovereign sway. This company was under the direction of the notorious John Law.[75] After some time, M. de la Motte[76] was succeeded by M. de l'Espinay as Governor and Chief Commander in Louisiana. By this company, Philippe Francis Renault had been appointed Director-General of the Mines of Louisiana. With two hundred miners and skilful assayers, he arrived in the Illinois country in 1719. His miners were soon despatched in different directions, to explore the country on both sides of the Mississippi. During the year 1719 and 1720, Sieur de Lochen, M. de la Motte and a number of other adventurers explored that country, lying between the Missouri and those swamps east of the Ozark Hills. In 1719, the former commenced digging on the Merrimac river, where he raised several hundred pounds of lead. After various tedious experiments, he produced from this quantity two drachms of silver, and then he left the lead as worthless. Those treasure-seekers were in search of gold and silver; hence lead had but a slight value in their estimation, nor had they apparently a presentiment of that wealth it was destined to produce, in the future commerce of Missouri. The miners and assayers sent out by the Company of the West were required carefully to observe and to report the presence of any rich ores, which might be discovered during their explorations. They were obliged even to mark such localities. Those excursion parties were headed either by Director-General Renault or by M. de la Motte. During one of their earliest excursions, the latter discovered those lead mines which bear his name near Fredericktown, in the present state of Missouri. Soon afterwards, Renault discovered those mines north of Potosi, which are named in remembrance of him. Failing to find either gold or silver, Renault and his miners turned their attention to working the lead mines.[77] The great Mississippi Company of the French soon established a post in the Illinois country There, the agents built Fort Chartres in the great American Bottom, about sixty-five miles below the mouth of the Missouri River, in 1720-21. At the time of its completion, this was one of the strongest fortresses on the continent. Numerous French settlements and villages were soon formed under the protection it afforded.

[75] See A. Cochut's "Law, son Systeme et son Epoque 1716-1729." Paris, 1853. 8vo.

[76] It is thought, however, that he was one of de Bienville's expedition, when he discovered certain mines in Madison County, in the present State of Missouri, and which still perpetuate his name. Circumstances appear to prove that section of country was explored, and that lead ore had been found abundant, so early as 1718.

[77] This was continued until 1742, when he returned to France. From the number of ancient diggings and other indications, it is probable enough, that large amounts of ore were taken out and manufactured. These products were principally shipped to the parent country in Europe.

## CHAPTER VIII.

Events in New England and in the Carolinas—Settlement of Georgia—Proceedings in New York—French Enterprise in Louisiana—Hostilities in the West between the French and Spaniards—Irish Colonization in the early Part of the Eighteenth Century.

After those native-born colonists and emigrants from the mother-country settled in their exposed homes, the Indian aboriginal tribes—and especially those bordering on New England—frequently attacked them.[1] We know that in Massachusetts—as in other colonies—the Irish element had been well represented, even in the seventeenth century, while the increase of numbers was still more considerable in succeeding ages. Many of those immigrants came from Derry, and these founded the town of Derryfield, near Boston; but, that place was afterwards called Manchester by the English, just as they changed New Amsterdam into New York, and Fort Duquesne to Pittsburgh. It has been stated, that the celebrated Bunker Hill, near Boston, had been so called after one similarly named in Ireland.

Meantime, the Indians in Maine began to feel alarmed at the encroachments of the New Englanders on their territories. In 1704 and 1705, some Massachusetts expeditions attacked their missionary stations.[2] The Indian chiefs sent messengers to Quebec, in order to learn if France had really surrendered their territory. For more than a quarter of a century, the venerable Sebastian Rasles a Jesuit had established a mission at Norridgewock, where he built a church, and gathered a flourishing village around it. The government of Massachusetts attempted in turn to establish a mission among the Indians, but its minister failed to make any impression on the Abenakis, and he returned to Boston. Some of their native chiefs had been seized by stratagem and imprisoned, so that hostilities were resumed between the Red Men and the Massachusetts people. These conceived a deadly hatred towards Father Rasles, who was accused of keeping alive French influence in the disputed territory, and of exciting against themselves hostility among the Indians. In January of the year 1722, Governor Shute sent out a secret expedition from Boston, in order to seize Father Rasles.[3] Norridgewock was attacked by Colonel Westbrooke, and

[1] See Hutchinson's "History of the Colony of Massachusetts-Bay, from 1628 to 1750," Vols. i. and ii. In 1634, the General Court of Massachusetts Bay granted lands on the Merrimac River for an Irish settlement, and there were several hundred Irishmen who served in King Philip's Indian War, whose names are still preserved in the colonial records.—Annual meeting of the American-Irish Historical Society, New York, Thursday evening, January 19th, 1899. Address of Dr. Thomas Addis Emmet.

[2] Major Church ravaged villages on the Penobscot, while Colonel Hilton burned several wigwams, with a church and a missionary station. See Williamson's "History of Maine," Vol. ii., pp. 47 to 49.

[3] See Penhallow's "History of the Wars of New England," p. 94. Cincinnati ed., 8vo.

several of the inhabitants were obliged to fly for refuge to the woods, in the autumn of that year. With them, Father Rasles made his escape, but he nearly perished in the snow, which at that time covered the ground. That place was afterwards plundered, while all the papers of the priest were purloined and carried off.[4] The manuscript of his celebrated Abenakis dictionary was also seized.[5] This outrage was avenged by the Indians, who now were excited to still greater hostilities. Father Rasles reported their land as lost, unless the French should join with the Indians. He induced many of the latter to seek Canada for protection, but he resolved on remaining. In July, the government of Massachusetts raised troops for another expedition, and by resolution they declared the Abenakis to be traitors and robbers, while they stimulated ruffianism and savagery, by offering for each Indian scalp at first a bounty of fifteen pounds and afterwards of a hundred. Under the leadership of Westbrooke, a company marched through the woods, to surprise one of their stockaded forts, probably near the present Bangor. They arrived there at six o'clock in the evening of March 9th 1722, and set fire to that village.

The New Englanders, with the aid of Mohawk Indians, had organized another expedition under the leadership of Colonel Moulton. On the 23rd of August 1724, they surprised Norridgewock by pouring a volley of musketry into that village. Knowing he was the principal object sought for attack, Father Rasles went forth to meet the assailants. He hoped by the sacrifice of his own life that his converts might escape. He was shot down immediately, and at the foot of the mission cross. After hacking his body to pieces, and scalping him,[6] the victors rifled the altar tabernacle, profaned the Host and sacred vessels, and then burned the church. In this onset, thirty of the Indians were killed, and several were wounded, the survivors seeking safety in flight. When the English had disappeared, the Abenakis returned, and finding the remains of their martyr-missionary, these were buried among the ruins of his church, and on that very spot where the altar formerly stood.[7] The village was then abandoned, many of the former inhabitants removing to Canada. This secured no peace for the people of New England; for, after their missionary's death, his controlling influence no longer restrained the Indian ravages, which seemed to multiply throughout all the border settlements. However, as the French could not openly support the Indians, their chiefs were obliged

[4] Among these was found a correspondence of Vaudreuil, which proved a latent hope to establish the power of France on the Atlantic. See Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. iii., chap. xxiii., pp. 333 to 335.

[5] It is still preserved at Harvard College.

[6] According to Penhallow's account. Even for scalps of women and children, the authorities in New England were not ashamed to offer rewards for their friendly Indians. Moreover, white men on these expeditions were accustomed to scalp the slain. See *The New York Post-Boy*, Sept. 2, 1748, and July 23, 1750; as also *The New York Mercury*, June 23, 1755.

[7] Such is the account, as furnished by the French Father de le Chasse.

to conclude a peace in 1726.[8] Soon afterwards, the old French missions in Maine began to decline; although by stealth, the French missionaries occasionally visited the Algonquins, who still retained the faith in which they had been baptized and instructed.[9]

In 1729, the original vested rights of the North Carolina proprietors were purchased by Parliament, for the sum of £17,000, with £5,000 for arrears of rent, and the whole province was made subject to the Crown. The colonists were greatly gratified by the entire remission of their quit-rents. As they now enjoyed comparative freedom, and were allowed the practical exercise of self-government, settlers were attracted from the older colonies, and emigrants from Great Britain soon arrived in great numbers. Among these, Irish Presbyterians occupied whole sections of the lands; while both the family names and denominations of the settlements indicate the localities in Ireland, whence those people came, even at the present time. Afterwards were erected the separate provinces of North Carolina and South Carolina. Meantime the cultivation of rice had become a staple product of these regions. Moreover, large importations of negro slaves had been promoted by the wealthy farmers, who cultivated plantations on an extensive scale, especially along the sea coast.

A distinguished English officer, named General James Edward Oglethorpe, who was also a member in the House of Commons, formed a benevolent design for establishing a new colony in America. He had taken a great interest in the reformation of prisons, and in improving the condition of those confined for debt; while he desired, that a favourable opportunity should be afforded discharged prisoners and other unfortunate persons, who might find a community, in which they could begin life once more and under better auspices.[10] He also intended to erect a military barrier between the Spaniards—then in possession of Florida—and the weak English Colonies in South Carolina. This plan was approved of by King George II., and by his government. In the year 1732, a Royal Charter was granted for all that part of the old Carolina province, lying south of the Savannah River. Trustees were appointed to govern the new Colony, and subscriptions were received all over the kingdom to defray its expenses. Accordingly in November 1732, General Oglethorpe sailed from England with one hundred and thirty-five persons. The trustees sent out one hundred and fifty others; while, owing to the efforts of some among their brethren, forty Jews and seventy-eight German Protestants emigrated. In May 1733, Savannah was founded. Next year a party of Moravians arrived. Some Scottish Highlanders settled likewise on the Altamaha. Except Papists, a free exercise of religion was guaranteed to all others in this Royal Charter.[11] The colonists were obliged to

[8] See Bancroft's "History of the United States, Vol iii., chap. xxiii., pp. 335 to 338.

[9] See John Gilmary Shea's "Catholic Church in Colonial Days," Book vi., chap. ii., pp. 592 to 605.

[10] See Rev. Dr. Thaddeus M. Harris's "Biographical Memoirs of James Oglethorpe," published in Boston, 1841, 8vo.

[11] See Stevens' "History of Georgia," Vol. i.

render military service. In April 1734, General Oglethorpe went back to England, and he returned the year following accompanied by about 300 emigrants.[12] He laboured zealously to plant the colony, and to introduce habits of industry and civilization.

In 1740, England and Spain were engaged in hostilities. The Spaniards, in Florida, claiming all that district, now threatened to attack the English plantations in Georgia. It was found necessary to bring over six hundred regular soldiers from England, while General Oglethorpe[13] also procured the assistance of a large force of friendly Indians for resistance. Fearing that the Spaniards were preparing for the invasion of his settlements, General Oglethorpe resolved to march against St. Augustine. Accordingly, in 1740 he raised a force of two thousand men, and afterwards he attempted to besiege that place.[14] But, he wanted cannon for the purpose. The approach of the sickly season, moreover, obliged his return to Savannah. As a reprisal for this invasion, the Spaniards invaded Georgia in 1742, and they inflicted various losses among the colonists. However, they were finally expelled. Oglethorpe[15] returned to England in 1743.[16] For nearly ten years afterwards, Georgia was ruled by a Governor and a Council. Subsequently, it became a Royal province. Notwithstanding the reluctance of the various provincial Legislatures, to allow an extension of slavery in America, yet it suited the policy of England to promote and maintain that system, during the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries.[17]

In the year 1741, rumours spread in the City of New York, that the Negroes were about to burn its houses and to massacre its inhabitants.[18] About the same time, a letter was published from Governor Oglethorpe of Georgia who declared, that Jesuits acting in the interests of the Spaniards were hiding in all the Colonial towns. This further increased that popular panic. The cry of a

[12] Among these were the celebrated brothers, John and Charles Wesley. The Journal of John Wesley, included in an edition of his Works, edited by John Emory, in seven volumes, has been published in New York, 1835. An Irish Methodist, Henry Moore, has written a "Life of John and Charles Wesley and Memoirs of their Family," published in 1824.

[13] He wrote an account of this campaign, which was published in London, 1742.

[14] See William Roberts' "Accounts of the First Discovery and Natural History of Florida, with Detail of the several Expeditions and Descents made on that Coast." London, 1763, 4to. This work contains folding Maps and Plates of Views.

[15] He wrote a "New and Accurate Account of the Colonies of South Carolina and Georgia."

[16] See Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. iii., chap. xxxiv., pp. 418 to 448.

[17] Various acts of the English Parliament, instigated by mercantile interests, jealousy and selfishness, are quoted in proof of this by the American historian Bancroft. See *Ibid*, pp. 411 to 416. This, too, is fully shown in a political tract, "The African Slave Trade, the great Pillar and Support of the British Plantation Trade in America," by a British Merchant, published in 1745.

[18] For this supposed plot, a white man named Hughson, and Peggy Carey his wife, had been tried as being the originators. They were ordered for execution, and on false testimony. See John Gilmary Shea's "Catholic Church in Colonial Days," Book iv., chap. ii., p. 399.

Popish plot being again raised, anti-Catholic feeling was greatly excited. Money rewards and a full pardon were offered to all who should become informers. A great number of the Negroes were arrested on mere suspicion, and of that number, no less than eighteen were hanged, eleven were burned at the stake, and fifty were transported to the West Indies. The terrified slaves began to tell the most extraordinary and terrible stories, to save themselves from popular vengeance. An unfortunate nonjuring episcopal clergyman and a Protestant, named Rev. John Ury,[19] was arrested on suspicion of his being a priest.[20] He was charged by a woman of infamous character, and by unprincipled witnesses, with being an accomplice in that imagined conspiracy.[21] After a mock trial, he was found guilty by the jury and hanged, August 15th 1741.

In the midsummer of 1718, when Bienville had descended the Mississippi, he selected a site for the capital of Louisiana, and on the 25th of August, eight hundred emigrants arrived from France in three vessels. Among them were eighty convicts. These all disembarked at Dauphine Island. A city was founded on the eastern bank of the Mississippi, and it was called New Orleans, in honour of the regent of France. Its inhabitants were recruited with hardy emigrants from Canada. The vastness and prosperity of that city, destined to become the outlet and an emporium of the greatest valley in the world, were predicted soon after its early settlement.[22]

War broke out between France and Spain in the year 1719,[23] and its evil influences were unhappily communicated to the American colonists of the rival nations.[24] In 1720, the Spanish government determined to take the whole of Louisiana from under the control of the French. In order to accomplish this object, they thought it necessary to destroy the nation of the Missouris, then situated on the Missouri River. These Indians were in alliance with the French, and espoused their interests. The Spanish plan was to excite the Osages to wage war with the Missouris, and then to take part in the contest. For this purpose, an invading expedition was fitted out from Santa Fe for the Missouri, in 1720.[25] It was a moving caravan of the desert—

[19] He was known to all his friends, as being a very inoffensive man, who lived by teaching.

[20] A digest of the proceedings may be found in Chandler's "American Criminal Trials," Vol. i., p. 222. Boston, 1844, 8vo.

[21] Judge Horsmanden charged violently against him. Afterwards, this same judge wrote a prejudiced account of those horrible transactions in a work, entitled "The New York Conspiracy, or a History of the Negro Plot." Published at New York, in 1744.

[22] See Pierre Francois Xavier de Charlevoix's admirable work, published in 1744: "Histoire de la Nouvelle France," Tome iii., pp. 430, 440. John Gilmary Shea has translated it into English, in six vols., published at New York, 1865 to 1872, 8vo.

[23] See L. P. Anquetil's "Histoire de France," Troisieme Race, dite des Capétiens, 1717 to 1719.

[24] See Le Page du Pratz's "Histoire de la Louisiane," Tome i.

[25] See Nathan H. Parker "Missouri as it is in 1867: an Illustrated Historical Gazetteer of Missouri," &c., p. 44. Philadelphia, 1867, 8vo.

armed men, with women, and whole families, were in motion. Horses and mules, with herds of cattle and swine to serve for food or carriage on the route, were taken along to aid in establishing a new colony.

On their march, the Spaniards lost their proper route, and their guides became bewildered. These led them to the Missouri tribes instead of towards the Osages. Unconscious of their mistake, as both tribes spoke the same language, they believed themselves among the Osages, instead of being with their enemies. Without reserve, they disclosed their designs against the Missouris, and supplied them with arms and ammunition, to aid in their own extermination. The Missouri great chief, concealing his real thoughts and intentions, evinced the greatest joy. He promised, when they should have rested three days after their march, to join the expedition with them. In the meantime, the chief engaged to assemble his warriors and to hold a council with the old men of their tribe. Just before the dawn of that day upon which the company had arranged to march, the Missouris fell upon their treacherous enemies, and despatched them with indiscriminate slaughter. However, they spared a priest, whose dress convinced them he was a man of peace rather than a warrior. They kept him for some time, as a prisoner; but he finally made his escape. He was the only messenger to bear back intelligence to the Spanish authorities, regarding the just return upon their own heads of a treachery they had intended to practise upon others. [26] To arrest any further attempt of the Spaniards from advancing into Upper Louisiana, a French post was designed for the Missouri. To make all necessary arrangements, M. Burgmont was despatched from Mobile to the Missouri River. He took possession of an island in the river, above the mouth of the Osage. Upon this island, he built a fort, which he named Fort Orleans.

Meanwhile, war between the French and Spaniards continued. Those Indians who had been leagued with the respective colonies—Louisiana and Florida—carried on their marauding excursions. The usual atrocities of savages in war attended this evil state of things. About the same time, Fort Chartres was constructed by M. Boisbriant on the Mississippi, under the instructions of the king. A fort and trading-post for the Company were erected at the mouth of Blue Earth River, on the St. Peter's, by Lesueur. He was accompanied by a detachment of ninety men, to conduct this enterprise. On his arrival at the mouth of the Osage, Burgmont found the different tribes engaged in a sanguinary warfare. This prostrated all trade, and rendered all intercourse with the Indians extremely hazardous. The treaty of London, signed on the 17th of February 1720, at last ended this war. [27]

In the meantime, Fort Orleans had been completed and occupied. The fur trade now engaged the attention of the French, as the search for precious metals was found to be so delusive. Their success was

[26] See Monette's "History of the Mississippi Valley," Vol. i., chap vi.

[27] See Henri Martin's "Histoire de France," Tome xv. Septième Partie. Liv. xciii. Paris 1862, Fourth edition, 8vo.

more assured in that profitable branch of trade. Soon after the declaration of peace between contending tribes of Indians, Fort Orleans was attacked and totally destroyed. All the French occupants were massacred. Nor is it yet known by whom this bloody work had been perpetrated. Burgmont had now turned his attention towards effecting a reconciliation with the Indians. This he happily accomplished in 1724. The French seem to have been fated for disappointment and disaster in America, during the early part of the seventeenth century. Their troubles with the Indians increased; the Bank of France, under John Law's direction[28] and which promised so fairly, had proved worse than a bubble;[29] several of their expeditions had resulted in the loss of large numbers of valiant and learned men, valuable treasure and live-stock. At length, in view of those disasters experienced, the Directory then determined to surrender their charter into the hands of the Crown.[30] Discouraged and disappointed, they resolved on retiring from the American wilderness, where failure only had attended their efforts. Their petition was readily granted, and by proclamation, dated April 10 1732,[31] the king declared the Province of Louisiana free to all his subjects, with equal privileges for trade and commerce.

The Colonial Assemblies appropriated large sums for bounties, to such industrious poor people of Great Britain and Ireland as should resort to their provinces, within a specified short term of years, and who should settle on the inland tracts. For the colonization of South Carolina special inducements were held out.[32] In a district, called from its Indian proprietors the Waxhaws, there was a considerable Irish colony,[33] chiefly at Williamsburg, and established from 1734 to 1737 In like manner, Camden on the Wateree River was peopled about the same time by Irish.[34] Scarcely a ship sailed from any of our ports for Charleston, that was not crowded with men, women, and children. Those lands were to be divided among emigrants, allowing one hundred acres for each man, and fifty for every woman and child, that should come and settle in the backwoods. In the northern counties of Ireland, the spirit of emigration seized on the people to such a degree, that it

[28] Having quitted France in December 1720, he died in poverty, at Venice, in 1729. See John Philip Wood's "Memoirs of the Life of John Law." Edinburgh, 1824.

[29] An account of Law and his financial schemes may be seen in "Mémoires complets et authentiques du Duc Saint-Simon sur le Siècle de Louis XIV. et la Regence," collationnés sur le Manuscrit original par M. Chéruel et précédés d'une Notice par M. Sainte-Beuve de l'Académie Française. Tome xvii., Paris, 1856 to 1858, 8vo.

[30] See Henri Martin's "Histoire de France," Tome xv., Septième Partie, Liv. xcii.

[31] See Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. iii., chap. xxiii. p. 364.

[32] Two townships, each containing 48,000 acres, were laid out; one of these was on the River Savannah, called Mecklenburg, while the other was on the waters of Santee, at Long Caines, and it was called Londonderry.

[33] Among these settlers, at one time or other, were the Routledges, Jacksons, Calhouns—names now famous in United States History.

[34] See Thomas D'Arcy M'Gee's "History of the Irish Settlers in America," chap. ii., p. 26. Boston, sixth edition, 1855, 8vo.

threatened almost a total depopulation. Such multitudes of husbandmen, labourers and manufacturers flocked over the Atlantic, that the landlords began to be alarmed, and to concert ways and means for preventing the growing evil.[35] Many persons likewise from England and Scotland resorted to Carolina, especially after the peace between France and England.

In the beginning of the eighteenth century, great numbers of Irish began to arrive at Philadelphia with other emigrants. In one year, ending December 1729,[36] came 5,655 Irish, and 343 Palatines, none of whom were servants; together with 267 English and Welsh, and 43 Scotch.[37] Numerous servants used to arrive every year from Germany and Ireland, who engaged themselves for a term of years to pay their passages. Some of them turned out to be frugal and industrious, and these became in time a part of the wealthy citizens.[38] In some few cases they appear to have been convicts from Ireland.[39] The Annesley Peerage Case, so celebrated in Irish history and romance, gave to America about this period the victim of a foul conspiracy.[40] From the latter end of the seventeenth century to about the year 1719, a considerable number of Irish emigrants arrived in Pennsylvania. Many of these began to settle at or near the Maryland disputed line.[41] Among the Irish Pennsylvanian settlers were the Henrys, M'Kennans, Bryans, Musgraves, Porters, Rushes, Fitzsimons, Alexanders,[42] Ramseys, Neills, Bradys, Findlays, Blains, Rosses, Hands, Armstrongs, Morrows, Stewarts, Taylors,

[35] See Ramsey's "History of South Carolina." London, 1779.

[36] See Holmes' "Annals of America," Vol. i.

[37] See John Fanning Watson's "Annals of Philadelphia." This work was first published in Philadelphia, 1830, in 8vo. It went through several successive editions.

[38] "Among the number was Matthew Lyon, a native of Ireland, who was assigned on his arrival in New York to Jacob Bacon of Woodbury, who brought him home; and, after enjoying his services for some time, he assigned him for the remainder of his term of service to Hugh Hannah of Lichfield, for a pair of stags, valued at £12. By dint of sterling native talent, under the most disheartening circumstances, he fought his way to fame and eminence, and he was afterwards a member of Congress from Vermont, as also from Kentucky."—Cothren's "History of Ancient Woodbury," Vol. ii., p. 320.

[39] "The severity of British law pushed off young men of good abilities for very small offences, who made good clerks, storekeepers, etc., among us. I have knowledge of some among us, even within my own memory, who rose to riches and credit here, and left fine families. One great man had, before my time, been sold in Maryland as an offender from Ireland. He then came to Philadelphia and amassed a large fortune in landed estates now of great value among his heirs."—*Ibid.*

[40] Afterwards appeared "Memoirs of an unfortunate young Nobleman returned from a thirteen years' Slavery in America," 1743, 12mo. His adventures furnished the subject matter for Sir Walter Scott's celebrated novel, "Guy Mannering."

[41] These colonizers were understood to be exempt from rents by an ordinance of 1720, in consideration of their being a frontier people, and of forming a cordon for defence against the Indians, if their services were so required.

[42] Of this family was the celebrated Presbyterian minister, the Rev. Dr. Archibald Alexander, born, however, in Virginia, 1772.

Hoeys, Smiths, Smilies, and Thompsons. From the County of Kilkenny, and said to have been of the Ormond family, towards the close of the seventeenth century, a Butler went out to America as agent for Indian affairs in Pennsylvania. Attracted probably by his example or advice, other cadets of the Ormond stock settled in Carolina and Kentucky. From their descendants many celebrated generals and senators have been furnished to the Union.[43] In Lancaster County, Pennsylvania, a settlement of Donegal men was formed about or a little after this period. The townships of Donegal, Derry, Raphoe, Tyrone, Coleraine and Mountjoy, were established there, and these places were thus named after Irish localities by the early immigrants. In Chester County, Irish settlements were likewise formed,[44] and among the emigrants was William M'Kean, in the beginning of the last century.[45] The Rev. Francis Allison,[46] a native of the County of Donegal, Ireland, emigrated to America in 1735, and being a celebrated scholar, he opened an academy of distinguished reputation at New London, Pennsylvania. Here he was pastor of the Presbyterian Church. In 1752 he opened an academy in Philadelphia,[47] where he became minister of the first Presbyterian church built in that city. Before the establishment of American Independence, Pennsylvania College had been founded, and in 1755, Dr. Allison was appointed to the chair of Moral Philosophy, while he became also vice-president.[48] His pupil and countryman was Charles Thomson.[49] Other celebrated men, connected with the revolution, were taught by him.[50]

An Irishman named James O'Hara was one of the founders of Pittsburg.[51] Afterwards, he became a Quartermaster-General under the military direction of General Wayne. Another colonist Patrick Calhoun was born in Donegal, Ireland, and in the earlier part of the eighteenth century. He and members of his family were chased from their native country by reverse of fortune. They emigrated first to Pennsylvania, where they remained some years. Afterwards, they went to

[43] Among these were General William O. Butler of Kentucky, and Pierce Butler, Senator for South Carolina. See Thomas D'Arcy M'Gee's "History of the Irish Settlers in North America," chap. ii., p. 32.

[44] To this place, the parents of the celebrated Irish-American General Anthony Wayne had emigrated. Here he was born in 1745. See an account of him in "Irish Celts," by a Member of the Michigan Bar, *sub voce* Wayne, General Anthony. Detroit, 1884, 8vo.

[45] There his distinguished son Thomas —afterwards signer of the Declaration of Independence and President of Congress—was born, on the 19th of March, 1734.

[46] He was born in 1705.

[47] On May 24th 1758, he delivered a celebrated sermon, entitled: "Peace and Unity recommended." He died November 28th, 1779, in Philadelphia. See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. i., p. 49.

[48] See Thomas D'Arcy M'Gee's "History of the Irish Settlers in North America," chap. xi., p. 81.

[49] See an account of him in "Irish Celts," by a Member of the Michigan Bar, *sub voce* Thomson, Charles, LL.D.

[50] He is often alluded to as their Master.

[51] See Rev. A. A. Lambing's "History of the Catholic Church in the Diocese of Pittsburg and Allegeny, from its Establishment to the present Time." New York, Cincinnati and St. Louis, Benziger Brothers, 8vo.

the western part of Virginia. Thence they were driven by the Indians, after Braddock's defeat. Patrick Calhoun married an Irish-American girl, a daughter of Major John Caldwell,[52] of Charlotte county, Virginia. They removed finally to South Carolina in 1756 when Patrick settled in Abbeyville district.[53] In 1724, the Pennsylvania Governor James Logan complains,[54] that the Irish were bold strangers, and that they rarely approached him to propose purchasing their lands.[55] Thus, one hundred thousand acres had been possessed by persons,[56] who resolutely set down and improved them.[57] The Irish Parliament was then about to take measures for preventing the free and excessive emigration of their people to the American colonies.[58] The Assembly had laid a restraining tax of twenty shillings a head for every servant arriving; but, even this law was evaded.[59] The common fear was, that if they thus continued to come, they should make themselves proprietors of that whole Province.[60] The Indians themselves were alarmed at those swarms of strangers, while the older settlers were afraid of a breach between them and the newly arrived colonizers.

In New Jersey were the Martins, the Tennents and Maxwells, with many others of Irish birth and descent. In Delaware were noted the Killens, the M'Lanes, the Kearneys, and several other Irish settlers. Among the early colonists in Maryland of Irish birth, besides the Pollocks and Carrolls, were the Pattersons,[61] Reads, Nelsons, Foleys, Milligans, Semmes, M'Henrys, as also the Barneys.[62]

For the Northern Presbyterian Irish, the colonies of New England had a special attraction, because Presbyterianism was there the prevailing form of worship. So early as 1636, the "Eagle Wing," with 150 pas-

[52] This Major Caldwell was afterwards murdered by the Tories, in cold blood and in his own yard, after they had destroyed his house by fire. He served in the Legislature of South Carolina for thirty years. See "Life of John C. Calhoun."

[53] It was there his son, John Caldwell Calhoun, afterwards distinguished as the pro-slavery champion of the South, was born March 18th 1782. His autobiography has been set forth in a work intituled: "The Science of Government." New York, 1851.

[54] In a letter to the Proprietors.

[55] When challenged for titles, they alleged as their excuse, that the proprietors had solicited for colonists, and that they had come accordingly to supply the want.

[56] The Governor complains, that these had not any right to the lands on which they settled, but that he was much at a loss to determine how to dispossess them.

[57] Letter of James Logan to the Proprietors, written 1725.

[58] Letter from James Logan, written in 1725.

[59] This was instanced, in the case of a ship arriving from Dublin with one hundred Papists, and by the captain contriving to land them at Burlington.

[60] "It looks," says Logan, "as if Ireland was to send all its inhabitants thither, for last week not less than six ships arrived." Almost every week, two or three vessels came into port.

[61] Of this family was the beautiful Miss Elizabeth Patterson, afterwards wife of Jerome Bonaparte, and unjustly divorced from him by the Emperor Napoleon, for reasons of State policy. She was a friend and a correspondent of Lady Morgan.

[62] From these descended the distinguished Commodore Joshua Barney, born in Baltimore, in 1759. See an account of him in "Irish Celts," by a Member of the Michigan Bar, *sub voce*, Barney, Joshua, Commodore.

sengers on board, sailed from Carrickfergus, to found a colony on the Merrimack. Through stress of weather, their vessel was obliged to put back, and for many years the project was abandoned. It was revived towards the end of that century, and in the spring of 1719, the Londonderry settlement was formed. It was so called because the immigrants, at first only sixteen families, gave the name of their native home to their new abode. They were all Presbyterians in religion, and they became prosperous, while their descendants spread over Windham, Chester, Litchfield, Manchester, Bedford, Goffstown, New Boston, Antrim, Peterborough and Ackworth, in New Hampshire, and Barnet, in Vermont.[63] Those were also the first settlers of many towns in Massachusetts, in Maine, and in Nova Scotia.[64] Cherry Valley in New York was in part peopled from Londonderry.[65] Some Irish families settled at an early date in Palmer and Worcester,[66] Massachusetts. About 1717, the Thorntons came to the latter place.[67] One of the earliest settlers at Plymouth was a founder of the Higgins family, now so numerous in New England; while the first deed of record in Hampden County, Mass., is an Indian transfer of land to one Reilly. The name of Ireland Parish, under Mount Holyoke, still shows the place of their settlement. At Wellfleet and Cape Cod were some immigrants from the County of Longford. The Jacksons, who emigrated to this State from Ireland, produced some able and distinguished representatives. Attempts were made by the Courts in the Colony of Massachusetts to drive off many of the Irish settlers in 1720, and law proceedings were threatened against them "unless they moved off within the space of seven months;" but they would not leave, nor does it appear that the threatened prosecution of the Attorney-General followed. Forty gentlemen, merchants and others of the Irish nation, residing in Boston 1737, formed a Charitable Society [68] for the relief of their indigent and poor countrymen. It was declared, however, that none but Protestants were

[63] See "Catholic Memoirs of Vermont and New Hampshire," New York. 12mo.

[64] Barstow, who relates the foregoing particulars, declares that to the number of 20,000, the descendants of those Londonderry settlers were scattered over all the United States. See his work, "New Hampshire," p. 130.

[65] See M'Kenzie's "Remarkable Irishmen," Part i.

[66] On a tombstone here were the names of John Young, a native of Derry, who died in 1730, aged 107; as also of David Young, a native of Donegal, who died in 1776, aged 94 years.

[67] Their celebrated son, Matthew Thornton, was born in Ireland 1714, and when only three years old with his parents he arrived in America. See "Irish Celts," by a member of the Michigan Bar. There is no pagination to this valuable work, so that reference can only be to the proper names placed in alphabetical order.

[68] The names of the following have been preserved as original members :— Robert Duncan, Andrew Knox, Nathaniel Walsh, Joseph St. Laurence, Daniel M'Fall, William Drummond, William Freeland, Daniel Gibbs, John Noble, Adam Boyd, William Stewart, Daniel Neal, James Maynes, Samuel Moor, Philip Mortimer, James Egart, George Glen, Peter Pelham, John Little, Archibald Thomas, Edward Alderchurch, James Clark, John Clark, Thomas Bennett and Patrick Walker. William Hall was the first president.

eligible to its offices and committees.[69] James Kasson, with his father and six brothers, came from Belfast, Ireland, in 1722, landed at Boston, and settled in Voluntown, Connecticut. He removed to Woodbury about 1742.[70] Their descendants are still numerous, and they are found in almost every State throughout the Union.[71] At Saybrooke, Connecticut, were some immigrants from the County of Longford. In New Hampshire, the Irish contingent of settlers was especially strong, and the names of many are still preserved.[72] The Starks, the Butlers, the Whipples, the Sullivans and Thorntons, who were early residents of this State, had all Irish blood in their veins, and they had all Irish characteristics.[73] An early Irish settler there was John Callamore.[74] The Gilmans, the Casses, and the Norrises, with several others, were of Irish birth and origin. By the coming of Irish emigrants into New Hampshire, in the early part of the eighteenth century, the linen manufacture was considerably increased within that colony.[75] In January 1729, the celebrated metaphysical philosopher George Berkley, born at Kilcrin,[76] county of Kilkenny, with his wife and many other companions, arrived at Newport, Rhode Island, after a long and stormy voyage.[77] There he was kept waiting during three years, for money voted him by Parliament; but he employed his time by taking a farm near Newport, where Whitehall, the house he inhabited, still stands. His favourite place for reading was among those rocks that project over the deep waters of Narraganset Bay. On returning to Ireland in 1732, he bequeathed his farm to Yale College, then in its infancy. He presented it likewise, with "the finest collection of books that ever came at one time to America." [78]

[69] According to the Eighth Article of the Constitution. See Thomas D'Arcy M Gee's "History of the Irish Settlers in North America," Chap. iii., pp. 33 to 37.

[70] He settled near the present line of Southbury, built a house in Bethlehem Society, in 1760, and removed his family the same year. There he continued to reside until his death, which occurred February 5th, 1791.

[71] See "History of Ancient Woodbury," p. 603.

[72] In the "Historical Collections of New Hampshire," Vol. i.

[73] See Carleton's "New Hampshire Worthies." We are informed by an illustrious descendant, that the Ulster Irish largely colonised the province, naming their towns Derry. Londonderry, Antrim, Hillsboro', &c. At home they were men in position and of fine physical organization, many living to a ripe old age. See "Autobiography and Personal Reminiscences of Major-General Benjamin F. Butler," Chap. i., Boston, 1892.

[74] He was born in Ireland in 1715, and he died at Kersington, N H., in 1825.

[75] See Rev. J. A. Spencer's "History of the United States," Vol. i.

[76] In 1684. He was at first educated in the College of Kilkenny, and afterwards he entered Trinity College, Dublin. He became Dean of Derry in 1724, through the influence of the Irish Lord Lieutenant. He was appointed Bishop of Cloyne in 1734, two years after his return from America. He was the friend of Steele, Swift and Pope. His works collected by himself were published in 1752. He died the following year, at Oxford, in England.

[77] His leading idea at this time was to establish a college at Bermuda, for the purpose of training missionaries for the conversion to Christianity of the North American Indians.

[78] See Baldwin's "Annals of Yale College," p. 417.

Among his friends and co-labourers was the Rev. Dr. James M'Sparran,[79] who settled in Narraganset. The Irish establishment of Belfast in Maine was commenced by a few families in 1723. Among these was a Limerick schoolmaster named John Sullivan, and on his outward voyage, he courted a female passenger, a native of Cork. To her he was married, some time after their arrival in America. They had two sons, John[80] and James,[81] who won great distinction in after times; while both father and mother lived to see them at the summit of civil and military authority.[82] In this settlement, likewise, were Irish people named Harper,[83] M'Intire and Murray.

The Irish furnished to the Carolinas and Georgia, before the middle of the eighteenth century, a considerable population, and the majority of their immigrants. Among these, Dr. John Rutledge was a native of Ireland, whence he emigrated to South Carolina in 1735, and settled in Charleston.[84] The Irish families of Hayne, Hamilton, Conway, Martin, Matthews, Pickens, Calhoun, Caldwell, Noble, Brenton, Murphy, M'Call, Miller and Manning were at an early period of the last century in this State. In North Carolina were settled the Giles, the Davidsons, the Caldwells, the Polks, the Jacksons, the Spaights, the Bryans, the Dawsons, the Iredells and the Waddells, with many other Irish families.[85]

While he made the grantees rich, the Governor of Virginia secured a great increase of population and wealth for that colony. The proprietors, Hite, Beverly and Burden, engaged agents and sent out advertisements for the emigrants' direction, as they landed on the Delaware. Also, when the voyagers were about to leave their native land, the proprietors offered favourable terms to them as actual settlers.[86] Soon

[79] He was born in Ireland, about 1695.

[80] The distinguished patriot and General of the American Revolution under Washington. Born at Berwick Maine, February 17th, 1840. See an account of him in "Irish Celts," by a member of the Michigan Bar.

[81] Born April 22nd, 1744, at Berwick, Maine. In 1775, he founded in the same State a township, called Limerick, from which city, several of its first settlers arrived. He was afterwards Governor of Massachusetts. (See *ibid.*)

[82] See Thomas D'Arcy M'Gee's "History of the Irish Settlers in North America," chap. iii., pp. 36 to 38.

[83] See "Irish Celts," by a Member of the Michigan Bar.

[84] His distinguished son Edward, whose name is attached to the Declaration of Independence, was born in Charleston, South Carolina, in November, 1740. The father died soon after his birth, leaving him to his mother's care, and she being a very intelligent woman, and imbued with Republican ideas, moulded and fostered them in the mind of her son.

[85] See "Irish Celts," by a Member of the Michigan Bar, under the heading of the foregoing respective names.

[86] Among others who came to Virginia about the year 1736 was an Irish girl, named Polly Mulhollin. On her arrival she was hired to James Bell, to pay her passage, and with him she remained during the period her servitude was to continue. At its expiration, she attired herself in the habit of a man, when with hunting-shirt and moccasins, she went into Burden's grant, for the purpose of making improvements and of acquiring a title to land. Here she erected thirty cabins, by virtue of which she held one hundred acres adjoining each. When Benjamin Burden the younger, came to make deeds for those who held cabin

after, Hite[87] removed his farm to Opecquon. Immediately on arriving from Ireland, the Irish began to rear habitations around him.[88] Samuel Glass and Mary Gamble his wife[89] took up their residence at the head spring of the Opecquon,[90] in 1736.[91] A son-in-law, Becket, was seated between Mr. Glass and North Mountain. His son David occupied a residence a little below his father, at Cherry Mead. His son, Robert, was placed a little further down, at Long Meadows.[92] Next down the creek was Joseph Colovin and his family. Then came John Wilson, who emigrated from the County of Armagh in Ireland, A.D. 1737[93] The Marquis family, with whom he was connected, lived near him. Next were the M'Auleys and then was William Hoge. Adjoining these, to the south, were the Allen family, a part of whom speedily removed to Front Royal. The M'Gill family now occupy their position. A little beyond the village lived Robert Wilson; his residence remains to this day. A little down the stream lived James Vance, son-in-law of Sam Glass, and ancestor of a numerous race, most of whom are to be found west of the Alleghanies. These were all settled there so early as 1736 or 1737.[94] An Irish family named Goode settled at

rights, he was astonished to see so many bearing the name of Mulhollin. Investigations led to the discovery of the mystery, and to the great mirth of the other claimants. Then Polly Mulhollin resumed her Christian name and familiar dress. Many of her respectable descendants still reside within the limits of Burden's grant. See Rev. William Henry Foote's "Sketches, Historical and Biographical, of the Presbyterian Church in Virginia."

[87] His sons-in-law, Bowman and Christian, lived near to Stephens and M'Kay, Irish settlers.

[88] Although in 1652, the Commissaries of the Commonwealth had ordered "Irish women to be sold to merchants and shipped to Virginia," yet few traces of these have been found in that colony. But, although Virginia had placed on her statute-books severe penal laws against Catholics; still some families—we can scarcely doubt, many of these Irish or of Irish descent—settled on the southern shore of Aquia Creek, and priests entered Virginia from time to time. See John Gilmary Shea's "Catholic Church in Colonial Days," Book iv., chap. iii., pp. 409, 410.

[89] They came from Banbridge, County of Down, in Ireland. His wife often spoke of her two fair brothers, who perished in the siege of Derry. A limestone pyramid has been reared to the memory of those settlers.

[90] They had purchased from Hite 16,000 acres of land.

[91] See Rev. William Henry Foote's "Sketches, Historical and Biographical, of the Presbyterian Church in Virginia."

[92] The stone dwelling is on the old site, and at the back of it is carefully preserved a part of the stockade fort, used as a place of refuge in case of alarms.

[93] According to tradition, he was a schoolmaster in the settlement. Here, according to an inscribed tombstone, lay the bodies of his wife and two children, who died before himself in 1742. The lettering of the tomb is given by Foote, who writing on the subject remarks:—"Let us pause a few moments at this rough, low, time-worn stone, in the very centre of the graves, the first, with an inscription, reared in the valley of Virginia, to mark the resting-place of an emigrant. You will scarcely read the inscription on one side or decipher the letters on the other. The stone crumbled under the unskilful hands of the husband, who brought it from that eminence yonder in the West, and, in the absence of a proper artist, inscribed the letters himself, to be a memorial to his young and lovely wife."

[94] See "Sketches, Historical and Biographical, of the Presbyterian Church in Virginia," pp. 21, 22. Edition of 1885.

an early period in Virginia,[95] as also, the Madisons, the Conways, and the M'Kendrees, who came as immigrants from Ireland. John Lewis was of Huguenot descent, and he came from Ireland in 1732. He was the first white resident of Bellefont,[96] Augusta County, Virginia.[97] About thirty of his former tenants and countrymen are said likewise to have settled there. Three of his sons were born in the County of Donegal, Ireland: viz., Thomas,[98] Andrew,[99] and William.[100] His son Charles[101] was born in Virginia. At an early period in the eighteenth century, Colonel James Patton came from Donegal, Ireland. Previous to 1753, he obtained a grant for one hundred and twenty thousand acres of land from the Governor of Virginia.[102] Among others, the M'Dowells—whether hailing from Ireland or Scotland is doubtful—settled in Virginia, during the early part of the eighteenth century,[103]

[95] Some of their posterity attained distinction. Among these were Samuel Goode, an Irish-American patriot of the Revolution, representing Virginia in Congress from 1799 to 1801; Patrick G. Goode, member of Congress for Ohio, from 1837 to 1843; William O. Goode, member of Congress for Virginia from 1853 to his death, July 3rd, 1859. See "Irish Celts," by a Member of the Michigan Bar.

[96] John Lewis' settlement was a few miles below the site of the town of Staunton, and on the banks of the stream, which still bears his name.

[97] See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. iii., p. 701.

[98] He was born in 1718. Though less efficient during the Indian wars than his brothers, Thomas was a man of learning and of sound judgment. He represented the County of Augusta for many years in the House of Burgesses; he was a member of the Convention which ratified the Constitution of the United States, and which formed the Constitution of Virginia. Afterwards, he sat for the County of Rockingham, in the House of Delegates of Virginia. In 1765, he was in the House of Burgesses, and he voted for Patrick Henry's celebrated resolutions. Thomas Lewis had four sons, who actively participated in the war of the Revolution; the youngest of these, Thomas, bore an ensign's commission, when only fourteen years of age. See *ibid.*, p. 702.

[99] Andrew Lewis, born about 1720, and his second son, was the general who commanded at the Battle of Point Pleasant, in the War of Independence. See *ibid.*, pp. 701, 702.

[100] He was born in 1724. Afterwards, he became colonel. He was an active participator in the border wars, and he was an officer of the Revolutionary army. During the war for Independence, one of his sons was killed, and another was maimed for life. See Rev. William H. Foote's "Sketches, Historical and Biographical, of the Presbyterian Church in Virginia."

[101] Charles, the child of John Lewis' old age, was born after settlement at their mountain home, in Virginia. He was the hero of many a gallant exploit, still treasured in the memories of the border riflemen's descendants, and there are few families among the Alleghanies, where the name and deeds of Charles Lewis are not familiar. His bravery and character during the Revolutionary War caused him to be appointed colonel. He fell at the head of his regiment, when leading on the attack at Point Pleasant.

[102] See "Sketches, Historical and Biographical, of the Presbyterian Church in Virginia," p. 36.

[103] In the latter part of December, 1743, the inhabitants of Timber Ridge were assembled at M'Dowell's dwelling in wonder and alarm, to resist one of the murderous incursions of the Indians from Ohio. These would not yield the valley of the Shenandoah to the whites, but with bloodshed. M'Dowell had rallied his neighbours. Not well skilled in savage warfare, the company fell into an ambush, at the junction of the North River and the James, where at one fire

and had their experience of the dangers to which pioneers in the wilderness were so often exposed.

In Newcastle government, 4,500 persons arrived as immigrants, and chiefly from Ireland, in 1726.[104] John Campbell, the great ancestor of the Campbells of Holston, came from Ireland to America, with a family of five grown sons and several daughters, in the same year.[105] One of these sons, and who was named Patrick, had a son Charles, and he had a son William.[106] David, the youngest son of John, married May Hamilton.[107] It seems probable, that these Campbells were related to the Rev. Dr. Alexander Campbell, born in Ireland A.D. 1788, and who afterwards migrated to Bethany, Virginia, where he presided over a College there founded, and where he became leader of a peculiar class of Presbyterians, called "The Disciples of Christ,"[108] but more frequently styled Campbellites.

While the stream of emigration proceeded,[109] in the year 1728 thousands took shipping from Belfast, and from other places in Ulster. These were mostly Presbyterians, who as well as the Irish Catholics

M'Dowell and eight of his companions fell dead. The Indians fled precipitately, in consequence probably of the unusual extent of their murderous success. The alarmed population gathered in the field of slaughter, and thought more of the dead than of pursuing the savages, whom they supposed far on their way to the West. Their neighbours took the nine bloody corpses on horseback, and laid them side by side, near M'Dowell's dwelling, while in overwhelming distress they prepared their graves. Though mourning the loss of their leading men, and unacquainted with military manœuvres on the frontiers, no one talked of abandoning possessions, for which so high a price of blood had been given and at a time of profound peace. In their sadness, the women even were brave. Burying their dead with the solemnity of Christian rights, while the murderers escaped beyond the mountains; men and women resolved to sow their fields, build their church, and lay the bodies in Timber Ridge. These were the first white men committed to the dust in Rockbridge county. Within a brick enclosure, on the west side of the road from Staunton to Lexington, and near the Red House or Maryland Tavern, the former residence of M'Dowell is still to be found. Entering the iron gate, and inclining to the left, about fifteen paces, there is a rough, unhewn limestone, about two feet in height, on which, in rude letters, by an unknown and unpractised hand, is the following inscription, next in age to the Irish schoolmaster's wife in the graveyard of Opecquon:

HERE LYES THE BODY OF
JOHN MACKDOWELL,
Deced. December, 1743.

—See *ibid.*, pp. 80 to 93.

[104] See John Fanning Watson's "Annals of Philadelphia."

[105] About the year 1730, he removed to what was then Orange—afterwards Augusta—County, where he resided until his death, and where his numerous descendants lived for many years.

[106] He was General William Campbell of the Revolutionary War, and the grandfather of Mrs. M'Dowell, wife to General M'Dowell, of the late Confederate War.

[107] They had a family of thirteen children, seven sons and six daughters, the youngest of whom was nineteen years old, when they removed to Holston. In 1765, John, the oldest son of David Campbell, in company with Dr. Thomas Walker, explored the western wilderness, and purchased for his father and himself an ancient survey, near the head waters of the Holston River.

[108] See "Irish Celts," by a Member of the Michigan Bar.

[109] See Talvi's "History of the Colonization of America," edited by William Hazlitt, in Two Vols. Published at London, 1851. 8vo.

then laboured under religious and civil disabilities caused by the Sacramental Test, and owing to their Episcopalian landlords' refusing to permit Presbyterian churches to be built in many instances on their large estates Moreover, when their original leases fell out about this time, the rents were enormously raised, and with them tithes payable to the episcopal clergy. Adding to discouragement, the three successive harvests after 1724 proved most unfavourable, and the price of food increased in proportion.[110] Unable to procure a comfortable subsistence in their native land for themselves and families, multitudes of labourers and husbandsmen embarked for America.[111] The tales of oppression told their sons of another generation produced the soldiers of the American Revolution.

Towards the close of the seventeenth and beginning of the eighteenth century, a great number of Irish arrived in New York, many moving into the interior. In 1738, William Johnson[112] established himself in Johnstown, Schoharie County. Soon afterwards, he erected a schoolhouse. The earliest teacher in his school was an Irishman, named Wall. He had also an Irishman named Flood as a *brow-master*,[113] who was an overseer or manager of the whole farm. He had besides an Irish Secretary named Lafferty, who was a good lawyer and who transacted his legal business. He had moreover an Irish physician named Daly.[114] The first settler in the town of Montgomery, New York, was a Mr. Eager,[115] who came from Ireland in 1728. In the same vessel arrived with him Mr. James M'Bride[116] and Mr. White.[117] The lands first purchased by these families are in part possessed by their descendants.[118] The village of New Windsor is thought to be the oldest in Orange County, New York. It was first settled by immigrants, principally from Ireland, who went there in considerable numbers, so early as 1731. Another Irish emigrant was Patrick Barber, born in the County Longford, and who emigrated to America, in the year 1749 or 1750. After a short residence in New York, he removed to the small village of Princeton,[119] in New Jersey.

[110] See Rev. Dr. James Seaton Reid's "History of the Presbyterian Church in Ireland," vol. iii, chap. xxvi. New edition, with additional Notes, by W. D. Killen, D.D. Belfast, 1867, 8vo.

[111] In the year 1729, nearly 6,000 Irish are reported to have landed in America, and before the middle of the century, nearly 12,000 arrived annually for several years. "The flow of the Catholic Irish did not take place until a comparatively recent period." — Dr. Hodge's "Constitutional History of the Presbyterian Church in the United States of America," Part 1., pp. 65, 66.

[112] Born in Smithtown, Co. Meath, Ireland, in 1715. In 1738 he established himself on a tract of land on the south side of the Mohawk River. He died in Johnstown, N.Y., 11th July, 1774. See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography, Vol. iii., p. 451.

[113] This is a Low Dutch word, signifying "honest," but usually applied to a confidential head servant.

[114] See J. R. Sims "Trappers of New York."

[115] The son of this Mr. Eager had a daughter, who married Captain James M'Bride, of the Revolution.

[116] He was the grandfather of John M'Bride of Hamptonburgh.

[117] He was grandfather to Major John White of Wallkill.

[118] See "History of Orange County, New York." Edition of 1846.

[119] There his distinguished son Francis was born, in 1757.

Towards the middle of the eighteenth century, the colonial population in America had received large accessions from the influx of immigrants, belonging to the Northern counties of Ireland. The Ulster linen manufacture had been there developed, chiefly owing to the skill and industry of the Presbyterians. Land had risen greatly in value as a consequence, for capital made by trade had been sunk in the soil; an educated, enterprising peasantry had converted bog and mountain into corn and flax fields; the lords to whom a large part of this land belonged, and several of whom had never so much as set their eyes on the surface of their property, concluded, that the increased value did not belong to the tenants who had created it, but to themselves, who had allowed it to be created. As leases fell in, they demanded enormous fines, before they would renew the tenures of actual occupiers and cultivators, or rents which could not in justice be paid. They served ejectments, on refusal to comply with their terms, and without remorse or scruple. Families who had been for generations upon the soil, chiefly Protestants, were turned adrift; thousands of men, women and children were made homeless and houseless. They were robbed by those who ought to have been their natural protectors; and to the New World, where opened a prospect for obtaining proprietorial rights and social independence, numerous bands of exasperated Ulstermen turned to seek those settlements, which were denied them by the grandees at home. No resources then remained for the peasantry but emigration. Those who had any means usually sought an asylum in the American plantations. [120] Thus, the injustice of English policy in the administration of Irish affairs, by an obvious process of retributive justice, exercised indirectly—as we shall find in the sequel—a most potent influence in bringing about the dismemberment of the British Empire in America. [121]

Among the frontier settlers and through the distant backwoods, Irishmen were very numerous, as they were also most enterprising and adventurous, during the eighteenth century. In 1746, the celebrated Daniel Boone, first settler and "backwoodsman of Kentucky," had Irishmen as his companions, and notably among these was the heroic and daring Major Hugh M'Grady,[122] as also Harland, M'Bride and Chaplain.[123] The father of Simon Kenton, alias Butler,[124] companion of Daniel Boone, and one of the first adventurous pioneers of the West, was an Irishman. One Robert Edmonds was born in Dublin, Ireland. He married Mary Marks in Cork, and he emigrated to America in 1754. He landed at Philadelphia, December 23rd.[125] In 1754, Doctors

[120] See Rev. Dr. James Seaton Reid's "History of the Presbyterian Church in Ireland," &c., Vol. iii., Chap. xxxvi., pp. 339 to 341. Edinburgh, London, Dublin and Belfast, 1834 to 1853, 8vo.

[121] See "A Brief Account of the Society of the Friendly Sons of St. Patrick, founded in Philadelphia, in 1770."

[122] See Marshall's "History of Kentucky," Vol. i., chap. iii.

[123] See Thomas D'Arcy M'Gee's "History of the Irish Settlers in North America," chap ii., p. 27.

[124] See Marshall's account of his life and extraordinary adventures.

[125] He afterwards removed to Bridge-

John[126] and Henry[127] Stephenson arrived from Ireland, in Baltimore. The eastern portion of Montgomery County, N.Y., was settled by Irish emigrants, who continued there to occupy various localities. These contributed quite their proportion to the general mass of population and labour, necessary for establishing a new country.[128] Captain William Scott served in the French war while young, and he was one of the first settlers of Dublin, in New Hampshire.[129] Before the reign of George II. ended, several thousand heads of families, all bred and married in Ireland, were rearing up a free posterity,[130] along the slopes of the Blue Ridge, in Virginia, as also in Maryland, and even so far north as within the valleys of the Hudson and the Merrimac.

---

## CHAPTER IX.

War between France and England in 1744—Peace of Aix-la-Chapelle—Renewal of Hostilities—Early Adventures of George Washington—Arrival in America of General Braddock—Expulsion of the Acadians from Nova Scotia—Defeat and Death of Braddock in 1755—Formal Declaration of War between France and England in 1756—English Reverses and Failures—Vigorous measures taken by William Pitt, and Armaments assembled for Prosecution of the Contest—Expeditions against Canada—The Taking of Quebec in 1759—Conquest of Canada—The Treaty of Paris—Cession of Louisiana to Spain by France—Revolt of the Indian Chief Pontiac and his Death.

When the French had surrendered Acadia, they took possession of Cape Breton Island, and there erected at very considerable cost the strong fortress of Louisburgh, at the opening to the Gulf of St. Lawrence. Their great desire was to re-take Acadia, where a population originally French was still strongly attached to the country of their fathers. At length, owing to European complications, in 1744 England and France were again at war, which was fiercely waged in Europe. So soon as this was known in America, the French made descents on the coast of Nova Scotia, and succeeded in effecting some success.[1] The New

port, Connecticut, and he died at the advanced age of ninety-three, leaving behind him a numerous offspring. See "History of Ancient Woodbury"

[126] He conducted an extensive trade from America with other countries.

[127] He entered upon the practice of medicine. He built a large and an elegant house on a hill near the York Road, and which he afterwards converted into a Small-pox hospital. This he supported at his own expense, thus becoming an early benefactor towards the city and its inhabitants. See "Chronicle of Baltimore," 1874.

[128] See Eager's "History of Orange County, New York," p. 46. Edition of 1846.

[129] Afterwards he signalized himself, by gallant achievements in the War of Independence.

[130] For a very comprehensive view of such colonization and its results, see the Abbe Raynal's "History of the British Settlements and Trade in North America." Book iii. Translated into English, and published at Edinburgh, 1779. 12mo.

[1] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. iii., chap. xxiv., p. 457.

England colonists, without waiting aid from England, soon began to prepare for a war on their own account. It was resolved to surprise and capture Louisburgh, and for that purpose a confederacy was formed, when bills of credit were issued and troops were embodied. The fleet of Commodore Warren, numbering one hundred sail, was ordered from the West Indies, and it lent co-operation in this enterprise.[2] The Governor of Massachusetts William Shirley was most active in seconding his efforts.[3] The colonists numbered 3,200 under the command of William Pepperel. After sustaining a seige of six weeks, the French in Louisburg capitulated, on June 17th 1745.[4] The New Englanders now proposed to raise a colonial army, for the conquest of Canada; but it was decided by the English government, that they must only menace Montreal, while a British fleet and an army should ascend the St. Laurence to attack Quebec. About 8,000 men were accordingly embodied in New England; but the English fleet failed to arrive. Under command of the Duke D'Anville, a French fleet of forty ships carrying 3,000 troops arrived at Nova Scotia. The Canadians and Indians harassed the frontiers, threatening even the reduction of Louisburg and Nova Scotia. However, a series of misfortunes attended the French; many ships were wrecked and lost in a storm; a terrible fever raged among the troops and seamen; the Admiral died; the Vice-Admiral committed suicide; a second storm dispersed the fleet once more; when the remnant of this ill-fated expedition returned to France.[5] On the other hand, the New Englanders could accomplish nothing against the French and Indians. At length, a treaty at Aix-la-Chapelle was concluded in October 1748, and this put an end to the war.[6] Louisburg and Cape Breton were restored to the French, in exchange for some continental advantages, more highly prized by the British monarch and ministry. The English Parliament gave an indemnity for colonial expenses incurred during that war.[7]

Within the colonies, strifes of sect and party were for the most part local in origin, and they had been waged for many years. These had nothing more than restricted interest and only passing importance, while in Europe they were scarcely noticed.[8] However, from the

[2] See Dr. J. Campbell's "Naval History of Great Britain, including the History and Lives of the British Admirals," Vol. iv., chap. xxiii., pp. 318-319. London, 1813, 8 vols., 8 vo.

[3] See Hutchinson's "History of the Province of Massachusetts-Bay," Vol. ii., chap. iv., pp. 405 to 423.

[4] For a detailed and an interesting account of this siege, the reader is referred to Chief Justice John Marshall's "Life of George Washington, Commander-in-Chief of the American Forces during the war which established the Independence of his country, and First President of the United States," Vol. i. chap. x., pp. 403 to 416. London edition, 1804 to 1807, 5 vols., 8vo.

[5] See G. Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. iii., chap. xxiv., p. 463.

[6] See Henri Martin's "Histoire de France," Tome xv., Liv. xcv., p. 323.

[7] See John R. G. Hassard's "History of the United States of America," chap. xvii., p. 118.

[8] See James Grahame's "History of

beginning of the eighteenth century, the various colonies—as population increased—began to extend very materially the trade and commerce of England.[9] In the course of a century, the march of civilization had made great strides. Meanwhile, among the States of Europe—especially those in rivalry and most interested—the national concerns and growing progress of the colonists aroused extended aspirations and ambition.

Vast tracts of territory disposable in the New World were objects which tended to create disputes between the French and English, regarding their respective boundary lines.[10] Not only did the former nation claim the whole range of the Mississippi River, but even all the great rivers flowing into it, and which if allowed should have carried them to the very summits of the Alleghany Mountains. An enterprising course of colonization pursued by France became exceedingly offensive to England. Her jealousy could not brook the establishment of a line of defence, which, at the same time that it settled by occupation the question of France's boundaries, left the British power exposed to the attacks, not only of the French, but also of the Indian tribes. Most of these were on terms of warm friendship and alliance with the French Government. The respective boundaries of France and England, in the New World, had not been sufficiently settled by the Treaties of Utrecht and of Aix-la-Chapelle.[11] Mutual encroachments soon arose, while hostilities followed for some time, without any regular declaration of war. At last an open rupture took place. The outcome of such passions and jealousies in most States leads to bloodshed and to political changes. In 1749, an association of merchants was formed in London, and they combined with Virginian planters. Thus, the Ohio Company was formed. A grant of 600,000 acres on the head of that river had been obtained from the English Crown,[12] with exclusive privileges of traffic amongst the Indians. In turn, these were urged to resist such encroachments, while the French began to strengthen Niagara forts, and to erect other posts at Presque Isle, now Erie, at Le Bœuf, now Waterford, and at Vanango, at present Franklin, in North-Western Pennsylvania. Within these limits, after the Governor of Canada had remonstrated with the Governors of New York and of Pennsylvania, some English traders were seized, and their

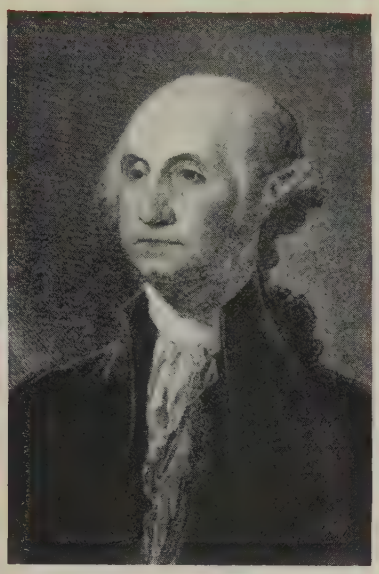
the United States of North America," Vol. ii., Books iii. to vii. Vol. iii., Books viii. to x. for accounts of these contests.

[9] This is shown in a pamphlet, published A.D. 1731, and intituled: "The Importance of the British Plantations in America to this Kingdom, with the State of the Trade and Methods for improving it. Also, a Description of the several Colonies there," 8vo.

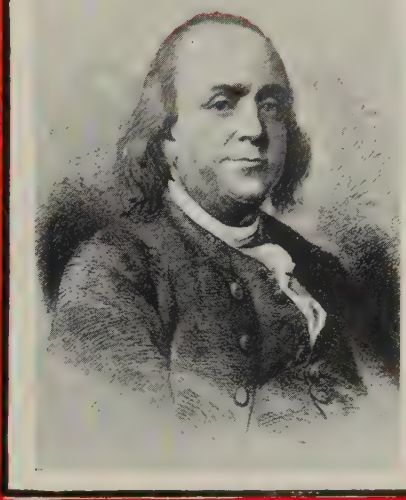
[10] See "The Annual Register; or a view of the History, Politicks, and Literature, for the year 1758," Vol. i. History of the Present War, chap. i., pp. 2 to 4. London, 1758, *et seq.*, 8vo. The plan of this interesting and valuable periodical was conceived by the renowned statesman, orator and man of letters, Edmund Burke; while he undertook writing the historical portion, which engagement he admirably fulfilled for many succeeding years.

[11] See Henri Martin's "Histoire de France," Tome xv., Liv. xcv., p. 324.

[12] See Hugh Murray's "United States of America," Vol. i., chap. x., p. 319.



GEORGE WASHINGTON,
First President of the United States.



BENJAMIN FRANKLIN,
U S Ambassador to France.



RICHARD MONTGOMERY
Brigadier-General U.S. Army



JOHN SULLIVAN
Major-General U S Army

goods were confiscated. This proceeding caused the Ohio Company to make loud complaints, and among the colonists great resentment was aroused.

Meantime, orders arriving from England reached the Governors of Virginia and Pennsylvania, to prevent the establishment of forts within their specified limits and to take further proceedings. At this period, Robert Dinwiddle was Governor of Virginia. He was distinguished for ability and for the interest he felt regarding the exclusion of Frenchmen from the Colonial dependencies.[13] Governor Dinwiddle having laid his grounds of complaint before the Legislative Assembly of Virginia, it was resolved to select a messenger who should bear a remonstrance to M. Legardeur de St. Pierre, then in command at one of the nearest French posts. The appointment having been offered to several and refused, a young man—then not quite twenty-two years old—was applied to, when he promptly accepted the responsibilities and dangers attending on this delicate and difficult mission. He was no other than George Washington, [14] who now entered on a

[13] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. iv., chap. iv., p. 97.

[14] He is said to have been of English ancestors, among the first settlers of the oldest British colony in America, and he was born in Westmoreland County, Virginia, February 22nd 1732. At the early age of ten years, his father Augustine died, and young George lived with his mother Mary, *nee* Ball, on the paternal estate, near Fredericksburg, on the Rappahannock River. He received but a moderately liberal education, owing to want of opportunities in those earlier times of colonial life; but he was diligent and studious, so that his natural abilities and his scholarly acquirements soon rendered him conspicuous. For a profession he selected that of a surveyor, and for which he had all the requisite qualifications. His elder brother Lawrence Washington had become a member of the Ohio Company; while this circumstance alone was sufficient to enlist George's sympathies and co-operation in the task now confided to him. At the early age of nineteen he received an important command in the militia, with the rank of Major. See David Ramsey's "Life of George Washington, Commander-in-Chief of the Armies of the United States in the War which established their Independence; and First President of the United States," chap. i. London edition, 1807, 8vo. It is well to observe here, that Dr. Thomas Addis Emmet, in his Address before the American Irish Historical Society of New York, delivered January 19th 1899, has introduced the following statement: "Washington was in all probability descended on his father's side from an Irish emigrant, and his mother's family, the Balls, beyond doubt came from the neighbourhood of Dublin. Walford in his "Country Families of the United Kingdom" shows that at the present time the only families bearing the name of Ball are to be found in Ireland. The family, it is stated, came to Ireland in the fourteenth century as Flemish emigrants. The De Wessingtons it is also claimed were Flemish who settled about the same time in both England and Ireland. But the last of the English family it is known died some years before the planting of Jamestown, Va. The members of the Irish branch it seems have all been traced, and some of them to this country. One, a son of Henry Washington, who was a prominent man, disappeared from Ireland during the troubles I have described. He probably escaped to Bermuda, where almost all vessels first stopped on their way to the American colonies. During a visit to Bermuda in 1852, I had occasion to examine some of the church records of this period. I there saw several references made in the minutes of the vestry meetings to one Washington "a sojourner," who was several times fined for not conforming

public career. Thus was he prepared for those future great acts, which have rendered his name ever memorable and revered in the history of the United States.

At the end of October 1753, Washington set out on a dangerous and most difficult journey of over five hundred miles, and through a trackless wilderness infested by Indians, who for the most part were gained over by the French. He had only Christopher Gist as a guide and four other attendants, when he travelled by way of the junction of the Monongohela and Alleghany Rivers. [15] At last, he reached St. Pierre's fort at Le Bœuf. The French commander declared, that he had no power to quit his post, as the letter of Governor Dinwiddle demanded. However, he promised to transmit the letter and message to Montreal, where the Marquis Du Quesne, Governor of Canada, then resided. In the presence of Washington himself, the French officers made no secret of what had been intended by their government, and they even declared their own resolution, to take possession of the Ohio River and of all that country which it drained. [16] The return journey of Washington and his party was made in winter,[17] and as a part of their way was by canoe, when they arrived at Fort Venango, fears were entertained that they should be massacred by hostile Indians. Then taking to the woods, having only packs on their shoulders and guns in their hands, Washington and his guide reached the Alleghany River, which they found to be half-frozen, and the mid-channel was filled with ice-flakes. After a day's labour, they constructed a rude raft, and on this they endeavoured to cross. But they narrowly escaped drowning in the attempt, for they were hurled into the deep and rapid stream. Nevertheless, they succeeded in reaching an island, where they passed that night, yet shivering with cold, and in their wet clothes now frozen to their bodies. By morning, the whole river was covered with solid ice, and thus were they enabled once more to enter the woods.[18] After

by attending the service of the Established Church. He seemed to have proved incorrigible as he was ordered "to go his way." He probably did so to Virginia, from the known fact, that his father had been a friend of Lord Baltimore and others who were connected with the Virginia settlement."

[15] "The place was critically examined by Major Washington, and he was impressed with the advantages it afforded as a military post, both for defence and a depository of supplies, in case of hostilities in that quarter; and it was by his advice, that a fortification was shortly afterwards begun there, which became celebrated in two wars." —Jared Sparks' "Life of George Washington, Commander-in-Chief of the American Armies, and First President of the United States," &c. Vol. i., chap. ii., p. 26. London, 1839, 2 vols., 8vo.

[16] See "Bancroft's History of the United States," Vol. iv., chap. v., pp. 110, 111.

[17] A particular account of his adventures on this journey may be found in Washington Irving's elegantly-written "Life of George Washington," Vol. i., chap. ix., pp. 92 to 99. New York, 1855 to 1857, 4 vols., royal 8vo.

[18] Washington's Journal, which he had noted on this expedition and containing an account of these adventures, was published in London. It was regarded as a document of singular importance. This too has been "inserted at large," as a note in Chief Justice John Marshall's "Life of George

many narrow escapes, Washington was at length enabled to cross the Alleghany Mountains and to arrive in Virginia.

As that region lying beyond their western slopes had been a wilderness, hitherto unsurveyed and hardly explored, a colourable title was sought from the Indians possessing hunting grounds in that quarter, to build a fort on an eligible site, at the junction of the Alleghany and Monongahela Rivers, where the present city of Pittsburg now stands. This was intended to command the head waters of the Ohio River. The report and recommendation of Major Washington[19] urged Governor Dinwiddle to send westwards a small body of men to effect such an object. He recommended the other colonies to aid him in an expedition which he had planned. A regiment commanded by Colonel Fry was raised in Virginia, and Washington was appointed Lieutenant-Colonel in it. Joined by some troops from New York and from South Carolina, they marched from Alexandria westwards; but on their way, intelligence was received that the French had seized the unfinished fort and had called it Du Quesne, in compliment to the Canadian Governor. A detachment of the French had been moved in advance and westwards of the Alleghany Mountains, at a place called the Great Meadows.[20] Here in May 1754, Washington surprised and defeated them, their commanding officer Jumonville being slain.[21] Meantime, Colonel Fry died, and the command then devolved on Washington. At the Great Meadows he now built a stockaded entrenchment, which he called Fort Necessity. There he was attacked by the French in greatly superior force. After a day's fighting, Washington and his men were obliged to evacuate that position. On the 4th day of July 1754, the English garrison withdrew from the basin of the Ohio River.[22] With arms and baggage, Washington retired to the Upper Potomac, and there he erected Fort Cumberland. These proceedings created no little alarm in the colonies, and even in England. The British Ministry advised their provincials to unite for general defence. Accordingly in June 1754, delegates from New Hampshire, Massachusetts, Rhode Island, Connecticut, New York, Pennsylvania and Maryland assembled at Albany. On the 4th of July, the delegates accepted a scheme of confederation drawn up by the celebrated Benjamin Franklin,[23] then a delegate from Pennsylvania. However, this plan was to be of no force until confirmed by the several Assemblies.[24]

Washington," &c., Vol. ii., chap. i., pp. 5 to 27.

[19] See Hugh Murray's "United States of America," Vol. i., chap x.. p. 320.

[20] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. iv., chap. v., pp. 117 to 119.

[21] See Chief Justice John Marshall's "Life of George Washington," &c., Vol. ii., chap. i , pp. 25 to 27.

[22] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. iv., chap. v., p. 121.

[23] See the Life and a complete edition of his works by Jared Sparks. Boston, 1840, 10 vols., 8vo.

[24] See "The History of the Province of Massachusetts-Bay from 1749 to 1774, comprising a detailed Narrative of the Origin and Early Stages of the American Revolution." By Thomas Hutchinson, Esq., LL.D., formerly Governor of

Ultimately, it was not generally adopted, as the colonial Assemblies considered that it gave too much power to the Crown, while the English government objected to it, as giving too much authority to the colonies. In England, anticipating an open rupture with France, the Ministry had taken measures to send from Ireland General Braddock as Commander-in-Chief, with two regiments of regulars, in the beginning of 1755,[25] while the various Assemblies were expected to raise seven or eight thousand armed provincials, and to contribute large sums of money for projected operations.

When Braddock had arrived in America, a plan of campaign was devised at Alexandria, where he met the Governors of five colonies.[26] The French were to be assailed at three different points. An expedition to the East, and directed against Nova Scotia, had been placed under command of John Winslow of Massachusetts and Colonel Monkton of the regular army. A militia force of about 5,000 men, and commanded by William Johnson of Johnstown, was assembled at Albany. This Irishman,[27] who had risen from the ranks, had uncommon bodily strength and a rude energy of character. Such qualifications had enabled him to acquire great influence over the Indians.[28] His force was intended to operate against the important fortress of Crown Point, on the frontiers of Canada. Braddock himself undertook to lead in person his regular soldiers and some Virginians to attack Fort Du Quesne. In June 1755, the French posts in Nova Scotia were assailed by the New Englanders, and they were surrendered on condition that the inhabitants should be protected throughout their beloved Acadia.[29] There, the inhabitants of French origin had long lived in a state of primitive simplicity, while they were remarkable for inoffensiveness of demeanor and gentleness of manners. But, despite of the capitulation and its terms, a most cruel and villainous device was adopted by the Lieutenant-Governor and Chief Justice of the province, in consultation with two of the British naval commanders. It was ruthlessly resolved, to drive them out of their country, as also to confiscate their lands and property to the Crown. Until ripe for execution however, this determination was to be kept a profound secret from the people. The English were unwilling to bear the expense of maintaining garrisons in their country. Were the inhabitants ordered to leave it even, it was feared that they would reinforce the French at Cape Breton and in Canada. It was now

the Province. Edited from the author's MS. by his grandson, the Rev. John Hutchinson, M.A., chap. i., pp. 21 to 25. London, 1828, 8vo.

[25] This plan of operations was designed by the Duke of Cumberland. See Henri Martin's "Histoire de France," Tome xv., Liv. xcvii., p. 475.

[26] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. iv., chap. vii., pp. 177 to 179.

[27] At an early age he emigrated from Ireland to America.

[28] He published a treatise on the Customs, Manners and Languages of the Six Nations. This was inserted in the "Philosophical Transactions of the Society of Philadelphia," Vol. lxiii. November, 1772.

[29] See Haliburton's "History of Nova Scotia," Vol. i.

determined, to transport the Acadians from their homes, and to scatter them far and wide through the British provinces. The inhabitants were French in language and in sympathy, while they were Catholic in religion, and very generally fervent in its practices. Accordingly, under various false pretexts, they were assembled in their respective parish churches. These were then surrounded with troops, and the people were taken away as prisoners.[30] Ships had been prepared for their transportation. In the confusion of embarkation, husbands were separated from their wives and children from their parents. The nearest relations and the dearest friends were thus carried off to distant colonies, further to be persecuted because of their creed, and destined never again to see each other.[31]

This campaign was rendered remarkable, owing to the ignominous defeat and unanticipated death of the English General Braddock. Having assembled his force, consisting of 2,200 men, at the General's earnest solicitation, Washington who had quitted the army was induced to serve as a volunteer, and in the capacity of aide-de-camp. He had a previous knowledge of the country, as also of the enemy's character and mode of fighting. By great personal exertions, Benjamin Franklin[32] influenced the Pennsylvania farmers to furnish waggons and horses for transport of the baggage and artillery. Nearly three months were lost during the effecting of such arrangements. At the earnest request of Washington, it was at last resolved to march from Alexandria with an advance division of 1,300 men, Colonel Dunbar with the heavy artillery and baggage remaining behind. The illustrious Washington signalized himself as a brave leader and wise counsellor, while acting as a Virginian volunteer on the side of the British; but, on the march he was seized with a severe illness, and it required his utmost efforts to keep up with the army. Had the General adopted Washington's advice, he would have accepted the proffered aid of some Indians to scour the woods and to guard against any surprise, or even he would have thrown forward some of the Virginian rangers to protect the front and flanks of his force. But, wedded to the forms of regular European warfare, Braddock had little regard for the opinions of a young provincial. The garrison at Fort Du Quesne was understood to be small, and quite inadequate to resist the force now directed against it. On the evening of July 8th, Washington joined the advancing troops. On the following

[30] See the account of George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. iv., chap. viii., pp. 193 to 206.

[31] This shocking outrage on natural rights and human sympathies has been related in flowing metre, in Longfellow's immortal and charming poem "Evangeline."

[32] This eminent man, who afterwards figured so conspicuously in the history of his country, was born in Boston, January 6th 1706, and he died at Philadelphia, April 17th 1790. His life and character are set forth in his works, published in London, 1806, in three Volumes, 8vo. His grandson, W. J. Franklin, published "Memoirs and Writings of Benjamin Franklin," &c., written by himself to a late period, and continued to the time of his death. London, 1818, 3 vols. 4to. A second edition followed in 3 vols., 8vo.

morning, Braddock commenced his march, with drums beating and colours flying, all in the panoply of war. A few miles from Fort Du Quesne, the English and provincials entered a narrow ravine through the woods, where about 200 French and 600 armed Indians were concealed among the trees and high grass. Suddenly, an invisible enemy opened a murderous fire. The vanguard fell back in confusion; yet, Braddock formed his regulars into platoons and columns to make regular discharges, which only struck the trees. For a short time the British stood firm; but, after sixty of their officers and more than half of their men had been shot down, they fell into a panic, and a general flight ensued. Braddock was mortally wounded, and borne to the rear.[33] The despised Virginian militia, under the command of Washington, held their ground bravely. The officers generally remained on the field, while they had any hope of rallying their troops. Of eighty-six engaged, sixty-three were killed or wounded, while 714 of the privates fell. All their cannon and baggage were abandoned, the survivors retreating to the rear division.[34] During the whole of this disastrous day, Washington manifested the most admirable coolness and courage. He escaped almost miraculously without a wound, although two horses were shot under him, and four bullets passed through his clothes, as he was galloping in every part of the field a conspicuous mark for the enemy. The remnant of this invading force, destroying all its stores not needed for immediate use, retired to Philadelphia. Although the French deemed themselves too weak or unprepared to pursue; yet, the frontiers were now left exposed to Indian attacks. However, a force was soon raised to defend them and this was placed under the command of Washington.

On the death of General Braddock, Shirley Governor of Massachusetts became Commander-in-Chief. He marched an army against Fort Niagara. But, the difficulties of the march, and that discouragement which spread after the tidings of Braddock's defeat, caused the failure of his expedition. Having learned that the French were erecting a fort at Ticonderoga, General Johnson now pushed on towards Lake George. The French General Baron Dieskau had brought from France a large reinforcement of troops, and to them he had added a very considerable body of friendly Indians.[35] At the head of these he was proceeding to attack the British settlements at Oswego; but hearing of Johnson's advance, he hastened to meet the colonists, who had now taken up their position in a entrenched camp. Dieskau drove back an advanced party of 1,000 men, who had met him unexpectedly, and then he advanced to assault the entrenched camp. This he attacked at Lake George, on the 5th of September; but Johnson received him with great

[33] See Lord Mahon's "History of England from the Peace of Utrecht." Vol. iv., chap. xxxii., pp. 69, 70. London, 1836, *et seq.*, 8vo.

[34] See Guizot's "Vie de Washington," Tome iii.

[35] See Washington Irving's "Life of George Washington," Vol. i., chap. xviii., pp. 220 to 223.

firmness, and opened a brisk fire. This caused the Canadians and Indians to fall back. For several hours, the French regulars maintained the contest with great vigour. The British General was severely wounded, and obliged to leave Lynam, his second in command. However, with a loss of nearly 1,000 men, the French were completely repulsed; their Commander was mortally wounded and made a prisoner; while the retreating forces, suddenly assailed by a New York detachment, abandoned their baggage and took to flight.[36] Afterwards Johnson built Fort William Henry, at the head of the lake. However, he did not follow up his victory, by an attack on Crown Point. Even the French were allowed by him to fortify Ticonderoga.[37]

The enterprises and encroachments of the French and English, as also of the colonists belonging to both races, were co-incident with operations of the English navy, which had long been employed in despoiling the commerce of France. At length, in May 1756, England openly declared war with that nation.[38] This is generally known in European and in American history, as the Seven Years' War. Its first chances were favourable to the French, in almost every place; but, on the sea, great losses were sustained by them. On the death of Baron Dieskau, the brave and able Marquis of Montcalm[39] assumed the post of French Commandant in Canada. In the colonies, General Shirley had supreme command, and he assembled a council of war at New York. After some deliberation, it was resolved that 10,000 men should be directed against Crown Point, 6,000 against Niagara, and 3,000 against Fort Du Quesne, while a smaller number of troops should march through Maine, in order to create alarm for the safety of Quebec. Meantime, General Abercrombie had been despatched from England and with several regiments of regulars, while the Earl of Loudon was to follow as Commander-in-Chief, and with extraordinary powers. Hesitation and indecision regarding the English movements followed. Taking advantage of their delays, the Marquis of Montcalm crossed over Lake Ontario from Fort Frontenac, now Kingston in Canada. With about 5,000 French, Canadians and Indians he marched against the two Forts at Oswego, which were surrendered to him, on August 10th and 14th 1756. In the attack, Colonel Mercer the commandant was killed. The garrison amounting to 1,600 men[40] became prisoners, while 121 pieces of cannon, as also stores, sloops and boats were obtained. In presence of the Indians, Montcalm destroyed the Forts, which were objects of great jealousy to the Five Nations. This well devised attack and its successful execution filled the colonists with great alarm,

[36] After this victory, the title of Baronet and a gift of £5,000 sterling were conferred on Johnson. See M. le Dr. Hoefer's "Nouvelle Biographie Générale," Tome xxvi., col. 800.

[37] See Garneau's "Histoire du Canada," Tome iii., Liv. iv., chap. i.

[38] See George Bancroft's "Hstory of the United States," Vol. iv., chap. x.

[39] The life and actions of this heroic man are well illustrated in "Memoires sur le Canada depuis 1749 jusqu'a 1760." Quebec, 1830, 8vo.

[40] See "The Annual Register," &c., Vol. i. History of the Present War, chap. ii., p. 13.

and suspended their contemplated plan of operations. A series of reverses for the English succeeded.

The object of the Crown being to place all the colonies under one supreme military rule, Lord Loudon had been appointed Governor of Virginia, with a title of precedence over the Governors of all the other provinces. Dissensions soon arose among the provincial officers, who were compelled to take rank under the regulars, while the new Commander-in-Chief, owing to his arbitrary orders and manifest incompetency, became most unpopular. In the beginning of 1757, he had devised a plan of operations against Louisburg. Having raised 8,000 provincials, 5,000 British troops arrived under George Viscount Howe, while a powerful squadron under Admiral Holbourn touched at Halifax in the beginning of July. Lord Loudon sailed from New York with 6,000 regulars, to take command of this combined expedition. News soon reached him, that Louisburg had been garrisoned by 6,000 regulars, exclusive of Canadians, and that seventeen line-of-battle ships lay in the harbour. Moreover it was known that a French fleet had already sailed from Brest destined for Canada. Meantime, taking advantage of this futile expedition, the enterprising Marquis of Montcalm, at the head of 9,000 men, laid seige to the strong Fort William Henry, having a garrison of between two and three thousand regulars, commanded by Colonel Monroe. To secure this important frontier post, General Webb was stationed at Fort Edward with an army of 4,000 men. In this great war the native tribes of Indians participated, as they were friendly or hostile to the French or English. In many instances, it seemed most difficult to restrain their innate ferocity and barbarous customs. In vain did Colonel Monroe solicit succour from General Webb, but after an investment of six days, he was obliged to capitulate.[41] According to the terms, that garrison was allowed to leave with the honours of war and to be protected from the Indians. However, these latter fell on the unarmed soldiers, and massacred a great number of them. Blame has been attached to Montcalm and to his officers, for neglect in not preventing such outrages,[42] yet these seem to have been perpetrated, notwithstanding all efforts made to save the lives of their prisoners.[43] Fort William Henry was subsequently razed to the ground,[44] and it was never afterwards rebuilt. It may be observed, that Lord Loudon's mighty preparations were attended with failure, and they covered him with disgrace.

The English and provincials, in the beginning of 1758, had assembled a force of 50,000 men, under the command of General Abercrombie. This was the most powerful army that had ever been seen in America. It was only after repeated failures, that a vigorous

[41] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. iv., chap. ix.

[42] The English prisoners themselves acknowledged, "that the French strove to restrain the Indians, but were overpowered."—Thomas Hutchinson's "History of the Province of Massachusetts-Bay from 1749 to 1774," &c., chap. i., p. 61.

[43] See "The Annual Register," Vol. i. History of the War, chap. vii., pp. 28 to 32.

and well sustained plan of war, on the part of the English, led to its successful issue in their favour. The ill-success attending the conduct of the war with France had caused general discontent against the government among the people of England. At length, William Pitt, afterwards the celebrated Earl of Chatham, was called to the ministry, and with functions which gave him control of the military operations.[44] He re-called the Earl of Loudon, and appointed General Abercrombie to succeed. He fitted out a powerful fleet under Admiral Boscawen, and he also sent out 12,000 troops to America. The colonists were ready, on their part, to raise a force of more than 20,000 men; ships were provided for their transport; while heavy taxes self imposed furnished the requisite supplies. On the 28th of May, a fleet of twenty line-of-battle ships and eighteen frigates sailed from Halifax, under command of Admiral Boscawen; while 14,000 men commanded by General Amherst were on board. On the 2nd of June, they arrived before Louisburg. General Wolfe[45] accompanied this expedition, and he became distinguished during the seige. The French Chevalier de Drucourt, a brave and an experienced officer, had charge of the place, with a garrison of 2,500 regulars and 600 militia. The harbour was secured by five line-of-battle ships, a fifty gun ship and five frigates. The English landed on the 8th of June.[46] After a siege, lasting for seven weeks, the place was surrendered July 27th. The garrison and sailors, to the number of 5,000, were made prisoners and carried to England. An immense quantity of guns, munitions and stores was obtained; while Cape Breton and its dependencies were subjected to the conquerors, who sent off the inhabitants to France in English vessels.

Under General Abercrombie himself, another army, consisting of 7,000 regulars and 9,000 provincials, with a heavy train of artillery, moved against Ticonderoga. By Montcalm, this fort was defended with 4,000 French. General Amherst descended Lake George in flat-boats, and landing at its northern extremity, he routed an advanced guard of the enemy. The General pushed on rapidly to capture Ticonderoga, before reinforcements then on the way to Montcalm could arrive.[47] He was successfully opposed, however, by the French, who under Montcalm made judicious preparations for the defence, having mustered 3,600 troops for its preservation. The English regulars advanced to the attack, between the open columns of their provincial regiments.

[44] See Charles Mackay's "History of the United States," Vol. i., Book ii., chap. iii, p. 198, London, Roy. 8vo.

[45] See R. Wright's "Life of Major-General James Wolfe," London, 1864. 8vo.

[46] "At that landing, none was more gallant than Richard Montgomery; just one-and-twenty; Irish by birth; an humble officer in Wolfe's brigade; but also a servant of humanity, enlisted in its corps of immortals. The sagacity of his commander honoured him with well-deserved praise and promotion to a lieutenancy."—George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. iv., chap. xiii.

[47] See Thomas Hutchinson's "History of the Province of Massachusetts-Bay, from 1749 to 1774," chap. i., pp., 72, 73

A bloody battle was fought on July 8th, when the English were completely routed, and their General Abercrombie was forced to retreat to the southern extremity of Lake George.[48] The important French post of Frontignac, on the north bank of the St. Lawrence and at the eastern outlet of Lake Ontario, was a general repository for stores, and the key of communication between Canada and Louisiana. At this time, its garrison consisted only of one hundred and ten men, with a few Indian auxiliaries An expedition was conducted against it by Colonel Bradstreet, who late on the 25th of August landed 3,000 men and some pieces of cannon, within a mile of the fort. The place was soon attacked by this greatly superior force, and in two days it was surrendered at discretion. Sixty pieces of cannon, with arms and military stores to a large amount, were taken, besides nine armed vessels, mounting from eight to eighteen guns. These and the fort were destroyed, and re-crossing the Ontario, Colonel Bradstreet returned to the army.[49] The Virginians had placed under Washington a force to protect them from the incursions of the French and Indians.[50] General Forbes also set out from Philadelphia. With a united body of 6,000 troops, these were directed against Fort Du Quesne. The General undertook to cut a new road through forests almost impenetrable, instead of following the old track, as advised by Washington. That unnecessary delay to their operations brought on the month of November, before they arrived at their point of destination. Then provisions were nearly exhausted, and a party under Major Grant having too rashly advanced was defeated with great loss.[51] Deserted by the Indians, however, the garrison had been reduced to 500 men, and on the evening before the British arrived, setting fire to the fort, the French retreated in boats down the Ohio River.[52] The damage was soon repaired; the fort was then supplied with a strong English garrison; and, in compliment to the able English Minister, that place was thenceforth designated Pittsburgh.

Continual struggles between the French and English had thus ensued, but with varying fortune. However, the English ministry now resolved to signalize the coming year of 1759, by the complete conquest of Canada. A circular letter was directed by William Pitt to the several governors of the colonies urging their co-operation; but, their resources in men and money had been greatly exhausted by their previous efforts. Notwithstanding, they were still ready to lend generous and effective assistance. A triple and powerful army organization was again resolved on; while the French possessions were to be entered separately, and so far as possible simultaneously to second united operations. The central and main army, composed of British and provincials, was formed under

[48] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. iv., chap xiii.

[49] See Garneau's "Histoire du Canada," Tome iii., chap. iii.

[50] See David Ramsey's "Life of George Washington," &c., chap. i., p. 14.

[51] See "The Annual Register," &c., Vol. i., History of the Present War, chap. xiii., pp. 70 to 74.

[52] See Jared Sparks' "Life of George Washington," &c., Vol. i., chap. v., p. 101.

General Amherst, now appointed Commander-in-Chief. He was to advance against Ticonderoga and Crown Point; afterwards the army was expected to fall down the River St. Lawrence, to co-operate with an expedition planned against Quebec. This latter division was placed under the command of Brigadier-General Wolfe, a young officer who had already distinguished himself, and who, escorted by a strong fleet, was to ascend the River St Lawrence and to land troops for the seige of that strongly fortified town. Under General Prideaux, a third army, chiefly formed of provincials and Indians, was designed to capture Niagara; and afterwards embarking on Lake Ontario, these were to proceed down the St. Lawrence to take possession of Montreal. A fleet of 150 sail under Admiral Boscawen was designed to co-operate.[53] The naval superiority of England prevented the French from sending out reinforcements to Canada; and thus their posts were then too feebly garrisoned to withstand such formidable preparations.

After a considerable delay, assembling his forces at Albany, General Amherst marched for Ticonderoga, which was immediately abandoned on the 22nd of July, when he arrived before the place. He then pursued the French down Lake Champlain. The fort at Crown Point was also abandoned, as he approached, and the French retreated to Isle-aux-Nois. A body of between three and four thousand men, and a fleet of several armed vessels, were stationed there; while a succession of adverse storms on the Lake prevented the English from securing a naval superiority. Thereupon, retarded in his operations against the French, General Amherst was obliged to take up his winter quarters at Crown Point, where he built a fort. Having embarked with his army on Lake Ontario, General Prideaux landed without opposition, on the 6th of July, about three miles from Fort Niagara. This he now invested, but while conducting the operations of siege, he was killed by the bursting of a cohorn.[54] The command then devolved on Sir William Johnson. Meantime, a force of French and of Indians had been mustered for the relief of Niagara, and on the morning of July 24th, a furious attack was made upon the English, drawn up in order of battle, between the cataract and the fortress. The French were completely routed, after an engagement which lasted nearly for an hour Next day the garrison capitulated, and over 600 men marched out with the honours of war, before they had been made prisoners and carried to New York.[55] The reduction of that fortress effectually cut off the communication between Canada and Louisiana.

Before these expeditions had full effect, General Wolfe sailed from Halifax, and he ascended the St. Lawrence with a fleet of over forty vessels, conveying an army of over 8,000 men.[56] In the channel of

[53] See Lord Mahon's "History of England from the Peace of Utrecht," Vol. iv., chap. xxxv., pp. 199, 200.

[54] See "History of the Province of Massachusetts-Bay, from 1749 to 1774," chap. i., p. 77.

[55] See "The Annual Register," &c., for 1759, Vol. ii. History of the Present War, chap. vi., pp. 29 to 34.

[56] "Several men who became great in the military or naval service accompanied him as subordinates—

the river, where it begins to widen below Quebec, lies the Island of Orleans.[57] There the troops landed on the 27th June.[58] The strong fortress now frowned before them, and built on a rock, inaccessible from those sides approaching the St. Lawrence, while it was protected by walls and bastions, constructed with great engineering skill and judgment. The River St. Charles drew a line of protection, on the other side of approach; but at the top of that eminence, on which the upper town was built and beyond it, extended what were known as the Plains of Abraham. The garrison was now under the immediate command of the Marquis of Montcalm, who had also formed an entrenched camp between the Rivers St. Charles and Montmorency. With no very sanguine expectations of ultimately succeeding in his enterprise, General Wolfe disembarked his troops and formed two camps; one on the south side of the River St. Lawrence, at Point Levi, opposite Quebec, and the other below the falls of Montmorency, about nine miles from the fortress. The fleet protected both divisions. An assault on the French fortified camp at Montmorency,[59] under the direction of Generals Monckton, Townshend and Murray proved unsuccessful on the 31st of July,[60] and resulted in a loss of nearly 500 men. Their divisions were afterwards withdrawn to the Island of Orleans. The British batteries at Point Levi destroyed most of the lower town near the River, but, on the citadel and fortifications, they produced little or no impression. Other attempts were made, but without any important result being obtained. While reconnoitring those places surrounding Quebec, General Wolfe had observed a narrow and steep ravine above the town, and which led to the plains of Abraham. This he thought might be scaled, and he devised an ingenious plan, to land his whole army at that place. Owing to anxiety and exposure, he was attacked with fever, but calling a council of war at his bedside, a resolution was at last taken. Nearly the whole army was now embarked on board of the fleet, which sailed up the St. Lawrence, on the 12th of September. Apprehending from this movement, that the invaders might

among others, Captain Jervis, afterwards the celebrated Admiral Earl of St. Vincent; James Cook, the famous navigator and explorer; Col. Barre, the Irish Member of Parliament who took the side of the colonists in the debates on the Stamp Act; and Carleton and Howe, who commanded the British forces during the Revolution." —John R. G. Hassard's "History of the United States of America," chap. xx., p. 136.

[57] The situation of the respective corps of French and English, with a plan of Quebec and its surroundings, is delineated on a Map, accompanying letter-press description, in Dr. John Campbell's "Naval History of Great Briton, including the History and Lives of the British Admirals," Vol. iv., chap. xxiii., p. 414.

[58] See Garneau's "Histoire du Canada," Tome iii., for complete details of this campaign.

[59] See Lord Mahon's "History of England from the Treaty of Utrecht," Vol. iv., chap. xxxv., pp. 239, 240.

[60] The intrenchments were constructed by the Chevalier de Johnstone, who had been previously an adherent of Prince Charles Edward Stuart in Scotland, and who wrote "Memoirs of the Rebellion in 1745 and 1746." See p. 444 of that work. Third edition, London, 1822, 8vo.

make a distant descent, and then march back on Quebec, Montcalm detached M. de Bouganville with 1,500 men to observe their motions, and to prevent any attempt at landing. The fleet sailed several miles above the ravine. After nightfall, the soldiers were placed in the boats, with great secrecy. While the tide was falling, and with muffled oars, they dropped down the river, and reached the assigned landing place undiscovered by the French. A captain's guard and a battery of four guns were stationed above. The advance was led by Colonel—afterwards Sir William—Howe, and the surprised French pickets were easily dispersed. The main body of the attacking force, under the direction of General Wolfe, now clambered with their arms safely up the ravine.

Before daylight on the 13th, the English army was drawn up in order on the heights. At this time, Montcalm was in his entrenchments below Quebec, but, on hearing what had occurred, he soon made arrangements for a decisive battle.[61] He crossed the River St. Charles, intending to outflank the English army, while 1,500 Canadians and Indians, excellent marksmen and screened by thickets, opened the battle. The English veteran soldiers were well posted and prepared for the onset. After an hour's cannonading, accompanied by an unsuccessful attempt of Montcalm to turn the enemy's left and to force him into the river, the French made an impetuous charge on the English line. This was firmly met, and vigorously repulsed. The English General Wolfe, exposed in front of his battalions, had been twice wounded during the engagement; but he refused to leave the field, until a third ball pierced his breast, and this wound proved mortal. The command now devolved on General Monckton, who was also severely wounded through the body, and in turn, he yielded the command to General Townshend. While fighting bravely at the head of his troops, Montcalm received his death-wound, while his second in command General Senezergus also fell. The right and centre of the French then gave way, their corps of regulars being almost entirely annihilated. The loss in killed and wounded was very considerable.[62]

After the battle fought on the Heights of Abraham, the fall of Quebec soon followed.[63] While preparations were making for its siege, on the 17th of September, it was surrendered to the English.[64] That town was still strongly fortified, and hopes for its relief from Montreal might have been expected. However, the garrison and inhabitants capitulated, on condition that they should enjoy their own civil and

[61] He has been blamed for rashly engaging in this battle rather than sustaining a siege within the walls of Quebec. See Ludovic Lalanne's "Dictionnaire Historique de la France," p. 1301, Paris, 1872, Royal 8vo.

[62] That of the French in killed, wounded, and prisoners has been estimated at 1,500, and that of the English at 640, in Lord Mahon's "History of England from the Treaty of Utrecht," Vol. iv., chap. xxxv., p. 249.

[63] See the "Historical Account of Quebec in North America, its Conquest, Motives for sending the Troops to North America." Account of the Society for the Relief of the Widows of such as died at the Battle of Quebec. Printed in 1760, 8vo.

[64] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. iv., chap. xiv.

religious rights.[65] An English garrison of 5,000 men was left in possession, under the command of General Murray.[66] Afterwards, the fleet sailed away down the River St. Lawrence for England.

The French held possession notwithstanding of Montreal and of Upper Canada, so that the contest was yet prolonged. A considerable portion of the French army had retreated thither, after the battle on the heights of Abraham. On the death of Montcalm, M. de Levi succeeded to the chief command, and he resolved on the recovery of Quebec. When the upper part of the St. Lawrence was free from ice, in the month of April, 1760, he fell down the river, from Montreal with such an army as he could collect. With a convoy of six frigates, having artillery, with military stores and supplies on board, he landed and arrived with his army at Point au Tremble, within a few miles of Quebec. General Murray with an inferior force moved out to meet him, and near Sillery, on the 28th of April, he attacked the French; but, after a fierce encounter and finding himself outflanked, he called off the British troops; when, with a loss of nearly 1,000 men, he retreated to the fortress.[67] A siege was then commenced by M. de Levi; but, the guns were scarcely brought to play from one side to the other, when a British fleet hove in sight, and this armament obliged the French to retire hastily on Montreal.[68] The Governor-General of Canada the Marquis de Vaudreuil had then called thither all his outposts and detachments, with a numerous militia, determined to make a last effort. But, General Amherst[69] had now concentrated an immense army before Montreal. It should be only a useless sacrifice of life to contend longer, and the French were obliged to surrender that town. A capitulation was entered upon between the rival commanders, and signed on the 8th of September 1760. The Canadians were allowed to preserve their properties and the free exercise of the Catholic religion.[70] By the terms of surrender, Detroit, Michilimackinac, and all the western territories claimed by the French, were relinquished.[71] Afterwards, the final conquest of Canada was secured by the English.[72]

Attempts to control the resources of a region, so vast and unexplored as that claimed by France in America, certainly required a sagacity of mind and an enduring firmness of purpose, which would seem to

[65] See "The Annual Register," &c., 1759, Vol. ii. History of the Present War, chap. vii., pp. 35 to 42.

[66] See Thomas Hutchinson's "History of the Province of Massachusetts-Bay, from 1749 to 1774," chap. i., p. 79.

[67] See Lord Mahon's "History of England, from the Peace of Utrecht," Vol. iv., chap. xxxvi., pp. 286, 287.

[68] See "The Annual Register," &c., for 1760, Vol. iii., History of the Present War, chap. ii., pp. 5 to 9.

[69] For his military services, this victorious general was appointed Commander-in-Chief and Governor-General of the different American provinces. In 1776, he received the title of Baron Amherst of Homesdale, Kent.

[70] See Henri Martin's "Histoire de France," Tome xv., Liv. xcviii., p. 553.

[71] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. iv., chap. xvi.

[72] See "The Annual Register," &c., for the year 1760, Vol. iii. History of the Present War, chap. xi., pp. 57 to 60.

have impelled a Columbus to the discovery of a new continent, and to have prompted such devoted men as Marquette, Cartier, La Salle and Hennepin, to the dangerous tasks which they undertook, and carried out with such patience and daring. In the year 1762, M. D'Abadie, invested with extraordinary powers by the French Government, was constituted Director-General, as also Civil and Military Commandant, over the whole Province of Louisiana.

Peace was concluded at Paris, and proclaimed in 1763. By this treaty, England remained possessor of the Atlantic Colonies, the Canadas, and Louisiana, lying east of the Mississippi, except the town of New Orleans and its territory. The public profession and exercise of the Catholic religion was sanctioned, as the articles of capitulation had decreed, in Canada and throughout the western ranges,[73] known as the country of the Illinois.[74] England also acquired Florida from Spain, in exchange for Havana,[75] which had been captured during the mid-summer of 1762.[76]

During this year, the first French village was established upon the north bank of the Missouri river. This was named Village du Cote—now it is known as St. Charles—a short distance above the junction with the Mississippi. It was soon found to be impossible, owing to the great extent of canoe navigation extending from Quebec to points more than 1,000 miles up the Missouri, for single individuals to prosecute that trade. Hence the necessity for companies being established, by which general traffic was always most successfully conducted. For this purpose new combinations were required. Trading posts and stockaded forts were established by enterprising men, and agents were found to occupy them, so that the hunters and trappers might find convenient stations, where furs and peltries could be bought and deposited. The Indians learned to participate in the advantages thus provided; and, it was usually the first step in the process of civilization. The creole and half-breed hunters were their counsellors, interpreters and confederates. These energetic men carried on for several years an extensive and a profitable business, during which they traversed every part of the country, from the lower to the head waters of the Mississippi and the Missouri rivers, to the southern branches of the Columbia, while they ransacked nearly the whole of California.

It was in view of the productive capacities and the resources of Occidental Louisiana, or rather of the Illinois, as this region was then called, that Pierre Laclede—to which in documents yet extant he was accustomed to add Liguest—obtained from M. D'Abadie, on behalf of himself and of others, the exclusive privilege and the "necessary powers

[73] See Smith's "History of Canada; from its first discovery to the Peace of 1765," Vol. i., pp. 367 to 369. Quebec, 1815, 8vo.

[74] See Brown's "History of Illinois," pp. 212, 213. New York, 1844, 8vo.

[75] See Alexander Von Humboldt's "Essai politique sur le Royaume de la Nouvelle Espagne." Paris, 1808, 1809, 4to.

[76] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. iv., chap. xix.

to trade with the Indians of the Missouri and with those west of the Mississippi above the Missouri, so far north as the River St. Peter." Such a comprehensive charter may have been granted by M. D'Abadie, more through reasons of governmental policy, than from motives of personal kindness and friendship. The "Louisiana Fur Company" was the name given to the association of Pierre Laclede Ligust and of his companions The extension of settlements in Upper Louisiana ensured an enlargement of French commerce and power, and it strengthened a claim to the exclusive right of navigating the Mississippi, which was even then entertained.[77]

By a secret treaty, that country lying west of the Mississippi, and then designated Louisiana, had been ceded by France to Spain, on the 3rd of November, 1762. However, owing to the vast distances to be travelled, the want of enterprising Spanish settlers, and a sufficiency of troops to hold military possession, until 1768 it remained under French laws and French jurisdiction.[78] The lead trade of the West, which was mostly concentrated at Ste. Genevieve, and the commerce in oils and peltries, which was in a measure monopolized by the neighbouring small settlements and villages, still left abundant room for development of the resources and capabilities of the upper Missouri and Mississippi Rivers, with the countries bordering upon them. The French colonists were men of tried intrepidity and sagacity;[79] so that difficulties and dangers were alike disregarded in the pursuit of fame and fortune.

The transfer of possession in the Illinois country, from the French to the English control, was not pleasant to a race of men whose tastes, habits, religion and feelings were so much at war with those of their new masters; and, it is not a matter of surprise, that the descendants of those who battled against the British crown in many a well-fought field should leave their altars and fire-sides, and seek as they did upon the western side of the Mississippi River an abiding place, where nought should recall to their minds the idea of subjection to a national if not a natural foe. Along the line of trail, connecting the scattered settlements and villages of the Illinois with the older and more populous towns of Canada, the French hastened in thousands to escape from British rule. As yet, nothing in reality was known regarding their

[77] At a subsequent period, this privilege became a subject of protracted and of unpleasant negotiation, between the American States and Spain, when the former had achieved their National Independence.

[78] So early as April, 1764, M. D'Abadie, the Governor-General, had been directed to proclaim to the colonists, that international arrangement which had taken place, and, it is said, his death was hastened through grief from France having lost her fine province of Louisiana. See Henri Martin's "Histoire de France," Tome xv., Liv. xcviii., p. 595.

[79] In Pierre Liguest Laclede was found a combination of those high qualities, which were required for such daring undertakings. But, we are left to deplore, that in the history of such a man, we can only start with the record of an act, eventful in the annals of Missouri, and say that at a fitting time, he had been sent forth as the moving cause of great and wonderful results.

cession to Spain, by the inhabitants of Louisiana for nearly three years after its occurrence; hence a mistake was made probably when the fur-trader Pierre Laclede Liguest named St. Louis in honour of Louis XV., whose subject he expected to remain for a number of years, although he was then really subject to the King of Spain. The inhabitants of New Orleans indignantly drove the Captain-General Don Antonio D'Olloa, with the Spanish troops, from the portion of the territory in 1766, when that secret treaty became known. Under the provisions of the Treaty of Paris, Fort de Chartres was abandoned by the Commandant, a Canadian Frenchman, Captain St. Ange de Belle Rive, and by the French garrison in 1765. The English, under Captain Sterling, entered upon its possession, but with great repugnance on the part of the original colonists. Meanwhile, the French province of Louisiana had been secretly transferred by treaty to Spain. This, however, was not then known to the French Colonists on the Upper Mississippi. Accordingly, St. Ange removed with his officers and about forty soldiers of his garrison to St. Louis, on the 17th of July 1765. There, by acclaim of the inhabitants, he was invested with civil and military power over Upper Louisiana. He began to make numerous grants of land to settlers, and these titles were not afterwards disturbed by the Spaniards. They were confirmed, likewise, by the United States, at a later period. Then the town of St. Louis was regarded as the capital of Upper Louisiana.[80]

The celebrated Indian Ottawa Chief Pontiac,[81] who was attached to French rule, endeavoured to effect the overthrow of English power in Canada, by a confederacy of the Algonquin tribes, after the war had ended. He organized an immense conspiracy, embracing Indians from Lake Superior to Georgia, when a simultaneous attack was made on several English frontier posts. For five months he besieged Detroit[82] until it was relieved by a large force of provincials.[83] When he failed in several desperate attempts made in Michigan, he withdrew to Illinois in A.D. 1764.[84] There, too, he endeavoured to

[80] When at all practicable, the Catholic Church aims at accordance with national feelings and civil polity. Hence, with political changes, ecclesiastical jurisdiction was transferred from the diocese of Quebec. The missions of Louisiana were attached to the See of Cuba. About that time, the French Director-General over Louisiana M. D'Abadie died, and St. Ange assumed the direction of civil and military affairs when he arrived at St Louis. Long after he was nominally superseded, his personal influence there procured for him respect and obedience.

[81] For an Indian, he was a remarkably well-looking man; he was nice in his person, and full of taste in his dress, and in the arrangement of his war ornaments. His complexion approached that of the whites.

[82] See Franklin B. Hough's "Diary of the Siege of Detroit in the War with Pontiac." Albany, 1860.

[83] A very interesting account of this formidable Indian war may be found in "The Annual Register," &c., for the year 1763, Vol vi. History of Europe, chap. v., vi., pp. 18 to 32.

[84] Francis Parkman, jun., has written a "History of the Conspiracy of

excite the natives to resist a surrender of the French post, under the treaty, to British authority. He hastened with some of his Indian warriors to Fort Chartres,[85] where he endeavoured to persuade the governor M. St. Ange de Bellerive to adopt his designs. The latter was an officer of great bravery, yet too honourable a man to be seduced by those persuasions. But, before Pontiac or his Indians had time to offer any resistance, Captain Sterling with a company of Scots arrived unexpectedly, and took possession of the Fort. Still, M. St. Ange and M. Laclede had much difficulty in reconciling the Indian chief to yield submission, as no adequate means were afforded for further resistance. Pontiac's usual residence was in St. Louis, after the failure of his operations against the English. However, in 1769,[86] having imprudently ventured on a return to Illinois,[87] he was treacherously assassinated.[88] This murder roused the vengeance of all the Indian tribes friendly to Pontiac. It brought about successive wars, and the almost total extermination of the Illinois tribes.

A Spanish officer named Rious soon arrived at St. Louis, with some Spanish troops. These were probably soldiers, who had been driven out of New Orleans by the French. In the name of his Catholic Majesty, Rious took formal possession of Upper Louisiana, on the 11th of August 1768. Yet, there appears to be no record left, to prove his exercise of any civil authority there, as St. Ange continued to discharge official functions, for a long time afterwards; and, on the 17th of July 1769, Rious with his troops evacuated Upper Louisiana, and returned to New Orleans. Meantime, those French inhabitants, to whom we have already alluded, continued in their state of revolt, until the Irish-born Governor of Louisiana Count O'Reilly arrived there.[89] This Governor, then sent to take possession of Louisiana for the Spanish

Pontiac and the war of the North American Tribes against the English Colonies after the conquest of Canada." Published at Boston, 1851, 8vo.

[85] Near the present site of Kaskaskia, on the Illinois shore of the Mississippi River. The French flag was not lowered there until 1765. See Farmer's "History of Detroit and Michigan," p. 234. Detroit, 1884, 8vo.

[86] See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. v., p. 64.

[87] One day in 1769, he came to M. St. Ange and told him of a desire he had to visit the Kaskaskia Indians. M. St. Ange wished to dissuade him from it, reminding him of the unfriendly feeling of the British occupants. Pontiac's answer was: "Captain, I am a man; I know how to fight. I have always fought openly. They will not murder me; and if any one attack me as a brave man, I am his match." He went off to an Indian entertainment at Cahokia,; he was feasted, and then he got drunk. He retired into a wood, where he was struck by a Kaskaskian Indian with a packamagon or war club. The skull was completely fractured, and death ensued. An English merchant named Williamson had bribed, it was said, the ruffian murderer with a barrel of rum, and the promise of a still greater reward, if he executed that barbarous deed.

[88] The dead body of the murdered chief was brought by his friends to St. Louis, where it was interred near a fort, which once stood not far away from the present intersection of Broadway and Cherry Streets.

[89] See Barbe-Marbois' "Histoire de la Louisiane," p. 147

King, had the following list of titles: "Don Alexander O'Reilly, Commander of Benfayon, of the order of Alcantara, Lieutenant-General of the Armies of His Most Catholic Majesty, Inspector-General of Infantry, and by Commission, Governor and Captain-General of the Province of Louisiana."[90] At once, he took possession of Lower Louisiana; but, he enforced submission from the disaffected leaders, by acts of great severity. Doubtless, Rious aided the Governor, with those troops he had withdrawn from St. Louis, as the settlers there peacefully yielded to the new domination of the Governor and the Intendant-General. O'Reilly immediately established laws for the regulation of the whole Province.[91] In the year 1770, and on the 29th of November, the Lieutenant-Governor Don Pedro Piernas arrived at St. Louis, and he became the Civil and Military Commandant of Upper Louisiana. But, it does not appear from any record or other evidence, that he entered upon the exercise of his functions, until the month of February following. The French inhabitants—soon joined by a Spanish element of population—were readily reconciled to the change of dominion, for Piernas tempered all his official acts with a spirit of mildness and wisdom. This procedure characterised the course of nearly all his successors. Such measures were, indeed, imperatively

[90] Count O'Reilly was born 1722 at Baltrasna, in the County of Meath. He entered the Spanish service with the rank of Sub-Lieutenant, in the Hibernian Regiment. He served in Italy, where he received a wound, which though it lamed him for life did not incapacitate him for service. In 1757, he resigned his commission, passed over into the Austrian army, and distinguished himself against the Prussians, at Hochkirchen in 1758. The following year, he entered the French service, and assisted at the Battle of Bergin in 1759, and at the taking of Minden and Corbach. He re-entered the Spanish service, was made Lieutenant-General, and in the war against Portugal defeated the army of the latter power at Chaves in 1762. The advent of an English army under Burgoyne checked the Spanish successes, though it gave O'Reilly opportunity to face the foe he hated most; but, the peace of Paris in 1763 put an end to the war, and deprived him of active military employment. In 1765, he saved the life of the King Charles III., during a popular tumult in Madrid. Restored to rank and position in the army, he proceeded to remodel it. He introduced the tactics and discipline which he had observed and learned while in Germany. Promoted to be Field-Marshal, he was subsequently sent to Havana, which he newly fortified and strengthened. Later still, he was sent in June 1768, to take possession of Louisiana, ceded to Spain by France under the treaty of 1762. On his return to Spain, he was made Governor of Madrid, and he was later selected to command an expedition against Algiers. He was subsequently appointed Governor of Cadiz and Captain-General of Andalusia. In consequence of a cabal raised against him by native officers in 1786, O'Reilly was deprived of all his offices and employments, and reduced to a pension. He however, was again restored to his position and command; when in 1794, being then 72 years of age, he was appointed to the command of the Army of the Eastern Pyrenees, but he died on his way to the camp, near Chinchill, the 23rd of March 1794, fully vindicated, as also crowned with years and honours.

[91] In consquence of his severity, he made many enemies in Louisiana, and in 1769 he was recalled to Spain. See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. iv., p. 586.

required, and especially towards men, who had come with ill-humour under the Spanish power, and who would not otherwise have hesitated to follow the example, already set by their countrymen at New Orleans. A policy thus pursued brought with it the strongest attachment to Spain. The just administration of the Spanish Government in St. Louis, as also the liberal spirit with which grants of valuable lands were made, in connection with the advantages which the trade of the country presented, soon attracted emigration from the Canadas and from Lower Louisiana. Settlements were formed, likewise, along the Missouri and Mississippi rivers.

---

## CHAPTER X.

State of the colonies after the Seven Years' War—French in the Western Territories—Irish Colonists during the Reign of George III.—Taxation of the Colonies—Resistance—Repeal of the Stamp Act—Renewal of the Taxation and Disturbances in the Colonies—Excisable Tea thrown into the Harbour of Boston—Retaliation—Assembling and proceedings of the First or Old Revolutionary Congress.

HITHERTO the newly founded provinces were loyal to the respective countries on which they depended. After the Seven Years' War had ceased, besides the possession of those large territories won from France and Spain,[1] there were thirteen district colonies,[2] viz., Virginia, New Hampshire, New York, New Jersey, North Carolina, South Carolina, Georgia—royal provinces directly subject to the King; Massachusetts, Rhode Island and Connecticut—possessing charters from the Crown; Maryland and Pennsylvania, in which latter Delaware was then included—proprietary provinces and ruled by their proprietors under authority of the original grants.[3] All the colonies received their Governors from the Crown, except Connecticut and Rhode Island; in all, however, causes were carried by appeal from the Colonial Courts to the English Privy Council. But practically, each colony was a self-governing commonwealth, left to manage its own affairs, and with scarcely any interference from the mother country. However, acts of the British Parliament ran there, and these were assumed to over-rule such laws as the colonists might make.[4]

[1] See "Account of the European Settlements in America, its Discovery by Columbus, Manners and Customs of the original inhabitants," &c. London, Two vols. with Map, 1760, 8vo.

[2] For an account of them, the reader is referred to "The American Gazetteer, containing an Account of all Parts of the New World, the Cities, Towns, Bays, Rivers, Lakes, Fortifications," &c. London, Three vols. with Maps, 1762, 12mo.

[3] The condition of the colonies after the war is described with very happy illustrations in the very able work of William Edward Hartepole Lecky, "History of England in the Eighteenth Century." Vol. iii., chap xii. London, 1878, *et seq.* 8vo.

[4] See James Bryce's admirable work,

The treasury of England had been almost exhausted, after the late war, and her trade had become depressed.[5] While England maintained the obstinate and expensive Seven Years' War, which had increased her national debt to the amount of £148,000,000, the colonists of her Trans-Atlantic possessions rendered her the most effective and valuable aid.[6] They had lost 30,000 soldiers in her service. They had likewise materially contributed, by spending 16,000,000 dollars,[7] and by incurring heavy debts. A successful issue for the mother country was mainly owing to those efforts.[8] Now it was maintained by the Court party, that the late war had originated, or had been conducted, mainly on account of the colonies.[9] Wherefore, a resolution was taken, to raise a substantial revenue from them. When that war had ceased, agriculture, commerce and trade in the colonies were found to be in a depressed condition. The whole population—slaves included—scarcely numbered two millions. Nevertheless, intellectual,[10] intelligent, active and spirited individuals, composed those semi-independent although scattered colonial communities. These deemed themselves worthy of every reasonable indulgence, and freedom from commercial restraints, to which their position and increasing navigation entitled them.[11]

It was the settled policy of England to keep them in a state of dependence; since their aspirations for self-government had excited jealousy and distrust of their motives, on more than one occasion. Their enterprise and manufacturing skill, combined with industry, soon led to creditable and promising efforts in various branches of business. The English manufacturers and merchants dreaded the extension of such industrial and commercial transactions desiring to have a monopoly of colonial trade. The colonies were designed to be drained of their agricultural products and raw materials. They were expected in return to receive only imported and manufactured goods. The English government had already imposed various restrictions on Irish manufacturing and commercial industries; while the Irish Parliament, paralysed through the agencies of corruption and intrigue, was completely dependent on the Crown and the ministers.[12] To prevent all

"The American Commonwealth," Vol. i. chap. iii., p. 22. London and New York, Macmillan, 1888, 8vo.

[5] See "The Annual Register" Vol. ix., for the year 1766, The History of Europe, chap. vi., pp. 31 to 34.

[6] See Grahame's "History of the United States of North America," Vol. iv., Book x.

[7] Of this amount, the home Government refunded only 5,000,000 dollars.

[8] See Robert Rogers' "Concise Account of North America, Description of the British Colonies, the several Nations and Tribes of Indians, Customs, Manners," &c. 1765, 8vo.

[9] See J. Wynne's "History of the British Empire in America." London, 1770. Two vols. 8vo.

[10] This characteristic of the colonies is amply shown in the "History of American Literature from A.D. 1607 to 1765," by M. C. Tyler, Professor of the University of Michigan. London, Two vols. royal 8vo.

[11] See Benson J. Lossing's "Pictorial Field Book of the Revolution." This valuable and beautifully illustrated work was published at New York, in two Royal 8vo. volumes.

[12] See these particulars very well stated and developed in "Memoirs of

competition with English manufacturers and merchants, on the part of the colonists, now became an object of chief concern for the home government; and measures were taken to prohibit, not alone an export traffic with other countries, but even to proscribe home manufactures for purposes of mutual exchange in the different plantations. Besides, Navigation Acts were passed, which made it unlawful for the colonists to build ships or to trade with any other country but England.[13] Nor could any colony then trade directly with another colony,[14] so little was freedom of commerce permitted by English mercantile jealousy.

The natural result of these measures was to create an extensive contraband traffic in the colonies with the West Indies and with other countries. The English Governors and ships of war were quite unable to prevent such transactions;[15] and, in 1761, writs of assistance or general search warrants were issued by the government, to enforce their Acts of Trade. Those warrants authorized the customs' officers to break into any store or private house, and to search for goods, even on mere suspicion that duty had not been paid for them. A storm of opposition ensued, especially in the chief commercial and manufacturing cities and towns. In Boston, the legality of those writs was disputed in the court. There the advocate-general of the Crown James Otis[16] refused to defend the writs, and he soon threw up his office, while a majority of the judges inclined to decide against their validity. The chief justice Thomas Hutchinson then moved for a delay of judgment, until communication with England had taken place. The legality of the writs was upheld, as might have been anticipated; but, such was the popular ferment awakened, that the officers could not attempt their enforcement. In the State of New York, there was a proposal, to make the judges entirely dependent upon the pleasure of the Crown. This unconstitutional proceeding was counteracted by the Assembly, when refusing to grant any salary to judges so appointed. The subservient chief justice Hutchinson[17] at this time enforced by arbitrary construction of law the powers of the Board of Trade, and, consequently, he became most unpopular at Boston, which at that time was the leading commercial city in the colonies. Discontent soon began to spread among the people in other provinces, especially when it became known to them, that the English Ministers had an intention of annuling all

the Life and Times of the Rt. Hon. Henry Grattan, by his own son, Henry Grattan, Esq., M.P., Vols., i., ii.

[13] See John R. G. Hassard's "History of the United States of America," Part iii., chap. xxi.

[14] See "Case of the British Northern Colonies." London.

[15] See Lord Mahon's "History of England from the Peace of Utrecht," Vol. v., chap. xliii., pp. 125 to 127.

[16] See James Grahame's "History of the United States of North America," Vol. iv., Book x., chap. vi., pp. to 87.

[17] The best defence made for his actions at this period is probably that by himself, in "The History of the Province of Massachusetts Bay from 1749 to 1774," &c. Vol. i., chap. ii., pp. 82 to 96.

their charters and of reducing them to the condition of royal governments.[18]

In the remote west there were but six settlements within a hundred miles of the present site of St. Lewis, about the middle of the last century. These were: Kaskaskia, situated upon the Kaskaskia River, and upon a peninsula five miles above the mouth of that stream, about two miles by land from the Mississippi; it was once the capital of the Illinois country, and in its palmy days it contained about 3,000 inhabitants;[19] Fort Chartres which had been built twelve miles above Kaskaskia; Praire du Rochier situated near Fort Chartres; St. Philip or Little Village, four miles above Fort Chartres; Cahokia, a village near the mouth of the Cahokia Creek, about five miles below the centre of the present city of St. Louis. St. Genevieve had been built upon Gabouri Creek, west of the Mississippi, and about one mile from its western shore.[20] Soon after St. Louis was founded, in 1764, it only contained about 425 inhabitants.[21] Every scene around was then almost in a state of nature, yet many hunters had traversed these regions, and had even navigated the Missouri, a thousand miles or more, long before the first log cabins had been constructed on the clearings. These trappers and hunters of the west were a remarkable race of men, and especially those Canadian French, who sought adventure and liberty in the remote regions.[22] Endowed with the most obstinate perseverance, the greatest self-reliance, and the utmost contempt for danger, they seemed also to have been actuated by a feeling of romantic interest, when plunging onwards through the trackless forests. Wilds immeasurably spread seemed tempting more to adventure, as they surveyed the vast expanse of this wide hunting ground. They resolved, that the rude barbarities of the savage should yield to the conquering march of civilization; although their own restless spirits could ill brook the settling down to peaceful agricultural or mechanical pursuits. It may be said indeed, that nearly all the early settlements of the Middle and Western States were commenced by the hunters and trappers. They navigated every stream, traversed every prairie and forest, paddled their canoes on every lake, and visited the remotest Indian tribes. Geography was indebted to their indomitable enterprise for the earliest knowledge we possess of all those regions to the north and west. The Governments of France, of Spain, and of the United States, owed them more than they could ever hope to return, for indispensable services in making treaties with the Indians, and in guiding exploring expeditions by land.[23] A strange fascination appears to have

[18] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. iv., chap. xviii., pp. 412 to 431.

[19] After the country had passed under the dominion of the King of Spain its population decreased.

[20] Among the earliest settlements of Missouri were those formed in the present St. Genevieve county. Those attempts of pioneer French colonists date back to the year 1755.

[21] See Barbé—Marbois' "Histoire de la Louisiane."

[22] See Garneau's "Histoire du Canada," Tome ii., Quebec, 1846, 8vo.

[23] See M. Le Page du Pratz's "History of Louisiana, or the Western Parts of Virginia and Carolina, and the

seized on them; whether single or in groups, they braved all dangers of the wilderness. No longing for the society of family and of friends wooed them back to the settled pursuits of civilized life.[24] Coming in contact with the red men of the forest and prairie, sometimes in deadly feud, and often to engage them in traffic, these encounters and associations were soon found to be attended with mutual advantages, while the ties of interest led to concessions, which suspicion may promote, or which serve to allay cupidity, in the rudest and simplest as in the most systematic or complicated relations of trade and commerce.

From the beginning of George III.'s reign, the stream of Irish emigration flowed rapidly towards the American Colonies.[25] In Ireland, the spirit of opposition to the restrictions placed on commerce, and to the supremacy of English legislation over domestic concerns, had already gone abroad; and soon were these principles propagated in distant America. Even the disqualifications of the Irish Catholics[26] in the reign of Queen Anne were extended by the Protestant Episcopalians—constituting the ruling English faction in the Irish Parliament—to the whole body of Presbyterians and other Dissenters.[27] Soon were

countries on both sides of the Mississippi," with Map. London, 1774, 8vo.

[24] Clad in buck-skins, those pioneers were then to be found on all the rivers east of the Rocky Mountains. Wild lives they led among the Indians. In their mocassins, with wide chests, bronzed faces, deer-skin leggings and hunting shirts, glittering bowie knives in their belts, unerring rifles on their brawny arms, powder and shot pouches pendant from their shoulder-straps, those hardy wood-rangers recalled the vivid picture of Lord Byron, as given in "Don Juan," Canto viii., Stanzas lxvi., lxvii.—

"And tall and strong, and swift on foot were they,
Beyond the dwarfing city's pale abortions,
Because their thoughts had never been the prey
Of care or gain; the green woods were their portions;
No sinking spirits told them they grew grey,
No fashion made them apes of her distortions;
Simple they were, not savage; and their rifles,
Though very true, were not yet used for trifles.

"Motion was in their days, rest in their slumbers,
And cheerfulness the handmaid of their toil;
Nor yet too many nor too few their numbers,
Corruption could not make their hearts her soil;
The lust which stings, the splendour which encumbers,
With the free foresters divide no spoil;
Serene, not sullen, were the solitudes
Of this unsighing people of the woods."

These magnificent lines were called forth, after a highly wrought eulogy on General Daniel Boone, who was chiefly instrumental in the first settlement of Kentucky, and who subsequently left the abode of civilized men.

[25] See "History of Colonization, applied to the American Colonies, and the future settlements of the Colonies," 1777, 4to. A reply to this was published: J. Symonds' "Remarks on the History of Colonization of the American Colonies," 1778, 4to.

[26] In the Act known as 2nd of Queen Anne, for Preventing the Further Growth of Popery.

[27] There was a clause added by the English government and ratified by the unrepresentative Irish Parliament, that none should be capable of any public employment, or of being in the magistracy of any city, who did not receive the sacrament according to the English Test Act. See Bishop Burnet's "History of My Own Time," Vol. ii., Book vii., pp. 340, 361, 362.

they willing to leave a country, where they felt oppression, and as emigrants they turned towards the American colonies. Thus we find that the Irish Rowan family emigrated from Pennsylvania to Kentucky, so early as 1753. There were also Croghans and McGradys, from Ireland, very early settlers.

In 1762, ground down by the tithes falling on tillage and rack-rents of the landlords or middlemen, an exodus of Catholics took place.[28] David Campbell,[29] an Irishman, was the pioneer who erected Campbell's Station, fifteen miles below Knoxville, Tennessee. There, too, at Limestone, lived the Irish father of the famous David Crockett.[30] Indeed, it may be observed, that the midland States of America, and the Western parts in general, were half formed of Irishmen.[31] Liberal colonial inducements were held out in 1764, to encourage free white labourers from Ireland.[32] Many responded to the call, and as industrious colonists they generally reached a degree of comfort and independence, which could not be realized in their native land. While enumerating the districts and families here presented, it must be undertood, that allusion has solely been made to the relations of Irish settlers with the United States in the Colonial days.[33] Moreover, the data afforded and

[28] In his "Popular History of Ireland," Thomas D'Arcy M'Gee says: "Outraged in their dearest civil and religious rights, thousands of the Irish of Ulster, and the Milesian and other Anglo-Irish of the other provinces, preferred to encounter the perils of an Atlantic flitting, rather than abide under the yoke and lash of such an oligarchy." – Book xi., chap ii.

[29] His son Captain John Campbell shared in almost all the campaigns against the Indians, until the close of the Revolution.

[30] He was born at Limestone, August 17th 1786.

[31] Such is the statement of a native American writer Hugh Henry Brackenridge the author of "Modern Chivalry," one of the finest political satires America has produced. It was published at Pittsburg in 1794, just thirteen years after the surrender of Cornwallis at Yorktown. He had been a chaplain in Washington's army, and he was well acquainted with the spirit, enterprise and bravery of the natives of Ireland.

[32] See Rev. J. A. Spencer's "History of the United States," Vol. i.

[33] The American historian, George Bancroft, writes: "Just after the peace of Paris, 'the Heart of Oak' Protestants of Ulster, weary of strife with their landlords, came over in great numbers; and settlements on the Catawba, in South Carolina, dated from that epoch. At different times in the eighteenth century, some had found homes in New England, but they were most numerous south of New York, from New Jersey to Georgia. In Pennsylvania they peopled many counties, till, in public life, they already balanced the influence of the Quakers. In Virginia, they went up the valley of the Shenandoah; and they extended themselves along the tributaries of the Catawba, in the beautiful upland region of North Carolina. Their training in Ireland had kept the spirit of liberty and the readiness to resist unjust government as fresh in their hearts, as though they had just been listening to the preachings of Knox, or musing over the political creed of the Westminster Assembly. They brought to America no submissive love for England; and their experience and their religion alike bade them meet oppression with prompt resistance. We shall find the first voice publicly raised in America to dissolve all connection with Great Britain came, not from the Puritans of New England, or the Dutch of New York, or the planters of Virginia, but from Scotch-Irish Presbyterians." — "History of the United States," Vol. v., chap. iv., pp. 76 77.

our limited space must necessarily leave this enumeration imperfect, but all the names mentioned have a general or a local historic celebrity, and therefore in some degree or other of excellency, they reflect credit on Ireland, the parent country from which they had been derived.

Previous to and at the commencement of the Revolutionary war, the colonists were composed of adventurers, not only from every district of Great Britain and Ireland, but from almost every other European Government, where the principles of liberty and of commerce have operated with spirit and efficacy.[34] The Irish element was well represented in New England, as in other colonies. In Boston, there were many Presbyterian families of Irish birth or of Irish extraction. A band of forty hunters was led by Colonel James Knox,[35] into the solitudes of the Kentucky forests in 1770, while Daniel Boone[36] was there a lone hunter. Those adventurers were gathered from the valleys of New River. Among them, Clinch and Holston had a passionate desire to chase the buffaloes in the west. Nine of the forty had crossed the mountains, and had penetrated into that desert and almost impassible country, about the heads of the Cumberland River. These were the first white men, who explored that wild region spreading along the borders of Kentucky and of Tennessee.[37] No complete memorial has been transmitted regarding the emigrations that took place from Europe to America at this period; but, from the few illustrative facts that are actually preserved, they seem to have been amazingly copious. In the years 1771, 1772 and 1773, the number of emigrants to America from Belfast and other ports in that neighbourhood amounted to over 25,000.[38] There were only five white women in Wilkesbarre, Pennsylvania, in May 1772.[39] A Mrs. McClure, wife of James McClure an Irishman, was mother of the second white child born in Wilkesbarre. Within the fortnight preceding August 20th 1773,[40] three thousand five hundred passengers arrived from Ireland in Maryland. Nearly

[34] See "Letters from America Historical and Descriptive, from 1769 to 1777." By William Eddies. London, 1792.

[35] See Appleton's "Cyclopedia of American Biography," Vol. iii, p. 567.

[36] He departed in 1799 for the Missouri River, and frequently shifted his station: but, he lived chiefly at a place called from him Boone's Lick, now in Howard County, away from the reach of social intrusion, and in the midst of dangers, about the year 1816. Even there, the white men began to encroach on his wild haunts. He then went back two hundred miles farther into the woods, and after the age of seventy, his "lonely, vigorous, harmless days" were spent hunting and trapping in the solitudes. According to Lord Byron, "Boone lived hunting up to ninety;" but this statement was an exaggeration, for he died in 1820. Concerning him, the noble poet wrote, soon after the date already given, and Byron died at Missolonghi, in Western Greece, on the 19th of April, 1824.

[37] See Perkins' "Annals of the West."

[38] Chiefly were these evicted from one of the Marquis of Donegal's estates, in Antrim. See Marmion's "Ancient and Modern History of the Maritime Ports of Ireland."

[39] See Miner's "History of Wyoming," pp. 138, 139.

[40] See the first number of the *Maryland Journal and Baltimore Advertiser*, of that date.

all of these emigrated at their own charge. A great majority had been employed in the linen manufacture, or they were farmers who possessed some property. This being converted into money, they carried it with them as a means for bettering their fortunes. It appears, that during the year 1773, vessels were arriving every month and bringing large contingents to the population from Holland and Germany; as also specially from Ireland and from the highlands of Scotland. These latter were particularly discontented with the treatment of England towards their nation, which had been deprived of its own independent Parliament.[41] This accession to the colonial population—as might reasonably be supposed—had no tendency to diminish or counteract the hostile sentiments towards Britain, which were daily gathering force in America.[42] About seven hundred Irish settlers repaired to the Carolinas in the Autumn of 1773. During the course of that same season, no fewer than ten vessels sailed from Britain, and filled with Scottish Highlanders emigrating to the American States, In the summer of 1773, a party led by Bullit, and in which were two of the McAffees, Handcock, Taylor, Brennan, and others, separated. A part of them went up the Kentucky River and explored its banks, while they made some important surveys. Those included that valley, in which Frankfort now stands. The remainder went on to the Falls of the Ohio, and there in behalf of John Campbell and John Connolly, they laid out the site and plan of Louisville city.[43]

One of the early clergymen who influenced American progress was the Rev. James McSparran of the Church of Naraganset.[44] At what time the Elder family came from Ireland to New York is not known, but it was previous to the Revolution. An Irish descended family of Elders were early settlers in Kentucky, and they were most probably derived from that race. On the understanding, that their time should be disposed of to pay for their passage, three hundred emigrants of both sexes arrived from Newry, on the 3rd August 1774.[45] Several young men of good abilities had been banished to America, owing to the severity of British law. Many of these made good clerks and storekeepers, while they rose to riches and credit, being also the founders of good families. It is related by Watson,[46] that before his time, one dis-

[41] By the Act of an incorporating Union in 1707. The truest and best account of this most dishonest and surreptitious transaction is that given by George Lockhart of Carnwath, in the "Memoirs concerning the Affairs of Scotland from Queen Anne's Accession to the Throne, to the commencement of the Union of the Two Kingdoms of Scotland and England, in May 1707." Third edition, London, 1714, 8vo.

[42] See Rev. Mr. Spencer's "History of the United States," Vol. i., p. 305.

[43] See Dr. Jared Sparks' "Life and Writings of George Washington." Appendix to the Second Vol. This excellent historical work was first published in 1834-1837, in twelve vols., 8vo.

[44] He was born in Ireland about 1680, and he died in South Kensington, Rhode Island, in 1757. See Appleton's "Cyclopedia of American Biography," Vol. iv., pp. 161, 162. Likewise "Cyclopedia of American Literature."

[45] These sailed in the ship Needham, under the command of Capt. Cheevers. See *Rivington's Gazette*, August 4th, 1774.

[46] In his "Annals of Philadelphia."

tinguished man had been sold in Maryland. He had been an offender from Ireland. While serving his master as a common servant, he showed much ability in managing for him an important lawsuit, for which the master instantly made him free. He went to Philadelphia, and there he amassed a large fortune in landed estate. Afterwards it became of great value and it was distributed among his heirs. Among the other Irish Redemptioners was Matthew Lyon, who arrived in America in 1759.[47] On landing in New York, he was assigned to Jabez Bacon, of Woodbury, who brought him home. After serving thus for some time, Lyon was assigned for the remainder term of his service to Hugh Hannah of Litchfield, and for a pair of stags valued at £12. By dint of sterling native talent and under the most disheartening circumstances, he fought his way to fame and eminence. He was afterwards a member of Congress from Vermont and also from Kentucky.[48] Among the early Irish settlers found by Daniel Boone in Kentucky were Major Hugh McGrady and Richard Hogan, with others who lived in Powell's Valley. He placed himself at the head of this interesting little colony, and led them through the Cumberland gap, into the wilderness beyond, and where it was destined to be the germ of a great state. In the latter part of the year 1775, he was visited at Boonesborough by the brothers James and Robert McAfee, and by several other men. These subsequently rendered very important services in the settlement of the West.[49] Also, McLellan, McBride, and Benjamin Logan an Irish Pennsylvanian, were residents of Kentucky in 1775.[50] In the year 1775, the famous pioneer Simon Kenton, *alias* Butler,[51] erected a cabin within the present Mason County, and he grew the first corn ever planted at any point on the north side of Licking River. This was a simple incident in the life of an adventurous woodsman; but, regarded in the light of subsequent events, it has assumed a significance that renders it historic. It marked the beginning of a new epoch, and it symbolized the characteristic movement of the period—the sullen retreat of the hunter tribes before the pioneers of a civilized race. Though for years afterwards, that exposed border was swept by tides of savage incursions, the pioneer seemed to feel that his position was now comparatively secure, and that he might at last venture to lay aside the rifle, to build, to plant, and to reap.[52]

The British Ministry were now engaged in digesting plans to diminish that great load of taxation, caused by the national debt, with its accruing

[47] See Irish Celts." By a Member of the Michigan Bar.

[48] See Cothren's "History of Ancient Woodbury," Vol. ii., p. 320.

[49] See "Hartley's History of the Early Settlement of Kentucky." Also, Marshall's "History of Kentucky," Vol. i., chap. iii.

[50] See Thomas D'Arcy McGee's "History of the Irish Settlers in North America," chap. ii., pp. 27 to 32.

[51] His father was an Irishman. He was born in Virginia A.D. 1755, and after many strange adventures and brave achievements, he died in Ohio, 1836. See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. iii., pp. 522 523.

[52] See the *Marysville Kentucky Eagle*, for January 13th, 1875.

heavy interest. As yet, no English Ministry had attempted to levy a direct tax on the colonies. However, a little after the accession of George III. to the throne,[53] a deficiency of about three millions in the revenue was with difficulty supplied by temporary resources, and by encroachments on the sinking fund.[54] A Stamp Act and a Bill for collecting customs in the colonies had been considered, as a means available for increasing the revenue.[55] Even this idea was favoured by several of the government officials and dependents in America, who were ready to lend it support. Accordingly, it was proposed in 1764, by the prime minister Grenville, who first brought this scheme into form,[56] that the Parliament should be induced to levy taxes, and to impose them in a heavy proportion, based on very exaggerated accounts of North American colonial wealth.[57] The colonists had cherished notions, similar to those of the British constitutionalists, that taxation without representation was tyrannical, illegal, and a grievance. The celebrated work of William Molyneux[58] had been eagerly read in America,[59] and the principles there laid down, that Ireland having its own Parliament and making its own laws could not be bound by English statutes, because they sent no representatives to that Parliament, were now applied to the colonies.[60]

When Mr. Grenville brought forth his celebrated Act for imposing American Stamp Duties on the 5th May, General Henry Conway stood alone, in denying that right asserted by the British legislature to tax the colonies. Mr. Pitt was then confined at home through indisposition and unable to attend the house.[61] An agitation in opposition to those measures soon spread throughout the several colonies. In Massachusetts it became very vehement, as also in New York and Rhode

[53] This event took place October 25th, 1760.

[54] See Adolphus' "History of England from the Accession of King George III. to the conclusion of Peace in the Year One Thousand Seven Hundred and Eighty-Three," Vol. i., p. 159.

[55] See "Observations on the State of the British Colonies in America," Map and Plates. London, 1769, 4to.

[56] See Works of Edmund Burke, Vol. i. Speech on American Taxation, p. 460.

[57] The causes which led to the American War of Independence are most lucidly set forth in George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. v. and vi.

[58] See "Case of Ireland's being bound by Acts of Parliament made in England stated." This was first published in Dublin, A.D. 1697, 8vo. It afterwards appeared there in various editions, during subsequent years. The latest edition of this work is that by the present writer, with a life of the author prefixed, and published in Dublin, by Sealy, Bryers and Walker, 1892, 8vo.

[59] An able paper, inspired by this work and accommodated to the case of the colonies, appeared in the *Boston Gazette* of August 24th 1767. The Governor Bernard wrote his disapprobation of its purport to Shelburne on the same day.

[60] This doctrine was admitted by Lord Coke.

[61] See Rev. Francis Thackeray's "History of the Right Honourable William Pitt, Earl of Chatham: containing his Speeches in Parliament; a considerable Portion of his Correspondence, when Secretary of State, upon French, Spanish and American Affairs, never before published; with an account of the principal Events and Persons of his time, connected with his Life, Sentiments and Administrations," Vol. ii., chap. xx., p. 58. London. Two Vols. 1827, 4to.

Island. Thence invitations went to other colonies, to maintain their liberties, to organize and to devise a method for union. This proposition led to a cordial approval in the city of Philadelphia,[62] while the flame spread rapidly throughout Pennsylvania, and the direction was chiefly conducted by Charles Thomson.[63] Another of these stout protestors was John Dunlap,[64] born at Strabane, in Ireland. Whereupon, in October 1764, by a majority and after great opposition from the proprietary party, the Assembly elected Benjamin Franklin[65] as their agent to sail for England. His instructions were, to use every effort in opposing the threatened Stamp Act, and to preserve the inalienable liberties of the colonists in America.[66] Several other provinces had empowered Franklin to act for them as agent, and in that capacity he was indefatigable, by trying to enlighten the English ministers and the public on the popular state of feeling in America.[67] There, opposition was openly expressed, while this agitation was continued and extended.[68] In Boston, it was vigorously set on foot by

[62] See T. F. Gordon's "History of Pennsylvania from its Discovery by Europeans to the Declaration of Independence in 1776." Philadelphia, 1829, 8vo.

[63] He was born at Maghera, near Londonderry, Ireland, November 29th 1729. With his father and family, he sailed for America in 1741, but his father died on the voyage. He was a pupil of Rev. Francis Alison, at Thunder Hill, Maryland. He became a teacher himself, first at Newcastle, and afterwards at Philadelphia, where he became the intimate friend of Benjamin Franklin. He was engaged in mercantile business for some years, and such was his integrity, that even the Delaware Indians, with whom he was a negotiator of treaties, styled him "The Truthteller." He was a secretary to many literary and patriotic societies. See "The Encyclopedia Americana," a Supplementary Dictionary of Arts, Sciences and General Literature, Vol. iv., p. 680. New York, 1885 to 1889, 4to.

[64] He started the first daily paper published in America, and it was styled *The Pennsylvania Packet*. He was printer to the Convention of 1774, and to the first Congress. He was the first, also, who printed the Declaration of Independence. He became a Captain in the first troop of Philadelphia Horse. In 1775, he established a weekly paper, having for its title *Dunlap's Maryland Gazette*, under the direction of James Hayes, who became editor in 1778. See Appleton's "Cyclopedia of American Biography," Vol. ii., p. 258. See, also, Griffith's "Annals of Baltimore," 1824.

[65] He had visited London for the first time in 1725, and he returned to America in 1726, when he established printing works in Philadelphia. In 1751, he was a member of the House of Assembly in Pennsylvania, and afterwards he was appointed Post-master General of the Colonies. He visited England, on important public business in 1757, and there he was honourably received, as a man of science and of letters. During the spring time of 1762, he returned to America, having formed friendships with some of the most distinguished personages in the British Islands and on the Continent of Europe.

[66] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. v., chap. x., p. 220.

[67] He was greatly esteemed by the liberal minded people of all classes for his high character, patriotism and sagacity. He also contrived to have close relations with the French government through their ambassador in London, so that in case of failing in his mission, he might form an alliance for his country with France. These transactions are set forth in Mignet's "Vido de Franklin."

[68] See "Letters from a farmer in Pennsylvania to the inhabitants of the British Colonies." Boston 1768, 8vo.

Samuel Adams, and the Legislature of Massachusetts warmly espoused the resolutions of the citizens. The people of New York, Rhode Island, North Carolina [69] and Virginia were deeply moved by discontent and protests, especially when the settled purpose of Ministers became more clearly disclosed.[70] The several charters referring to settlement were appealed to, in asserting colonial rights and privileges.[71] Among those who protested most warmly against the arbitrary measures of the British Government in 1765, was an Irish-American, named George Bryan.[72]

On the 12th of February, 1765, George Grenville moved his fifty-five financial resolutions,[73] and among these the Stamp Act in detail was introduced. Colonel Isaac Barré,[74] a young Irishman of considerable oratorical powers, opposed it, as did Alderman Beckford.[75] However, they were defeated by a majority of 245 against 49, after a debate that lasted until nine o'clock.[76] Owing to their spirit of domination and scorn for American rights, the ministers passed this Stamp Act.[77]

Every provincial assembly in the colonies immediately took measures to render it null and void.[78] Only stamped paper was now declared

[69] See Martin's "History of North Carolina," Vol. ii., p. 188.

[70] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. v., chap. ix., x., pp. 157 to 227.

[71] Their nature and provisions are to be found in an octavo volume: "Charters of the British Colonies instituted in America." It is without any date of publication.

[72] Afterwards he became a judge of the Supreme Court in Pennsylvania, and a member of Congress. See Appleton's "Cyclopedia of American Biography," Vol. i., p. 421.

[73] See Thomas M'Knight's "History of the Life and Times of Edmund Burke," Vol. i., chap. ix., pp. 159-175. London, 1858 to 1860. Three Vols. 8vo.

[74] He had already shared the perils and glory of General Wolfe, and under the patronage of Lord Shelbourne, he had been introduced into the English House of Commons.

[75] Member for the City of London, and who had been a West Indian planter.

[76] See Horace Walpole's "Memoirs of the Reign of King George the Third," Vol. ii., chap. iii., p. 78. Edited by Sir Denis le Marchant, Bart. In Four vols. 8vo. London, 1845.

[77] At the moment of passing the Stamp Act George III. was crazed, and it received on the 22nd of March, the royal assent by a Commission. See John Adolphus' "History of England, from the Accession of King George the Third to the conclusion of Peace in the year One Thousand Seven Hundred and Eighty-three," Vol. i., chap. viii., pp. 189 to 191. London, 1802, in Three Volumes, 8vo. Under an altered title, this work appeared in a Fourth Volume, as "The History of England, from the Accession to the Decease of King George the Third." London, 1841 to 1845, 8vo. The Seventh Volume only reaching to May 12th, 1804, was the last published.

[78] Having failed in his efforts, Franklin wrote a letter from London, dated July 11th 1765 to Charles Thompson, in which he declared, that as well might he have tried to hinder the sun from setting, as to prevent the passing of the Stamp Act. Since the sun of liberty was set, he advised, as it might be long before it might rise again to "make as good a night of it as we can. We may still light candles. Frugality and industry will go a great way towards indemnifying us."—Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. v., chap. xv., pp. 306, 307, note. To this desponding letter Thompson replied:—"Be assured we shall light up torches of a very different kind."

to be legal. The people were determined not to use it, and business became in a great measure suspended. The courts were almost closed; marriages ceased; vessels were delayed in the harbours; while the social and commercial operations of America were almost paralysed. When news of passing the Stamp Act reached America, it set the people in a blaze of resentment and indignation. Virginia spoke out boldly through Patrick Henry, and his action kindled in the hearts of the disaffected a fiercer flame. He drew up a series of spirited resolutions,[79] denying in the most unqualified terms the right of taxation claimed. His propositions were sustained by the House of Burgesses. When the stamps were expected to arrive, riots commenced,[80] and symptoms of a revolutionary character soon became apparent.[81] Petitions for repeal of the Stamp Act were prepared by the Colonial Assemblies. Especially in Boston, serious riots took place, nor was there any power left the Governor to control these tumultuary proceedings.[82] These disturbances were imitated in New York and Rhode Island, while the spirit of resistance was soon manifesting itself throughout every part of the land.[83]

To retaliate on the mother country, the colonists pledged themselves to abstain from buying anything imported from England or carried in English vessels. Thus, the trade between the New Englanders and that country almost entirely disappeared.[84] A general gloom overspread all people living in the colonies; but as yet, few dared to think of positive rebellion. This alarming state of feeling, however, soon became known in England, and an impression went forth that the Stamp Act must be rescinded. Previous to the year 1763, the terms Whig and Tory had never been much used in America; but now, the officers of the Crown and those who desired to uphold their authority were branded with the name of Tory, while the patriots and common people, supposing the Whigs belonged to the constitutional and liberal party in England, generally assumed the latter designation.[85] But,

[79] No printer was found bold enough in New York to print these resolutions, but in Boston they were printed as soon as received.

[80] Houses belonging to the Registrar deputy and Controller of the Customs were broken in Boston, and afterwards the Governor's house was attacked by large mobs, who despoiled it of every article of furniture. See John Adolphus' "History of England, from the Accession of King George the Third to the Conclusion of Peace in the Year One Thousand Seven Hundred and Eighty-three," Vol. i., chap. ix., pp. 206 to 211.

[81] Among other excesses, Mr. Oliver the stamp-master was hung in effigy, and he was obliged to fly from his house. Next day to save his life, he resigned his office.

[82] See Lord Mahon's "History of England from the Peace of Utrecht," Vol. v., chap. xlv., pp. 188 to 190.

[83] That very day appointed for the Stamp Act to take effect was ushered in with the ringing of muffled bells, in Boston. Flags in the harbour lowered half-mast high. There it was kept as a day of general mourning by the people.

[84] See "Controversy between Great Britain and her Colonies reviewed; the Rebellions in Virginia, Bermudas, and divers other Islands and Places in America," &c. London, 1769, 8vo.

[85] See Thomas Hutchinson's "History of the Province of Massachusetts Bay, from 1749 to 1774," chap. ii., p. 103.

now, the public Press and the agitators had begun to formulate the inalienable rights of man; and from denying the right of Parliament to tax the colonies, they proceeded to doubt its legislative authority over America. At New York, General Gage commanded the standing forces, and his military powers extended over all the colonies, while several ships of war were there anchored. However, in that city, a Congress assembled and opened October 7th 1765, when delegates chosen by the Massachusetts House of Representatives met, with those of Rhode Island, Connecticut, Pennsylvania, Maryland and South Carolina; as also those from Delaware and New Jersey, with a legislative committee of correspondence, established in New York. The infant colony of Georgia, as well as New Hampshire, agreed to abide by and ratify the result of the deliberations.

After several interesting debates, and having formed articles of association and of union, that congress assembled for the last time, on the 25th of the month.[86] Everywhere the resolution spread among the people to nullify the Stamp Act, so that in a short time the stamps could not be distributed. These proceedings at length began to alarm thoughtful men in England, and a reaction had there set in among the people.[87] A new Ministry had been formed under the Marquis of Rockingham, on the 8th of July 1765,[88] when divided opinions were entertained; some of the ministers still insisted on their right to tax America, while others inclined to abdicate the pretended right. On the opening of Parliament in January 1766, the King's speech recommended the enforcement of lawful authority, and the Lords in reply pledged their utmost endeavours to uphold his dignity. Greater freedom of opinion was expressed in the House of Commons,[89] when the elder William Pitt entered a warm protest against American taxation, followed by Edmund Burke.[90] The King and his ministers pursued their course, however, resolving to make no compromise, and opposed to conciliation. English mercantile interests soon began to suffer so seriously, owing to the American non-importation agreements,[91] that it was deemed necessary to repeal the obnoxious Stamp Act. Besides, the popular manifestations of insubordination began to alarm the Ministry. But, they wished the initiative to be taken by those who had already opposed that impost. Accordingly in February 1766, General Conway moved for leave to bring in a bill to

[86] See Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. v., chap xviii., pp. 333 to 346.

[87] See Michael Doheny's "History of the American Revolution," chap. iv." Dublin, 1846, 18mo.

[88] See Horace Walpole's "Memoirs of the Reign of King George the Third." Vol. ii., chap. ix., pp. 192, 193.

[89] See John Adolphus' "History of England, from the Accession of King George the Third," Vol. i., chap. ix., pp. 218 to 232.

[90] He had just entered Parliament, at this time. See Thomas Macknight's "History of the Life and Times of Edmund Burke," Vol. i., chap. xi., pp. 213 to 224.

[91] See Dr. John Mitchell's "Present State of Great Britain and North America, with regard to Agriculture, Population, Trade and Manufactures," 1767, 8vo.

repeal the American Stamp Act, and between one and two o'clock on the morning of the 22nd a division took place, amid the greatest possible excitement. Then 275 voted for the Bill, while only 167 voted for enforcement, with the modifications proposed in an amendment.[92] Great rejoicings followed the tidings of this news in America.[93] Another change of ministers caused Pitt to become head of the Cabinet, and now with a seat in the House of Lords, under his new title the Earl of Chatham, on July 30th 1766.[94] He selected for ministers men distinguished and owing to their talents, but not for their agreement regarding affairs of State.[95] Although the friend of America, Pitt's influence and popularity began to wane after he had left the House of Commons, while his frequent and painful attacks of gout greatly indisposed him from taking a very leading active part in public discussions. The Earl of Chatham, as a consequence, resigned the direction of government in March 1767.

However, it was only the fear of disruption, that procured concession to the American demand; while soon again, the evil spirit of domination arose in England, and among the colonial Tories, to alarm the friends of liberty.[96] The infatuated Ministry resolved on changing the objects, but not on renouncing the principle of taxing the colonies. In the year 1767, a new Act was introduced imposing duties on paper, tea, glass, with other imported goods. The flame thus enkindled by the British Ministry soon spread through the colonies; while those unjust restrictions on trade, imposed by Act of Parliament, were generally resisted. After the death of Charles Townshend in 1767,[97] Lord North became Chancellor of the Exchequer on the 1st of December,[98] through the influence of the Duke of Bedford.[99] The non-importation policy had caused great distress among the English merchants and manufacturers, while great embarrassment accrued to trade and commerce. In the year 1768, an Irish Member of Parliament Gervase P. Bushe published the "Case of Great Britain and America." An enlarged edition of it came out the following year, and in this pamphlet the cause of the colonists was ably sustained.[100]

[92] "Edmund Burke spoke in a manner unusual in the house; fresh as from a full mind, connecting the argument for repeal with a new kind of political philosophy."—George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. v., chap. xxiii., p. 434.

[93] See John Adolphus' "History of England from the Accession of King George the Third," Vol. i., chap. xiii., pp. 303 to 305.

[94] See Horace Walpole's "Memoirs of the Reign of King George the Third." Vol. ii., chap. xvi., p. 356.

[95] See John Adolphus' "History of England, from the Accession of King George the Third," Vol. i., chap. ix., pp. 240 to 243.

[96] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. vi., chap. xxv., pp. 1 to 16.

[97] He died of malignant fever, on the 4th of September, when he had reached his forty-fourth year.

[98] See John Adolphus' "History of England from the Accession of King George the Third," Vol. i., chap. xiii., pp. 325, 326.

[99] See Horace Walpole's "Memoirs of the Reign of King George the Third," Vol. iii., chap. vi., p. 105.

[100] See "Memoirs of the Life and

The Americans renewed and observed their pledges to import no British merchandise. Commissioners of Customs to enforce the new Acts arrived in Boston May 1768, and in the succeeding month, they seized a sloop belonging to a popular leader and a rich merchant John Handcock,[101] who refused to pay the imposed tax.[102] Soon a riot took place, and for safety, the Commissioners fled to a fort in the harbour. When intelligence of this insubordination reached them, the English Parliament recommended, that the Governor should be directed to arrest the ringleaders among those rioters, and to send them over to England, where it was intended to have them tried for treason.[103] Earnest debates took place in the House of Commons, where this resolution met with great opposition.[104] During the year 1769, the suppression of the Assembly of Massachusetts and efforts to terrorize its people were met defiantly there, and elsewhere throughout the colonies.[105] Everywhere resistance to the Revenue Acts was the subject for consideration. A Mutiny Act was now passed, which empowered the Ministry to quarter troops on the colonists. The Assembly of New York resolved on disobeying that statute.[106] Whereupon, the English Parliament prohibited that body from transacting any legislative business. At the same time, nearly all the colonial Assemblies denied the right of Parliament to tax their people. The Assembly of Massachusetts issued a circular letter to the other colonies, and it strongly urged them to unite their efforts in obtaining redress. A Royal Order was issued to rescind that letter, but by a large majority it was rejected by the Assembly. Accordingly, the Governor of Massachusetts dissolved the House for insubordination. Whereupon, the Assembly of Virginia denied in the most emphatic way the power of the Crown thus to sacrifice the liberty of its subjects. In consequence of this, the Legislature of that colony was likewise dissolved. Lord Hillsborough, an Irish peer, had the administration of the colonies assigned to him. During the year 1768, such universal

Times of the Rt. Hon. Henry Grattan," by his son, Henry Grattan, Esq., M.P. Vol. i., chap. viii., pp. 135 136.

[101] Afterwards the celebrated first signer of the Declaration of Independence. He was born in 1737, near the village of Quincy, in the Province of Massachusetts-Bay, and he was educated in Harvard College. In 1760, he visited England, and on his return he became a selectman for the town of Boston. In 1766, he was chosen a representative for Boston in the General Assembly of the Province. Thenceforward he was involved in the political excitement that ensued, and he became particularly obnoxious to the ruling powers. See N. Dwight's "Lives of the Signers of the Declaration of Independence," Massachusetts, pp. 18 to 28. New York, 1851, 8vo.

[102] See John Adolphus' "History of England from the Accession of King George the Third," Vol. i., chap. xiv., p. 350.

[103] See Hugh Murray's "United States of America," Vol. i., chap. xi., pp. 350, 351.

[104] See John Adolphus' "History of England from the Accession of King George the Third," Vol. i., chap. xv., pp. 379 to 386.

[105] See Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. vi., chap. xxxix to xli., pp. 224 to 302.

[106] See Pitkin's "Political and Civil History of the United States," Vol. i., pp. 215, 216. New Haven, 1828, 8vo.

opposition to the imposed duties prevailed—especially in Boston—that two regiments were ordered from Ireland, and two others from Halifax. In September arose fierce opposition to quartering them within the town.[107]

At a time of profound peace, and at the request of Governor Bernard, Boston was surrounded by fourteen ships of war, with springs on their cables and their broadsides to the town. Troops under the command of General Gage were landed. Charged muskets, fixed bayonets, colours flying, drums beating, and all other military concomitants were displayed, in order to strike terror into the inhabitants. However, the Assembly refused to find quarters for the soldiers. The Governor then posted some of them in the State House and in Faneuil Hall, while others were encamped on the Common. The people looked on in silence; for the present they were powerless, yet burning with resentment. When a new Assembly had been convened in Boston, they refused to transact any business, while threatened by an armed force. Robert Aitken an Irish printer came to Philadelphia in 1769. During the contests with England, he was always on the side of the colonies, and on that account, he was thrown into prison by the British.[108] The patriots were working in secret, and enrolling in their societies all those bold and daring spirits, whose hearts throbbed for freedom and beat with indignation, at the tyrannical impositions inflicted upon them. In England, it was now judged politic to effect a change of administration; and it was thought, that such an expedient might serve to allay popular discontent. The Governor Bernard of Massachusetts having been removed from his troublesome office in 1769, the Lieutenant-Governor Thomas Hutchinson was appointed to succeed him. But he was equally powerless to stem the tide of popular resistance.[109] Meantime, collisions between the military and people of Boston were of frequent occurrence.[110] On the 5th of March 1770, the soldiers fired upon the citizens, killing three outright, and wounding several, including Crispus Attucks, Samuel Gray and James Calwell, who were massacred on the spot, while Samuel Maverick and Patrick Carr, an Irishman, received mortal wounds. A cry of vengeance went forth in and from Boston. The story of the "massacre" was told all over the land, and excited the most implacable hatred against British domination.[111] A captain named Preston and eight men of the guard were arraigned for murder; while two of the chief popular leaders John Adams and Josiah Quincey defended the accused, to show

[107] See Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. vi., chap. xxxii. to xxxvii., pp. 128 to 243.

[108] He published an edition of the Bible, a Magazine, and "Transactions of the American Philosophical Society."

[109] See Thomas Hutchinson's "History of the Province of Massachusetts-Bay from 1749 to 1774," chap. iii., pp. 256 to 460.

[110] See William Edward Hartpole Lecky's "History of England in the Eighteenth Century," Vol. iii. chap. xii., pp. 365 to 367.

[111] See John Adolphus' "History of

that respect still entertained by the Americans for law and order.[112] The people meantime clamoured loudly for removal of the troops from their city.

In the commencement of 1770, the Duke of Grafton resigned his office of Prime Minister. After some difficulties experienced in forming a new Ministry, the chief direction of affairs devolved on Lord North. He resolved on remitting the American taxation to a large amount. But the sovereignty of the British legislature was still maintained, and they did not relinquish their alleged right discretionally to tax Americans, at any future time. It was then determined to remove all colonial taxes, except a duty of three pence a pound on tea,[113] which was considered to be a very light tax, being only one quarter of what the English at home paid for the same article. At the express command of King George III., who insisted that there should always be one tax at least, to keep up the right of taxing the Americans, this was retained. On Tuesday November 13th 1770, the King's speech made a distinct allusion to the disturbances in Massachusetts-Bay colony, where "very unwarrantable practices are still carried on."[114] The people of America now saw that England's Ministers determined to legislate for them, and they began to prepare for resistance. In 1771, and in the sixty-fifth year of his age, Benjamin Franklin visited Ireland, where he had never been before, and where he was hospitably entertained by both parties, the courtiers and patriots; the latter receiving him with particular respect. The Lord Lieutenant Hillsborough treated him with especial courtesy, although neither liking him nor the colonies. In the Irish Parliament, he was brought within the bar, and there he found the principal patriots disposed to be friends of America.[115]

In Virginia, colonial resistance was strong, and measures of a practical character were devised, to consolidate a union between the different colonies, in March 1773.[116] The Assembly appointed a standing committee of inquiry, giving them instructions to communicate with other colonies, so that the non-importation compact should not be relaxed. The colonists very generally passed resolutions, disclaiming the authority of the Parliament of Great Britain to tax them.[117] The first organized resistance to the measures of Government was in New England. The excisable commodity of tea was known to

England from the Accession of King George the Third," Vol. i., chap. xviii., pp. 466 to 469.

[112] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. vi., chap. xliii., pp. 328 to 349.

[113] See John Adolphus' "History of England from the Accession of King George the Third," Vol. i., chap xvii., pp. 458 to 460.

[114] See "His Majesty's most Gracious Speech to Parliament, on Tuesday, 13th Nov., 1770." London, 1770, fol., four pages.

[115] See "The Works of Benjamin Franklin," &c., edited by Jared Sparks. Vol. i., Life of Benjamin Franklin, chap. v., pp. 331 to 334.

[116] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. vi., chap. xlix., pp. 444 to 455.

[117] See "Journal of the Reign of King George III., from the year 1771 to 1783." By Horace Walpole, edited

have been on the way to Boston, and to have been conveyed in three ships, towards the close of 1773. If the tea were once landed, and offered for sale at the cheap rate which arrangements allowed, the popular leaders knew that nothing could prevent it from being bought and consumed. In November, several vessels, loaded by the East India Company with tea, arrived in Boston.[118] One of these, the "Dartmouth," anchored in the harbour. The Custom House agents and Governor Hutchinson insisted that the tea should be landed. The patriots had resolved that the cargo should not be sent ashore, and a guard was appointed to enforce their determination. Placards were prepared, distributed and posted all over the city, calling a meeting at Faneuil Hall.[119] It was announced that the bells should ring at nine o'clock on the 29th of November. The meeting was accordingly held, and inflammatory speeches were then delivered by different speakers. The proceedings lasted until nightfall, when candles were ordered. Faneuil Hall was inadequate to hold the crowds assembled, and they adjourned to the Old South Church. At dusk, and in accordance with a pre-arranged plan, just as the candles were about being lighted, a man in the gallery, and disguised as a Mohawk Indian, raised a war-whoop, which was answered by the crowd without. Another voice in the gallery shouted: "Let us make Boston Harbour a tea-pot to-night!" Then several shouted: "Hurrah! for Griffin's Wharf." The meeting was then adjourned. Numbers of persons disguised as Indians assembled on the wharf. Under the guidance of one Pitts, who seemed to be their leader, the citizens boarded the "Dartmouth" and took up the hatches; when bringing the tea on deck, they broke open one hundred and fourteen chests, casting their contents into the water.[120]

The report of this daring riot was received with exasperation and recrimination in England, where a determination was formed of proceeding to extreme measures with the people of Boston. It was now proposed, that a whole city should be punished for an offence committed by a small number of its inhabitants, and that its port should be closed. No goods were to be shipped from or landed there, until the citizens should express a due sense of their error, and make full compensation to the East India Company for their loss. Then, if it saw sufficient reason, the Crown might restore its lost privileges.[121] In the beginning of 1774, England resolved on this stern policy of retaliation, and the English Parliament had even taken measures to revoke many

with notes, by Dr. Doran, Vol. i., pp. 250, 251. London, 1859, 8vo.

[118] See William Edward Hartpole Lecky's "History of England in the Eighteenth Century," Vol. iii., chap. xii., pp. 386, 387.

[119] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. vi., chap. i., pp. 465 to 489.

[120] See Pitkin's "Political and Civil History of the United States of America," Vol. i., pp. 262 to 265.

[121] See Hugh Murray's "United States of America," Vol. i., chap. xi., pp. 357, 358.

provincial powers and prerogatives.[122] A Bill framed in such a spirit was introduced, and a few who opposed it could only obtain a hearing with extreme difficulty. In the House of Commons several members bitterly denounced the people of Boston,[123] and the most imprudent violence of invective was hurled against the Americans. The second reading of this Bill passed without even a division.[124] A petition was then presented by the Lord Mayor of London, and by some Americans resident there, urging that the citizens of Boston had not been heard in their own defence, nor had redress been sought at common law, while the offence had not been committed within its limits. On this occasion, Edmund Burke strongly sided with the Americans. He delivered a splendid speech, on the 19th April, in defence of their rights, and on the subject of American taxation.[125] He voted against the Port Bill. In the House of Lords, it was denounced by Rockingham, Richmond and Shelbourne.[126] Despite all opposition it became a law.[127]

The Boston Port Bill was intended to crush the trade of the city, and to bring great distress upon its inhabitants. But furthermore, by another Bill which was passed, town meetings were to be prohibited except by permission of the Governor, who was also to have the appointment of all civil officers, except that of the supreme judges. Moreover, a third Bill was introduced and passed, so that individuals charged with offences against the State might be removed to England, where hostile juries could be found to convict them. Universal indignation and opposition were awakened by these enactments, as successively the news had been conveyed to America. In the province of Massachusetts and city of Boston acts of turbulence, disorder and violence followed, and preparations for rebellion were secretly arranged. The other provinces openly expressed their hearty sympathy with Boston, and declared that the cause of that city was their own. They endorsed its opposition, and prepared to support any action taken by its people. As usual, Virginia was foremost in the field, and the House of Assembly appointed the day named for closing the port of Boston to be one of fasting and of deep humiliation. This proceeding was so distasteful to the Governor, that he immediately dissolved the Assembly. However, a great majority of the members formed themselves into an association, and they passed

[122] See James Graham's "History of the United States of North America," Vol. iv., Book xi., chap. vi., pp. 342-346.

[123] Mr. Herbert, an English member, said of them: "They are never actuated by decency or reason; they always choose tarring and feathering as an argument." Another English member denounced them as "utterly unworthy of civilized forbearance."

[124] See Rev. Francis Thackeray's "History of the Right Honourable William Pitt, Earl of Chatham," &c., Vol. ii., chap. xxvi., pp. 259, 260.

[125] See "Works of the Right Honourable Edmund Burke," Vol. i., London edition, 1792, *et seq.*, 4to.

[126] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. vi., chap. lii. pp. 503 to 528.

[127] See William Edward Hartpole Lecky's "History of England in the Eighteenth Century," Vol. iii., chap. xii., p. 397.

resolutions expressive of strong indignation. The declarations of Virginia were everywhere enthusiastically received by the people. It was next resolved to initiate an organization, so as to take joint action, and the idea of a general convention was entertained. The city of Philadelphia was selected as the scene for deliberation. It was deemed necessary however, to supersede the Governor of Massachusetts, who had become extremely unpopular. Accordingly, General Gage was appointed to unite in his own person the command of the King's forces and the government of that province. For that purpose, he arrived in Boston May 13th 1774, while Hutchinson sailed for England on the 1st of June following.[128]

Proposals for a General Congress of delegates were made by the Assemblies of several colonies, in May 1774. These propositions were warmly received throughout the provinces. Accordingly, an assembly of fifty-five delegates, representing all the colonies except Georgia, met in Philadelphia. Among the most distinguished of its members were George Washington, Patrick Henry and Richard Henry Lee, of Virginia; Samuel[129] and John Adams,[130] of Massachusetts; John Jay, Philip Livingstone and James Duane, of New York; Roger Sherman, of Connecticut; Edward and John Rutledge[131] and Christopher Gadsden, of South Carolina.[132] That Congress was opened on the 5th of September 1774, under the presidency of Peyton Randolph of Virginia. The members had determined that their deliberations should be secret, that their results should be given to the world as unanimous, and that no differences of opinion should be allowed to transpire. A committee was immediately appointed, to report upon their rights violated, the injuries sustained, and their mode for redress.[133] Charles Thompson was appointed Secretary[134] of the First or the Old Revolutionary Congress,[135] and he was indefatigable while discharging the duties of his onerous and

[128] See Thomas Hutchinson's "History of the Province of Massachusetts-Bay from 1749 to 1774," chap. iii., pp. 458 to 460.

[129] He was born at Boston, Massachusetts, in 1722, and he was educated in Harvard University. He became a merchant, but he took a most active part in politics. In 1765, he was chosen a representative for the town of Boston in the General Assembly. He was greatly distinguished for his abilities, zeal and influence.

[130] For an account of this distinguished statesman see "The Life and Writings of John Adams, Second President of the United States." Edited by his Grandson, Charles Francis Adams. Ten vols. Boston, 8vo.

[131] He was the son of an Irish doctor. He was a soldier as well as a statesman, and he was nominated President and Commander-in-Chief of the Colony of South Carolina. After the war, he was elevated to the seat of Chief Justice of the United States.

[132] For further particulars regarding eminent persons who figured in the American Revolution, the reader is referred to "The Library of American Biography," conducted by Jared Sparks. New Series; complete in fifteen volumes, each volume containing a Portrait or a neatly engraved Historical Sketch. Boston, 12mo.

[133] See Hugh Murray's "United States of America," Vol. i., chap. xi., page 367.

[134] To this office he was elected, on the 5th September 1774.

[135] It met in Carpenters' Hall, Philadelphia.

continuous office.[136] Some of the deputies were inclined for moderate and conciliatory courses; but, for the most part, their policy was overruled. Separate committees were formed, to frame separate addresses to the people of Great Britain, to the King, to the Colonists, and to the Canadians.[137] Having undergone some revision, they were published, and couched in a tone politic yet firm; they expressed an ardent desire to maintain union with the mother country, but without forfeiture of their rights, and to be loyal subjects, anxious to contribute with their utmost power towards the welfare of the whole empire. They demanded a status recognised at the conclusion of the late war, and they exhorted the people of Massachusetts to resist Acts under the new constitution. They declared, that after the 1st of December 1774, if their just demands were not satisfied, no article should be imported from the mother country to the colonies;[138] and, failing their objects, all exports from America should cease on the 10th of September 1775. In every resolution passed by this Assembly, hostility to England was impliedly expressed. They refused to submit to the new imposts, which they denounced as tyrannical, and they cordially concurred in the resolutions of the provincial Assemblies, forbidding and denouncing the use of English manufactures. Still, there was no open threat of resisting the power of England by force of arms.

Meantime, matters were becoming daily more menacing in Massachusetts.[139] General Gage had summoned the Assembly to meet at Salem on the 5th of October, and he had already nominated thirty-six councillors. Although twenty-four of these had accepted his appointment, the greater number, influenced by fear or persuasion, had been induced to resign. He thereupon issued a proclamation countermanding the writs. However, the members treating it as illegal, repaired to Salem on the day appointed, and there for a day, they went through the form of waiting for the Governor, who did not arrive. Then, their sittings were removed to Concord, about twenty miles from Boston. Those deputies passed a vote to enrol twelve thousand Minute Men, who should be pledged to march at a minute's notice in defence of their country. They established in various parts of the country depots of arms and ammunition,[140] and decreed that the taxes should remain in

[136] As Secretary, he continued in each successive Congress until the adoption of the Federal Constitution, in 1789. Afterwards, he retired from public life, and devoted himself to literary pursuits. He attained a venerable old age, and he died at Lower Merion, Pennsylvania, August 16th 1824.

[137] Efforts were secretly made by this Assembly to kindle in Canada the fire of insurrection. The inhabitants of this British province they exhorted to make common cause with themselves.

[138] See William Edward Hartpole Lecky's "History of England in the Eighteenth Century," Vol. iii., chap. xii., pp. 410, 411.

[139] See the "Hibernian Magazine" Vol. iv., for December 1774, p. 730. The first Volume of this periodical appeared in Dublin, 1771, 8vo. It continued to be published for many subsequent years.

[140] See William Edward Hartpole Lecky's "History of England in the Eighteenth Century," Vol. iii., chap. xii., p. 108.

the hands of the revenue officers for patriotic purposes. They issued directions for disciplining the militia, and for administering various branches of the local government. They sent explanatory letters to the English General Gage, commanding in Boston; but, it was rather a remonstrance, regarding the increase of troops there, and on the fortifying of that city. He repelled their complaints, and he had recourse to a proclamation, that their assembling was illegal, and that no regard should be paid to their usurped authority.[141] However, his mandates were entirely disregarded, while theirs met with implicit obedience. They adjourned, however, with an appointment to meet at Cambridge on the 4th of February 1775.[142] After a session of the Continental Congress lasting for seven weeks, a Declaration of Colonial Rights was agreed to, and in it were set forth these principles of the people being alone competent to make the laws which were to bind them, and to impose their own taxes. A protest was made against the tyrannical Acts of Parliament, passed since the accession of George III. An American Association was also formed. Its members were pledged not to trade with Great Britain nor the West Indies, nor with any state or province, seeking to introduce British taxed goods. Unless their grievances were redressed, provision was made for convoking another Congress, which was to meet the following May.

## CHAPTER XI.

**Precautions taken by General Gage—the Loyalists—Proceedings in England—Breaking out of the War at Lexington—Spread of the Revolt—Proceedings of the Second Continental Congress—First Success of the Patriots—George Washington appointed Commander-in-Chief of the American Forces—Battle at Bunker's Hill—Organization of the American Army—Progress of the Insurrection—Expedition against the English in Canada under Command of Brigadier General Richard Montgomery—First Success—Assault on Quebec—Montgomery's Defeat and heroic Death.**

In the beginning of 1775, a Provincial Congress had assembled in Massachusetts, under the Presidency of John Hancock. Measures were taken to call out the militia,[1] as also to collect arms and munitions of war.[2] A committee of public safety was appointed, with power to assemble bands whenever they thought proper; as likewise, a subordinate committee of supplies empowered to purchase such articles as the

[141] See Hugh Murray's "United States of America," Vol. i., chap. xi., p. 373.

[142] See William Edward Hartpole Lecky's "History of England in the Eighteenth Century," Vol. iii., chap. xii., p. 412.

[1] These were called Minute Men, because they were under obligation to assemble in arms after a minute's warning.

[2] Carlo Botta wrote an impartial history of this War in Italian: "Storia della Guerra dell' Independenza degli Stati Uniti d America," in Four vols. Parigi, 1809, 8vo. This History of the

public exigencies required.[3] Under this arrangement, and acting in concert, both committees laid in a quantity of stores for warlike operations, partly at Worcester, and partly at Concord. That Congress sent trusted messengers to New Hampshire, Rhode Island and Connecticut, to inform the people there regarding those measures they had taken, and to request their co-operation in making up an army of 20,000 men. Meantime, General Gage was active, endeavouring to suppress any insubordination manifested by rebels within the town of Boston, while he pursued a course of rigorous surveillance towards them. He was then Governor, having about 4,000 troops under his command, and he sent a request to the British Ministry for 20,000 more. By his orders, all intercourse with the country was cut off, and none were allowed to leave the town without his permission. The supply of provisions and fuel was thus stopped; and all at once, the inhabitants began to feel the hardships and annoyances of war.

Notwithstanding those precautions, Gage himself began to feel uneasy, although Boston contained a great number of loyalists; while these men were excessively zealous, in supporting the measures of the British government.[4] The more wealthy settlers—denominated Tories—were generally partisans of England. In the cities and towns, several had official, commercial and social relations with that country, not alone in Boston and in Massachusetts,[5] but throughout all America.[6] New York was undeniably the loyalists' stronghold, and it contained more of them than did any other colony.[7] Its peculiar social and political institutions had formed there a feudal aristocracy, and that landed proprietory was calculated to give the Tory party many adherents.[8] In Connecticut, the number of crown partisans was greater in proportion to the population, than in any other of the New England Colonies. Maine had a considerable number of Tories.[9] The loyalists were many and powerful in

War of Independence of the United States of America has been translated from the Italian, into French, with an introduction by M. de Sevelinges, Four vols., Paris, 1812, 1813, 8vo. Also, it was rendered into English, by George Alexander Otis. It was published at Philadelphia, 1820, in four octavo vols., and afterwards at Edinburgh, 1844, 8vo.

[3] Over £15,000 were voted for this purpose.

[4] In Boston they formed themselves into a regiment under one Ruggles.

[5] Upwards of eleven hundred loyalists retired in a body with the Royal army at the evacuation of Boston. Other migrations preceded and succeeded this; while two thousand, at the lowest computation, embarked at different ports of Massachusetts during the Revolutionary War

[6] See Lieutenant James Moody's "Narrative of his Exertions and Sufferings in the Cause of Government since the Year 1776." London, 1782, 8vo.

[7] See "The American Loyalists; or Biographical Sketches of Adherents to the British Crown in the War of the Revolution," alphabetically arranged; with a preliminary historical Essay. By Lorenzo Sabine. Boston, 8vo.

[8] Numbers in New York entered the service of the crown, and fought in its defence. Whole regiments and even battalions there were raised by the great landholders, while those continued organized and in pay throughout the whole struggle.

[9] Numbers of these were proscribed and banished, however, after the war had broken out.

different parts of the Colony throughout New Hampshire. Rhode Island approached nearer to the democratic standard than any of those already mentioned; although even there, the King had supporters by no means insignificant in numbers. Moreover, as in all such contests, a great many deemed it prudent, to adopt a moderate course of proceeding for obtaining redress, and without an appeal to arms. This latter alternative was thought by them to be inopportune and perilous, while many deprecated engaging in rebellion, though conscientious motives.[10]

Hardly had the first American Congress separated, when on hearing of its proceedings the English legislature resolved to declare, that Massachusetts was in a state of rebellion. Parliament had opened in 1775, and the 20th of January was the first day of Session in the House of Lords. Lord Chatham earnestly pleaded in a motion brought for removal of General Gage's large army from Boston, as creating popular apprehension and tending to prevent conciliation.[11] The King and a majority of the ministry were inflexible. They resolved to interdict all commerce with the Americans, to protect the Colonial loyalists, and to declare all others traitors and rebels. In the presence of Franklin and a crowd of Americans at the bar, when Lord Dartmouth had laid papers before the house, the Earl of Chatham rose and moved an address to the King, that he might issue immediate orders, to remove his forces as soon as possible from the town of Boston. Then, he delivered a most eloquent and argumentative harangue, to open the way for reconciliation; he defended the Colonial resistance to taxation without representation; he declared, that the spirit of liberty animated three millions in America, while the Whigs in England were estimated by him to be even double that number. He also exclaimed, "Ireland they have to a man." By others, Chatham was also supported; but, his motion was rejected by sixty-eight against eighteen.[12]

Although Gage had asked for a reinforcement of 20,000 men, his proposal was rejected with scorn by the Ministry; yet it was ostentatiously heralded, that seven hundred marines from England, with three regiments of infantry and one regiment of light horse, drawn from the Irish establishment, in all comprising over 3,000 men, should be prepared for embarkation, to encourage the American loyalists. Besides, two frigates and six sloops of war were fitted out and destined for Boston. On the 1st of February, the Earl of Chatham presented a Bill for true reconcilement and national accord, proposing that the Parliament should repeal the statutes complained of, and renounce the power of taxation. It was rejected on the first reading, by a vote of

[10] Among these chiefly were the Quakers in Pennsylvania. See "Enquiries into the Losses and Services of the American Loyalists," 1789.

[11] See Charles Mackay's "History of the United States of America," Vol. i., Book ii., chap. vi., pp. 249, 250.

[12] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. vii., chap xviii., pp. 194 to 203.

sixty-one to thirty-two.[13] A warm debate took place, also, in the House of Commons, regarding the propriety of coercing the Americans. However, the ministerial measure was carried in the affirmative, by ayes, 304; nays, 105.[14] Notwithstanding the strong opposition,[15] a joint resolution of both houses was carried, pledging the Parliament and the whole force of Great Britain, to reduce Massachusetts, to starve New England by prohibiting the American Fisheries, to call out the savages in the rear of the colonies, and to excite a servile insurrection. This was brought up in the shape of an address to the King, on the 9th of February, and he returned a reply, pledging himself speedily and effectually to enforce obedience to the laws and to the authority of the supreme legislature.[16] In February, Sir William Howe was appointed Commander-in-Chief of the English land forces, while his brother Admiral Lord Howe was announced as commander of the naval forces, and as an official pacificator; for, it was pretended, that the olive branch should be held out when the sword was suspended.[17] As usual, the British ministry miscalculated the relative resources and spirit of their troops and those of the Colonists; but, that expedition was prepared for departure, and with the most confident expectation of its success.[18]

In the March of 1775, the celebrated Dr. Samuel Johnson wrote and published his treatise, "Taxation no Tyranny, an answer to the Resolutions and Address of the American Congress.[19] It was filled with bitterness and rancour against the Americans; it was despotic in tone, full of unparalleled insolence and rhetorical extravagance, but utterly void of convincing arguments. Several replies to this pamphlet appeared at the time, controverting his statements and attempted reasoning. In a celebrated speech, on the 22nd of March, Edmund Burke eloquently moved his thirteen conciliatory measures towards America,[20] and which were rejected. The nays numbered 270, the ayes only 78.[21] To quiet the disturbed state of feeling in Ireland, owing to

[13] See "Plan offered by the Earl of Chatham to the House of Lords, entitled a provisional Act for settling the Troubles in America," &c., which was rejected and not suffered to lie on the Table. London, 1775, 4to.

[14] In the minority were Edmund Burke, Barre, Connolly, and other Irishmen.

[15] Then Charles James Fox signalized the extent of his abilities for the first time, while deprecating the measures of Government, in a grand speech, which lasted an hour and twenty minutes. See allusion to it in the Rt. Hon. Lord John Russell's "Life and Times of Charles James Fox," Vol. i., chap. vi., pp. 91 to 93.

[16] See Charles Mackay's "History of the United States of America," Vol. i., Book ii., chap. vi., pp. 249 to 251.

[17] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. vii., chap. xxii.

[18] See "Narrative of Lieutenant-General Sir William Howe relative to his Conduct during his command of the troops of North America." This was published in 1780.

[19] See "The Works of Samuel Johnson, LL.D." Edited by Arthur Murphy, Esq. Vol. viii., pp. 155 to 204. London, 1816, 8vo.

[20] See "Works and Correspondence of the Right Honourable Edmund Burke," Vol. iii., pp. 241 to 294. London edition, 1852, 8vo.

[21] See the "Annual Register" for the

the restrictions on its trade and commerce, some concessions were now made in favour of its fishery industries; for it was deemed, that assistance should be required from the Parliament of that country, in the threatened emergency of a war with the Colonists.[22] A petition from Bristol was brought before the House by Burke, and it approved the resistance of the Americans. Great popular excitement grew up throughout Great Britain and Ireland, as a consequence. The Lord Mayor of London, John Wilkes, as also the aldermen and livery, went on the 10th of April, with an address to the King, and it approved of their resistance to establish arbitrary power offered by the Americans, while they prayed the dismissal of ministers. The King was highly incensed at this incident.[23] A petition from the city of Waterford, Ireland, was presented to the House, setting forth the fatal consequences that should result to their citizens in particular, and to the kingdom in general, from a continuance of the unhappy differences existing between Great Britain and the Colonies.[24] Meetings were held in Belfast, also, approving of the Americans' resistance. Subsequent movements took place in that town, and its people sent money to aid the American patriots.

The ministry now adopted stern but futile measures to stem the tide of revolt. In pursuance of these, letters were written to Gage, that he should take possession of every colonial fort; that he should seize and secure all military stores of every kind collected for the rebels; that he should arrest and imprison all such as were thought to have committed treason; that he should repress rebellion by force, to make public safety the first object of consideration; and that he should substitute more coercive measures for ordinary forms of proceeding, without pausing to require the aid of a civil magistrate. The president and most forward members of the seditious congress were to be exempt from his power of pardon, and these were to suffer condign punishment by prosecution, either in America or in England.[25]

Having been informed, that arms and ammunition had been stored at Concord, sixteen miles from Boston, Gage then arranged to send 800 regular troops by night to capture them. However, their movements were anticipated; signals were given and bells rung; the Minute Men were aroused along the road.[26] At Lexington, about halfway between Boston and Concord, about sixty or seventy armed patriots took up a position, where they stood motionless, refusing to surrender their arms, when insolently summoned to do so by Major Pitcairn, in command of the British advance. It was at dawn, on the 19th April, when he gave orders to fire. Eight of the patriots were killed, and several were

year 1775, Vol. xviii., History of Europe chap. vii., pp. 100 to 110.

[22] See *ibid.*, pp. 113 to 115.

[23] See Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. vii., chap. xxvi., pp. 282.

[24] See the "Annual Register" for the year 1775, Vol. xviii. History of Europe, chap. vii., p. 102.

[25] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States." Vol. vii., chap. xxvi., p. 284.

[26] See the "Annual Register" for the year 1775, Vol. xviii. History of Europe, chap. viii., p. 126.

wounded.[27] This was the first blood drawn in the War for Independence.[28] Meantime, the British advanced to Concord and destroyed some stores. But soon the Americans, to the number of 400 men hastily collected, encountered them near that town, and forced them back after an effective fire.[29] The British retreated in confusion towards Boston, the country rising in arms, and the Minute Men firing from behind trees and fences along their route. This caused the English a loss of 273 men—of whom 65 were killed—before they were rescued from utter destruction, by the arrival of Lord Percy with large reinforcements to cover their retreat. In these two encounters, the Americans lost 88 men.[30] Under cover of their war ships, the British encamped for that night on Bunker Hill, a promontory jutting out into the harbour, and just opposite the nearly insulated city of Boston From this exposed position, they soon retired into the town.[31]

That skirmish at Lexington sent an electric shock through the whole American community. Soon were the Colonists aroused for resistance, and a patriotic flame was everywhere enkindled. In England and in Ireland, the news of American disturbances had come with astonishment and alarm;[32] for a serious and sudden Revolution had not been anticipated. Relying on the aid of her own people, and desiring the co-operation of her sister colonies, a Congress assembled at Watertown, under the presidency of Dr. Joseph Warren. Massachusetts in his name issued an address, dated April 30th 1775, and couched in the most inflammatory terms. Alluding to the barbarous murder of their brethren killed at Lexington, it was declared, that an army should be raised to prevent the soldiers in revenge from ravaging their country with fire and sword. The people were asked to hasten and to encourage by all possible means, the enlistment of men to form the army, and to send them forth for assemblage in head quarters at Cambridge, with that expedition which the vast importance and instant urgency of existing affairs demanded. The Colonists also drew up an address of remonstrance to the people of Great Britain.[33]

A report soon spread, that the English troops had murdered the people in and around Boston.[34] In less than three days, thirty thousand

[27] Andrew Browne came from Ireland to America in 1773, as a British soldier; he deserted, however, and joined the rebels. He fought at Lexington, and at Bunker Hill. He served with distinction throughout the war. He afterwards began the publication of the *Philadelphia Gazette* in 1788.

[28] Among the "Minute Men" who responded to the call at the Lexington alarm, nearly 150 Irish names are preserved.

[29] Colonel Barrett was the recognised leader of the Colonists during this encounter.

[30] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. vii., chap. xxvii.-xxviii., pp. 288 to 310.

[31] See "Sargeant R. Lamb's Original and Authentic Journal of the Occurrences of the late American War from its commencement to 1783," Dublin, 1809. 8vo.

[32] See the "Hibernian Magazine," Vol. v., for January, 1775, pp. 54, 55.

[33] See the "Annual Register" of the year 1775. History of Europe, chap. viii., p. 129.

[34] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. vii., chap. xxix., pp. 311 to 319.

men were marching towards that town, in order to aid the people assembled at Cambridge. All the provinces now prepared to assume arms. The shrill music of the fife and the rattle of the military drum were heard. Towns and villages resounded with the clash of muskets, or glittered with the swords of leaders; recruits were raised and drilled in every part of the country. The various revolutionary committees laboured day and night to supply arms and munitions; thus to further the patriotic work, on which they were now engaged. When John Stark[35] heard of the massacre at Lexington, he was quietly engaged working on his farm in New Hampshire. However, he resolved to take an active part in the coming struggle.[36] So popular was he, that in a few hours he enlisted eight hundred men.[37] With these he marched to Cambridge, where a camp had been formed, and to which as the rallying point all the revolutionary levies were now directed. The deplorable social and political state of Ireland, and especially of the Irish Catholics, towards the middle of the eighteenth century, had caused many to seek in America the means for living and of distinction, which they could not obtain at home. These emigrants and their children were among the most ardent and devoted lovers of freedom, in the country of their adoption. When the time for armed resistance arrived, numbers of Irish immigrants were enrolled in the distinctive American army raised by Congress and

[35] He was the son of parents who emigrated from the North of Ireland, and who settled at Londonderry, New Hampshire. They had brought potatoes from their own country, and there cultivated them, while it is said, the seed was thence propagated extensively through America, so that the designation of "Irish potatoe" soon marked the product, and even yet it is the generally used term, in contradistinction to the yam or "sweet potatoe." He was born August 28th 1728. Early distinguished for daring and adventure, he had bravely served through the French and Indian wars on the side of the English. He afterwards became a strenuous and fearless defender of Colonial rights.

[36] As he had been greatly distinguished in the previous colonial wars, the British endeavoured to bribe him, by offering him a colonel's commission and a regiment of infantry. But Stark spurned their offer, and he now set about raising a regiment of Irish and Irish-American rebels, who had largely colonised the districts around him.

[37] The following are the recorded names of one company raised in Bedford, and from it, the reader may form an estimate of the number of Irish or Irish-Americans recruited in New Hampshire for the Revolutionary forces: namely, Colonel Daniel Moore, Major John Goffe, Captain T. McLoughlin, Lieutenant John Patten, John Patten Senior, Samuel Patten, James Patten, Robert Patten, John Gault, Isaac Riddle, John Riddle, A. Martin, James Martin, Stephen Goffe, Hugh Horton, Burns Chandler, Samuel Moore, Samuel Barr, John Callahan (killed), James Moore, Ira Greer, William Parker, John McAllister, John Griffer, Robert Victorey, Daniel Larkin, James Patterson, John O'Neill, George Hogg, W. Gilmore, James Houston, John Ross, Stephen March, John Tyrrel, Patrick O'Flynn, C. Johnston, John Gardiner, Robert Cornell, John Hiller, Jones Cutting, John Hiller, Barnet McClair, Luke Gardner, R. Dalrymple (killed), Samuel Patterson, Solomon Hemp, (killed), John Dorr (killed), William Houston, Zac. Chandler, Valentine Sullivan, John Steel, Robert Morrel, Patrick O'Murphy, David Riddle, Eben Sullivan, and eighteen others, making a total of seventy-one Irishmen, or Irish-Americans. These belonged to one New Hampshire company, at the Battle of Bunker Hill.

called Continentals. Moreover, while some corps were mostly natives, yet were they also largely composed of Irish.

Driven back into Boston, and cooped up in that town, the English were besieged and threatened by a clamorous multitude, rather than by a disciplined army. That unorganized assemblage, amounting to thirty thousand men, was constantly increased by reinforcements arriving from all quarters. Some came with effective weapons, others hoped to obtain arms. A partial and an irregular muster of the militia was effected. After various plans had been considered, preparations were accordingly made to besiege the city. The pulpit, the bench, the press and the bar were now united in appeals to the people's patriotism. The charge of rebellion was denied, and the resistance of the colonies was justified, by speakers and writers. A distinction was drawn between the King and his ministry; the phrase of a ministerial war, in opposition to the wishes of the British nation, became very common; while it was used as a medium for reconciling resistance with allegiance. The American people began then to organize their bands, and they took up arms to oppose a large military expedition of land and sea forces, under the command of Generals Howe,[38] Burgoyne and Clinton. These the English Ministry had despatched, and with a numerous fleet they arrived on the 25th of May.[39] These were soon followed by several regiments from Ireland.

Meantime, the patriots had stationed forces at convenient places throughout Massachusetts, to prevent further raids by the regulars in Boston. Posts and pickets, behind entrenched or barricaded positions, hemmed in that town. A peninsula connected old Boston with the mainland. Ships of war rode in the harbour, while considerable forces garrisoned the town,[40] and more were expected soon to arrive. When these reached Boston harbour, the English became aware, that a great but an undisciplined army surrounded the town; while the watchfires at night showed their vast numbers, spread around in every direction. Such portents filled their foes with astonishment, but not with dismay. In the American camp, divided commands and divergent counsels prevailed, while excitement and confusion were ripe during the whole of May. Towards the latter end of that month, a great part of the reinforcements ordered from Great Britain had arrived at Boston. Before proceeding to extremities, however, General Gage issued a proclamation holding forth to the people the alternative of peace or war, by offering pardon in the King's name, to all who should lay down their arms and return to their respective peaceable occupations.[41] As the

[38] See "Narrative of Lieutenant-General Sir William Howe relative to his Conduct during his Command of the King's Troops in North America."

[39] These various measures and proceedings are amply detailed in Bancroft's "History of the United States." His seventh and succeeding volumes are devoted to a History of the War of Independence.

[40] See Richard Frothingham's "History of the Siege of Boston, and of the Battles of Lexington, Concord, and Bunker Hill." Boston, 8vo.

[41] From this pardon were imprudently excluded Samuel Adams and

Courts of Judicature were then closed, martial law was proclaimed.

Having received their instructions from those various colonies that had chosen them as delegates, the second Continental Congress now met, to deliberate on a future course of action. When assembled however the members were greatly divided in opinion. The more moderate party hoped by petition and appeal, to avoid an open declaration of war; but the more sagacious judged, that armed resistance to the English King and government was inevitable, were their liberties to be preserved. The delegates had assembled in Philadelphia in the Carpenters' Hall, on the 10th of May. This was the date for the daring capture of Fort Ticonderoga. The first President was Peyton Randolph of Virginia, but on the 24th he was obliged to depart for the legislature of that province. By unanimous resolve, and chiefly through influence of the most determined spirits, John Hancock of Massachusetts succeeded him in office. Much wavering and irresolution governed the proceedings; for while the delegates directed preparations for defence, they would not authorize the several colonies to institute governments of their own. They were alike averse to a surrender of liberty and to a declaration of independence. To this convention, Charles Thompson was appointed Secretary. The second Continental Congress proceeded at first with a reserved caution, and it only demanded a redress of grievances. However, on the 20th of May, the provincial colonists virtually renounced their allegiance to governmental authority.[42] They had also retaliated on England, by strictly prohibiting the supply of any kind of provision to the British fisheries; while this caused such distress to the fishers and people on and off Newfoundland, that several vessels were under a necessity of returning light from that station, to carry back cargoes of provisions from Ireland.[43] On the Saturday of June 3rd, three Committees were appointed: one Committee of five members was formed to draft an address to the King; one Committee of three representatives to draft an address to the people of Great Britain; and a Committee of four members, to draft an address to the people of Ireland. Another object it had also in view, which was to form a Federal Union. However, it assumed practically to be a responsible government; it authorized issuing Bills of Credit, and with a view to eventualities, it took vigorous measures to carry on a war. For the maintenance of an army and for the necessities of an organized Government, money was absolutely required. The New York convention had previously reported

John Hancock, as also their adherents, associates and correspondents. These should be deemed guilty of treason and rebellion, according to its terms, and be treated accordingly.

[42] It was resolved: "That it be recommended to the several Assemblies and Conventions of the United Colonies, where no government sufficient to the exigencies of their affairs hath hitherto been established, to adopt such a government as shall, in the opinions of the representatives of the people, best conduce to the happiness and safety of their consitutents in particular and of America in general.

[43] See the "Annual Register" for

to Congress on this matter, and had suggested three distinct modes for issuing paper money. First, that each Colony might issue for itself, the sum that might be appropriated to it by Congress. Secondly, that the united colonies should issue the whole sum necessary, and that each colony should become bound to sink its proportionate part. Thirdly, that when Congress should issue the whole sum, every colony was bound to discharge its proportion, while the united colonies should be obliged to pay that part, which any single colony might fail to discharge. This latter plan was adopted by the Continental Congress, during the course of the session in 1775. The attention of Congress was also turned towards the financial affairs of the country. There was then little money in their treasury. The patriots had subscribed all and some more than they really could spare. As no other resource was open, Congress at length determined to issue paper money. The most important and difficult obstacle encountered was to place it on a footing, that should command public confidence, and secure it from depreciation. There were thousands of loyalists in every part of the country, who by all means in their power endeavoured to cripple the resources of the growing Republic, and to place all obstacles possible in the way of its final triumph.

Meantime, various partisan attempts were directed by brave individuals on their own responsibility. Among these must be noted General John Sullivan, the son of a Limerick schoolmaster,[44] who had already captured the first fort and the first gun in this revolutionary war, at Newcastle. Soon after the news reached New York, that a skirmish had taken place at Lexington, from which the royal troops retreated to Boston, the people came together by beat of drum, shut up the custom house, and secured arms and ammunition, which were brought from the city to Kingsbridge. A new committee of one hundred members met on the 1st of May, and they resolved in the most explicit manner, to stand or fall with the liberty of the continent.[45] Under the leadership of Ethan Allen[46] and Seth Warner, a secret expedition of Vermont Volunteers—called Green Mountain Boys—marched towards the frontiers of Canada to surprise the strong forts of Ticonderoga and Crown Point. These contained a great quantity of arms and military

the year 1775, Vol. xviii., chap. viii., pp. 130, 131.

[44] He had settled in New Hampshire. His son John was born in 1741, at Berwick, in the district of Maine. Another distinguished brother named James was born in 1744. He was successively judge, attorney-general, and governor of Massachusettes; he was addicted to legal and historical studies, and wrote various works. He became first president of the Massachusetts Historical Society. See Thomas C. Amory's "Military Services and Public Life of Major-General John Sullivan," Boston, 1868, 8vo. Also Michaud's "Biographie Universelle Ancienne et Moderne." Tome xl., p. 428.

[45] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. vii., chap. xxxi., p. 329.

[46] The life and career of the brave Ethan Allen may be found in Jared Sparks' "Library of American Biography." Published in 1836.

stores. Early on the morning of the 10th of May, Allen stole silently upon Ticonderoga, with about eighty men. He suddenly rushed upon the fort, surprising the garrison, and even he roused the British commandant from his bed with a summons to surrender. Thus, with great ease, Ethan Allen captured the fort of Ticonderoga, and he found in it a quantity of valuable munitions. Among his confederates was Henry Knox,[47] who undertook to bring to Cambridge over one hundred cannon which were there, besides a number of swivels, small arms and stores. This great exploit furnished the first Artillery for the United States. After incredible exertions against the difficulties of transit in those days, Henry Knox conveyed all the military stores safely to their destination. To a detachment, commanded by Seth Warner, Crown Point was also surrendered. Another party succeeded in getting possession of Skeenesborough, and in capturing Skeene, a dangerous British Agent.[48] Another of Allen's brave associates was Benedict Arnold, who as captain in the forces then encamped near Boston served him as a volunteer, and also John Brown, who had planned the expedition. Afterwards, Benedict Arnold conducted a party to St. John's, on the Sorel River, where he succeeded in capturing some stores.

Meanwhile, great commotions prevailed in Virginia, where the Assembly had been dissolved by the Governor, the Earl of Dunmore. Whereupon a Provincial Congress had been assembled there in March, and it took measures for embodying the militia. In South Carolina, Lord William Campbell the Governor, as a consequence of popular disturbances, was obliged to retire from Charlestown, and to take refuge on board a British ship of war in the harbour. So early as May 31st, the people of Mecklenburg county in North Carolina adopted in convention a formal Declaration of Independence; but at the time, this movement was deemed to be premature. They pursued methods, however, to raise arms and support forces, as also to train the militia.[49]

A deed of daring—which well deserves to be recorded—was performed by Jeremiah O'Brien,[50] who fought the first battle for American independence on the seas, after the war of the Revolution had actually commenced. This affair occurred in Machias Bay, Maine, on June 12th. Leading his band of brave brothers and some of his neighbours on board a sloop, having only one cannon mounted on it, he attacked the Margaretta, a British armed schooner of 20 guns, while he boarded

[47] He was born of Irish parents in Boston, A.D. 1760, and while a mere youth, he espoused the cause of the colonies with great ardour. Afterwards, he fought as a volunteer at the Battle of Bunker Hill. See "Irish Celts," by a Member of the Michigan Bar.

[48] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. vii., chap. xxxii.

[49] See the "Annual Register" for the year 1776, Vol. xix., History of Europe, chap. ii., pp. 17 to 33.

[50] He and his five brothers were the sons of Maurice, a native of Cork, in Ireland, and who had emigrated in the early part of the eighteenth century. Their father had served as a Volunteer, in the expedition against Louisburg. Afterwards, in 1765, he removed to Machias, in Maine, and there with his six sons he engaged in the lumber business.

the ship and captured the crew.[51] This naval engagement has been characterised as the Lexington of the Seas; for, like that celebrated conflict, it was the rising of the people against a regular force.[52] The armament of the Margaretta was then transferred to the sloop, which was christened the Machias Liberty. The O'Briens took command of her, and captured the Diligence, a British coast-survey vessel, with her tender. Afterwards, the provincial government commissioned Jeremiah as Captain of the Liberty, with his brother William as Lieutenant, and also the Diligence, on which his brother John served as Lieutenant, to intercept supplies on sea intended for the British troops. Jeremiah O'Brien accordingly cruised on the coasts for a year and a half, taking many valuable prizes.[53] The besiegers before Boston were cheered, too, by the successive intelligence, which they received with shouts of rapture, that insurgent patriots had expelled English Governors, and that the Forts on Lake Champlain had been captured by the militia of Vermont.

Early in the month of June, measures were taken by Congress for organizing and paying a continental army. Its members happily chose for his excellent qualifications General George Washington[54] of Virginia, as their Commander-in-Chief.[55] He was then forty-three years of age. Although he well knew the difficulties and responsibili-

[51] Twenty of the crew were killed and wounded, in this hand to hand encounter, and among the latter, Captain Moore fell mortally stricken. The colonists lost four killed and nine wounded. Previous to the engagement, the Captain had threatened to fire on Machias town, unless the inhabitants removed a liberty-pole they had erected, when news reached them regarding the affair at Lexington.

[52] See the account in James Fenimore Cooper's "History of the Navy of the United States," Vol. i. The first edition of this valuable work appeared at Philadelphia in 1839, and the second in 1840. A third appeared at Cooperstown, N. Y., in 1846. The work was also reprinted in London, Paris and Brussels. After the author's death in 1851, a new edition with a continuation from 1851 to 1853 was published during the latter year, in a supplement of 100 pages from Mr. Cooper's MSS., and from other authorities.

[53] His brother John had built a privateer, called the Hannibal, at Newburyport, and of this Jeremiah next assumed command. Shortly afterwards, however, while cruizing off New York, his vessel was chased by two English frigates, and it was captured. For six months, Jeremiah was confined in the Jersey guard-ship. He was then sent to England, and confined in Mill Prison, from which he succeeded in escaping. He died in Machias, Me., October 5th, 1818. His daughter was the mother of John P. Hale, anti-slavery U. S. Senator for N. H. The brother of Jeremiah O'Brien named John, was appointed captain of a privateer, and with this he captured the General Pattison, an English armed vessel, having on board a number of British officers who were returning from New York to England. See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. iv., p. 550.

[54] See Rev. Dr. Aaron Bancroft's "Life of George Washington, Commander-in-Chief of the American Army," published at London, 1808, 8vo.

[55] A valuable historic work, illustrating the events of this important period, is Jared Sparks' "Correspondence of the Revolution." Being letters from Eminent Men to George Washington from the Time of his taking Command of the American Army to the end of his life. 4 vols. Boston, 8vo.

ties of that position, yet he did not hesitate for an instant in accepting them. He refused all pay beyond his personal expenses.[56] Charles Thompson had the signal honour to draft the commission of appointment from Congress. This authorized Washington, on the 16th of June, to assume command over all the forces raised or to be raised by the United Colonies. The wisdom of this choice soon became apparent, since to his other fine moral and intellectual qualifications, Washington united those of courage and penetration, with an indefatigable love of labour and a rare fortitude, which sustained him under all difficulties.[57]

The Americans surrounding Boston on the land side were thus disposed. The right wing under General Thomas was at Roxbury, and it consisted of four thousand Massachusetts troops, including four artillery companies, with field pieces and a heavy cannon. General Greene had command of the Rhode Island forces, near Jamaica Plains. Patterson's regiment was stationed at a breastwork on Prospect Hill, near Charlestown suburb, and a guard was at Lechmere's Point; Stark's regiment was at Medford, and Reid's at Charlestown Neck, with sentinels reaching to Penny Ferry and Bunker Hill. It soon became known to the Americans, that General Gage with the three major-generals had formed a plan for extending the British lines to Charlestown. The enemy had fixed on the night of the 18th of June, to take possession of and to fortify Bunker Hill, as also Dorchester Heights. The patriots were determined to prevent such an attempt, and with that object in view, they resolved to take possession of those vantage grounds. A guard was placed in Charlestown, and the main body pursued their way to Bunker Hill. Here a council was held, in order to select the best place for a fortification.

The English generals had resolved to cross over and seize Charlestown, as also to fortify their forces on that peninsula, where two eminences commanded the town of Boston. The one nearer to Charlestown was known as Breed's Hill, but the other more elevated was called Bunker Hill. It was now determined to anticipate such a movement, and accordingly, American orders were issued, that the latter post should be fortified during the night of the 16th of June. When darkness had set in, a large party of active men, furnished with necessary implements, advanced even to Breed's Hill, on which they constructed a strong redoubt. The proposed lines of fortification having been marked out by Colonel Gridley, the men stacked arms and began to work. It was the hour of midnight, and as they threw off their jackets and grasped the pick, the tread of English sentinels could be heard, and

[56] See Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. vii., chap. xxxvii.

[57] See "Epistles, Domestic, Confidential, and Official, from General Washington, written about the commencement of the American Contest, when he entered on the Command of the Army of the United States." This work was printed at New York, in 1796, and it was reprinted, in London.

the cry of marines on board armed vessels, while proclaiming their safety signal. The words, "All's well," were plainly wafted by night to the colonial ears. The workmen were thus in dangerous proximity to their enemy. If by any accident discovered, defeat and disaster were sure to follow. The American pickets were on the alert however, and they eagerly watched the foe, while their men plied pickaxe and spade. They worked as if their lives depended on the efforts of that night. But, within a few hours they had thrown up a rampart. This was not wholly completed, before an alarm came from the war-ships in Boston Harbour. A discharge from the guns aroused the townsmen from their slumbers, and soon the whole population with the garrison became aware of their situation. Notwithstanding that cannonade, the works were continued until noon; yet, they could only be hastily and imperfectly constructed, especially on the American left wing, where a rail fence, interwoven with newly mown hay, formed but a slight obstacle against an opposing force.

This menacing attitude and position of the provincials could not be permitted however by the English army, unless they were prepared to surrender Boston. Accordingly, the troops were at once assembled. In preparation for a bloody battle, strenuous efforts were made on either side to win success, on the 17th June.[58] Not exceeding in number 1,500 men, under the command of Colonel Prescott, aided by Dr. Joseph Warren[59] and Israel Putnam, the Americans lined their entrenchments. The people of Boston rushed to every height within the city, and gazed with astonishment upon the apparition presented to them on Breed's Hill. The British fleet was making ready, likewise, to take part in that battle. The ships were swarming with men, and their guns were pointed towards the fortified hill.[60] General Gage had given orders to his troops, that they should pass over to Charlestown in boats, the ships of war in the harbour keeping up a cannonade, meanwhile, on the American redoubts. Major-General Sir William Howe, assisted by Brigadier-General Pigot, was in command of about two thousand men and a proportion of field artillery. This force consisted of detachments from the fifth, the thirty-eighth, the

[58] See Lossing's "Pictorial Field Book of the Revolution," Vol. i., chap. xxii.

[59] He was a relative of Sir Peter Warren, who was born at Warrentown, Ireland, in 1703. At an early age he entered the navy, and he became a Commodore in the British Naval Service. He was afterwards a member of Parliament for Westminster. He died in 1752. His relative, Dr. Warren, served as a volunteer under Colonel Prescott, at Bunker Hill, although holding a commission as Major-General. See "Irish Celts," by a Member of the Michigan Bar.

[60] The Somerset, of 68 guns and 520 men, lay at the ferry, and was engaged during that day. The Cerberus, 36 guns, and several floating batteries, were within gunshot of the works; the Glasgow, 24 guns, and 130 men, was near Craigie's Bridge; the Lively, 20 guns, and 130 men, lay opposite the present Navy Yard; while the Falcon and the Symmetry, transports, 18 nine-pounders, lay off Maulton's point.

forty-third and the fifty-second infantry regiments, with ten companies of grenadiers and ten of light infantry. But, Howe still demanded reinforcements;[61] and accordingly, the forty-seventh regiment and a battalion of marines, with several companies more of light infantry and of grenadiers, were despatched to him. This contingent raised his force to over three thousand well-disciplined and veteran troops.

Order was next given to advance and storm the rebel breast-works, after half-past two o'clock. The British army moved onwards in two columns. With steady step, and haughty, determined bearing, the grenadiers advanced.[62] Up the slopes of the hill their dense and serried columns came. Howe ordered one wing to burst upon Colonel John Stark, who commanded at the rail-fence, and whose two New Hampshire regiments reached the ground just before the battle commenced.[63]

[61] See Charles Mackay's "History of the United States," Vol. i., Book ii., chap. vi., p. 255.

[62] A vivid and an accurate description of this battle is given by the American writer, James Fenimore Cooper, in his very interesting historic novel, "Lionel Lincoln."

[63] There were many composed of Irishmen born or Irish-Americans Many had served previously in the French and Indian wars. In the School Histories of the United States, Patrick Henry is the only prominent one mentioned as bearing the Christian name so peculiar to Ireland, and as taking an active part in the Revolution. However, from various records and other sources, Thomas Hamilton Murray, editor of the *Pawtucket Tribune*, R.I., and General Secretary of the Irish-American Historical Society, has collected a list of nearly 250 Patricks who served in the Continental Army, in different capacities, but for the most part as officers or private soldiers. We here present the alphabetical order of their family names, which immediately point to an Irish origin. Allison, Allen, Anally, Aserman, Baity, Bennett, Black, Bolden, Boyle, Bradshaw, Brady, Brezland, Brown, Buchanan, Burns, Burnett, Burt, Butler, Bryan, Calhoun, Callaghan, Campbell, Capron, Carr, Carroll, Caton, Cavenagh, Clark, Cogan, Colbert, Coleman, Collins, Conely, Connell, Connelly, Connor, Conner, Conway, Corbitt, Corcoran, Coursey, Crawford, Cronan, Cronin, Cronkite, Cross, Cunningham, Curren, Darkin, Daily, Davis, Deady, Deamell, Dempsey, Dennis, Dirking, Diver, Dixon, Donnelly, Donohoe, Dorothy, Downey, Doyle, Duffy, Dungan, Dunlevy, Durgin, Dunphy, Duyer, Fagge, Farroll, Fennell, Finnagin, Fitzpatrick, Flemming, Flynn, Fotterel, Fox, Foy, Fullerton, Gallagher, Gault, Glenn, Gibbons, Grafft, Graham, Green, Griffin, Hackett, Hackmet, Hagerty, Hamilton, Hand, Hanlin, Hannington, Harrington, Harrison, Hart, Hartney, Henderson, Hennig, Heron, Hogan, Hughes, Hynes, Johnson, Joyce, Kane, Kelly, Kennedy, Kenny, Killey, Kinelty, King, Kirby, Kirken, Laferty, Lamb, Leader, Leland, Lemon, Leonard, Lilless, Limerick, Lockey, Lynch, Lyons, Lynn, Mabie, Magan, Mahoney, Malone, Maroney, Marr, Martin, Mullen, Mulvany, Murdaugh, Murphy, Monow, Mooney, Moore, Murray, McAnally, McAnary, McAnarmey, McCaffrey, McCann, McCasline, McCline, McConnally, McCord, McCormick, McCue, McCullen, McDermott, McDonald, McFall, McGalls, McGee, McGlachlin, McGonaghy, McGonigle, McGraff, McGraw, McGuan, McGuire, McHolland, McInnis, McIvory, McKeen, McKeehan, McKinney, McKown, McLane, McLaughlin, McManus, McMitchell, McMurphy, McNamara, McNulty, Neall, Nevin, Newgent, Newlin, Norton, Nugent, O'Brian, O'Brien, O'Bryan, O'Donaghy, O'Fling, O'Foy, O'Hara, O'Lean, Phelan, Preston, Quinn, Raden, Reid, Reilly, Richards, Riley, Roach, Roberts, Rock, Roddy, Rodgers, Rogers, Rooney, Rourk, Roy, Ryan, Scandalin,

General Pigot set over the other wing was directed to storm the redoubt. At a signal given, the British battery upon Copp's Hill—from which Generals Burgoyne and Clinton watched every movement—and the guns belonging to the men-of-war in the harbour opened fire. These poured a fearful storm of round-shot upon the redoubt. At the same time, a furious cannonade was opened on the rebel lines at Roxbury, to prevent reinforcements from crossing the Neck, leading to the American lines. Gridley and Callender endeavoured to return the fire from a few field-pieces, but it was too feeble to be effective. The latter left his post and went to Bunker Hill, in the rear of Breed's Hill. However, Putnam ordered him back. This order he disobeyed, when his men left, refusing to fight longer under him. At this juncture, Captain Walker with fifty volunteers had marched towards Charlestown. The Americans received orders from Prescott to reserve their fire, until the British had advanced quite near their earth-works. With steady and slow movement, but firing as they advanced, the soldiers at length reached the prescribed distance, while they halted occasionally on the march, to permit their artillery to play on the redoubts. Just as they were beginning to think that these should fall an easy prey, and when within eight or ten rods of them, waving his sword above his head, and jumping upon the platform, Prescott shouted the word "Fire!" At that instant, the flame flashed from rifles and muskets along the breast-works, when a rattling volley swept through the foremost British ranks. Instantly, the Americans reloaded, and another volley followed in quick succession. As the smoke cleared away, broken and repulsed the soldiers were seen fleeing down the hill. Behind them lay their dead and wounded in whole platoons. The defenders at the slight rail fence, commanded by Stark and Knowlton, received General Howe's column in like manner with a reserved and murderous fire, which drove it back in confusion. The rebels were eager to follow the fugitives, but their officers restrained them, deeming it more prudent to allow the enemy to be the attacking party. Reinforcements for the rebels were unable, nevertheless, to cross on account of the constant fire from those war-ships in the harbour. With some difficulty, the British Generals Howe and Pigot rallied their men, for a renewal of the onset; but, an interval of about fifteen minutes elapsed, before their ranks were fully formed.[64]

With evident reluctance, the soldiers advanced firing as before. However, Prescott, who had cheered his men behind the breast-works, again directed them to reserve their fire, until the enemy had come within five or six rods of their lines. While the British officers were

Scullion, Shannon, Shea, Shehen, Shockey, Shockney, Shoughness, Silvers, Simms, Smith, Snow, Sullivan, Tague, Thomas, Thornton, Tobyne, Tool, Tracey, Tracy, Wrenn, Walden, Walker, Ward, Weldon, Welsh, Wright.

[64] The "History of the Siege of Boston," by Richard Frothingham, jun., a work abounding with facts as to persons and events, gives an interesting account of the battle of Bunker's Hill.

seen exposing themselves fearlessly, remonstrating, threatening and even striking their soldiers to urge them onwards, the Americans were prepared to receive them, with even a more deadly fire than before. Nevertheless, the British speedily advanced to make their second attack. Their artillery thundered from the shipping, their whole fire being now concentrated, but chiefly on the redoubt. Moreover, some of the guns had been moved from Copp's Hill to within a hundred yards of the rail-fence. Those were now pouring a destructive fire upon Stark and his devoted men. Rushing forward to the assault a second time, the British were again received with a continuous stream of fire, which they could not stand. Dead and wounded covered the ground in front of the breastworks, both at the chief redoubt and at the rail-fence. Some of the companies lost three-fourths and several nine-tenths of their men. So many of his officers had been killed or wounded, that for some seconds, Howe was almost left alone with his subalterns endeavouring to repair the rout.[65]

Meanwhile, General Clinton watched the battle from Copp's Hill, and seeing the regiments retreat in confusion to the beach, he crossed over to rally them for a renewal of the battle. He succeeded by getting them into line for a third advance, while four hundred marines were landed from the ships to assist them. Moreover, General Gage had caused the wooden houses in Charlestown to be set on fire, to cover their approach; but, this barbarous act had no appreciable effect on the result. Greatly discouraged and after a long delay, the British once more advanced, and the Americans at short range again resolved to deliver their fire with deadly effect. Not a sound was now heard in the redoubt save the crashing of the balls, which fell among and around the occupants. The British guns were brought to bear in such a manner, as to rake the insides of their breast-works from one end to the other. The defenders were then obliged to crowd within their fort for greater protection. Still calm and collected, the rebels waited for the signal to fire their retreating volleys. They had rammed home the last cartridge, and they were determined to make their last discharge tell on the solid ranks of the English. Having disencumbered themselves from their knapsacks, the soldiers then advanced with fixed bayonets and in column. A few feet of earth separated the combatants, when the American order to fire was again given. At this critical moment, when disorder began to manifest itself, even for a third time in the ranks of their enemies, ammunition failed the Americans. The British grenadiers then discovered their opportunity, and throwing off their knapsacks, and some even their coats, to be more light for action, they rushed forward with the bayonet.[66] Hitherto, the Americans had lost very few of their men.

[65] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. vii., chap. xxxix., pp. 416 to 426.

[66] See Washington Irving's "Life of George Washington," Vol. i., chap. xli.

With clubbed muskets the brave defenders endeavoured, but in vain, to hold the breastworks against a greatly superior and regular force. It being impossible to maintain their position any longer, and a heavy artillery fire being directed against their rear, Colonel Prescott gave orders to retreat over Charlestown Neck. The British were still assailed with a shower of stones, hurled by those brave men, who before their enforced retreat continued to dispute every inch of ground. Just at this moment, Major Pitcairn, the butcher of Lexington, jumped upon the parapet. While in the act of shouting to encourage his men, he was tumbled headlong below, and mortally wounded. On three sides did the British attack the retreating Americans with the bayonet. Hand to hand, these courageously struggled. At last, Prescott ordered them to fall back on the camp at Cambridge, when sullenly and stubbornly they moved backwards. In this exposed and defenceless position, their loss was chiefly experienced.[67] The last man to step from the works was Dr. Warren, and he was but a short distance from the redoubt. At that moment, he was shot dead and through the heart. Colonel Stark and his command the New Hampshire men had bravely contested the ground, at its least defensible part, where a slight construction of fence rails and hay was the only protection.[68] With Read and Knowlton to second him, Stark still maintained his position at the rail-fence, despite all the efforts of the British to dislodge him. He fought gallantly, animating his men and cheering them on, until reinforcements arrived; and then, he drove back charge upon charge, repulsing every attack. This resolute resistance was the chief means afforded, for saving the main body from being cut to pieces. His services were most valuable in such an extremity, while these were frankly and gratefully acknowledged by the general in command. Thus, for want of ammunition, the Americans were forced to retreat, but they had left on the hill as many dead and wounded of the enemy as they themselves numbered in the beginning of the battle. The British loss was enormous for the number engaged, no less than 1,054 lying on the field in killed and wounded, while the Colonist loss was less than half that number, in killed,[69] wounded and prisoners. That night, the Americans lay on their arms, under the command of Putnam, and on Prospect Hill. The British occupied Bunker Hill,[70] which gave name to this remarkable engagement, although in reality it was fought on Breed's Hill.

The besieging army was afterwards placed under the provisional

[67] Major Moore, an Irishman, was killed within the redoubt, at this time.

[68] Colonel Thomas McLaughlin, an Irishman, was one of Stark's riflemen at Bunker Hill. He also fought at Bennington, and he was in several other engagements.

[69] Major Andrew McClary, a brave Irish officer, was killed at Bunker Hill. He fell while crossing the Neck. He was a man of massive proportions, and a conspicuous mark for the enemies' bullets.

[70] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. vii., chap. xl., pp. 428 to 435.

command of Brigadier-General John Sullivan.[71] On the very day of the battle fought at Bunker's Hill, the American Congress had elected four Major-Generals, viz., Artemus Ward,[72] of Massachusetts, Charles Lee,[73] Philip Schuyler,[74] and Israel Putnam,[75] of Connecticut. Next to these came Horatio Gates as Adjutant-General, with the rank of Brigadier. However, better selections might have been made of persons in high command, nor was any one of the foregoing worthy to succeed the Commander-in-Chief. Eight Brigadier Generals were also appointed, viz., Seth Pomeroy,[76] Richard Montgomery,[77] David Wooster,[78] William Heath,[79] Joseph Spencer,[80] John Thomas,[81] John Sullivan,[82] and Nathaniel Greene.[83] All of the foregoing, save Montgomery, were from New England.[84] The organization of an army first of all engaged Washington's attention.[85] He set out by way of New York, so soon as he could make the necessary arrangements, and he reached the camp at Cambridge, near Boston, on the 2nd of July. The armed patriots were filled with hope and joy as they saw, with unspeakable pleasure, General Washington ride from his quarters at Cambridge. Under an elm tree on the common, July 3rd, he assumed command of their army.[86] No man had a finer

[71] He was born of Irish parents in 1740, at Somersworth, New Hampshire, and at first he practised law. He was elected a delegate to represent that Province in the first Continental Congress, at Philadelphia, A.D. 1774, and he was also returned to the second Congress, held in May, 1775. See "The Encyclopædia Americana," Vol. iv., p. 621.

[72] At this time he was in ill health, but devoted to his country's service.

[73] He was the son of an English officer, but he had little skill in war, while he was afterwards found to be unfoithful to his high trust.

[74] He was patriotic, but an incompetent general.

[75] His fame rested chiefly on his undoubted personal bravery.

[76] A gunsmith of Northampton, seventy years of age, and the veteran of two wars. However, before receiving his commission, he retired from the camp, distrusting his own capacity.

[77] An Irishman by birth and of New York, the seventh from Washington in rank, but next to him in merit.

[78] From Connecticut, and then sixty-five years old.

[79] A patriot farmer of Roxbury, Massachusetts.

[80] From Connecticut, past sixty years of age and inexperienced in war.

[81] He was a physician of Kingstown, Massachusetts, and the best general officer of that colony.

[82] He was impulsive, "not free from defects and foibles; tinctured with vanity and eager to be popular; enterprising, spirited and able."

[83] From Rhode Island, and "who, after Washington, had no superior in natural resources, unless it were Montgomery."

[84] See George Bancroft, who has given their respective estimates of character, as abridged in our previous notes. See "History of the United States," Vol. viii., chap. xli., pp. 26 to 35.

[85] Born in Ireland, Colonel John FitzGerald was the beloved and efficient aid of Washington. He was present in all those battles in which the Commander-in-Chief was engaged. As army-surgeon, James McHenry, born in Ireland, Nov. 16th 1753, accompanied Washington to Cambridge. Afterwards he was made prisoner at Fort Washington, but exchanged in the spring of 1778. He was in the Maryland Senate 1781—1786. In 1783 he was appointed to Congress. He held office as Secretary of War in Washington's Cabinet. He died at Baltimore in 1816.

[86] See George Bancroft's "History

appearance or greater dignity of presence than Washington. He was tall, graceful, handsome, athletic, and muscular. His calm, resolute and commanding aspect filled the hearts of the soldiers with confidence. After his appointment, he lost no time in hastening to Boston, where he found the besiegers in a state of sad disorder—destitute of gunpowder, bayonets, engineers and artillerymen. He immediately devised plans to supply these deficiencies, and to reduce such chaos into order,[87] while measures were taken for the future course of operations.[88]

He formed the army into three divisions, each division consisting of two brigades, and each brigade of six regiments. He regulated the pay of the troops, and he formed corps of riflemen.[89] These soon became the terror of sailors and marines on board the enemy's ships. In every direction, to purchase or procure gunpowder, emissaries were sent. While Boston was beleaguered by a great number of irregular bands, frequent skirmishes took place between the Americans and the English both on sea and on land. The results were generally such as to afford satisfaction to the besiegers, and their frequent encounters habituated them to the vicissitudes of war.[90] Meanwhile, Washington was busily engaged in the effort to bring the raw levies into some condition of exercise and discipline. He had only three well-drilled Rhode Island Regiments, serving under General Nathaniel Greene. The others were volunteers on short service, and many were discontented with continuous absence from their homes. His men were ill-equipped and not very amenable to military subordination.[91]

of the United States," Vol. viii., chap. xlii., p. 40.

[87] See Rev. Dr. Aaron Bancroft's "Life of George Washington, with Account of the Settlements and General History of the North American Colonies."

[88] See Guizot's "Vie, Correspondence, et Ecrits de Washington." Tome i., chap. vi. This valuable work appeared at Paris in 1840, but, it had been previously published in the United States.

[89] An interesting momento of the great patriot, "Washington's Public Accounts during the War, with other Documents and Facsimiles, with Portrait," was published at Washington, 1838, folio.

[90] Vast desertions of the British soldiers took place in Boston, towards the close of this year, while three officers of Lord Perry's regiment were among the mutinous.

[91] See Cyrus Edmund's "Life and Times of General Washington," Vol. i., 12mo. Immediately after the battle of Bunker Hill every able-bodied man among those emigrants from the north of Ireland entered the American Army, and from their continuous service and discipline, they became the main stay of the organization until the end of that war. Those Irishmen who had settled in Pennsylvania turned out chiefly under the command of Col. Edward Hand and Col. William Irving. They were both Irishmen and had served as surgeons in the British Service; the first in the army, and the latter in the navy. Hand was certainly of Catholic parents from the north of Ireland, and his command, composed of Presbyterians, joined the army before Boston shortly after Washington took command. But the arrival of Hand's troops, it is claimed, had been preceded a few days by a body of Catholic Irishmen from Maryland and lower Pennsylvania, under the command of Colonel Stephen Moylan, who was a personal friend of Washington, an aide on his staff, and an active officer throughout the war. Moylan was a brother to the Catholic Bishop

During this summer, Lord Dunmore, the royal governor of Virginia, was driven out from Williamsburg, then the capital of that colony. He fled on board a British man-of-war. On the 10th of July, the royal government in Virginia ceased. Popular delegates then supplied the place of the Assembly. Those soon raised and embodied an armed force, and took measures for putting the colony in a state of defence. The headstrong passions of Lord Dunmore led him to the commission of further follies. He commenced a predatory war along the coasts, and he proclaimed martial law. He afterwards collected ships and a force of men; he made descents along the coasts; and in January 1776, he burned the town of Norfolk, the largest and richest in Virginia. This experience taught Congress the necessity for having a marine equipment to defend a maritime country, and accordingly, measures were taken to have that want supplied.

As the summer and autumn passed on, the authority of the royal governors was nearly everywhere superseded, while Provincial Assemblies and Congresses or Committees of safety assumed the direction of affairs. North and South Carolina revolted, while Georgia soon followed. About this time likewise, Benjamin Franklin had returned to America, revolving his old scheme for a separate form of home representation and of government, to regulate the internal affairs of each province while a federal union was intended for all questions of general policy and procedure. He also designed including Canada and Ireland as affiliated provinces, believing that in both countries hostility to England's pretensions might be excited. However, this broad view of their eminent statesman was little understood, or deemed to be impracticable by the Americans. Meanwhile, a very excited state of feeling had grown up in Ireland, as a consequence of the Americans resorting to arms. Franklin was of opinion, at the time, that such a ferment should end in revolt. The Parliament of Ireland, and especially the people of Dublin, had began to embarrass government with opposition and remonstrance. The metropolitan guild of merchants[92] complimented those Peers, who voted in support of the Constitution, and who protested against the American restraining Bills, in opposition to a foolish and wicked administration. The Dissenters were active and violent;[93] but, no part of the Irish people sympathised more earnestly with the revolted Colonists than did the disfranchised Catholics, who were not then a power in the nation, although they were a vast majority of the inhabitants. The Sheriffs and Common Council of Dublin were desirous of imitating the city of London, by transmitting petitions against the measures relating to America; but they were restrained by the Lord

of Cork, Ireland, who was a devoted friend to the American cause. See Address of Dr. Thomas Addis Emmet before the American Irish Historical Society, New York, Jan. 19, 1899.

[92] In July they applauded the Earl of Effingham for "refusing to draw his sword against the lives and liberties of his fellow-subjects in America."

[93] See "The Annual Register" for the year 1776, p. 43. Their address was presented under the corporation seal, and it was published with the several answers of each peer.

Mayor and Aldermen.[94] Indignant at this impediment, they declared their anxiety to preserve their names from the odium which all posterity must attach to those who promoted the acts carrying on in America, as also their grief for the injured inhabitants of that continent, and for their own brave countrymen, sent on the unnatural errand of slaughtering their fellow-subjects. They resolved, moreover, that whoever refused his consent to a dutiful petition tending to undeceive the King, and by which the effusion of one drop of subject blood might be prevented, was not a friend of the constitution.[95]

On Friday, July 21st 1775, an address to the Inhabitants of Great Britain, prepared in accordance with the resolution of Congress, was brought in, and after some discussion, an order was passed that it do lie on the table. Another address was drafted and prepared for circulation among the Irish people. A petition was also engrossed for presentation to the King. While stating their grievances, and the necessity for taking up arms, Congress proclaimed, that they desired not to disturb the union between the colonies and the mother country, but rather to restore it. On the 28th day of July, the Irish Address was read by paragraphs and agreed to, while it was drafted with a force and couched in a dignity of language, calculated to chain the sympathies, and to arouse the indignation of a freedom-loving people. All these writings were drawn up in a very masterly manner; while in respect to art, address and execution, they are equal to any public declarations made by any powers or upon the greatest occasions.[96]

On the first day of August, the Congress adjourned for five weeks, leaving the insurgent country without a visible government, and no representative of its unity but Washington and the army. The council deliberations of Congress had been held with closed doors; divisions of opinion and hesitation were known to prevail among the members; but, the influence of a majority among the more clear-sighted began to turn the scale in favour of independence. The King and his ministers had great hopes of inducing Catherine, Empress of Russia, to form an alliance with England, and to hire twenty thousand of her troops for the suppression of the colonial insurgents.[97] But, this negociation utterly failed, and Catherine soon disabused the negociators of any idea that she could dishonourably traffic in the blood of her subjects. The next application was made to the smaller and more greedy princes of Germany, who on the failure of that great speculation had the British exchequer at their mercy.[98] Reinforements for America were now required; and accor-

[94] See Gibbon's posthumous Works, Vol. i., p. 496.

[95] On the 28th of August, 1775. See John Adolphus' "History of England from the Accession of George the Third, to the conclusion of Peace in the year One Thousand Seven hundred and Eighty-three," Vol. ii., chap. xxviii. p. 346.

[96] See the "Annual Register" for the year 1775, Vol xviii., History of Europe, chap. viii., p. 140.

[97] See John Adolphus' "History of England from the Accession of King George the Third," &c., Vol. ii., chap. xxvii., p. 344.

[98] About 17,000 German Mercenaries were hired for the purpose of

dingly, five regiments of infantry with field pieces and ammunition were ordered to be in readiness to sail from Cork early in December. This force soon afterwards was made equal to seven regiments. Ten thousand stand of arms was supplied to arm the loyalists in America, and who now were represented, as ready to rally round the royal standard. Towards the close of October Parliament opened, when the cabinet was able to carry out measures of coercion despite every effort of the opposition. In November, it was sought to send four thousand troops on the Irish establishment to America, and the consent of the Irish House of Commons was requested to favour such a measure, it being proposed that four thousand of the hired German Protestants should replace them. Notwithstanding the vehement opposition of Ponsonby, Fitzgibbon, Newenham, Ogle and Hussey Burgh, in that placeman assembly, the Irish troops were voted by 121 against 76, although the resolution to replace them by foreign Protestants was negatived by 106 against 68.

Before Congress had organized an army, or appointed a single military officer, early in the month of June, Colonel Arnold urged upon the American delegates the desirability of engaging in offensive war by the invasion of Canada. He offered with a force of 2,000 men to reduce that whole province. This was deemed too serious a step for adoption at first, but as the increasing fervour of the public mind progressed, and as events determined, the proposition was at length received with favour. Besides, it was hoped, that the people of Canada would gladly embrace an opportunity to throw off the English yolk. About the months of July and August, General Philip Schuyler was at Albany endeavouring to effect a treaty with the Indians, who were otherwise solicited by the British to arm on their side. The latter appeal proved most successful, and great efforts were made, likewise, to attach the Canadians to the English service, yet with most divided results. Having selected another force, General Schuyler was despatched by General Washington, and with the approbation of Congress, to create a diversion by penetrating into Canada. He issued an address to the people offering the restoration of their rights and freedom of worship. However, he fell sick on the way,[99] and the duty devolved on the leader second in command.[100] This Irish Major-General Richard Montgo-

carrying on the war, and as most of these were obtained from the Prince of Hesse Cassel, it so happened, all belonging to that foreign contingent went by the general name of Hessians during the Revolutionary war. See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. viii., chap. lvii., p. 250 to 271.

[99] Brigadier General William Maxwell was an Irishman, who joined the army at the commencement of the war. He was appointed Colonel in 1776, and he served on Lake Champlain under General Schuyler. He was appointed Brigadier in same year; later he was at Trenton, Brandywine, Germantown, and with the army at Valley Forge. He was in active pursuit of Clinton across New Jersey, and he sustained an important part in the battle of Monmouth. Washington said of him, "I know him to be an honest man, a warm friend to his country, and firmly attached to its interests."

[100] See William Edward Hartpole Lecky's "History of England in the

mery[101] was destined to direct an expedition, requiring exercise of the highest courage and of the most consummate judgment. A body of troops from New York and New England was sent forward to Ticonderoga. There Montgomery arrived on the 17th August.[102] He opened a brilliant and most successful campaign, but with a totally insufficient force of 1,000 men, and under astonishing difficulties.[103] The English garrison at Quebec was then very weak, nor was there a sufficient number of troops available to guard every part of an exposed frontier. At this time, Sir Guy Carleton[104] was in command of the British forces in Canada, and he endeavoured by every means to induce the Canadians to take up arms against the Americans; but, he sought in vain the co-operation of Brand, the Catholic Bishop of Quebec, to publish a *mandement* to be read from the pulpit by the curates during Divine service.[105] However, some of the clergy and the landholders were ready to second Carleton's views.

The Americans effected a landing with great difficulty at St. John's and Chambly on the River Sorel, the outlet of Lake Champlain, early in

Eighteenth Century," Vol. iii., chap. xii., p. 436.

[101] He was born near Raphoe, in the county of Donegal, on the 2nd of December 1736. At an early age, he entered the British service, and his first campaign was in America. His military qualities and conspicuous bravery had him soon promoted to the rank of Lieutenant. However, after his return to Ireland, thinking himself over-reached and treated with injustice, selling his commission in disgust, he emigrated to New York. In 1773 he renewed a former acquaintance with the family of Robert R. Livingstone and married his daughter. He then settled down to a peaceful life; but, in April 1775, he was selected as a delegate to the first provincial convention in New York.

[102] When the war broke out, it found Montgomery ready to take up arms with Washington in defence of American independence. That general knowing Montgomery to be a good soldier, and a staunch rebel, immediately promoted him to the rank of Brigadier-General. At this time, Montgomery was married and living on his farm in Rhinebeck, in Duchess Co., N. Y. The promotion was entirely unsolicited by him, but he would not refuse it. In writing to a friend he said: "The Congress having done me the honour of electing me a Brigadier-General in their service is an event which must put an end for a while, perhaps for ever, to the quiet scene of life I had prescribed for myself; for though entirely unexpected and undesired by me, the will of an oppressed people must be obeyed." These were noble sentiments, and in a few months he sealed them with his blood. His last words to his wife—a daughter of Judge Livingstone—when leaving her to join the army were: "You shall never have cause to blush for your Montgomery."

[103] See John Armstrong's "Life of Montgomery." Boston, 1834, 8vo.

[104] He was born in Strabane, Ireland, on the 3rd of September 1724. He was appointed Governor of New York in 1772, and he commanded the invading army of New York State, A.D. 1776. He was created Lord Dorchester, after returning to England in 1783. See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. i., p. 525.

[105] "He also urged the prelate to exhort the people to take up arms against the colonists. But the consistent bishop refused to exert his influence in such a cause, and plainly told Carleton that such conduct would be unworthy of a faithful pastor, and derogatory to the Canons of the Romish Church."—Benson J. Lossing's "Pictorial Field Book of the Revolution," Vol. i., chap. vii., p. 158.

the month of September. The fortifications there were found to be much stronger than had been anticipated. Wherefore, having summoned a council of war, it was resolved to retreat on Isle Aux Noix, twelve miles south from St. John's, and to throw a boom across the river channel. General Montgomery returned after a few days, and opened a battery against St. John's; but, being deficient in ammunition he failed, and then proceeded to reduce Fort Chambly about six miles distant. There he obtained six tons of gunpowder. This enabled him to prosecute the siege. Colonel Warner with 300 Green Mountain Boys prevented the Governor of Canada from crossing the St. Lawrence. When this hope of relief failed, Major Preston the commanding officer surrendered, having received honourable terms of capitulation. About 500 regular troops and 100 Canadians became prisoners, while 39 pieces of cannon—many of them brass field pieces—seven mortars, two howitzers and 800 stand of arms were captured.[106]

Immediately afterwards, Montgomery marched towards Montreal, whence Sir Guy Carleton was conveyed in a boat with muffled paddles to the Three Rivers. Subsequently, he reached Quebec. General Prescot with several officers and about 120 privates went on board the vessels, thus hoping to escape down the river, but they were prevented, and on terms of capitulation their surrender was accepted. Afterwards, the American General captured Montreal, and then he took possession of eleven vessels on the river, with all the British shipping along the upper St. Lawrence.[107] A seasonable store of ammunition, provisions and military implements fell into the hands of the captors. Montreal surrendered at discretion, and as it contained many of those articles which by resolution of Congress could not be imported into the colonies, so a plentiful supply of clothing was obtained by the Americans. So far, every enterprise had been successful. Montgomery's efforts were next directed against Quebec, then a strongly fortified city on the lower St. Lawrence. Having left some soldiers in Montreal, where he had already ingratiated himself with the Canadians of French extraction, he sent other detachments into different parts of the province. Owing to the address of the General and the goodness of the man, he contrived to keep up the spirits and discipline of soldiers among his irregular bands, under astonishing difficulty of means and position. His great desire was to gain the Canadians over to the American cause; but unfortunately for him, an outburst of bigotry in New York, when the Quebec Act became law in 1774, and certain insulting resolutions of the Continental Congress—as impolitic as they were unjust—caused a great part of the

[106] Colonel Allen, who had been detached on a tour with 86 men, was made prisoner near Montreal, while the siege was proceeding, and contrary to the terms of his surrender, he was loaded with irons, and sent as a captive to England. He afterwards published an interesting narrative of the hardships and persecutions he endured in prison, until he was exchanged at New York in May 1778.

[107] See Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. viii., chap. lii., pp. 176 to 188. Ninth Edition. Boston, 1874.

people there to regard the invaders and their objects with great distrust. Thus, his efforts and influence to gain over the natives proved abortive, and owing mainly to the British governmental tolerance towards their Catholic subjects in Canada, as guaranteed to them by treaty.[108]

Meantime, an expeditionary force of 1,000 men had been drawn from the camp at Cambridge and placed under the command of Benedict Arnold to co-operate in the enterprize, and this had been detached against Lower Canada. He marched from Boston and ascended the Kennebec River in boats, and then struck across the wilderness to the head waters of the Chaudiere River. Several of his men succumbed to the hardships of this journey and many deserted their leader.[109] The remainder floated down the Chaudiere to the St. Lawrence, and Arnold reached Point Levi opposite to Quebec, in the beginning of November. Little more than half of his detachment had accompanied him to this destination. However, had not the river intervened, and some time being required to provide canoes, the capital of Canada might have fallen an easy prey to the Americans, in the first moments of panic and surprise.[110] They crossed over to the heights of Abraham, and made a reconnaisance around the suburbs of St. Roch, beyond the walls. Not able to attempt the city, Arnold moved his forces up to Point aux Trembles, thus interposing between Quebec and Montreal. That place he reached on the 19th of November,[111] and there he waited the orders of Montgomery. A manifesto signed by Washington had been sent from Cambridge, and it was largely circulated among the Canadians, in which invitations to range themselves under the standard of liberty were given, while it was proclaimed, that the Americans came not to plunder but to protect them. Meantime, Sir Guy Carleton had been absent from Quebec when Arnold arrived, while such was the astonishment and panic occasioned by his appearance, that the garrison feared the result of his approach. But, Arnold had no artillery. After a few days' delay, he again crossed the river, when already solid preparations for the defence of Quebec had been made. A regiment of Canadians in the pay of Congress was now organized by their commandant James Livingston, a native of New York, but who had long resided in Canada, and who had great influence there. Other sympathising residents had furnished money for support of the American troops. To attempt the siege of Quebec in conjunction with

[108] See John Gilmary Shea's "Life and Times of the Most Rev. John Carroll," chap. iii., iv., pp. 131 to 145.

[109] Among his expeditionaries was Aaron Burr, afterwards Vice-President of the United States, and then only about twenty years of age. See John Joseph Henry's "Accurate and Interesting Account of the Hardships and Sufferings of that Band of Heroes who traversed the Wilderness in the Campaign against Quebec in 1775." Lancaster, 1812, 8vo.

[110] See Lord Mahon's "History of England from the Peace of Utrecht," Vol. vi., chap. liii., p. 117, and Louis P. Turcotte's "Invasion du Canada et Siege de Quebec en 1775-76." Quebec, 1876, 8vo.

[111] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. viii., chap. liii., pp. 190 to 191. Also the work of Louis P. Turcotte.

his commander, Colonel Arnold had then collected his troops at Point aux Trembles.

There he was met by General Montgomery, who now assumed command of their united force, which did not greatly exceed 1,000 men. On the 5th of December, their small detachments appeared before Quebec. Soon afterwards, the Americans to the number of 400 occupied the large Hôpital General and Convent of the nuns in the suburb of St. Roch, to the great inconvenience of the *Religieuses;* there likewise General Montgomery and Colonel Arnold visited the place, to make observations for planting a battery before St. John's Gate, and for such purpose they ascended into the belfry.[112] On the 10th, and at an early hour, the Americans opened fire before the fortifications, and the English guns returned it. A very ineffective battery of six pieces was set up, when General Montgomery vainly tried to intimidate the Governor, by exaggerating the number of his troops, and their dispositions for attack.[113]

The Canadian winter had now set in with its usual rigour; the period for which the American soldiers were obliged to serve was fast drawing to a close; their specie was becoming deficient, and the American Colonial money was not taken; moreover, on the other hand, the garrison of Quebec had been well reinforced and the defences strengthened; it was well supplied with food and munition; while the numerical force of the besieged greatly exceeded that of the besiegers. Under such circumstances Montgomery concluded, that the siege must either be raised, or the place should be attempted by storm—the latter an exceedingly perilous enterprise.[114] He had only a few guns and mortars to bombard the fortifications, and on trial, these were found to be of too small a calibre for that purpose. He then called a council of war, when it was determined to carry the town by assault.

While the Catholic Clergy of that Province, enjoying certain chartered privileges for their religion, were opposed to the invasion, the people at large were generally on Montgomery's side. He hoped for co-operation from the French inhabitants, had his first attack proved successful; since the still stronger and almost impregnable fortifications of the upper town had again to be assailed. The advance was made along the river bank through the lower town, where a breastwork had been erected by the British Commandant of the garrison. In a desperate attempt, and with a very inadequate force under cover of a

[112] These particulars—not generally known to historians—are to be found in a contemporaneous Chronicle of the Convent, and written by a nun, who describes what she knew of such incidents. They are inserted in a most interesting and learned, but anonymous work in French, yet compiled by an Irish Sister of that institution. It bears for title:—"Monseigneur de Saint-Vallier et l'Hôpital General de Quebec." Historie du Monastère de Notre-Dame des Anges (Religieuses Hospitalieres de la Misercorde de Jesus) Ordre de Saint-Augustin. Deuxieme Partie, chap. iv., pp. 405 to 408. Quebec, 1882, 8vo.

[113] See Michaud's "Biographie Universelle, Ancienne et Moderne," Tome xxix. Art. Montgomery (Richard) p. 139.

[114] See the "Annual Register" for the year 1776, Vol. xix., History of Europe, chap. i., pp. 1 to 13.

blinding snow storm, he attempted the assault on Quebec. Accordingly, between three and four o'clock on the morning of the 31st December 1775, the troops were put in motion. Then, Montgomery leading the New York men rushed over snow, ice and rocks, until he reached the first barrier, and in an instant the work was carried. The second was just before him, and dimly seen through the faint light, guarded by a row of pallisades. For an instant Montgomery halted; it was while his troops gathered round him for another rush. He pointed with his sword to the pallisades ahead. His eye kindled and his form dilated. "Men of New York," he cried, "you will not fear to follow where your general leads—march on!" Pronouncing these stirring words, he dashed forward, followed by his comrades. He was one of the first to gain the pickets, which he seized with his own hands, and he began pulling them up, his men eagerly imitating that example; while every thing hitherto done promised a speedy and glorious victory. Pressing exultingly on, they had gained a rising ground about thirty yards from the barrier, when suddenly a couple of cannon, which had been masked there, were discharged down the passage. The effect was terrific. The Americans crowded together were mowed down in heaps; the path of that hurricane of balls being as distinctly marked as a windfall in the forest. Being foremost, their leader was one of the first to fall; the two aids at his side followed him so instantaneously, that the bodies of all three rolled over together on the ice, and by that side of the river which flowed near their feet. Almost at the first instant of the second charge Montgomery was killed.[115]

On the opposite side of the city, at a place called Saut-au-Matelot, and nearly simultaneously, another brave effort to carry it by assault had been made by the division destined for that attempt. At first, also, fortune seemed to crown it with success. It failed, however, although desperately directed by Arnold who was severely wounded. His troops forced the English to retreat in the lower part of the city; but General Carleton sending reinforcements from the garrison took the Americans in the rear, and thus placed between two fires, they were obliged to surrender their arms. With the loss of 300 men, killed and wounded, the besiegers were repulsed before the walls of Quebec, and they were obliged to retire, while many of them were made prisoners of War. Their brave General Montgomery fell gloriously on the last day of that

[115] In the course of that day, his body was found half buried in the snow, with a dozen other corpses, and at a short distance from the barrier, through which he desired to enter the city. The soldiers cut off his head, carried it round in triumph, and fixed it on the end of a halbert. The American officers who had been taken prisoners knew not at first what had become of their general; but, seeing his sword in the hands of an English officer they no longer doubted about his death, and they burst into tears. To the credit of the governor, however, he had the body of Montgomery buried with military honours within the city. See F. X. Garneau's "Histoire du Canada," depuis sa Découvert jusq' a nos Jours. Tome iii., Liv. ii., chap. i., p. 5, Ed. of 1882.

year.[116] So passed away from life the spirit of that heroic man, with the love of all who knew him, the grief of the nascent republic, and the eulogies of the world.[117] Even in the British Parliament, his veteran fellow-soldiers in the late war were filled with sorrow, while pronouncing his eulogy. Among others, Edmund Burke contrasted the condition of the eight thousand men—starved, disgraced and shut up in the single town of Boston—with the movements of a hero, who in one campaign had nearly conquered Canada.[118] Six weeks after his death, public services in his honour took place before the American Congress, and to the present day his memory is held in great veneration throughout the United States.[119]

## CHAPTER XII.

**The Siege of Quebec—Contests in the South—Preparations in England to crush the Rebellion—The Siege and Taking of Boston—Arrival of British Troops and Foreign Auxiliaries—Retreat from Quebec—The British Attempt upon New York foiled, and subsequent Failure at Charleston—Congress organizes a Navy—Agitation and Debates before the Declaration of Independence—Names of the Signers.**

DURING the winter of 1775 and the spring of 1776, the defeated Americans persevered in blockading Quebec.[1] The command had now devolved on Schuyler, but practically it passed to Arnold, who, notwithstanding the inconveniences experienced from his severe wound, the rigours of the season, and the trying difficulties of his position, manifested a courage, endurance and fertility of resources deserving the highest commendation.[2]

[116] After the battle, his body was buried near the spot where it fell. Forty years afterwards his remains were disinterred, and conveyed to the city of New York, where they were deposited with august ceremonies near that handsome monument, which Congress had erected to his memory, and in front of St. Paul's church, on Broadway. His name has ever been cherished with peculiar fondness by Irish and Irish-Americans.

[117] See Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. viii., chap. liv., pp. 199 to 212.

[118] To such remarks, in a reluctant eulogy, Lord North replied: "I cannot join in lamenting the death of Montgomery as a public loss. He was brave, he was able, he was humane, he was generous; but still he was only a brave, able, humane and generous rebel. Curse on his virtues, they've undone his country."

[119] By desire of the Continental Congress, an address was drawn up and delivered by William Smith, D.D., Provost of the College and Academy of Philadelphia on February 19th 1776: "An Oration in Memory of General Montgomery and of the Officers and Soldiers who fell with him, December 31st 1775." It is printed in the "Journal of Congress," Vol. i., p. 247.

[1] See "History of the War with America, France, Spain, and Holland, commencing in 1775, and ending in 1783," by John Andrews, LL.D. Vol. i., chap. i. ii. In four volumes. London, 1875, 8vo.

[2] Unfortunately, as shall be seen in the sequel, his early services and promises of being useful to his coun-

At this period, also, the American cause had been rendered popular throughout the nations of Europe; and, when commissions were provisionally offered, numbers of able and zealous officers wished to place themselves under Washington's command.[3] Casimir Pulaski, a brave Pole, volunteered to serve in the American ranks, for which purpose he sailed from France towards the close of 1775.[4] Early in 1776, several of the supernumerary or reformed officers of the Irish Brigades in France resolved on joining the Americans in their contest with Great Britain. Some of these were among the most intelligent and capable leaders in Europe.[5] On the other hand, seven regiments from Ireland were expected to muster at Cape Fear River to join Sir Henry Clinton in January, and to prosecute a war against the South, as an expedition to subdue the Carolinas had been projected.[6] Meantime, Commissioners were chosen by the Continental Congress to seduce the French-Canadians from their allegiance, and to procure their co-operation—or at least to secure their neutrality—during that war. The celebrated Benjamin Franklin, Samuel Chase and Charles Carroll of Carrolton were appointed delegates on the 15th of February. A cousin of the latter, Father John Carroll[7]—afterwards first Catholic Bishop of the United

try were tarnished by his subsequent treason and defection. See Jared Sparks' "Life and Treason of Benedict Arnold," New York, 1860, 8vo.

[3] In reference to the Revolutionary war, the writer of this History has very generally followed the statements of a most judiciously compiled and fairly impartial Irish work, yet by an anonymous author. It is intituled: "The History of the War in America, between Great Britain and her Colonies, from its Commencement to its Conclusion, in 1783. In which its Origin, Progress and Operations are faithfully related, together with Anecdotes and Characters of the different Commanders, and Accounts of such Personages in Congress as have distinguished themselves during the Contest. To which is added a Collection of interesting and authentic Papers, tending to elucidate the History." This work comprising Three Volumes, Octavo, had been written contemporaneously with the incidents related. The writer states—in his Preface to the First Volume—that the documents and materials he used had been taken from the most reliable authors and from the best authenticated accounts. Again he declares, that a great deal of original matter had been furnished by men of letters and of moderation, while he indulges a hope, that the publication of his work might prove friendly to Constitutional Liberty, to Virtue, and to the Country's Welfare. This volume contains Twenty-two chapters, pp. 1 to 399. The second volume comprises only authentic papers, pp. 1 to 427 with an index to them. The Third volume resumes the narrative of the war from 1778, and continues it to the peace in 1782, in Fourteen chapters, pp. 1 to 266. Afterwards, an Appendix of Documents follows, pp. 267 to 432, while a Table of Contents to these is prefixed. On the title page is inscribed—Dublin: Printed for the Company of Booksellers, MDCCLXXIX to MDCCLXXXV., 8vo.,

[4] See M. le Dr. Hoefer's "Nouvelle Biographie Generale," &c., Tome xli., cols. 193, 194.

[5] See John Cornelieus O'Callaghan's "History of the Irish Brigades in the Service of France," Book x., p. 616.

[6] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. viii., chap. lviii., pp. 282, 283.

[7] See John Gilmary Shea's "Life and Times of the Most Rev. John Carroll, Bishop and first Archbishop of Baltimore," Book i. chap. iv. pp. 148 to 153.

States—was associated with them; as it was known, that his fluency in speaking French, and that his influence as a priest, must have weight among a Catholic people, such as they were. Soon afterwards, those delegates proceeded to Montreal, and arrived there while Arnold was still encamped at Quebec. However, the various attempts to produce a favourable impression on behalf of the revolted colonies were strenuously resisted by the Bishop of Quebec, and by his clergy, with few exceptions.[8] That mission resulted in failure, and those Commissioners were obliged to return early in the month of May.

To counterbalance the failure of that Canadian expedition, Brigadier General James Moore[9] of North Carolina and his associate leaders mustered a considerable force to repress those who had taken up arms to co-operate with the British army, then expected to arrive in that quarter. Only the Highlanders who had settled there and a few of the loyalists assembled for the encounter. Splendid and decisive successes were obtained over the Scots Royalists who fought under Donald MacDonald and Donald MacLeod,[10] in February 1776. Having at first marched against Moore's entrenched camp at Rockfish, and summoned him to surrender; he instantly replied, that neither his duty nor inclination permitted him to accept terms incompatible with American freedom. At this time, Caswell and the Minute Men of Newbern were marching to effect a junction with Moore. Wherefore, MacDonald found himself obliged to retreat in the direction of Wilmington, and to cross Cape Fear River. He hoped to surprise Caswell's detachment of 1,000 men, for his own force numbered between fifteen and sixteen hundred. As MacDonald was confined to his tent by illness, the command devolved on MacLeod, who attempted an hour before daylight on the 27th of February to cross Moore's Creek. But, the Scots were received with a galling fire from the Americans, and their leader MacLeod fell mortally wounded. After a vain effort to cross the creek, his men soon gave way in despair, and the fugitives could not be rallied. They lost about thirty killed or wounded, while on the following day, their aged chief MacDonald and many others of their principal men were made prisoners. These were transferred to Reading in Pennsylvania. Eight or nine hundred of the common soldiers were taken, disarmed and dismissed. Their arms and munitions, with a box containing £15,000 sterling in gold, were secured by the victors. The zealous loyalist

[8] In protesting against the Quebec Statute of 1774, Congress had been led to express astonishment, that the British Parliament should ever consent to establish in Canada religious freedom for the Catholics. Their document had been translated into French, and afterwards it was widely circulated among the Canadians, by the Ministry of England, in order to set forth Congressional intolerance.

[9] He was the son of Maurice and grandson to James Moore, Governor of South Carolina, who was born in Ireland about 1640, and who died in Charleston, S. C., in 1729. See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. iv., pp. 381, 382.

[10] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. viii., chap. lviii., pp. 283 to 289.

Colonial Governor named Josiah Martin[11] had promised to raise 10,000 recruits for the king in North Carolina, and on the strength of his representations, a store ship, with 10,000 stand of arms and 2,000,000 of cartridges, was then on the Atlantic. In less than a fortnight, North Carolina had a congressional army of 9,400 men embodied; while the coming of Clinton inspired no terror, for the colonists felt persuaded, that in their pine woods and forests they would prove a match for the regular army,[12]

The British forces consisting of nearly 8,000 men, besides their complements in the ships of war, were now beleagured in the city of Boston. Their provisions and munitions were abundantly imported from Ireland, England, Barbadoes and Antigua.[13] All the land-ward approaches were held by the Continentals.[14] Expecting the arrival of reinforcements in early summer, the garrison nevertheless had little thought of danger. The officers and soldiers endeavoured to beguile their time while waiting in various amusements.

Meanwhile George III. was advising Lord North, that gigantic preparations should be made to crush the rebellion, and to use every means for distressing America.[15] Attempts had been tried to raise a regiment of Irish Catholics,[16] but these would not enlist. The Dissenters were equally adverse.[17] Government had already declined offers made for recruiting Highland regiments: those propositions were rejected because their loyalty to England had been suspected.[18] In like manner, the troops impoliticly drawn from the Irish establishment, and despatched to the seat of war, had great reluctance to shed their blood in the quarrel with America, and numbers of them took every opportunity afforded to desert.[19] About this time, Lee wrote to the effect, that England's

[11] Being now completely discomfited by the disaster of Moore's Creek, he embarked on board of Sir Peter Parker's fleet, and arrived at Charleston in June 1776. See Lt.-Colonel Tarleton's "History of the Campaigns of 1780 and 1781, in the Southern Provinces of North America," p. 324. With maps and plates. London, 1787, Roy. 4to.

[12] See Judge Marshall's "Life of General Washington," Vol. ii., p. 486.

[13] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. viii., chap. lix., p. 292.

[14] On the 1st of January 1776, a national flag, showing thirteen stripes of white and red—without the subsequently introduced stars in a blue field—was displayed for the first time in Washington's camp. See Captain Schuyler Hamilton's "History of the National Flag of the United States," with coloured plates of flags. Philadelphia, 1853, 12mo.

[15] See "The Correspondence of King George the Third with Lord North from 1768 to 1783," edited from the originals at Windsor, by W. Bodham Donne, Vol. i., Letters 316, 317, pp. 274 to 276. London, 1867, 8vo.

[16] See the address of the Lord Lieutenant, on the 10th of October, to the Irish Houses of Lords and Commons, reported in the "Annual Register," Vol. xviii., p. 266.

[17] See the letter of Edward Gibbon to Holroyd, dated October 14th 1775. "Posthumus Works," Vol. i., p. 496.

[18] See Horace Walpole's "Journal of the Reign of King George the Third, from the year 1771 to 1783," Vol. i., August, 1775, p. 500.

[19] The deserters usually joined the provincials, while they often acted as masters of drill and as subalterns in military exercises.

applications for aid were almost annihilated in Germany, and that their last resource was to the Roman Catholics of Ireland.[20]

From certain movements observed in the fleet during the siege of Boston, Washington rightly conjectured, that the English meditated the seizure of New York.[21] He therefore entrusted General Lee to raise volunteers in Connecticut, and to occupy that city.[22] Accordingly, when the British expedition under Sir Henry Clinton arrived in New York Harbour, on the 4th of February 1776, the Americans were quite prepared to receive him. He then abandoned that enterprise, and sailed towards the South, where he intended to commence operations against South Carolina.

Notwithstanding the care, zeal and devotion of their distinguished and patriotic leader, the volunteers and militia under his command proved to be very insubordinate,[23] and when permitted to visit their homes on furlough, many of them did not return, while the army before Boston gradually dwindled down, so that Washington was obliged constantly to urge upon Congress the necessity for forming regular and disciplined regiments. In February 1776 he declared, how great art had to be used, so that their desperate situation might be concealed even from his own officers.[24] The emergency for action was pressing, and every effort was made to remedy the evils of which he complained. Alarmed by the rumours of vast armaments expected to arrive soon from England, Congress sent a secret message to Washington, that cost what it might, Boston must be taken, in order to release his army for other enterprises.[25]

[20] He states: "They have already experienced their unwillingness to go; every man of a regiment raised there last year having obliged them to ship him off tied and bound. And, most certainly, the Irish Catholics will desert more than any other troops whatever." Arthur Lee's letter to Washington.

[21] James McHenry was born in Ireland, 16th Nov. 1753, and he went to Philadelphia about 1771. He accompanied Washington to the camp at Cambridge, and joined the army as assistant surgeon in January 1776. He was made prisoner at Fort Washington, but he was exchanged in the spring of 1778. He was in the Maryland Senate 1781-1786, and in 1783 he was appointed to Congress in place of Edward Giles. He held office to 1786—double duty in the state and continental legislatures being customary at that time. He became a member of Washington's cabinet as secretary of war, January 1796, and to 1801 he served under President Adams. He died in 1816 in Baltimore. Fort McHenry was called after him. See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. iv., p. 121.

[22] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. viii., chap. lviii., pp. 276 to 282.

[23] See William Edward Hartpole Lecky's "History of England in the Eighteenth Century," Vol. iii., chap. xii., p. 460.

[24] See "The Writings of George Washington; being his Correspondence, Addresses, Messages, and other Papers, Official and Private." Selected and published from the original Manuscripts; with a Life of the Author, Notes and Illustrations. Edited by Jared Sparks, Vol. iii., pp. 221, 222. Boston, 12 vols. 8vo.

[25] Colonel Michael Cresup, an Irish-American, marched from Maryland to Boston, in 1775, to join the Continental army under Washington. He died of sickness contracted in the service of his country.

Meantime, it being found necessary for the successful prosecution of the war to organize regularly enlisted and equipped soldiers for Washington, Congress employed the years 1775 and 1776 in that effort. Commissions were given to trusted and brave officers for the purpose of raising regiments. Especially in Pennsylvania—most densely populated by Irish and their descendants at the time of the Revolution—those officers were eminently successful. An almost exclusively Irish or Irish-American Brigade was there recruited, and the soldiers were afterwards designated the Pennsylvania Line.[26] These were among the best troops that had been embodied for service under Washington, as they were ever ready, faithful and reliable in action.[27] The first soldiers recruited in Pennsylvania—as ordered by the Continental Congress—formed a battalion of eight companies, under William Thompson,[28] who was appointed Colonel, and they arrived in the camp before Boston, August 14th 1775. Attached to his command was the distinguished officer, afterwards Brigadier-General Hand.[29] As one of the provincial deputies to consider the relations between Great Britain and her colonies, the celebrated hero, Anthony Wayne,[30] afterwards became a member of

[26] Although comparatively restricted in numbers at this period, yet some thousands of Irish Catholics had settled, especially in Pennsylvania, Maryland and Virginia. On the subsequent election of Washington to the Presidency, the Catholic soldiers who had served under him presented an Address, to which he returned a courteous and remarkable reply.

[27] Richard Butler, who came with his parents from Ireland before 1750, became Lieutenant-Colonel in the Pennsylvania Line at the beginning of the Revolutionary War, and he afterwards served with great distinction on many subsequent occasions. At the close of the war, he held the rank of Colonel in the Ninth Pennsylvania Regiment. His brother William was Lieutenant-Colonel of the Fourth Pennsylvania Regiment, and in Oct. 1788, he conducted an expedition from Schoharie to destroy the Indian settlements of Unadilla and Anaguaga.

[28] He was born in Ireland about 1725, and having emigrated to Pennsylvania, he took part in the French and Indian wars. On the 1st of March 1776, he was appointed Brigadier-General, and on the 19th of that month, he relieved General Charles Lee from the command of the New York force. Afterwards, he was ordered to Canada, and when General John Thomas fell sick at the river Sorel, he assumed the chief command of the American army, until General John Sullivan arrived on the 4th of June 1776. See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. vi., p. 95.

[29] He was born in Clyduff, King's County, Ireland. In 1774 he accompanied the 18th Royal Irish Regiment to America as surgeon's mate. Afterwards, he resigned that appointment and settled in Pennsylvania, in the practice of medicine. Early in the Revolutionary War, he joined General William Thompson's Brigade as Lieutenant-Colonel, and he served at the siege of Boston. Afterwards, he was promoted to be Colonel in 1776. He was engaged in the battles on Long Island and at Trenton. In 1777, he was appointed Brigadier-General. Full of courage and daring, he was admired in the army for his soldier-like mien and fine horsemanship. He served bravely throughout the war, and afterwards he became a member of Congress in 1784-85. He died in Rockford, Lancaster County, Pennsylvania, September 3rd 1808. See *Ibid.*, Vol. iii., pp. 74, 75.

[30] Owing to his desparate valour, he went by the designation of "Mad Anthony," among the American soldiers.

the Pennsylvania Convention, which was held in Philadelphia. The grandfather of Anthony Wayne served under King William III., and commanded a body of dragoons at the Battle of the Boyne. Subsequently he lived in the County of Wicklow, Ireland; but he sold out his property there, and afterwards went to Chester County, Pennsylvania, where he settled. His youngest son was called Isaac, who became a farmer and a legislator, while he served as a soldier in the Indian wars. Anthony was the only son of Isaac, and he was born in East Town, Chester County, Pennsylvania, on the 1st of January 1745. Wherefore, he was said to have been "the best New Year's gift America could have received." He was educated at the Philadelphia Academy, and afterwards he became a land surveyor. He raised the Fourth Regiment of Pennsylvania troops.[31] Having been Aide-de-Camp to Washington and Quarter-Master, Stephen Moylan[32] was zealously engaged in recruiting cavalry for the war. These were mostly drawn from Philadelphia, as also from Ulster, Rockbridge and Chester Counties. To him was given command of the First Pennsylvania Regiment of Dragoons, and these subsequently bore his name. From the very beginning to the close of the Revolution, they participated in every engagement where cavalry could operate. William Irvine[33] became Colonel of the Sixth Regiment of the Pennsylvania Line, on the 10th of January 1776, and having raised the Regiment himself, they were ordered to Canada. There with General William Thompson an attempt was made to surprise the vanguard of the English Army at Three Rivers, on the 16th of June 1776. His brother Andrew served as Captain in that Canadian expedition.[34] Walter Stewart[35] raised a

[31] Over these he was commissioned as Colonel, January 3rd 1776, having been directed to re-inforce the Northern Army under General John Thomas. Here he first gave proof of that indomitable courage, which distinguished him through all his subsequent brilliant career. He died in Presque Isle, now Erie, Pennsylvania, December 15th 1796. See John Armstrong's "Life of Anthony Wayne," in Sparks' "American Biography."

[32] He was a native of Cork, Ireland, and born in 1734. He received a good education, and having resided for a time in England, he afterwards visited America, where he settled as a merchant in Philadelphia. He was one of the first to enlist in the cause of the Colonies, and to join the army before Boston in 1775.

[33] He was born near Enniskillen, Ireland, on the 3rd of November 1741, and he graduated in the Dublin University. Having embraced the Medical Profession, he served during the war between England and France, 1756-'63. He emigrated to America, and in 1764 he settled at Carlisle in Pennsylvania as Doctor of Medicine. At the opening of the Revolution, he became a member of the Provincial Convention, that assembled at Philadelphia, July 15th 1774, and he then recommended the assembling of a General Congress. On May 12th 1779, he was made Brigadier General. He died at Philadelphia, July 29th 1804. See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. iii., p. 358.

[34] Another brother Matthew was a Physician and Surgeon in General Lee's division, while Brigadier-General Irvine had three sons, Callendar, William and Armstrong, all of whom embraced a military career. They served as officers in the war of 1812, between Great Britain and the United States. See *Ibid.*

[35] He was born in Ireland, about 1756, and afterwards he emigrated to

company for the Third Pennsylvania Battalion, and he was commissioned a Captain on the 6th of January 1776. Under the command of Morgan, five hundred Virginian Riflemen—numbers of these being Irish or Irish-Americans—marched on foot to Boston. The Clintons in New York raised some regiments, largely composed of Irish and Irish-Americans, and these were early in the field.

During the spring, munitions of war and considerable reinforcements reached the camp, to enable Washington the better to carry out those orders he had received from Congress. By setting up batteries on Dorchester heights, that general was sure to command the town, the harbour and the roadstead. Henry Knox directed that artillery, which he had previously captured.[36] The resolves and preparations of General Howe were so dilatory, that nothing favourable to the imprisoned garrison resulted; although were he at all enterprising, the well-appointed and disciplined forces under his command should have been more than sufficient to drive the ill-organized provincials from their positions. Notwithstanding his large garrison, and the protecting fleet, those labours of the Americans were observed by the English general with alarm. He saw clearly, that if they succeeded in planting cannon on that elevated position, his army must quit the town. In the deepest silence, the American army took possession of Dorchester Hill, and there they began noiselessly yet energetically to dig entrenchments. They were aware, also, that everything depended upon expedition. Meantime, the American works were advancing with giant strides; and accordingly, on the night of March 4th, a body of 2,000 men under General Thomas took possession of those lines on the heights. The besiegers had chained together hogsheads filled with stones, and were ready to roll them down on the heads of any assailing column that might venture an attack.[37] They were favoured also by a storm, which raged with such fury as to paralyse the English general's movements, without in the least embarrassing them. Before it cleared away, and when the sky became serene, the batteries defied attack. Their guns, now brought into position and turned upon the town, could sink the shipping and reduce the habitations to ruins. However, Howe called a council of war, when it was proposed to place 2,400 men under

America. He was appointed Aide-de-Camp to General Gates on the 26th of May 1776, and he served in that capacity until the 17th of June 1777, when he received a commission as Colonel of the Pennsylvania State Regiment of Foot. This he led with great bravery, at the battles of Brandywine and Germantown. He was said to have been the handsomest man in the American army, and he served with great credit throughout the war, until he retired on the 1st of January 1783, with the brevet rank of Brigadier-General. Afterwards, he became a merchant of Philadelphia, and he was appointed Major-General of the State Militia. He died in Philadelphia, June 14th 1796. See *Ibid.* Vol. v., p. 687.

[36] In this capacity, as chief of the artillery, he afterwards figured, taking part in all the principal battles fought by Washington.

[37] See John Adolphus' "History of England from the Accession of King George the Third," &c. Vol. ii., chap. xxix., p. 388.

the command of Lord Percy, who showed no heart for the effort to dislodge the Americans, and which attempt the general himself had declared to be hazardous. That enterprise was abandoned, and orders were next issued for the evacuation of Boston, to the horror and despair of the loyalists, who had fled there for refuge, and over confident in the power of England to protect them.[38]

After a vain effort to treat with Washington, Boston was surrendered unconditionally to the Americans.[39] On St. Patrick's Day,[40] great was the rejoicing of the Irish[41] in Washington's army, to witness General Howe with his whole army disembarking. He took on board the fleet fifteen hundred Tory inhabitants of Boston. Having disembarked the last of his troops, General Howe quitted Boston, and sailed for Halifax.[42] The English had barely departed, when the Americans poured in, and took possession of the town. Congress had been so pleased with this event, that a gold medal was struck, and Washington was publicly thanked.[43] The news of taking Boston was misrepresented in England, as having been a voluntary evacuation of the garrison for want of provisions; while the Ministry gave out a report,[44] that Howe had orders to leave the town, so that he might succour Halifax, which was then said to have been threatened.[45]

Meantime, an overwhelming force, consisting for the most part of mercenary Germans, had embarked for the theatre of hostilities. While the provincials were encamped before Boston, some detachments had been sent to recruit the small army engaged in the blockade of Quebec, as no reasonable chance was afforded of carrying it by assault. However, the arrival of reinforcements from Ireland and England for the garrison of Quebec in June 1776, when the navigation of the St. Lawrence opened, obliged the Americans to desist from a further hopeless enterprise. The regiments from Ireland with General Burgoyne, and the first division of Brunswick troops, had now raised Carleton's army to 13,000 well disciplined men,[46]

[38] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. viii., chap. lix., pp. 291 to 299.

[39] See Jared Sparks' "Life of Washington," Vol. i., chap. viii., p. 174.

[40] It is remarkable, that Washington issued the following General Order, in compliment to the Irishmen then serving in his army:

"HEADQUARTERS, 17th March, 1776.
*Countersign*, '*ST. PATRICK.*'
"*Parole*, *BOSTON.*'

"The regiments under marching orders to march to-morrow morning. Brigadier of the Day, General Sullivan. By his Excellency's Command."

[41] Samuel Brady, an Irishman, was at the siege of Boston. He became a lieutenant at the massacre of Paoli, and in 1779, 1780, 1781, he was Captain over a Company of Rangers. Afterwards he became a Colonel.

[42] See Lord Mahon's "History of England from the Peace of Utrecht," Vol. vi., chap. liii., pp. 126, 127.

[43] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. viii., chap. lix., p. 304.

[44] This statement appeared in the ministerial *Gazette* of that time.

[45] See Horace Walpole's "Journal of the Reign of King George the Third, from 1771 to 1783," Vol. ii., pp. 32, 33.

[46] See John Adolphus' "History of England from the Accession of King George the Third," &c., Vol. ii., chap. xxix., p. 391.

abundantly supplied with all the necessaries for war. The retreat from Quebec was full of peril; but, as Major-General John Sullivan then took command, he ably conducted the Federal troops after the fall of Montgomery.[47] On the 5th of June he arrived at Sorel, and there a council of war resolved on an attempt against the enemy at Three Rivers. A party of about 1,500, headed by St. Clair,[48] Wayne and Irvine, was placed under the command of Thompson. He crossed the St. Lawrence, intending to surprise the British; but, outnumbered more than three to one, after a gallant attack the Americans were forced to retreat, with a loss exceeding two hundred. At Chambly, all the boats and baggage were brought over the rapids, and Arnold passed from Montreal to La Prairie. On the 17th of June, the Americans retired on St. John's, and the day following arrived at Isle-aux-Nois, where Sullivan proposed to wait express orders from General Schuyler. There they remained for eight days, languidly pursued by a column under Burgoyne. In a wretched condition, they reached Crown Point early in July. Their only food was raw pork and unbaked flour for days together. Of about 5,000 men, housed under tents or huts of brick, fully one-half were invalids; while in a little over two months, the Northern army lost by death and desertion more than 5,000 men.[49]

A powerful fleet under Admiral Lord Howe had been equipped, while a formidable land force under his brother General Sir William Howe was now destined for New York. The colonists were declared to be rebels, and their property was liable to seizure on sea. During this year also, a large British squadron had been fitted out in England under the command of Admiral Sir Peter Parker, as likewise a numerous and well appointed land force commanded by Lord Cornwallis. The great design contemplated was to land and capture New York, to secure the line of the Hudson River, and to cut off New England from the other states. Moreover, Sir Guy Carleton was to co-operate from Canada, by leading an expedition against the Americans on Lake Champlain.

Having placed Boston in a state for defence, Washington hastened to New York, where he arrived on the 13th of April. Lee was then despatched southwards, to command the troops there assembled. Measures were also taken, to disarm the Tory inhabitants, and to throw up various fortifications. For the defence of New York, General Greene was placed over a division on Long Island. Anticipating the English expedition and its destination, Washington's presence was there required. He occupied New York and the places around it with 27,000 men.[50] The leaden statue of George III. was

[47] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. viii., chap. lxvii., pp. 415 to 433.

[48] Lieutenant James Montgomery, Irish born, and of the Pennsylvania line, entered St. Clair's army early in 1776, and he served with credit during the war.

[49] See Judge Marshall's "Life of General Washington," Vol. ii., chap. v., pp. 304 to 369. London edition of 1804 et seq. 4to.

[50] Washington's Life Guard was formed in 1776, soon after the siege of Boston, and when the American army was encamped on Manhattan Island,

pulled down in Bowling Green, and the Provincials melted it into bullets.[51] Recruiting proceeded rapidly meanwhile in the various States, and foremost in activity among these was Pennsylvania.

The British fleet under Sir Peter Parker, and a large land force under General Clinton, had now planned an attack on Charleston, in South Carolina. However, before the British fleet arrived in Cape Fear River, the Commander-in-Chief of the local military forces John Rutledge,[52] had fortified Charleston, while he insisted on retaining Sullivan's Island, when General Lee proposed its evacuation.[53] Moreover, deeming it all important for the defence of Charleston, Rutledge had ordered that it should be defended to the last extremity. The fort, constructed chiefly of palmetto trees, was then in an unfinished state. Meantime, he had mustered a considerable force for the reception of an anticipated assault on the town itself. At an early hour on the morning of June 28th, Sir Peter Parker opened fire, and he continued the bombardment for nine hours, but without making any serious impression on the fort—which was still incomplete—yet suffering great loss himself from the batteries on Sullivan's Island. That outpost was gallantly held by Colonel Moultrie for the Americans. At length, that attack was repulsed by the Provincials, with the small loss of 24 men, while 225 was the estimated loss of the British. After this repulse, Admiral Parker sailed immediately for New York.

The British vessels of war had attacked many of the exposed seaport towns.[54] Much damage was thus inflicted.[55] Finding it absolutely necessary to make some provision for the protection of American ports and vessels from the enemy, Congress purchased a few merchant ships. They appointed an experienced and a resolute Irish sea-captain John Barry [56] to fit them out as war-vessels. This duty he cheerfully under-

near the City of New York. It consisted of a major's command, one hundred and eighty men. The terms of enlistment into the guard were the same as those in any other corps of the regular army, except in the matter of qualification. These soldiers were selected with special reference to their physical, moral and intellectual character, and it was considered a mark of peculiar distinction to belong to the Commander-in-Chief's guard.

[51] See Horace Walpole's "Journal of the Reign of King George the Third, from the year 1771 to 1783," Vol. ii., p. 68.

[52] Eldest son of Dr. John Rutledge, who was born in the north of Ireland, and brother to Edward Rutledge, signer of the Declaration of Independence.

[53] See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. v., p. 357.

[54] See James Fenimore Cooper's "History of the Navy of the United States of America," Vol. i. This elaborate work first appeared in 1839, 8vo.

[55] In retaliation for the exploits of Jeremiah O'Brien, Admiral Graves sent an expedition to burn Falmouth—now Portland—in Maine. See Lossing's Field Book of the Revolution," Vol. ii., p. 637.

[56] He was born in Tacumshane, on the sea-coast of Wexford County, in 1745; and at the age of fourteen, he entered a merchantman which sailed between Philadelphia and the British ports. At the age of sixteen, he made America his home, and in his twenty-fifth year, he commanded the Black Prince, the finest packet on the Atlantic, and owned by a Mr. Meredith of Philadelphia. About this time, he made the acquaintance of

took, and soon he was in a position to command. He was assigned to the Lexington of 16 guns, in February, 1776. With this he seized an armed tender, the Edward, and this result was hailed with great joy; it being the first considerable English war-vessel captured by an American cruiser.[57] At this time, too, Congress had ordered the building of a war frigate at Philadelphia, which was destined for him. On the 23rd of October 1775, Thomas Reid[58] was appointed the first commodore of the Pennsylvania Navy, and while holding this command he made a most successful defence of the Delaware. On the 7th of June 1776, he was appointed to the highest grade in the Continental Navy, and he was assigned to one of its four largest ships, the 32 gun frigate then building on the Delaware River, and named the George Washington.[59] We find it recorded likewise, that Richard O'Brien, an Irishman, was a successful privateer during the Revolution.[60]

While the war had thus begun, public opinion was greatly agitated and divided, so that when Congress opened in June, unanimity did not prevail in its councils. Many of the representatives hoped for a reconciliation with the mother country; but it seemed to most, matters had already proceeded so far, that there was room neither for compromise nor conciliation. At first, the idea of separation had not been generally entertained, and it was thought the British ministry would make reasonable concessions. The delegates from Pennsylvania, New Jersey and Maryland[61] were instructed to observe a cautious policy by their respective Assemblies.

While general instructions had been given to the delegates of Massachusetts in January, by South Carolina in March, and by Georgia in April, to adopt a bolder course, North Carolina was the first to direct her representatives in Congress, to declare for independence on the 12th of April. A few days later, Massachusetts and Rhode Island renounced their allegiance to King George III., and

General Washington, who greatly admired his courage, skill and coolness. At the breaking out of the Revolutionary War, Barry promptly offered his services to Congress, and they were as readily accepted. He died in Philadelphia, on the 13th of Sep., 1803. See Alfred Webb's "Compendium of Irish Biography," p. 13. Also a very complete memoir of him is to be found in "Records of the American Catholic Historical Society of Philadelphia." Vol. vi. The First Volume of this work was published in Philadelphia, 1887, 8vo.

[57] See Leslie Stephen's "Dictionary of National Biography," Vol. iii., p. 325.

[58] His father was John Reid, born in Dublin, and he was brother to George Reid, signer of the Declaration of Independence.

[59] While waiting for the completion of his ship, Reid volunteered for land service and served under Washington. See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. v., p. 198.

[60] Subsequently, he was distinguished as a naval officer, in the regular service. Afterwards, he was appointed Consul-General of the United States for Barbary.

[61] Towards the latter end of May, by a resolution, the Convention of Maryland positively forbade their delegates to vote for Independence. See Benson J. Lossing's "Pictorial Field Book of the American Revolution," Vol. ii., chap. xi., pp. 271 to 289.

on the 10th of May, John Adams carried a resolution in Congress, requesting each of the United Colonies to set up a separate government on its own responsibility. On the 15th of May, the Virginia delegates were instructed by their Convention to declare for independence in Congress, while a circular letter was addressed to other Colonies, to apprise them of such a proceeding, and to urge their co-operation.[62] On the very same day, Congress decided, that all authority under the Crown should be suppressed, and that all governmental powers then vested in the people of the Colonies. Soon afterwards, the people of Massachusetts declared themselves in favour of separation from the mother country, and the feeling in due course became almost universal throughout the other Colonies. His State of Virginia had given its delegate Richard Henry Lee power to propose a Declaration of Independence, and he was bold enough to do it, on the 7th of June. In a determined mannner, and in a clear and ringing voice, he read aloud the resolution: "That these United Colonies are, and ought to be, free and independent States; that they are absolved from all allegiance to the British Crown; and that all political connection between them and the State of Great Britain is, and ought to be, totally dissolved." A death-like silence pervaded the whole Assembly. John Adams then rose and immediately he seconded that resolution. However, this momentous issue was debated in secret. Besides Lee, John and Samuel Adams, Edward Rutledge and Dr. Witherspoon were the chief speakers in its favour. The bold step taken by Lee was then supposed by some to have been rash and premature. The chief opponent of independence was John Dickinson of Pennsylvania,[63] who spoke strongly against it. To shield them from the vengeance of the British Government, some waverers directed the Congressional Secretary to omit the names of the mover and seconder of that resolution from the journals. Its further consideration was deferred until the next morning. The delegates met, accordingly, but the question was again adjourned until the first of July.

Meanwhile, it was resolved, "that no time be lost, in case Congress agrees thereto, that a committee be appointed to prepare a declaration to that effect." Accordingly, the resolution was referred to a committee consisting of Thomas Jefferson, John Adams, Benjamin Franklin, Roger Sherman and Robert R. Livingston. These after some deliberation prepared a draft, setting forth a Declaration of Independence. From the first, it was apparent, that a majority of the Colonies would vote for Independence, but it was doubtful if an unanimous vote could be obtained. Two Assemblies had already refused to sanction the measure, Maryland[64] and Pennsylvania; while New York, South Carolina and

[62] This was carried mainly through the exertions of Irish-Americans in opposition to the Quakers, who on principle desired peace.

[63] See William Edward Hartpole Lecky's "History of England in the Eighteenth Century," Vol. iii., chap. xii. p. 460.

[64] Through the exertions and great influence of Charles Carroll and

Georgia were silent. On Thomas Jefferson devolved the honour of drawing up a draft Declaration of Independence, and this was submitted to Congress, on the 28th of June. When a vote was taken by a committee of the whole House, all the Colonies assented to the Declaration, except Pennsylvania and Delaware; four[65] of the seven delegates of the former voting against it, and the two delegates who were present from Delaware being divided.[66]

Letters had been received from Washington, which gave a deplorable account of the state his army was in, with the alarming intelligence of a large British expedition which he expected soon to land. The fleet of England had now anchored in the bay of New York, while her army of 30,000 veterans was within three days' march of that very spot where the Congress had assembled.

On the 4th day of July in Independence Hall, the Declaration of Independence was taken up for the final decision. The debate which ensued was long and animated.[67] Pennsylvania had not voted in favour of the measure. Some of her delegates were in opposition. However, Franklin, Wilson and Morton were in its favour. On this eventful day, Robert Morris and John Dickinson were absent. Thomas Willing and Charles Humphreys were opposed to it. Franklin endeavoured to prevail on his colleagues to give an assenting and unanimous vote. Being unsuccessful, however, it was at length resolved that as the delegates were divided, Morton ought officially to decide the question, whether there should be an unanimous vote of the colonies, or whether Pennsylvania should persevere in her exceptional opposition to the measure. The opinions and determination of his colleagues then present were well known to Morton. The responsibility of his situation was solemn and momentous. He met the trying occasion, however, with the firmness it demanded, and his vote was cast in favour of Independence. Accordingly, the thirteen American colonies thus renounced their allegiance to Great Britain, and immediately the United States of America was assumed to be their future title.[68]

others, the Convention of Maryland recalled their former instructions on the 28th of June, and empowered their delegates, "to concur with the other Colonies in a Declaration of Independence."

[65] These were John Dickinson, Robert Morris, Thomas Willing and Charles Humphreys. See James Grahame's "History of the United States of North America, from the Plantation of the British Colonies till their Revolt and Declaration of Independence," Vol. iv., book ix., chap v.

[66] Thomas McKean favoured it, and Cæsar Rodney, the other delegate, was then absent. In order to secure his object, McKean wrote a note, and putting it into the hands of a trusty messenger, he bade the latter ride with all speed and deliver it to Rodney. The latter was eighty miles distant when the messenger overtook him. Ten minutes had not elapsed, after reading the patriot's letter, when he was in the saddle, and riding as if for life, Cæsar Rodney was on his way back to Philadelphia. He arrived in time to give his vote on the 4th of July, and thus was Deleware secured.

[67] See "Journal of the Proceedings of the Congress at Philadephia, 1776.

[68] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. viii., chap. lxix., pp. 448 to 461.

At two o'clock in the afternoon, the Irish-born Secretary of Congress, Charles Thompson, rose to announce the decision.[69] He was the tallest man in the Assembly, and drawing up his commanding figure to its full height, while holding the document in his hand, at that solemn and interesting moment, he pronounced the words with an emphatic and a singularly clear voice. Perfect silence reigned throughout the Congress, until their secretary sat down, and soon the long-looked for intelligence spread abroad.

Meantime, thousands of the people had collected in the streets, for tidings had gone forth throughout the city that the final decision was to be made on that day. As men's feelings were strung to the highest tension of anxiety and impatience, so were their thoughts to be read in their countenances. Already it had been rumoured, that should the Declaration of Independence be unanimously adopted, the old bell in the tower must ring out such announcement to the people.[70] The multitude without had long remained a prey to conflicting emotions. At length, the bell pealed out, when immediately a shout, loud and sudden, arose from that vast assemblage. Other bells in the city caught up the refrain, the cannon pealed, and hurrying from all directions, the patriots shouted in the fulness of their joy. That night, from the Delaware to the Schuylkill, bonfires blazed in every direction. An observatory had been erected in the city of Philadelphia[71] for astronomical purposes. From this, on the 8th of July, John Nixon read the Declaration to a large concourse of people, and amid a profound silence. Thousands from all parts of the surrounding country had gathered into the city deeply interested in that issue, and afterwards destined further to participate in those proceedings. When the reader had uttered the last word, the people almost universally gave vent to their pent-up feelings in the wildest applause.[72] The Tories, on the other hand, heard it with dismay. Thus, having obtained the vote of every Colonial province, their Declaration of Independence was finally promulgated and adopted.

Such was the solemn decree passed on the memorable 4th of July

[69] See "Journal of the Proceedings of the Congress at Philadelphia, 1776."

[70] When Congress had been convened early in the morning, the old bellman took his post in the steeple. On that bell was written:—"Proclaim liberty throughout all the land unto all the inhabitants thereof." Too old and feeble to run down the stairs, the bellman had placed his boy at the door below, to give him notice when the announcement should be made. But as the hours passed slowly by, and still no signal had been given to the impatient watcher, he grew quite nervous, fearing the delegates should falter in their deliberations.

[71] Near the Walnut St. front of the State House.

[72] Immediately afterwards, abandoned to an excess of patriotic delirium, they proceeded to the public buildings and pulled down the king's arms, which they burned in the streets. Bonfires at night lighted up the river, and the rejoicings were continued until midnight, when a thunder storm abruptly put an end to those festivities.

1776.[73] It was first signed[74] by John Hancock, as President of the Congress, and afterwards by those delegates,[75] representing the confederated provinces. Of the fifty-six delegates—answering for the thirteen original States of America—whose signatures followed, some were of Irish birth or of Irish extraction; but, in this connexion, we can only briefly recapitulate their actions and career.[76] To the original document are found appended the order of the provinces, as conventionally arranged,[77] with the names of their respective representatives attached; and, these deserve perpetual and grateful remembrance in the records of United States history. After their President's signature, affixed in a firm and fine style of writing, the following were the immortal signers :—

New Hampshire.—Josiah Bartlett,[78] William Whipple,[79] Matthew Thornton.[80]

[73] Soon afterwards, John Adams wrote a prediction—afterwards so far verified—that the 4th of July should be celebrated throughout all time by his posterity. It is remarkable, also, that on the anniversary of this day, three future Presidents died; viz :—Thomas Jefferson, John Adams and James Munroe.

[74] The Declaration was only signed by John Hancock on the day of its adoption. It was ordered by Congress to be entered at length on the Journals. It was directed, also, to be engrossed on parchment for the delegates to sign it.

[75] On the second of August following, it was signed by the fifty-four delegates present; it was subsequently signed by two others, making the whole number fifty-six.

[76] See George Ticknor Curtis' "History of the Origin, Formation and Adoption of the Constitution of the United States, with Notices of its principal Framers." This work was published in London, 1854, 8vo.

[77] This was not done, to suit the order of first settlement in point of date, nor even as regarded the decisions arrived at in favour of Independence.

[78] He was born in Amesbury, Mass., 21st November 1729; he became a physician; he was chosen by New Hampshire for the Continental Congress on 23rd August 1775 and again on 23rd January 1776. He was the first to give his vote for the Declaration of Independence, and the second to sign it. Subsequently, he was an active agent in the Revolutionary War; and at its close, he filled several judicial positions. He died in New Hampshire, May the 19th 1795.

[79] He was born in Kittery, Me., 14th Jan. 1730. In his earlier years, he led a sea-faring life. He was elected as delegate from New Hampshire to the Continental Congress in 1775, and he was re-elected, 23rd Jan. 1776. He afterwards became a brigadier-general, and served with distinction in the Revolutionary War. He was appointed Judge of the Supreme Court in New Hampshire, 20th of June 1782, and he died there in Portsmouth, 28th Nov. 1785.

[80] Matthew Thornton designated "the honest man," was Irish born, about the year 1714. When he was about three years old, his father with his family emigrated to America, and took up his first residence at Wiscasset in Maine. After a few years' residence there, he removed to Worcester in Massachusetts. His son Matthew embraced the medical profession, and began his career as a physician in Londonderry—a town originally settled by Irish colonists—in New Hampshire. He became a colonel of militia there before the Revolutionary War, and on the abdication of Governor Wentworth, who fled for his life, the people hastily organised a provincial government. When Dr. Matthew Thornton had taken an active and a resolute stand as their leader, he was chosen to be the President of that province. Soon a general assembly was convened for legis-

MASSACHUSETTS BAY.—John Hancock,[81] Samuel Adams,[82] John Adams,[83] Robert Treat Paine,[84] Elbridge Gerry.[85]

RHODE ISLAND.—Stephen Hopkins,[86] William Ellery.[87]

lative business. In January 1776, he was chosen speaker of the house. Afterwards, September 12th, he was elected delegate to the Continental Congress for the term of one year, but he did not take his seat until November 4th. The vote which sanctioned the measure of the Declaration of Independence had been taken on the 4th of July that same year, but it was only during the ensuing November that with others similarly circumstanced, he was enabled to sign his name to that historic document. He removed to Exeter in 1779, and shortly afterwards abandoning medical practice, he settled on a farm at Merrimack. Afterwards, he became a State Senator. He wrote several political articles for the newspapers, also a metaphysical work on the origin of sin, but it was never published. He died at Newberryport, Mass., June 24th 1803.

[81] To him we have already alluded, as taking a spirited and an early part in the struggle for liberty.

[82] This illustrious leader in the Revolution was born in Boston, Mass., Sept. 27th 1722. He received an excellent education at the Boston Latin School, and afterwards he entered Harvard College. He died in Boston, Oct. 2nd 1803. His Life has been written by W. V. Wells in three volumes. Boston, 1865.

[83] He was born in Braintree, Mass., October 31st 1735. He graduated at Harvard College in 1755, and embraced the legal profession. He became the leader of that great revolutionary movement. During the war, his patriotic services were incalculable. Afterwards, he became second President of the United States.

[84] He was born in Boston, Mass., 11th of March 1731. At first, he embraced the clerical profession; then he practised as a lawyer. He became a delegate to the Provincial Congress in 1774, 1775, and afterwards from 1774 to 1778, he served on various committees of the Continental Congress. He was appointed in years subsequent to fill various important legal offices in his native state, until he became a judge of the Supreme Court. He died in Boston, May 11th 1814.

[85] He was born in Marblehead, Mass., 17th July 1744; and he was elected to the Continental Congress, in January 1776. He subsequently rendered very useful services during the Revolutionary War. He became a staunch upholder of Jeffersonian principles and of the Republican against the Federalist party. His partisan redistribution of the State of Mass. caused the well-known term of "Gerrymander" to prevail afterwards in United States politics. He married Anne, daughter of Charles Thompson, Secretary to Congress, and afterwards he became Vice-President of the United States, in 1812. He died in Washington, D.C., 23rd Nov. 1814.

[86] He was born in Providence, R.I., March 7th 1707, and followed the occupation of a farmer. In 1755, he became Governor of that colony. For the General Congress in August 1774, he was elected with Samuel Ward to represent Rhode Island. In May 1775, he was elected to the Second Congress, and in the Third Congress, he had William Ellery as his colleague. He died in Providence, R.I., July 13th 1785.

[87] He was born in Newport R.I., Dec. 22nd 1727. He was a lawyer, and he was elected in May 1776, to the Continental Congress, when he served with good judgment on its various committees, especially on its Board of Admiralty. He died in Newport, R.I., February, 15th 1820.

CONNECTICUT.—Roger Sherman,[88] Samuel Huntington,[89] William Williams,[90] Oliver Wolcott.[91]

NEW YORK.—William Floyd,[92] Philip Livingston,[93] Francis Lewis,[94] Lewis Morris [95]

NEW JERSEY. — Richard Stockton, [96] Doctor John Wither-

[88] He was born in Newtown, Mass., April 19th 1721, and he was apprenticed to a shoemaker, but by self-study he acquired a knowledge of the law. Then he became a Judge of the Common Pleas in 1759, and afterwards a Judge of the Superior Court of Connecticut. In August 1774, he was elected a delegate to the Continental Congress. He died in New Haven, Conn., July 23rd 1793.

[89] He was born in Windham, Conn., July 3rd 1731, of humble origin, but afterwards he became a lawyer, and settled in Norwich. He was a member of the Continental Congress from 1776, and he served as President of that body from 28th of September 1779, to July 6th 1781. He retired from Congress in 1783, and he served as Governor of Connecticut from 1786 until his death, June 5th 1796

[90] He was born in Lebanon, Conn., April 18th 1731. He had a seat in the Continental Congress, from 1776 to 1777, and he was a member of the Council of Safety. He died in Lebanon, August 2nd 1811.

[91] He was born in Windsor Conn., Nov. 26th 1726. He was elected to the Second Continental Congress, and took his seat in Jan. 1776. During the Revolutionary War, he was appointed to organise the militia, and even he took part in the warlike operations. In 1796, he was chosen Governor of Connecticut, which office he continued to discharge, until he died in Litchfield, Conn., Dec. 1st 1797.

[92] He was born in Brookhaven, Suffolk County, New York, December 17th 1734. He was selected as delegate to the Philadelphia Congress of 1774, and again he was sent to the first Continental Congress of 1775. He continued to be a representative in every succeeding Congress to 1782. He died at Weston, Onieda County, N.Y., Aug. 4th 1821.

[93] He was born in Albany, N.Y., Jan. 15th 1716, and he graduated in Yale College. He was chosen member for the first Continental Congress in 1774, and he continued a member to his death, which took place in York, Pa., on the 12th of June 1778.

[94] He was born in Llandaff, Wales, in March 1713, and educated in Westminster School, England. When a young man, he emigrated to America, and embarked in trade. He was elected a member of the first Continental Congress in 1775, and in 1779 he was appointed Commissioner of the Board of Admiralty. Afterwards, he retired into private life, and he died in New York city, December 19th 1803.

[95] He was a native of Morrisania, N.Y., and born in 1726. He graduated at Yale College in 1746. He was chosen as delegate to the Congress of 1775, and he served with distinction to the year 1777. When peace had been proclaimed, he repaired to his estate which had been ruined by the British Army, and he died there, January 22nd 1798.

[96] He was born near Princeton, N.J., October 1st 1730. He studied law, and he visited Great Britain in 1766-7. He laboured to reconcile the differences between the mother country and the Colonies at first, but when elected a member of the Continental Congress, June 21st. 1776, he advocated Independence. During the war, he was made prisoner and his estate was ruined by the British. He died at Princeton, February 28th 1781.

spoon,[97] Francis Hopkinson,[98] John Hart,[99] Abraham Clarke.[100]

PENNSYLVANIA. — Robert Morris,[101] Benjamin Rush,[102] Benjamin Franklin,[103] John Morton,[104] George Clymer,[105] James

[97] He was born in Gifford, Haddingtonshire, Scotland, February 5th 1722, and he graduated in Edinburgh University in 1742. Afterwards, he emigrated to America. He was elected to the Continental Congress in June 1776, and he served there until 1783. He was the author of many works. For two years before his death he was blind, and he departed this life, near Princeton, N.J., September 15th 1794.

[98] He was born in Philadelphia, September 21st 1737, and he followed the legal profession. He was addicted to literary pursuits, and he visited Ireland and England in 1766. He removed to Bordentown, N.J., and in June, 1776, he was chosen as a representative for the Continental Congress. He was a man of singular accomplishments, and the author of the celebrated national song, "Hail, Columbia." He died May 9th 1791.

[99] He was born in Hopewell Township, N.J., in 1708, and he followed the occupation of a farmer. He served in the Congress 1774, 1775 and 1776. After his farm and stock had been destroyed by the Hessians, he returned home in 1777. He passed the remainder of his life in agricultural pursuits. He died in 1780.

[100] He was born in Elizabethtown, N.J., February 15th 1726. On the 21st of June 1776, with Richard Stockton, Dr. John Witherspoon, Francis Hopkinson, and John Hart, he was elected by the Provincial Congress to the Continental Congress, and instructed if necessary to declare for Independence. He afterwards served with great distinction in many important civil employments. He died in Rahway of a sun-stroke, September 15th 1794.

[101] He was born in Liverpool, England, January 20th 1734. At the age of thirteen, he emigrated to the United States. As a merchant in Philadelphia he became wealthy. In 1775, he was sent as a delegate to the Continental Congress. On the 4th of July, he declined to vote for the Declaration of Independence, but when it was adopted he appended his name. His commercial credit helped the United States greatly, when in need of money. He died in Philadelphia, May 8th 1806.

[102] He was born in Byberry Township, Pa., Dec. 24th 1745. He graduated in Princeton College in 1760, and he embraced the medical profession. He became very eminent in that capacity. He was elected to the Continental Congress, while he was surgeon to the Pennsylvania navy. In 1778, he resigned his military office, and returned to Philadelphia, where his medical professorship and practise were continued. He published or edited several medical works. He died in Philadelphia, April 19th 1813.

[103] This most illustrious man was born in Boston, Mass., Jan. 17th 1706. His highly distinguished career cannot well be epitomised; but, it is set forth very comprehensively in "The Works of Benjamin Franklin, containing several Political and Historical Tracts not included in any former Edition, and many Letters offical and private not hitherto published, with Notes and a Life of the Author," by Jared Sparks, in ten fine 8vo volumes. Eighth edition published at Boston in 1844. He died in Philadelphia, April 17th 1790.

[104] He was born in that part of Chester County, now included in Delaware County, Pa., in 1774. Having filled some civil offices, he was a delegate to the first Congress in 1774, and he gave the casting vote of Pennsylvania for Independence in 1776. He did not long survive, and he died at the place of his birth in 1777. No authentic portrait of him remains.

[105] He was born in Philadelphia, Pa., in 1739. He pursued a business career, and during the agitation against taxation without representation, he was a member of the Council of Safety. On the 29th of July, he

Smith,[106] George Taylor,[107] James Wilson,[108] George Ross.[109]

became one of the first continental treasurers, and he converted all his specie into continental currency. He was not present at the adoption of the Declaration of Independence, having been only appointed a delegate on the succeeding 20th of July, but his signature was afterwards affixed to it. Having served his country very usefully, he withdrew from public life in 1796. He was the author of various essays, political, literary and scientific. He died in Morrisville, Buck's County, Pa., January 23rd 1813.

[106] James Smith was Irish born, and as generally conjectured, most probably between 1712 and 1720, for the exact date has not been discovered. His father a respectable farmer had a numerous family of children. He left Ireland, when his second son James was quite a young lad, and he settled on the west side of the Susquehanna River, in the State of Pennsylvania. James received a superior education, under the immediate care of Rev. Dr. Alison, Provost of the College at Philadelphia. His elder brother had been established in the practice of the law at Lancaster, when James studied under his guidance and followed the same profession. He afterwards settled in the County of York. When the relations between Great Britain and her Colonies became strained, one of the earliest and most resolute—although then advanced in years—was James Smith. As one of the three delegates from the County of York for the Province of Pennsylvania, he was active and intelligent. Soon he returned to York, when decisive measures were taken, and there on his own responsibility, he commenced raising and drilling the first volunteer company formed in Pennsylvania for opposing the British. He took the command as captain, and when the volunteer companies of that district had become sufficiently numerous to form a regiment, he was unanimously chosen as its colonel. His decision of character, courage, high abilities and influence, mainly contributed to overcome the Quakers and those peace sentiments, which their peculiar religious dogmas served to promote in Pennsylvania. His ardent military spirit set such an example, that twenty thousand volunteers were soon enrolled within that important province alone. Colonel Smith became a member of that Convention, which assembled in Philadelphia. On the 15th of July 1776, he assisted to frame a new Constitution, for the State of Pennsylvania. He had been previously named on a committee, to prepare instructions for the representatives of a State Convention. He then wrote a celebrated Essay "On the Constitutional Power of Great Britain over the Colonies in America." However, the Convention appointed nine members of the Congress—of these Colonel Smith was one—and the Declaration of Independence superseded the report of that Committee. Colonel Smith continued to be a member of that Convention while he was a member of Congress, and as such he was ever busily employed on important Committees, requiring the exercise of great judgment and business capacity. This unremitting labour he continued until March 1777, when he desired retirement, his private interests having suffered considerable detriment during his absence from home. But he was not long allowed much needed repose, as the country required great self-sacrifice. During its darkest days of embarrassment and of trial, he was again elected to serve in Congress, where he was enabled to render most valuable assistance to the cause of his adopted country. At last, when Colonel Smith had a fair prospect regarding the happy termination of war, in November 1778 he finally withdrew from Congress to his family and professional business. He was a great personal and political friend of Washington, and an ardent Federalist. He died in York, Pa., July 11th 1806.

[107] George Taylor was an Irishman by birth, and the son of a clergyman —of what particular denomination is not known. He was born in the

DELAWARE.—Cæsar Rodney,[110] George Read,[111] Thomas McKean.[112]

year 1716. When a boy, he received a liberal education, and he was destined by his father for the medical professon. However, having a turn for adventure, poor and friendless when still very young, he stepped on board a vessel bound for New York or Philadelphia, and embarked as a redemptioner to seek his fortune. On landing in Philadelphia, he was engaged by a Mr. Savage, to labour at his iron works in Durham, a village on the River Delaware. He was soon promoted to be chief clerk in that establishment, which situation he retained for several years. After the death of Mr. Savage, George Taylor married his widow, and entered as master upon the business, which he prosecuted for a number of years, and conducted with such intelligence, skill and perseverance, that he acquired a competent fortune. He afterwards retired from Durham, having purchased a considerable estate on the Lehigh, in the County of Northampton, where he commenced business anew. There he resided and became most popular. Soon he was deemed to be a suitable representative, and he was elected accordingly to the Colonial Assembly, in 1764. His record was highly useful and honourable, until he was obliged to retire after some years of public service, to revive his private business, which had become impaired during his absence. However, in Oct. 1755, he was again elected as member of the Provincial Assembly. At once, he was placed on all the standing committees of the House. The political ferment was then increasing, and George Taylor was selected as an active, a zealous and vigilant member for the Committee of Public Safety, which became the principal revolutionary engine in that Province. At first, it was difficult to urge the Pennsylvania representatives to enter upon decisive and warlike measures. However, in November, 1775, instructions were given by the people to their delegates in Congress not to adopt any course which might lead to or result in a separation. During winter and spring, the arbitrary proceedings of the British Government changed the bent of popular feeling, and the instructions of June 1776 removed the former prohibition. After an obstinate struggle and only carried in the division by a majority of one, Pennsylvania resolved to throw in her fortunes with the other Colonies then in revolt. A new delegation was next chosen, and more popular representatives were selected to replace the dissentients. George Taylor was then elected to Congress. Giving entire approval to the Declaration of Independence, on the 4th of July, with many others, he set his signature to the promulgation of that Congressional vote, although the document was not then ready for formal signature. On the 2nd day of August 1776, George Taylor's name was officially signed on that engrossed parchment roll, which bore its contents. He only spent one year in Congress after the realization of his favourite object, when he withdrew from all public life and employments to his estates in Easton. There he departed this life on the 23rd February 1781, at the age of sixty-five. He was greatly respected because of his public and private integrity of character; while he was loved by his adopted country on account of his labours and devotion to its interests, safety and liberties.

[108] James Wilson was born near St. Andrew's, Scotland, Sept. 14th 1742, and having received a University education at St. Andrew's, Glasgow and Edinburgh, he emigrated to America about 1763. Afterwards, he practised in the legal profession. He became a delegate to the Provincial Convention of January 23rd 1775. He was present at the opening of Congress on the 10th of May. After the legislature of Pennsylvania had withdrawn its restrictions from the votes of its representatives, James Wilson still resisted separation on the 8th of June 1776; but afterwards, on the 1st of July, he and John Morton were the first of the Pennsylvania delegates to vote for Independence. His subsequent career was varied and distinguished. He died at Edenton, N.C., August 28th 1798.

[109] George Ross was born in New-

MARYLAND.—Samuel Chase,[113] William Paca,[114] Thomas Stone,[115] Charles Carroll of Carrollton.[116]

castle, Del. in 1730. He was elected to the first Continental Congress in 1774, and he continued to represent his State to 1777, when he was obliged to resign owing to ill health. Admitted to the bar, afterwards he became Judge of the Admiralty Court for Pennsylvania. He died in Lancaster, Penn., in July 1779.

[110] He was born in Dover, Del., Oct. 7th 1728. He became an active politician, and he was elected as delegate to the Continental Congress in 1774, and again in March 1775. While serving in Congress, he also took part in the military organisation and movements for Deleware. He died in Dover, Del., June 29th 1784.

[111] George Read, son of John, a Dublin man, who emigrated to America, and who settled in Cecil County, Province of Maryland. George was born there, Sept. 17th in 1733, and he was the oldest of six brothers. Not long after his birth, their father moved to the adjoining Province of Delaware, on the head waters of Christiana River. His son George was educated for a time at a Seminary in Pennsylvania, and afterwards he was under the care of Rev. Dr. Allison of New London, in the same Province. He was admitted to the Philadelphia bar at the early age of nincteen years, after a course of diligent and careful study, and afterwards he became Attorney-General. He warned the British Government regarding the danger of taxing the Colonies without giving them direct representation in Parliament. In 1763, he married Gertrude, the sister of George Ross, signer of the Declaration of Independence. For twelve years he was a member of the Deleware Assembly, when he wrote an address of King George III. Having resigned the Attorney-Generalship, he was elected a delegate to the first Congress which met in Philadelphia in 1774. Although at first he voted against Independence, he afterwards signed the Declaration, and thenceforward he was one of its staunchest supporters. He was a delegate to the Annapolis Convention of 1786, which gave rise to the Convention that met in Philadelphia in 1787, and which framed the Constitution of the United States. He was twice elected U.S. Senator. In 1793 he resigned that dignity to assume the office of Chief Justice for Deleware. He died in Newcastle, Del., Sept. 21st 1798. William T. Read published his Life and Correspondence at Philadelphia in 1780.

[112] Thomas McKean, who afterwards became President of Congress, was an Irish-American; both his parents having been natives of Ireland, they emigrated to America, and settled in New London, then a lately formed township in Chester County, Province of Pennsylvania. He was the second child of his parents, who had four sons and one daughter. He was born on the 19th of March 1734. With his oldest brother Robert, Thomas was placed at an early age under care of Rev. Dr. Allison, the instructor of so many scholars who attained eminence during the Revolutionary War. He studied for the bar and soon became celebrated as a lawyer. From 1774 to 1783, he was a member of the Continental Congress, and the only representative that served there from its opening to the peace. He rendered most valuable services in all its deliberations and transactions. He became President of Congress in 1781, and in that capacity he received the despatches of General Washington announcing the surrender of Lord Cornwallis. With professor John Wilson, he published "Commentaries on the Constitution of the United States," London, 1790. His policy as a leader of the Republican party caused Thomas Jefferson to be elected as President. Thomas McKean died in Philadelphia, Pa., on the 24th of June 1817.

[113] He was born in Somerset Co., Md., April 17th 1741, and he became a lawyer. He was elected member of the Continental Congress in 1774, and he served in successive Congresses to 1778. After the peace he visited England in 1783. On his return to America, he held various judicial positions. He died June 19th 1811.

VIRGINIA.—George Wythe,[117] Richard Henry Lee,[118] Thomas Jeffer

[114] He was born in Wyehall, Harford Co., Md., October 31st 1740. He graduated in the Philadelphia College, and afterwards sailing for England, he entered the Middle Temple, London, as a Law student, and he was called to the bar in 1764. He was elected a delegate to Congress in 1774, and he served in that capacity to 1779. Afterwards, he was elected Governor of Maryland, from 1782 to 1786. He died in his native place during 1799.

[115] He was born in Charles Co., Md., in 1743, and he embraced the legal profession. He was elected in 1774 to the Continental Congress, and he served in that of 1775 and 1776. In after life, he followed a political career, and he practised at the bar. He died in Alexandria, Va., October 5th 1787.

[116] Charles Carroll, of Carrollton, the last survivor among the signers of the Declaration of Independence, was an Irish-American. His grandfather Daniel Carroll, a native of Littamourna, in Ireland, was a clerk in the office of Lord Powis, during the reign of James II. In the latter part of the seventeenth century, Daniel left England for America, and settled in Maryland, where he was appointed agent to Lord Baltimore, the chief proprietor of that Colony. He was also Judge and Registrar of the Land Office. His son Daniel was born there in 1702, while Daniel's son Charles, the subject of this notice, was born on the 20th of September, 1737, at Annapolis, Maryland. At eight years of age, he was placed in the English Jesuits' College of St. Omer, in France, to receive his education. In his own State, founded by Catholics on the principle of religious toleration, the education of Catholics had been proscribed by law in the days of his youth. The established Church of England had been supported in Maryland by taxing the people of all other creeds, and after Mr. Carroll's return to that Colony, over the signature of the "First Citizen," he attacked the validity of the law which imposed such a tax. In December 1774, he was appointed one of the committee of correspondence for the Province, and in 1775, he was elected one of the Council of Safety. On the 7th of December of that year, he was elected delegate to the Revolutionary Convention. To distinguish himself from other members of his family, when attaching his signature to the Declaration of Independence, he signed Charles Carroll, of Carrollton. He afterwards served with great zeal, in various civil capacities. On the 4th of July 1828, he laid with much ceremony the foundation-stone of the Baltimore and Ohio Railroad. He was greatly respected for his virtues, and he died in Baltimore, November 14th 1832. His life has been written by John H. B. Latrobe.

[117] He was born in Elizabeth City Co., Va., in 1726, and having received an excellent education, he adopted the legal profession, and rose to eminence at the bar. In August 1775, he was appointed a delegate to the Continental Congress. Subsequently he became Chancellor of Virginia. He died in Richmond, Va., June 8th 1806.

[118] He was born in Stratford, Westmoreland Co., Va., Jan. 20th 1732, and at an early age he was sent to England for his education. He returned to America in 1752, when he applied to legal studies. He was elected to the house of Burgesses of Virginia, and he became an ardent advocate for revolution. In August 1774, he was chosen as delegate to the first Continental Congress. During the second Congress, he drew up the Address to the people of Great Britain. Afterwards, he zealously served on various Committees. On the 30th of November 1784, he was chosen President of the Continental Congress. He assisted in framing the United States Constitution. At first, he was an Anti-Federalist, but afterwards he became an ardent supporter of Washington's Administration. In 1792, his health began to fail, and resigning his seat in the Senate, he retired to his estate at Chantilly, Va., where he died, June 19th 1794. His grandson, also named

son,[119] Benjamin Harrison,[120] Thomas Nelson, Jun.,[121] Francis Lightfoot Lee,[122] Carter Braxton.[123]

NORTH CAROLINA.—William Hooper,[124] Joseph Hewes,[125] John Penn.[126]

Richard Henry Lee, published in two volumes "Memoir of the Life of Richard Henry Lee and his Correspondence." Philadelphia, 1825.

[119] This illustrious man was born in Shadwell, Albemarle Co., Va., on the 2nd of April 1743. His father was a planter and of Welsh extraction, while his son entered the College of William and Mary at seventeen, and there he became a diligent student. Afterwards, he embraced the study of law, of which he acquired a profound knowledge. At the age of twenty-six, he was elected to the house of Burgesses, Va., and in 1772, he married Mrs. Martha Skelton, a beautiful and childless young widow, whose father's great wealth and estates soon fell into their possession. Jefferson took a leading part in the agitation for Independence, and from the time he entered Congress in 1775, he became an earnest and a useful member. Having resigned his seat in Congress, after writing the celebrated Declaration, in January 1779 he was elected Governor of Virginia. To him it became a position of great anxiety, as he was obliged to keep up the Virginia regiments and supplies for the armies of Washington and Gates In June 1782, he was elected to Congress, and afterwards his public career was devoted to all the great measures then debated. In 1785, he was appointed Minister Plenipotentiary to the King of France. Afterwards, he became President of the United States. On the 4th of March 1809, he retired into private life, and he died at Monticello, Va., on July 4th 1826. The Life of this celebrated man has been written in three volumes, by Henry S. Randall, and it was published in New York, in 1858.

[120] He was born in Berkeley, Charles Co., Va., about 1740. In 1774, he was appointed one of the delegates to Congress, and four times he was elected to a seat in that body. Afterwards, he was elected Governor of Virginia. He died in April 1791.

[121] He was born in Yorktown, Va., December 26th 1738, and at fourteen years of age, he was sent to school at Eton, England. Afterwards, he graduated at Cambridge University. He returned to America in 1761, and he became a member of the House of Burgesses, Va. After serving in Congress, owing to severe illness, he was obliged to resign his seat in 1777. Afterwards, however, both in a military and civil character he became very active, until he was elected Governor of Va., in 1781. He served at the Siege of Yorktown, but the rest of his life was passed in retirement. He died at Hanover Co., Va., January 4th 1789.

[122] He was a younger brother of Richard Henry Lee, and born at Stratford, Westmoreland Co., Va., October 14th 1734. He was educated at home by a Scotch clergyman, named Craig. In 1766, he was elected to the House of Burgesses. In 1775, on the resignation of Colonel Bland, he was elected delegate to the Continental Congress, and he was re-elected the three following years. In the spring of 1779, he retired from Congress, and he died in Richmond, Va., April 3rd 1797

[123] He was born in Newington, King's and Queen's Co., Va., Sept. 10th 1736, and he was educated at William and Mary College. In the House of Burgesses he opposed the arbitrary acts of Lord Dunmore with great spirit. On the 15th of December 1775, he was chosen to succeed Peyton Randolph, as delegate to the Continental Congress. He served, after the Revolutionary War, in the State Legislature. He died in Richmond, Va., October 10th 1797.

[124] He was born in Mass., June 17th 1742, and he studied law. Afterwards, he settled in Wilmington, N.C. He was elected to the Continental Congress in 1774, but, after the Declaration of Independence, his private affairs became embarrassed, and he was obliged to return home. In 1781, he removed to Hillsboro', where he died in October 1790.

SOUTH CAROLINA.—Edward Rutledge,[127] Thomas Heywood, Jun.,[128] Thomas Lynch, Jun.,[129] Arthur Middleton.[130]

[125] He was born in Kingston, N.J., in 1730, and in after life he was engaged in business. In 1774, he was chosen as a delegate to the Continental Congress. He fell into ill-health, and died in Philadelphia, Pa., Nov. 10th 1779.

[126] He was born in Caroline Co., Va., May 17th 1741, and he studied law in after life. He was admitted to the bar in 1762. He removed to Greenville Co., N.C., in 1774. He was chosen for the Continental Congress, Sept. 8th 1775, to supply a vacancy. He was re-elected in 1777 and in 1779. Having discharged many civic duties with great credit he retired into private life in April 1785. He died in September 1788.

[127] Edward Rutledge, soldier, statesman and signer, was an Irish-American having been the son of an Irish-born emigrant, Dr. John Rutledge, who left his country in 1735, and who settled in Charleston, South Carolina. There Edward, the youngest of seven children, was born in November 1740. He was educated by a classical instructor from New Jersey, and in 1759 he was sent as a law-student to England. He returned to Charleston, and remarkable for eloquence, he commenced practising law there in 1773. Talents like his were well calculated to promote the cause of Independence. Rutledge was among the first selected members to the Continental Congress in 1774. The Revolution found him on the side of liberty, and while the contest lasted, with voice, pen and sword, he resisted the pretensions of England. On the evacuation of Charleston, having been released as a prisoner of war, he returned to his home, and resumed his professional practice. He was elected Governor of South Carolina in 1798, but he did not live to complete his term. He died in Charleston, S.C., January 23rd 1800.

[128] He was born in St. Luke's parish, S.C., 1746. He studied law in England, and having travelled much through Europe, he returned to South Carolina. He was a delegate to Congress from 1775 to 1778. In 1780, he became Judge of the Criminal and Circuit Court of S.C., and at the same time he bore a military commission. He commanded a battalion of Volunteers at the Siege of Charleston, S.C., in 1780, and he was made prisoner there on the 12th of May. During his imprisonment, the British wrecked his estate and property. In 1790, he was a member of the Constitutional Convention of S.C.; but next year, he retired to his estate, where he died on the 6th of March 1809.

[129] Thomas Lynch, Jun., the youngest of the signers, was of Irish descent, as his great grandfather left Ireland and dwelt in South Carolina, soon after the settlement of that colony commenced. His youngest son was named Thomas; and he left a son Thomas, called the Elder, to distinguish him from a son again called by the father's name, and especially denominated Thomas Lynch, Junior, the subject of this sketch. The latter was born on the 5th of August 1749, at his father's residence, a plantation on the North Santee River, in Prince George's parish South Carolina. At the age of twelve, he was sent to Eton College in England, and from it he entered Cambridge University. He studied law in the Temple; but he returned to America in 1772, and devoted himself to cultivating his father's plantation on the North Santee River. His father had been sent to the first Continental Congress, but his failing health compelling him to resign, Thomas Lynch, Jun., commissioned as a Captain of the first regiment embodied in South Carolina, was unanimously elected by the Provincial Assembly to supply his place. He accordingly took a seat in the Congress of 1776, but his health failed in the autumn of that year, and he was compelled to return to South Carolina. Still in a declining state, he desired to embark in some neutral ship for the South of France. About the close of 1779, he took passage for St. Eustacius, but the vessel in which he sailed when a few days out at sea was seen for the last time and was never

GEORGIA.—Button Gwinnett,[131] Lyman Hall,[132] George Walton.[133]

The Declaration of Independence received almost unanimous approval among the people throughout the Confederated States.[134] On the 9th of July, in New York, Washington caused it to be read before his assembled army. Congress put forth all its energies, to secure unity of action and harmony of sentiment among the people.[135] In turn, these learned the necessity for prompt co-operation in civil and military

afterwards heard of, while most probably it was lost in a tempest.

[130] He was born in Middleton Place on Ashley River, S.C., June 26th 1742. The son of a rich planter, he was sent to England for his education, which was received at Harrow and Westminister Schools; afterwards, he graduated in Cambridge University. He made a tour through Europe, and returned to S.C. in 1763. He went back to England in 1768, and again sailed for America in 1771. He succeed his father Henry in the Continental Congress in 1776. In 1780, he was active in the defence of Charleston, where he was made prisoner. After the Revolutionary War ended, he served as Senator in his native State. He died at Goose Creek, S.C., January 1st 1787.

[131] He was born in England about 1732, whence he emigrated to Charleston, S.C. and afterwards he removed to Savannah, Ga. At a meeting of the Provincial Assembly held there Jan. 20th 1776, he was appointed a representative in Congress. He became a candidate for the commission of brigadier-general of a Continental Brigade to be levied in Georgia, in opposition to General Lachlan McIntosh. Being unsuccessful, Gwinnett sent his opponent a challenge. Having been mortally wounded in the duel, fought on May 15th, he lingered for a few days, and he died May 27th 1777.

[132] He was born in Connecticut, 1725, and he removed to Georgia in 1752, where he practised medicine. In 1774 and 1775, he was influential in urging Georgia to join the other Colonies. In the latter year, he was elected by the parish of St. John to Congress, and he served there until 1780. He afterwards served as Governor of Georgia for one term, and he died there October 19th 1790.

[133] He was born in Frederick County, Va., in 1740. He began life as a carpenter, but afterwards he applied to the study of law. He was active in stirring up Georgia to take part in the Revolutionary movement. From February 1776, to October 1781, he served in Congress, and he commanded a battalion when Savannah was taken by the British. In 1789, he was chosen Governor of Georgia. He died in Augusta, Ga., Feb. 2nd 1804. For much more extended notices of the various signers of American Independence, the reader may consult Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," edited by James Grant Wilson, and John Fiske, assisted by various capable contributors. See also, N. Dwight's "Lives of the Signers of American Independence," the "Encyclopedia Americana," and "American Biographical and Historical Dictionary," published at Boston, 1832, 8vo. Also Ed. O'Meagher Condon's "Irish Race in America," chap. xii. Glasgow and London; no date, 8vo.

[134] Their various forms of Government are to be found, at a later period, in the Rev. William Jackson's "Constitutions of the several Independent States of America, Declaration of Independence, Articles of Confederation, Declaration of Rights, Non-Importation Agreement, Petition to the King," &c. This is a thick 8vo volume, printed in 1783. It has a portrait of General Washington.

[135] Soon after the Declaration of Independence, Benjamin Franklin, John Adams and Thomas Jefferson were appointed a Committee to prepare a great seal for the infant Republic. Jefferson's design with the motto "E Pluribus Unum," and in his own handwriting, is now in the office of the Secretary of State in Washington. However, the design for the Seal was deferred, until finally settled, in the year 1799.

affairs. The recommendation of Congress, that the several States should organize governments for themselves, and based on democratic principles, was quickly followed.[136] Soon after the Declaration of Independence, most of the States formed their own Constitutions.[137] The Constitutions of Virginia, New Hampshire, New Jersey, Delaware, Pennsylvania, North Carolina, South Carolina, and Maryland[138] were formed in 1776. An independent Constitution was formed for New York[139] and Georgia, in 1776. Massachusetts adopted a State Constitution in 1780[140]. These organizations were chiefly intended to direct internal and local administration. However, those articles of association, which had been adopted after the Declaration of Independence, did not form a sufficient Constitution for the nation, nor a reliable bond for united action. Defects were soon ascertained as the Revolution progressed. Nearly all power had been vested in the separate States, and Congress had little authority left to direct public affairs.

## CHAPTER XIII.

**Invasion of New York by General and Admiral Howe—Battle of Long Island—American Evacuation of New York—Futile Attempts to establish Peace—Engagements in New York—Operations in the North—Taking of Fort Washington—The American Army retreats into New Jersey—Its weakened Condition—The Battles of Trenton and Princetown—The Americans recover Ground in New Jersey.**

THE storm of war was now gathering to descend on the devoted heads of the patriots. On the 2nd day of July, General Howe sailed from Halifax with the garrison of Boston, and having a large reinforcement of other troops, he appeared before New York, on the 12th July. He then landed on Staten Island.[1] Ten days later, his brother Admiral Lord Howe arrived from England with an additional contingent

[136] See "Political Reflections on the Charters of the American Colonies," by an American, 1782, 8vo.

[137] See "The Constitutions of the several States, the Declaration of Independence, Articles of Confederation, and Copies of Treaties with Foreign Powers," 1783, 8vo.

[138] Many amendments to it were afterwards made. See "An Historical View of the Government of Maryland, from its Colonization to the present Day."

[139] See Jabez D. Hammond's "Political History of New York to December, 1840." Two volumes 8vo. Published at Albany and Syracuse, 1843.

[140] Connecticut continued to be governed by the Royal Charter received from Charles II. until the year 1818, when a new Constitution was adopted. In like manner the Royal Charter obtained from Charles II. served for the Government of Rhode Island, until the year 1841. Then the suffrage was intended to be extended in favour of every white male citizen of the United States residing in Rhode Island, and in 1844, the present State Constitution was framed and ratified by its people. See "Gazetteer of the World," Vol. xi., p. 269.

[1] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. ix., chap. i., pp. 37 to 44.

of forces.[2] They had been appointed as Commissioners to treat for peace; but, on opening a direct communication with General Washington, the latter declined to receive their letter which did not recognise his military title. Lord Howe had also issued a proclamation, that the Commissioners were empowered to grant pardon to persons and colonies returning to their allegiance. As a last effort to avoid hostilities, Lord Howe addressed Dr. Franklin, who answered, that preparatory to any proposition of amity, in his opinion, Great Britain would be required to acknowledge the independence of America, to defray the expenses of the war, and to indemnify the Colonies for burning their towns.[3]

Meantime, General Washington made the best dispositions he could for the defence of New York. He occupied Brooklyn on Long Island, while earth-works were thrown up at suitable positions along the East River and the Hudson. However, the English fleet of Lord Howe and the land forces of his brother General Howe, amounting soon to 25,000 regular soldiers, were too powerful to be long resisted. Troops under Lord Cornwallis, with 8,000 Hessians, had also arrived, and likewise Admiral Sir Peter Parker with his fleet. To Generals Green and Sullivan successively, the defence of Long Island was assigned, while Washington himself remained in New York; but, as the British in great force invaded Long Island, on the 22nd August and at some distance from the American lines, General Putnam[4] in right of his rank as second in command was sent on the 24th, to take charge of that important post. Not more than 8,000 volunteers and militia could be mustered for the defence; so that, outnumbered nearly five to one, it seemed impossible to withstand the advance of regular troops.[5] The Maryland and Pennsylvania troops fought through the onset with great determination; and, in the battle which soon took place, Moylan, Hand, Thompson, and Butler were conspicuous for their valour. After landing on Long Island, the British were successful, on the morning of the 27th, in getting possession.[6] Howe attacked General Putnam in front, and turned his flank on the left. With a British loss of 60 killed and 250 wounded, the Provincials, in killed, wounded, drowned in the morass, or taken prisoners, numbered 3,000.[7] While the battle was raging, Washington marched to the assistance of Putnam, but the struggle was over before

[2] See "History of New York City during the American Revolution, with a Collection of original Papers, now first published," with a folding Plan. New York, 1861, 4to.

[3] See John Adolphus' "History of England from the Accession of King George the Third," Vol. ii., chap. xxix., pp. 412 413.

[4] See Jared Sparks' "Life of George Washington, Commander-in-Chief of the American Armies, and First President of the United States," &c., Vol. i., chap. viii., p. 120.

[5] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. ix., chap. iv., p. 86.

See Lossing's "Pictorial Field Book of the Revolution," Vol. ii., chap. xxxi., pp. 804 to 811.

[7] We read however, "though the Court endeavoured to stifle it, it was soon know that the Hessians had committed great butchery, and refused to give any quarter."—Horace Walpole's "Journal of the Reign of King George the Thrd, from the year 1771 to 1783," Vol. ii., *p.* 70.

he could arrive on the field.[8] On that day, the bravery of Lord Sterling, at the head of the Delaware and Maryland regiments, was most admirable; but, fighting with desperate bravery, they were at last surrounded, and their leader was obliged to surrender. Colonel Johnston at the head of the Jersey Militia fought well, until shot in the breast, when his command dispersed. Many of the Americans who surrendered were massacred in cold blood; those who surrendered as prisoners of war were crowded together on a vessel moored near New York, where hundreds were carried off by malignant fever, and where incredible privations had to be endured.[9] General Sullivan was there made prisoner, with a large part of his force. Though charged with sorrow for the Americans, the events of that day shed little glory on the British, and on their mercenaries.[10]

Full of anxiety for the safety of his troops, and finding that the evacuation of Long Island was necessary, Washington had despatched secret orders, to have all available boats sent from New York and the Hudson, while he still maintained a position in front of the British encampment. These means for transportation were to arrive after dark. All night on the 29th, the American commander was engaged in arranging the order for outposts to deceive the enemy, while gradually the different companies were moved towards the shore. Thus obliged to retreat, Washington ably conducted the movements of his troops.[11] He managed most adroitly, notwithstanding the proximity of the two camps to pass away unsuspected by the enemy, and in wonderful order, with his infantry, artillery and baggage.[12] The defeated Americans, before daylight on the morning of August 20th, were ferried across the East River to New York. They were aided by a thick fog, and the last boat was out of range, before General Howe discovered this movement. During the execution of their attempt, the English, whose forces were so numerous and well disciplined, should have succeeded in cutting off the American retreat, had the energy and intelligence of Howe equalled the number and courage of his men.

Although he knew the evacuation of New York was now inevitable, still General Washington defended it, in accordance with the decision

[8] Born of Irish parents, Alexander Craydon took part in the battle of Long Island. He was captured at Harlem Heights. He wrote a volume, intituled "Personal and Revolutionary Memoirs," which is very interesting.

[9] John Byrne, born in Ireland, was a private of the line. He was captured and confined on board the infamous Jersey prison ship. The English Admiral offered him a large bribe and speedy promotion to desert his adopted country. Byrne answered by shouting: "Hurrah for America!" For this he was subjected to the most cruel tortures, an account of which he afterwards gave; but he remained true to the last, and lived to see America a free nation.

[10] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. ix., chap. iv., p. 96.

[11] See Cyrus R. Edmund's "Life and Times of General Washington," Vol. i., chap. xv. to xviii.

[12] See "The Annual Register" for the year 1776, Vol. xix. The History of Europe, chap. v., pp. 165 to 173.

of his council of war, and until he could ascertain the determination of Congress. Having only 7,700 men under his command, still with great address,[13] he held the city for a considerable time. His opinions were so judiciously urged upon Congress, that he received a reply, which authorised him to leave no part of his army in New York a moment longer than was proper for the public service.[14] After the disastrous battle on Long Island, thinking the Americans were awed by the power of England, Lord Howe offered to treat with them as rebels, not doubting but they would submit to whatever terms he should propose. With such an object in view, his prisoner General Sullivan was selected to bear a vague message to Congress, which he presented on the 2nd of September ; and, at length, it was resolved to send a committee of their body to learn, whether Lord Howe had any authority to treat with persons authorised by them, what that authority was, and to hear his propositions.[15] Edward Rutledge, Benjamin Franklin, and John Adams, were the delegates sent to wait upon him. Those negotiations resulted in nothing, because the Americans insisted, that England should acknowledge their national independence, and such an admission exceeded the powers entrusted to Lord Howe.[16]

After some delay, General Howe crossed the East River with his large army. The Americans made a futile effort to oppose his landing, and then directed their march to Harlem Heights. The stores and baggage least wanted were removed beyond Kingsbridge. The sick and wounded were also moved to the New Jersey side of the Hudson. The Provincials were now disheartened, and the militia began to desert their devoted commander,[17] so much so, that the Connecticut contingent dwindled down from six to two thousand in a few days. Luckily for the safety of the faithful soldiers, the British general had little knowledge of their actual defencelessness, while obeying a man whose noblest traits of character were developed under the most depressing circumstances. Fearing to risk a battle with his ill-armed and disheartened troops, Washington judiciously resolved to construct lines of defence, which the English might find it difficult to attack. On the 15th of September, the English took possession of New York, General Washington having previously retired within his lines at Kingsbridge.[18] Afterwards, until the end of that war, the British remained masters of the city.

Meantime, the patriots to the north of New York occuiped a strong position, known as the Heights of Harlem. On an elevation over two hundred feet above the Hudson, the steep summit was crowned with a five-sided

[13] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. ix., chap. vi., pp. 118 to 122.

[14] This correspondence is to be found in the American State Papers.

[15] See "The Annual Register" for the year 1776, Vol. xix. The History of Europe, chap. v., pp. 173, 174.

[16] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. ix., chap. vi., pp. 108 to 118.

[17] See Jared Sparks' "Life of George Washington," chap. viii., pp. 194 to 196.

[18] See Horace Walpole's "Journal of the Reign of King George the Third, from the year 1771 to 1783," Vol. ii., p. 83.

earthwork, mounting thirty-four cannon. This fort was designated Fort Washington. Still higher on the summit of the Palisades in New Jersey, Fort Lee had been erected, and General Greene had been assigned there to command. General Putnam was engaged between both points to obstruct the river navigation, against an expected approach of the English fleet from below. Instead of attacking them in this condition, and overwhelming them in their unpreparedness, Howe procrastinated. After a month's delay, that supine commander began to move against the Americans, then partially reinforced. At length, a part of the British fleet sailed up the Hudson, and a strong force landed at Frog's Neck, where the East River opens into Long Island Sound.[19] Here, the American outposts gave them a very warm reception. They were obliged to retreat, however, and evacuate New York Island.

When General Howe had descended on Frog's Neck, he resolved to throw himself behind the American lines, having in view the cutting off their communication with the interior. This plan was well conceived, but executed in so sluggish a manner, that Washington had time to remove from Kingsbridge, and to take up a strong position on the right of the English army. His dispositions were judiciously conceived and ably executed. The American commander had brought his army from Kingsbridge and across the Harlem River. He had entrenched himself on Fordham Heights, still facing the British advance. Skirmishes only were ventured upon by the vastly superior army of Howe, and these most frequently redounded to the advantage of the Americans.[20] It was now clear to them, that they fought under a most able general, who for two whole weeks kept the British army at bay. Retreat was resolved upon, however but Washington chose a new position on White Plains, in the State of New York.

The British had now resolved to storm the fortifications at Fort Washington, and for this purpose, a ship of war moved up the Hudson to cut off communication between the American forces on either bank. On the 28th October, Howe appeared in presence of the American army. On Chatterton Hill, Washington had constructed field works to cover his right. These were attacked by the British and Hessians. They were bravely met by McDougal, with fourteen hundred men, keeping the position for a considerable time, against a vastly superior force. After a short but severe action, the Americans were driven from that post,[21] with a loss in killed and wounded of less than one hundred men, while that of the English and Hessians was at least two hundred and twenty-nine.[22] But, as the day was far spent when this was accomplished, the

[19] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol ix., chap. x., pp. 174 to 176.

[20] See Marshall's "Life of George Washington, Commander-in-Chief of the American Forces," Vol. ii., chap. viii., pp. 572 to 578.

[21] See Jared Sparks' "Life of George Washington, Vol. i., chap. ix., pp. 210, 211.

[22] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. ix., chap. x., pp. 180 to 182.

English general postponed an engagement until the following morning, still waiting for reinforcements from New York, although his army was nearly equal to the entire American forces in front. During the darkness, having caused corn-stalks to be pulled up from the roots, Washington piled them together with the lumps of earth clinging to them and sticking outwards, so that on the face they seemed to be solid fortifications. Behind these apparently strong redoubts were stationed defenders. Deceived by such stratagem, General Howe was afraid to renew the attack next morning. Meantime, about five miles distant, Washington selected a much stronger position on the heights of North-Castle, and these were fortified. Thither his guns, stores, baggage and men were removed; while, undecided as to his course of action, after waiting a few days, General Howe ingloriously retreated to Kingsbridge, thus failing to seize the line of the Hudson Ri-er. Moreover, Washington improved the opportunity thus afforded him, by fortifying the lower part of the river and the Highland passes from West Point to Peekskill, where the Hudson flows through the most romantic mountain defiles.[23] The strong post held was known as Fort Washington, and it was entrusted to the command of Colonel Magaw. Meanwhile, the Jersey side of the Hudson was secured by a portion of the army, to provide for an anticipated retreat into the State of New Jersey; for, Washington knew not the design of General Howe, whether to advance directly on him, or to adopt the better plan for intercepting him from a retreat, in the direction of Philadelphia.[24]

To create a diversion, Sir Guy Carleton from Canada was to sail by way of Lakes Champlain and George, and thence he was to march through a desert region on Albany, whence he could descend the Hudson to co-operate with the movements of General Howe.[25] The Americans had a small flotilla on Lake Champlain, while the British had vessels prepared in sections, which were joined together, and on these their soldiers were embarked. The Continentals were there commanded by Benedict Arnold, who displayed his habitual courage and fertility of resources, both in the dispositions made to receive the enemy, and afterwards, in escaping from the most imminent danger.[26] Under great disadvantages, the Americans fought an action on the Lake, with great courage and ability, October 11th 1776;[27] but, outnumbered two to one,

[23] See Weems' "History of the Life of Washington," New York, 1806, 8vo.

[24] See A. Bancroft's "Essay on the Life of General Washington," Worcester, 1807, 8vo, and Boston, 1844. Two Volumes 12mo.

[25] General Carleton had applied for 4,000 men, as an addition to his force: but the king knowing that 2,000 Highlanders had exhausted the recruiting in Scotland, recommended to Lord North to engage foreigners, at a reasonable charge, and as he remarked, "for they do not cause an additional half-pay when the business shall be completed,"—"The Correspondence of King George the Third with Lord North, from 1768 to 1783," Vol. ii., Letter 378, p. 45.

[26] See "The Annual Register," for the year 1777, Vol. xx. History of Europe, chap. i., pp. 1 to 6.

[27] See John Adolphus' "History of England from the Accession of King George the Third," Vol. ii., chap. xxix., pp. 393, 394.

they lost more than half their vessels, escaping with the remainder to Ticonderoga. This latter place was not attacked, however, for General Gates, who commanded in the northern department, had strengthened the American positions. Crown Point was occupied by Carleton for a short time, but further enterprise for that season was abandoned by the British.

Meanwhile, Howe had followed the American general, and remained two days in his presence, arranging his batteries and preparing for a pitched battle, which he intended to fight on the 31st October.[28] The subaltern American leaders were over-confident in the strength of Fort Washington, and long as possible, their council of war resolved on its maintenance. Washington held a different opinion, regarding its capabilities as a position for resistance. Orders were given to have all the stores which were deemed not necessary for its defence removed thence in case of an attack. In like manner, provision was made for evacuating Fort Lee. A heavy fall of rain during the interval induced General Howe to defer the combat until November 1st. Meantime, Washington sent General Putnam with 5,000 troops to the Jerseys, while General Lee was directed to remain with about 7,500 Continental troops and militia, in presence of the enemy; for Howe's movements were not sufficiently decisive of what course he intended to pursue. Generals Lee and Greene had resolved on holding Fort Washington to the last extremity, and reinforcements chiefly of Pennsylvanians were ordered by them, contrary to their Commander-in-Chief's express instructions. In the meantime, Washington's attention was mainly directed towards effecting a secure retreat in the direction of New Jersey; for, with his weakened resources, he could not reasonably expect to cope with the enemy. General Howe had now finished the erection of his batteries on Fordham Heights, and he had succeeded in bringing up securely some armed flat-boats, during the night of the 15th, when these passed the American position.[29] General Magaw made the best disposition possible for a defence, but his lines were too far extended, and these had to be covered on many sides. On the 16th of November, a furious cannonade commenced from the Heights at Fordham, and it continued until noon. The Hessians and the Highlanders then commenced the attack. These troops met with a stubborn resistance, but with a vast numerical superiority of force, they forced their way over rocky heights and felled trees. The first and most daring movement of the British was conducted by General Knyphausen, against the American garrison at Fort Washington.[30] It was held by three thousand men and gallantly defended, but it was carried by assault, with the heavy loss of

[28] See De Witt's "Histoire de Washington et de la Fondation de la Republique des Etats-Unis." Paris, 1859, 8vo.

[29] Their various posts are distinctly shewn on a Map of Operations after the Evacuation of New York, in Jared Sparks' "Writings of George Washington," &c., Vol. iv., p. 160.

[30] See W. Bodham Donne's "Correspondence of King George the Third with Lord North from 1768 to 1783," Vol. ii., Letter 380, pp. 48, 49.

more than 500 men by the victors. The American loss was 150, in killed and wounded; but, 2,600 were captured, with the loss of their artillery and some of their best arms. Then, General Howe sent Lord Cornwallis with an army across the Hudson to Fort Lee, which was immediately evacuated.[31]

By this time, the Howes had lost many men, and they pressed for recruits from the administration. The Government determined to carry on a vigorous campaign, and they now treated for a force of 10,000 Wirtembergers and other Germans.[32] Owing to such adverse circumstances, Washington determined to evacuate the peninsula of New York, and to carry out a war of posts on the mainland. Meantime, Howe retired into New York Island, giving six thousand men to Cornwallis, whom he sent in pursuit of an army, too weak and dispirited to resist an immediate onslaught.[33]

Now it was found, that the design was to cut Washington off from Philadelphia, where the American Congress had assembled. Then, the General broke up his camp on the Hudson, and by forced marches, he manœuvred so as to take the lead with his small army of four thousand men. General Charles Lee was ordered to join with his division near Northcastle. He disobeyed that order, notwithstanding, hesitating and delaying until the close of the year. Then carelessly separating himself from the army, he was surprised and made a prisoner by the enemy.[34] At that time, Lee had the repute of being an able general, and this mischance caused great depression among the Colonists, while it proportionally elated their invaders.[35]

This was a period of great distress for the Americans. Their conventions and assemblies in the States of New York, New Jersey and Pennsylvania were disturbed and disorganized, in consequence of the military movements. Apathy and despair prevailed among the people, while fearing the chances of war, many prominent persons made their submission to the royalists. In addition to the regular army, a multitude of loyalists, as the American English partisans were called, came flocking from all quarters to their camp. The rumours spread by the royalists were also most damaging to the national cause. During their movements, the condition of the American army, now greatly demoralised, was most deplorable. It was reduced in numbers, clothed in rags, broken in spirit, destitute of clothing, tents, cavalry and artillery. Discouraged by their various reverses and despairing of the

[31] See John Adolphus' "History of England from the Accession of George the Third," Vol. ii., chap. xxix., p. 431.

[32] See Horace Walpole's "Journal of the Reign of King George the Third, from the year 1771 to 1783," Vol. ii., p. 92.

[33] See Glass, "Washingtonii Vita," New York, 1835, 8vo.

[34] See John Adolphus' "History of England, from the Accession of King George the Third," Vol. ii., chap. xxix., pp. 433, 434.

[35] "It has lately been discovered, that while detained as a prisoner of war, Lee was concerned in a plot to betray his country."—John R. G. Hassard's "History of the United States of America," chap. xxvii., p. 182.

result, their forces deserted in great numbers.[36] At this time, his troops were so disheartened, that Washington became disgusted with the position he occupied, yet fortitude never failed him. Aware that rumours prejudicial to his military character were afloat, and that his maligners alleged against him a want of energy, dash and enterprise, which was injurious to the service, he is said to have desired an honourable death in the ranks of the enemy. It was with difficulty, that his aides-de-camp and friends could restrain him from carrying out that fatal resolution.

Knowing the formidable forces against which he was obliged to contend, Washington addressed a strong letter to the President of Congress, urging the inefficiency of militia serving for short terms, and insisting on the necessity of forming a permanent army. His judgment and reasoning were approved, and it was resolved to re-organize his regiments on such a system. The ordinary term of service was only for a year, so that the recruits were merely becoming soldiers, when they quitted his army. As to the militia, they left the service whenever they pleased. In compliance with his suggestion, Congress now determined to enroll eighty-eight battalions,[37] bound to serve for three years, and to assign landed property for those who should adhere to their standards, until the conclusion of the war.

In the midst of all these disasters, Washington's intrepid fortitude filled his subordinates with astonishment. He kept an army together, and offered resistance to the enemy, under circumstances more adverse than any general had ever before experienced. Notwithstanding his mind being slow in operation, and little aided by invention or imagination, it was usually sure in calculation and in drawing conclusions. Hence the common remark of his officers, regarding advantages he derived from holding councils of war. It required all his firmness and wisdom to keep his army from disappearing altogether, while effecting his military arrangements and improvements.

With a large force, Lord Cornwallis[38] was now enabled to invade New Jersey, and to threaten Philadelphia. Ever cautious, vigilant and enterprising, Washington was undismayed, however, in prospect of the dark clouds gathering around the American cause, while his judgment was clear as his courage was cool and collected. Meanwhile, he was obliged to retire before the army of Cornwallis. Nevertheless, he occupied the best positions in the country, during that retreat, while he acted with

[36] See Gosch "Washington und die Befreiung der Nord-amerikanischen Freistaaten." This work was published at Glessen, 1815, in three volumes, 8vo.

[37] "Massachusett's Bay and Virginia were the highest on this scale, being to furnish fifteen battalions each; Pennsylvania came next, and was rated at twelve; North Carolina nine, Connecticut and Maryland eight each; New York, and the Jerseys, the latter considered as one Government, were, in consequence of their present situation, set no higher than four battalions each."—"The Annual Register" for the year 1777. Vol. xx., History of Europe, chap. i., p. 9.

[38] His actions as a general are recounted in Gleig's "Lives of the most eminent British Military Commanders," London, 1832.

extraordinary judgment and firmness under all difficulties.[39] A grave crisis then seemed impending, and Congress made every effort to raise troops for his support. Foremost among the recruits, the militia of Pennsylvania flocked to his standard. After some time, Washington saw himself at the head of seven thousand men; yet, it was a force altogether insufficient to cope with the British. That army, which had failed in Canada on the death of Montgomery, with the remnants of four regiments, marched about this time into Washington's camp, but in a wretched plight. It was now commanded by General Gates. Under the command of General Sullivan, Lee's division also arrived. Notwithstanding its melancholy condition, the American army was enabled to crawl along the Delaware. Still were they pursued by Cornwallis, with his veteran regiments, in greatly superior numbers and appointments. On the 8th of December, Washington retreated to Trenton, and crossed the Delaware river at that point, securing all the boats on the Jersey side. He then cantoned his army in the State of Pennsylvania. The British advanced to the line of the Delaware, but there pursuit ceased, for they had resolved on taking up winter quarters at that late season of the year. They went quietly into cantonments, awaiting the operation of frost, rain, snow, destitution and nakedness, to destroy an enemy, whose forces they might have manfully encountered and annihilated at that time. Soon afterwards, a brigade of three regiments, comprising 1,500 Hessians, took possession of Trenton. A letter intercepted by Washington conveyed intelligence, that the British only waited for the river to freeze over, as now seemed likely, when they were to form in full strength and push onwards to Philadelphia. Something decisive should then be attempted, under very unfavourable conditions. Meantime, Congress had issued from Philadelphia, on hearing news of the enemy's advance, and established a residence at Baltimore. There they passed a resolution, which made Washington a military dictator for six months.

About this time, General Joseph Reid suggested to him the dispersed situation of the British army, and the opportunity afforded for striking a blow, which might retrieve their cause in public opinion, and even recover that ground which had been lost. His suggestion was approved by the American commander, who formed the daring plan of attacking successively all the British posts on the Delaware. If successful in whole or in part, he was bound to erase the impression made by his losses and retreat; he should also compel his adversary to act on the defensive, and no longer to cover New Jersey; while it was probable, he might remove from Philadelphia the imminent danger that then threatened it.[40]

The time of service for numbers among his troops had now nearly expired; and so miserably equipped were they—especially those under

[39] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. ix., chap. xii., pp. 194 to 212.

[40] See Gordon's "History of the American Revolution," Vol. ii., p. 319.

Sullivan—that the General in chief could not greatly hasten matters for the enterprise meditated. Having collected some boats, he choose Christmas night, while ice was floating in the river and snow falling, to collect 2,400 men, about nine miles above Trenton.[41] Notwithstanding his great desire to unite secresy with despatch, the Tories had contrived to forward intelligence of Washington's movements to General Grant commanding at Princetown and to Colonel Rahl at Trenton. The American General boldly determined, however, to cross the Delaware, and thus attack the enemy who failed to attack him; but the attempt was made under great difficulties, and the passage of his men occupied the whole night. When formed early in the morning, his troops moved forward in two columns, under Generals Greene and Sullivan. They reached Trenton about eight o'clock on the morning of the 26th of December. General Ewing, at the head of the Pennsylvania militia, was to cross the river a mile below the town, to secure the Assunpink, so as to cut off retreat in that direction. The Hessians were astonished at such a season by the approach of an enemy, but preparations were made for a defence of the town. Under cover of a snow storm, General Sullivan drove in the Hessian pickets at one end of the town, while Washington dislodged them at the other. They then retreated into Trenton, but the American columns pressed on, and soon captured the cannon planted in the streets to oppose them. The gallantry of Colonel John Stark was conspicuous in this engagement. At the battle of Trenton and crossing of the Delaware, Commodore Thomas Read[42] rendered valuable assistance, while commanding a battery of guns made up from his frigate, and with which he raked the stone bridge across the Assunpink. After an obstinate resistance, the Hessians were completely routed. Their leader Colonel Rahl was hit by a musket ball and fell from his horse mortally wounded. Struck with terror, the Hessians now turned to retreat by the Princetown Road; but, they were intercepted on their right by Colonel Hand's riflemen, and on the left by the Virginian corps. Nothing now remained for them but an unconditional surrender. This was a great achievement for the Americans, and it elated their people throughout the colonies, when it became known that after the battle a whole brigade of Hessians had been marched prisoners to Washington's camp, and afterwards paraded as such through the streets of Philadelphia. [43]

Meantime, Lord Cornwallis had returned to New York, on his way home to England, when news of this reverse had reached him. The British troops in New Jersey were now ordered to concentrate at Princetown, and he returned to take command, while General Howe was

[41] See the "History of New Jersey," p. 227.

[42] His brother James also fought gallantly at the battle of Trenton. Afterwards at Princetown, Brandywine and Germantown. he was distinguished, and for his bravery he was promoted from being first lieutenant to the rank of colonel. See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. v., p. 198.

[43] See "The Annual Register" for the year 1777, Vol. xx., History of Europe, chap. i., pp. 14 to 17.

expected to send him reinforcements. On the 2nd of January 1777, the British marched to Trenton, and Cornwallis rested for the night in sight of the American lines. He was at the head of a very superior force, while large bodies of men at Princetown were then ready to join him. During the night, finding himself in a position of extreme peril, Washington marched his army around that of Cornwallis, and at sunrise on the morning of the 3rd, he reached Princetown. There, he found the British reserves starting to take part in the expected battle at Trenton. A severe action now ensued, and early in the engagement the gallant General Hugh Mercer [44] fell, when the militia he commanded began to give way. Mounted on a white charger, General Washington then rode forward to restore the battle. During this crisis, he was exposed to the most extreme danger. His noble example infused a new spirit among the men. Moreover, Colonel John Stark was foremost in the fight, where he exhibited all that daring and intrepidity peculiar to himself.[45] Another great service was rendered by Major Kelly,[46] who demolished the bridge over Stony Brook, near Princetown, in the face of Cornwallis's army. Colonel John Nixon and Captain Moore [47] also greatly distinguished themselves in this battle. After an obstinate struggle, the Americans remained masters of the field. The British who escaped fled towards Trenton to join Lord Cornwallis. The loss on the side of the English was estimated at about 200 in killed and wounded, about 230 being made prisoners, of whom fourteen were officers;[48] while the Americans only lost about 30 men.[49]

Soon, however, an overwhelming force was collected to meet the Americans, who were obliged to fall back upon Morristown.[51] Between that place and the Highlands of the Hudson, Washington posted his army in strong positions. In some of the colonies, the enlisting of apprentices and of Irish indentured servants had been permitted, with a promise of indemnification to their former masters. Thus, in the opening season of 1777, reinforcements began to arrive from various quarters. Whereupon, towards the close of May, Washington advanced his posts to Brunswick, and fortified them along a chain of hills; while

[44] He was born in Aberdeen, Scotland, about 1720. See an account of him in Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. iv., pp. 300, 301.

[45] See the account of him in "New Hampshire Worthies."

[46] He was a native of Ireland.

[47] He was born in Ireland.

[48] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. ix., chap. xiv., pp. 244 to 250.

[49] In a letter, dated December 27th 1776, and addressed to the President of Congress, Washington describes the battle of Trenton. See Jared Sparks' "Writings of George Washington," &c., Vol. iv., pp. 246 to 249. In a letter, dated January 5th 1777, he describes the battle of Princetown. See *Ibid.* pp. 258 to 261. A map at p. 248 illustrates the battles of Trenton, Dec. 26th, and of Princetown, Jan. 23rd.

[51] While here, on 22nd of January 1777, Washington appointed Stephen Moylan to command a regiment of dragoons as colonel. See *Ibid.* p. 293.

in that position, he commanded a view of the British encampment.[52] Nevertheless, without risking a general engagement, for which his troops were altogether unequal, the American general attempted many daring enterprises during the winter, so as to keep the enemy in a constant state of distress and insecurity.[53] Except New Brunswick and Perth Amboy, Cornwallis deemed it necessary to relinquish every other post in New Jersey. Public confidence in the judgment and practical resources of Washington was now greatly restored; and accordingly, the members of Congress returned again to resume their sittings in Philadelphia.

## CHAPTER XIV.

**Distinguished Volunteers arrive from Europe—Congressional Commissioners sent to France—Ex-Governor Tryon's Expedition—English Plan of Campaign—General Burgoyne advances towards New York from Canada—The Battle of Bennington—Defeat and Surrender of Burgoyne's Army—General Howe's Expedition—Battle of Brandywine—Capture of Philadelphia—Battle of Germantown—The Americans Winter at Valley Forge – The Conway Cabal.**

THE regards of all lovers of liberty in Europe had been directed towards America, from the very commencement of that heroic struggle which had been carried on; while numbers of brave and eminent men resolved on sharing the trials and dangers that as a necessary consequence ensued.[1] Towards the close of 1775, Count Casimir Pulaski[2] set out from France

[52] See "The Annual Register," for the year 1777, Vol. xx., The History of Europe, chap. vii., pp. 119, 120.

[53] The despatches of Washington date from his Head Quarters at Morristown, N.J., from January 7th 1777, to the 28th of May following.

[1] "Joseph Galloway, a native of Maryland, but long a resident of Pennsylvania before the Revolution, was one of the best informed men in the colonies, and probably, with the exception of Franklin, had no equal as to his accurate knowledge relating to the general condition of affairs in the country. He was an early and active sympathizer in the American cause until the Declaration of Independence, when he became a Loyalist. During a visit to England he was examined in June 1779, before an investigating committee of the House of Commons, and his testimony has been frequently published. When asked as to the composition of the Rebel Army his answer was, "I can answer the question with precision, there were scarcely one-fourth natives of America; about one-half Irish, the other fourth were English and Scotch." He might have stated more in detail, that the fourth part was composed of some English, very few Scotch, and more Germans, or Dutch, as they were called from Pennsylvania and the Valley of Virginia, chiefly under the command of Muhlenberg, and these formed the Eighth Virginia Regiment. I have estimated that about one-fourth of all the American officers and even a larger proportion of those more trusted by Washington, were Irish by birth or descent."—Dr. Thomas Addis Emmett's Address before the American Irish Historical Society, January 19th 1899.

[2] This distinguished soldier was born at Winiary, Poland, March 14th 1748, and already he had a distinguished military career, in resisting the enemies of his own country. See Joubert, "Les Revolutions de Pologne de 1767 a 1775."

to offer his services to Congress, and there he formed the Foreign Legion, destined to furnish very effective aid in the Revolutionary War. The renowned Polish Patriot Thadeus Kosciuszko[3] joined the American army as a volunteer, October 18th 1776, and subsequently he was appointed military engineer, with the rank of Colonel. Likewise, Baron de Kalb, an Alsatian, and Lieutenant-Colonel in the French service, tendered his service to the American agents Franklin and Silas Deane in Paris, and Congress bestowed on him the rank of Major-General, November 7th 1776. He arrived in America about the beginning of the following year.[4] An accomplished and experienced Prussian officer, Lieutenant General Frederick William Baron de Steuben, offered his services as a volunteer, and in 1777 he arrived in New Hampshire.[5] Foremost and ever to be remembered among those foreign sympathisers with the American cause was the French Marie-Jean-Paul-Roch-Yves, Gilbert Motier Marquis de Lafayette,[6] then only nineteen years of age. He was an ardent lover of liberty, and he had already embraced a military career. Having purchased a ship at his own expense, Lafayette sailed for America to offer his sword without pay to the Congress. Having many obstacles to overcome, in the summer of 1777 he landed at Georgetown in Carolina. Arriving in Philadelphia he was appointed July 31st Major General of the American Army, by an eulogistic resolution of Congress. In 1777, Colonel Thomas Conway had been induced by Silas Deane to leave France for America.[7] An Irish officer in the service of Piedmont, Roche Fermoy also volunteered for the service.[8] Many other volunteer soldiers of distinguished birth and means embarked for the Colonies, expecting to receive on their arrival positions of rank, which the American Commander could not justly assign, without giving displeasure to several of his own meritorious officers.[9]

[3] See Leonard Chodzko's "Histoire militaire, politique et privee de Kosciuszko," and "Histoire de la Revolution de 1794," par un Temoin occulaire. Paris, 1797.

[4] See an account of him in Rev. J. T. Headley's "Washington and his Generals." New York, 1846.

[5] He afterwards became Inspector-General of the American army. See an account of him in Sparks' "American Biography," and written by Francis Bowen.

[6] His career has been set forth in "Memoirs, Correspondence et Manuscrits du General La Fayette," published by his family at Paris in 1837, 1838, six volumes, 8vo.

[7] See an account of him in "Encyclopedia Americana," Vol. ii., pp. 398, 399.

[8] During the New Jersey Campaign of 1778, he was at the head of the Corps of Observation, appointed to receive and communicate reports of the enemy's movements to General Washington. He resigned his commission afterwards to Congress, and retired to France. Then he published an essay on "The Military Resources of Ireland." See Thomas D'Arcy McGee's "History of the Irish Settlers in North America," chap. viii., p. 57.

[9] For a general account of these, the reader may consult an admirable work of the Hon. William Sullivan—nephew of General John Sullivan—and United States Representative for Boston. It is intituled "Public Men of the Revolution." To it has been prefixed a sketch of the author, by John T. S. Sullivan. Philadelphia, 1847, 8vo.

As no very cordial relations had existed between France and England at this time, and as Franklin while in England—with a clear insight regarding eventualities—had sounded the disposition of the French cabinet through their ambassador in London; acting mainly on such advice, Congress had resolved on sending him, with Silas Deane and Arthur Lee, as diplomatic commissioners to negotiate a treaty; and accordingly, leaving the United States in October 1776, they had reached Paris before the end of that year.[10] They desired an international alliance, if possible; or at all events, they hoped to obtain aid in money, in soldiers, and in arms, from the French Government, by indirect means. Those Commissioners attempted likewise to engage Spain and Holland on their side. The national sympathies of France had been long enlisted on the side of America.[11] The time was well employed, however, and especially influential and earnest, the diplomatic Benjamin Franklin ably represented the interest of his country in Paris.[12] Although the American Commissioners were kindly received in France, yet did King Louis XVI. and his cabinet hesitate to conclude any formal alliance which should involve a declaration of war against England.

In the spring of this year, the Americans were known to have collected a considerable quantity of stores at Danbury, Connecticut.[13] The ex-royalist governor of New York, Tyron, organised an expedition to capture them in the month of April. Accordingly, having assembled a force of two thousand men, he landed them near Norwalk, on Long Island Sound.[14] Thence he marched to Danbury, which he entered on the 26th of April, and, having destroyed the magazines, he set fire to the town. Under Generals Wooster and Arnold, a militia force was hastily assembled, and Tyron was three several times attacked while retreating to his ships. In one of these skirmishes the brave General Wooster was mortally wounded. Tyron escaped to his ships, however, but with a loss of about two hundred men.[15] The British had collected stores at Sagg Harbour, on the eastern end of Long Island. At this time, General Parsons was in command of some Connecticut recruits at Newhaven, and he conceived the project of surprising the enemy.[16] Accordingly, in the month of May, Lieutenant-Colonel Meigs, at the head of nearly two hundred men, crossed the Sound in whale-boats. They destroyed a quantity of stores, burned eleven or twelve vessels; they killed six men, and took ninety prisoners. Very few escaped under

[10] An interesting account of these transactions may be found in Jared Sparks' Life of Benjamin Franklin, prefixed to his Collected Works. Vol. i., chaps. ix., x., pp. 415 to 437.

[11] See Henri Martin's "Histoire de France," Tome xvi., Septieme Partie, Liv. civ., p. 412.

[12] See "Memoires de la Vie privee de Benjamin Franklin, ecrits par Lui-Meme, et addresses a Son Fils." Published at Paris, A.D. 1791. 8vo.

[13] See "The Annual Register" for the year 1777, Vol. xx. The History of Europe, chap. vii., pp. 116 to 118.

[14] Benson J. Lossing's "Pictorial Field-Book of the Revolution," Vol. i., chap. xviii., pp. 401 to 410.

[15] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. ix., chap. xx., pp. 346 to 348.

[16] See "The Annual Register" for the year 1777, Vol. xx. The History of Europe, pp. 118, 119.

cover of the night.[17] In fine, the Connecticut band safely returned and without the loss of a single man.

In the spring and summer of 1777, vast preparations were being completed on the part of England, to subjugate her rebellious colonists.[18] Every effort had been made by her ministers to gain recruits, both for her army and navy. On the kinglings of Germany reposed their chief hopes;[19] and by force, impressment, theft of foreigners, and other means, their recruits and yagers were enlisted, but to the intense disgust of the army and the people.[20] Numbers of vagabonds and loose fellows were added to a force, that was generally discredited in Europe as in America; however, to the credit of the larger German states of the Empire, be it stated, that Frederick of Prussia, and the Court of Vienna in the name of Maria Teresa and Joseph the Second, threw obstacles in the way for carrying out that odious traffic in human blood. Many of the recruits deserted before they had been well embodied, and most of them were driven reluctantly on ship-board by sheer force.[21]

It was well known to the Americans, that an expedition had been fitting out in Canada, which was destined to march in the direction of the river Hudson and New York. It had been decided, as the plan of campaign about to open in midsummer, that while General Howe should leave a strong force in New York, to meet an advancing army from Canada, he should conduct a still larger armament to effect the capture of Philadelphia. Both these movements were projected so as to be nearly simultaneous. Meantime, the American general kept on the watch in Jersey, where his winter quarters were set. Another small colonial force, chiefly of militia, had been assembled under General Schuyler, a most meritorious officer. He remained in the interior of New York, to oppose the expected invasion from Canada.[22] The men, however, were very badly armed and equipped. The main body of 2,500 men commanded by General St. Clair had been stationed at Ticonderoga, which was strongly fortified. There the military stores were imprudently left, by directions of General Schuyler.

On the 14th of June, Congress decreed that the American flag should have thirteen stripes, alternate white and red, to represent their thirteen

[17] See "The Life of George Washington, Commander-in-Chief of the American Forces," etc., by Hon. John Marshall, Vol. iii., chap. ii., pp. 98 to 104.

[18] See Doheny's "History of the American Revolution," chap. xi.

[19] Some shameful avowals on this subject have been brought to light by the publication of Memoirs and correspondence of public men who were contemporaneous with this period.

[20] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. ix., chap. xviii., pp. 313 to 317.

[21] "The whole number of recruits and reinforcements obtained from Germany amounted to no more than thirty-five hundred and ninety-six. It is noticable, that they all came from Protestant principalities; for the landgrave of Hesse, though a Roman convertite, can hardly pass for a Catholic Prince. Besides, the British government, from its constitution, preferred the employment of Protestants in the army, as well as in all other departments." *Ibid.*, pp. 317, 318.

[22] See Hon. J. Marshall's "Life of George Washington," Vol. iii., chap. i., pp. 3 to 5.

states; and that the union emblem be thirteen stars, white in a blue field, representing a new constellation.[23] Colonel William Barton performed one of the bravest acts recorded in the American Revolution. On the night of July 13th, he crossed Narragansett Bay with a small body of men, passed three British frigates, and landed at the shore, about one mile distant from the house where General Prescott was sleeping. By a cunning move, he eluded the guards, and arriving at the door of Prescott's house, a negro attendant shoved his head through a panel of the door. Prescott was carried away without waking the guard.[24] Soon afterwards, the British willingly exchanged General Lee for him.

During the previous winter, Lieutenant-General Burgoyne with the British ministers had arranged an expedition, of which he was to have chief command on returning to Canada, whilst he was to supersede Sir Guy Carleton in the military direction. Troops began to arrive there, during the spring and summer, when the St. Lawrence was free from ice. Desiring to co-operate with General Howe, Lieutenant-General Burgoyne had been placed at the head of a considerable army at Quebec;[25] this was to move southwards by way of Lake Champlain, while a detachment was to ascend the St. Lawrence river so far as Lake Ontario. To that force had been attached bands of wild Indians, in great numbers; while Lord George Germain,[26] the secretary of the war department, and King George III. were most desirous of having those ferocious auxiliaries,[27] to the great dislike of humane British and German officers in Canada. While that expedition marched southwards against St. Clair, a force of 3,700 regulars and militia were left to guard Canada.[28] Meantime, General Burgoyne issued a manifesto to the revolted colonies, accompanied with vain-glorious threats of his arms, which could only diminish the lustre of his success if he obtained any, and which were sure to expose him to derision in the event of a failure.[29] Having proceeded to Lake Champlain, Burgoyne met the Indians near Crown Point, on the 20th June, 1777. There

[23] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. ix., chap. xx., p. 352.

[24] For this intrepid action, Congress awarded Colonel Barton a sword, and a tract of land in Vermont. See Benson J. Lossing's "Pictorial Field-Book of the Revolution." Vol. ii., chap. iv., pp. 75 to 77.

[25] During this year, the number of men who sailed from Great Britain and Ireland for Canada amounted to seven hundred and twenty-six; while three thousand two hundred and fifty-two arrived in New York.

[26] See an account of him in the "Historical and Posthumous Memoirs of Sir Nathaniel William Wraxall 1772-1784," edited by Henry B. Wheatley, F.S.A. Vol. i., pp. 383, *et seq.* London, 1884, 8vo.

[27] Joseph Brant, the Mohawk warrior, had been engaged by the secretary to rouse the fury of the tribes so as to make them clamour for leaders of their own, and who would be sure to indulge them in all their excesses. See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. ix., chap. xviii., pp. 320 to 322.

[28] See "The Annual Register" for the year 1777, Vol. xx. The History of Europe, chap. viii., pp. 144, 145.

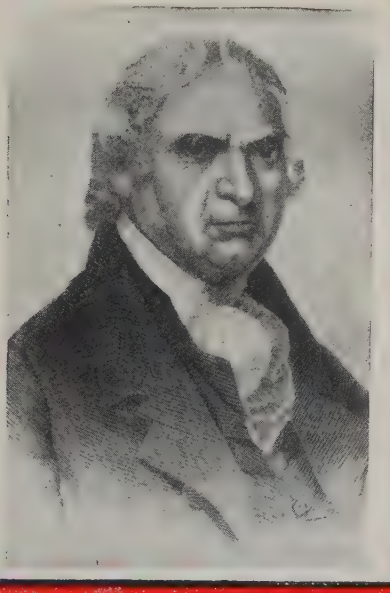
[29] See Horace Walpole's "Journal of the reign of King George the Third, from the year 1771 to 1783," Vol. ii., p. 130.



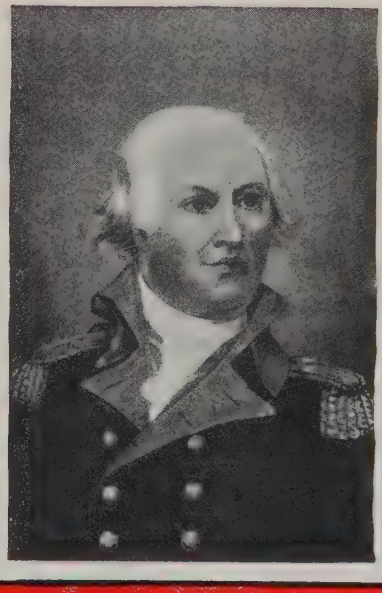
THADDEUS KOSCIUSKO,
Colonel of Engineers in the Continental Army.



MARIE-JEAN-PAUL-ROCH-YVES GILBERT MOTIER
Marquis de Lafayette, Major-General U.S Army.



GEORGE CLINTON,
Governor of New York



NATHANIEL GREEN,
Major-General U S. Army.

he halted for a few days, to make the necessary dispositions for an attack on Ticonderoga[30]. He then issued orders to advance, and while their naval force, moving from Canada towards New York, kept the centre of Lake Champlain, the British land force, with order and caution, marched along the opposite shores in separate divisions towards Fort Ticonderoga and Mount Independence[31].

On the 5th of July, Burgoyne invested Ticonderoga with some of the finest regiments in the British service, aided by those mercenaries from the German principalities. Their fleet was anchored beyond the range of guns from Fort Ticonderoga. That place was overlooked by a steep hill called Mount Defiance. By incredible efforts, the summit was crowned with a battery of artillery, which must soon have demolished the American defences. There General St. Clair was posted, and calling a council of his officers, they decided to retreat from a place they could not expect to hold, in the face of so large an attacking army[32]. On the 6th of July, they retired in good order. St. Clair sent off his cannon and stores by boats to Skenesborough, now Whitehall, at the upper end of Lake Champlain, while he led the garrison towards the same point by a road which his soldiers had helped to clear. Meantime, the light division of the British Army followed, under command of Generals Frazer and Reidesel[33]. On the 7th of July, the British under General Frazer were engaged with the American rear-guard under Warner at Hubbardstown, where a sharp action took place. Nobly assisted by Colonel Eben Francis and his New Hampshire regiment, Warner turned on them and commenced the attack.[34] The British were like to have been worsted, when Reidesel with his Germans came up to their assistance. However, Colonel Francis held the enemy at bay until he fell. In this action, the British lost 183 men, while the loss on the side of the Americans was hardly less than 300. The American boats were followed, and two were captured at Skenesborough, so that it became necessary to destroy the rest. With two thousand excellent troops under his command, St. Clair continued his retreat, rather favourably circumstanced, to Fort Edward on the Hudson River[35]. When tidings of Burgoyne's advance, and the retreat of the Americans reached England, great joy was felt by the Ministers, and by the Tory party; while ridicule and contempt were freely expressed for the vain attempts of the Continentals to sustain the war in which they were engaged[36]. The signal result of utter failure was not then anticipated.

[30] See John Marshall's "Life of George Washington," Vol. iii., chap. v., pp. 232 to 242.

[31] These transactions are treated very fully in George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. ix., chaps. xxi., xxii., pp. 359 to 387.

[32] See Lord Mahon's "History of England, from the Peace of Utrecht," Vol. vi., chap. lvi., p. 257.

[33] See John Marshall's "Life of George Washington," &c., chap. v., pp. 233 to 249.

[34] See Benson J. Lossing's "Pictorial Field-Book of the Revolution," Vol. i., chap. vi., pp. 145, 146.

[35] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. ix., chap. xxii., pp. 369, 370.

[36] See "The Annual Register" for the year 1777, Vol. xx. "History of Europe," chap. viii., p. 152.

At the head of the Hudson river General Schuyler was stationed with a brigade detached from Putnam's force in the Highlands and a few Continentals; so that the united American army did not number more than 4,500 men, very badly provided against an assault from the finely-equipped and vastly superior force opposed to them. This inequality of numbers caused great anxiety to the American General, who sent the most despondent messages to Congress regarding his situation. Notwithstanding, he manifested signal ability under such circumstances. Everywhere he continued to obstruct the roads through the wilderness by felling trees across them and by breaking down the bridges. Thus, it occupied Burgoyne no less than twenty-four days before his army could arrive at the Hudson. Besides, he found the whole country wasted on his line of march, and he met with none but women, who could give him no intelligence.[37] On their march towards Fort Edward, the Indians attached to the British army attacked a house, where they murdered several persons, and carried off a young lady named Jenny McCrea,[38] whom they afterwards killed, and brought her scalp into the British camp.[39] This inhuman deed caused great excitement among the people, and increased still more their animosity against the British.

Meantime, the best possible dispositions for his army were made by General Schuyler. The Americans crossed the river Hudson, and had taken post at Saratoga. While these movements were in progress, Colonel Gausevoort and two regiments of Continentals occupied the important post of Fort Schuyler, now called Rome, on the extreme border of the New York settlements at that period. A party, composed of Regulars Tories, Canadians and Indians, had been detached from Burgoyne's army to capture that fort, and Colonel St. Ledger, who conducted them through the valley of the Mohawk, laid siege to it on the 3rd of August. The settlers in that district assembled for its better protection. At Oriskany, which was near, and on the 6th of August, an engagement took place, the British having surprised a body of New York militia, commanded by General Herkimer, who was marching to relieve the besieged. He fell mortally wounded, and many of his men were killed. A number of the prisoners taken by St. Ledger in this ambuscade were massacred by the Indians. Owing to a successful sally, however, the garrison rescued the survivors.[40] A few days afterwards, General Schuyler sent Arnold with three regiments to their relief. The British did not wait his arrival, but abandoning their tents, and leaving most of their stores and baggage, they retreated on Oswego, and then crossed over to Canada. Numbers of the Indians[41] then scattered and deserted from the British.

[37] See Horace Walpole's "Journal of the Reign of King George the Third, from the year 1771 to 1783," Vol. ii., p. 132.

[38] She had been engaged to be married to a loyalist officer then in Burgoyne's army.

[39] It must be observed, that General Burgoyne manifested his horror at this tragic deed of his savage allies.

[40] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. ix., chap. xxii., pp. 377 to 380.

[41] The varying relations of the

Foiled by the retreating Americans in front, and menaced by the militia rising on his flanks, Burgoyne despatched eight hundred British and German regulars on his left, to destroy some stores collected by the Americans at Bennington, Vermont.[42] They were commanded by Colonel Baum, but on their march and six miles from the town, those soldiers were met by Colonel Stark, who was at the head of a New Hampshire force, largely composed of Irish Americans. On both sides entrenchments were thrown up, the leaders of each army sending back for reinforcements. Notwithstanding, on the 16th August, Stark drew out his men in four columns, and made an attack on the British position.[43] This engagement was bravely contested, and it lasted for two hours. At length, the British gave way. Colonel Breyman having then arrived with a fresh reinforcement, the battle was again renewed. Stark was now heavily matched, but his men fought with great obstinacy and determination. At this critical moment, Seth Warner[44] came up with an American detachment, and the battle was restored.[45] The action was continued until night fell. The British force was then put to a complete rout, Breyman retreating in confusion, leaving his guns and baggage on the field. Six hundred prisoners were taken by the Americans, as also one thousand muskets and four cannon. While the English lost in both engagements about 200 men, the Americans had only 14 killed, and 42 wounded.[46] Thus Stark was victorious in the two engagements, fought on the same field and on the same day.

The result of this engagement was to kindle a heroic spirit among the militia; although, as their term of service expired on that very day, several of the men insisted on marching back to their homes Many remained, however, and were of great assistance in the subsequent campaign. Elsewhere, also, the militia were rising in every direction around the army of Burgoyne. Their supplies were thus cut off, so that for a considerable length of time, his troops had no other meat supplies, but what came from the slaughter of their horses.[47] Notwith-

British and Colonists with the Indians are very intelligently stated in Auguste Carlier's "L'Histoire du Peuple Americain depuis la Fondation des Colonies Anglaises jusqu' a la Revolution de 1776," Paris, 1864.

[42] Before this period, it had not a more distinctive recognition in the Union, than in being recognised as the "New Hampshire Grants;" because under Colonial rule, the last-named Colonists had claimed it as belonging to them, by royal charter, although the New Yorkers had contested such doubtful claim, by virtue of their own royal charter. Its independence as a separate province had been mooted, when the Revolutionary War broke out, and for a time it set that question in abeyance. See Rowland E. Robinson's "Vermont: a Study of Independence." Houghton, Mifflin, and Co., Boston and New York, 1892, 8vo.

[43] See Lord Mahon's "History of England from the Peace of Utrecht," Vol. vi., chap. lvi., p. 264.

[44] The hero of Crown Point. See Benson J. Lossing's "Pictorial Field-Book of the Revolution," Vol. i., chap. xvii., pp. 392 to 398.

[45] An Irish-American, Colonel Nichols, shared in the honours of this day.

[46] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. ix., chap. xxii., pp. 384 to 386.

[47] This information the author had—

standing General Schuyler's able manœuvres, yet his retreat before the greatly superior forces of Burgoyne was misunderstood, and severely criticised; so that, fearing the loss of Philadelphia, Congress sought to avoid a calamity in the north, which his prudence happily averted. General Horatio Gates was now appointed to relieve him of the command, and this was assumed on the 19th of August.[48] Although having a fair prospect of ultimate success, General Schuyler welcomed cordially his successor, who reaped the chief glory of all those northern tactics and enterprises. On Sunday September 14, Burgoyne crossed the Hudson, and encamped on the heights and plains of Saratoga, near Fish river, and within a few miles of the Continentals under General Gates. On the 19th, the English having advanced somewhat, an engagement took place. The American sharpshooters, moving round to their flank under General Morgan, drove back the advance guard of the enemy. Coming on the main body, however, they were compelled to retreat until reinforced, when they again pushed on to the attack. A severe conflict ensued, in which Morgan's riflemen fought bravely. In this engagement, General Benedict Arnold was notably distinguished.[49]

The American army had taken post on Bemis' Heights near Saratoga, in an advantageous position. Here a serious engagement ensued. The Polish hero Kosciuszko had acted as Gates' engineer in throwing up entrenchments. While waiting the British attack, General Lincoln was sent with a detachment to harass the enemy in flank and rere.[50]

The English were now in great distress, and to retreat from their position was impossible. The militia were rising behind them, and they were vigorously pressed in front and flank. On the 7th of October, a severe engagement took place near Saratoga, which resulted in favour of the Americans.[51] They captured a full supply of ammunition, and this had been much needed by their army. One of the bravest British Generals, Frazer, fell mortally wounded in that engagement,[52] and his death greatly discouraged the army to which he had been attached. The English lost about 600 men, and they were forced to retreat to their fortifications. These were vigorously assailed by the Americans, when the Hessian reserve defending them threw down their arms, and retreated precipitately to the interior of their camp. Night closed that contest, and the British evacuated the position. The Americans lost 300 men in that determined conflict. During all the fight, however, neither

now many years ago—from an old man in Cullenagh, Queen's County, Ireland, and whose uncle was one of the many Irish soldiers serving, very reluctantly, under Burgoyne. That old man had the fact narrated in the text, from the account given by that soldier.

[48] See "The Annual Register" for the year 1777, Vol. xx.; History of Europe, chap. ix.

[49] See Charles Knight's "English Cyclopædia, Biography," Vol. i., col. 352.

[50] See "The Annual Register" for the year 1777, Vol. xx.; History of Europe, chap. ix.

[51] See Lord Mahon's "History of England from the Peace of Utrecht," Vol. vi., chap. lvi., pp. 269 to 271.

[52] It is said he was shot by an Irish rifleman named Murphy.

Gates nor Lincoln appeared in the field. This engagement was announced everywhere as a glorious victory.[53] It gave also great encouragement to recruiting. On the 9th of October, Burgoyne retreated to Saratoga and proceeded to fortify his camp. Here the British were constantly exposed to the fire of the American batteries, while the riflemen of General Morgan did great execution.

Meantime, Sir Henry Clinton was expected to create a diversion, and to co-operate with an army from New York. The news of their advance had reached General Gates from the rere; but it was kept from the knowledge of Burgoyne, who was now closely hemmed in on every side. Under the leadership of Sir Henry Clinton, 3,000 of the British, with Commodore Hotham's squadron, advanced up the Hudson to attack the Americans, who were under the command of two distinguished Irish-American brothers, also named respectively Generals George[54] and James[55] Clinton.[56] Both of these were stationed at Fort Clinton and Fort Montgomery, which were situated on the Hudson, about fifty miles above New York. The forts were in an unfinished state, and their garrisons were weak, being defended by only five hundred men, chiefly militia. Their English namesake, Sir Henry Clinton, with an army of three thousand men and a formidable fleet, sailed up the Hudson to attack them. Both were invested and assailed simultaneously by land

[53] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. ix., chap. xxiv., pp. 414 to 419.

[54] Although the younger of the two brothers, George held there the chief command. He was a member of the Congress of 1776, when he was appointed Brigadier General. His popularity and influence were unbounded in New York. He was Governor of the State for eighteen years, having been first elected in 1777, and afterwards he continued by triennial election until 1795. In 1805, he was chosen Vice-President of the United States, and he died at Washington in 1812, while still in possession of that high office, aged seventy-two. See "Irish Celts," *sub voce*.

[55] He was the son of Colonel Charles Clinton, born in Longford, A.D. 1690, and an Irish emigrant who settled in Ulster County, New York, A.D. 1719. He figured in the French Colonial war. His son James was born in 1736. In early life he possessed few adventitious aids to success except an excellent education, a gift which he shared in common with his most distinguished brothers. Evincing an inclination for a military life, he was appointed in 1756 an ensign in a militia regiment, from which rank he rose in 1758 to a lieutenancy, and in 1759 to a captaincy. In 1763, he was elevated to the post of captain-commandant of the four companies raised to defend the Western frontiers of New York, and in 1774, he became Lieutenant Colonel of the Second regiment of militia in his native country. In the French war, he participated in the capture of Fort Frontenac, and won a reputation for gallantry, resolution and military skill. At the close of the war, he married a Miss de Witt, and retired to private life. But, like other veterans of that contest, when the Revolutionary war became inevitable, he cheerfully resumed his old profession, and prepared to shed his blood for freedom. Congress immediately gave him the commission of a colonel, and subsequently, in 1776, that of a brigadier. He afterwards attained the rank of major-general. Clinton served in the expedition against Canada, under Montgomery. He died in 1812, in the seventy-fifth year of his age. See *Ibid.*

[56] See "The Annual Register" for the year 1777, Vol. xx.; History of Europe, chap. ix., p. 174.

and water. When summoned to surrender, the brothers replied, that they would hold the forts to the death. James commanded at Fort Montgomery; while George was over the garrison in Fort Clinton.[57] Campbell led the attack against Fort Montgomery on the 6th of October. In the onset, he was killed. By sheer force of numbers, the garrisons were overpowered after losing half their men. When the enemy rushed into the fort, Colonel McCleary, a brother-in-law to the Clintons, and an officer named Humphrey, turned back to back and defended themselves desperately. They were assailed on all sides, and undoubtedly must have been killed, but a British senator who witnessed their spirit and bravery cried out that it should be a pity to kill such brave men. The soldiers then rushed on and seized them, and brought them prisoners before the British General.[58] The Americans were obliged, however, to retreat from Forts Clinton[59] and Montgomery. The two brothers Clinton escaped, and after a series of adventures which reads more like romance than reality, they arrived in safety among their rebel friends. In this struggle, the British lost 140 men, while the Continentals acknowledged a loss of 300 men.[60] During the advance of Sir Henry Clinton, Kingston in New York was burned by the British, on the 15th of October.

During the night after his defeat, Burgoyne fell back to the heights in the rere of Saratoga, expecting he should be atttacked there by the Americans. However, Gates only sent detachments round his position, and these were directed to threaten his retreat. At length, his provisions being nearly exhausted, while his army was enclosed on every side, no option remained for Burgoyne but surrender. He was granted honourable terms by General Gates, anxious to hasten that result, before Sir Henry Clinton could push his way onward to the American lines.[61] On the 17th of October, to the number of nearly 6,000, among whom were over 2,400 Hessians or Germans, Lieutenant-General Burgoyne and his army were obliged to capitulate, as the American General Gates had hemmed them in with a greatly superior force.[62] The British marched down from the heights, and at the verge of the river laid down their arms.[63] The spoils acquired by the Americans were 42

[57] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. ix., chap. xxiv., pp. 412 to 414.

[58] See Rev. J. T. Headley's "Washington and his Generals," Vol. ii., p. 206.

[59] Before evacuating this defensive position, the last shot from an American gun was fired by a brave Irish woman, nicknamed Captain Molly, and the wife of a cannonier. The following year, after her husband had been killed at the battle of Monmouth, she served his cannon with a skill and courage that commanded the admiration and rewards of General Washington and his army. See these particulars related and illustrated in Lossing's "Pictorial Field-Book of the Revolution," Vol. ii., chap. vii., p. 164, and chap. xiii., pp. 361, 362.

[60] In "The Writings of George Washington," etc., edited by Jared Sparks, Vol. v., there is a Plan or Map of Forts Clinton and Montgomery on the Hudson River, at p. 90.

[61] See "The Annual Register" for the year 1777. Vol. xx. History of Europe, chap. ix., pp. 155 to 174.

[62] See David Ramsey's "History of the American Revolution." Vol. ii., p. 367. Philadelphia, 8vo.

[63] The American army was drawn

cannon and 4,000 muskets. When the British army dressed in their shining uniforms filed past the tent of Gates on the morning of Burgoyne's surrender as prisoners, they gazed with astonishment upon the ragged and torn battalions of the Americans. And conspicuous among all others stood Morgan's brigade of Irish riflemen, their hunting shirts stained and faded by the dust and smoke of battle, and their flag, upon which was written "Liberty or Death," tattered and rent by bullets into streaming shreds. Nixon's and Learned's brigades were in the same plight. This was a blow severely felt by the British, as it supplied the Continentals with artillery, muskets, ammunition and military stores, of which they stood much in need.[64] In addition, it greatly weakened the means of the English government, and distracted those efforts and counsels relied upon for success in the succeeding campaigns; while the confidence and elation felt in Great Britain gave place to dejection and grief, when news arrived of Burgoyne's surrender. An effort had been made by General Carleton to favour his retreat; and for that purpose, he marched from Canada with 2,000 men,[65] but on learning the result, he was obliged to return. This was one of the most decisive victories of the Revolution, and it had a very inspiring effect in the cause of liberty throughout the country. Meanwhile, having received intelligence of Burgoyne's surrender, Sir Henry Clinton retreated in haste to New York, having dismantled those forts he had taken on the Hudson.

For a long time, Washington was uncertain regarding the anticipated movements of Lord Howe, who had a large army in New York, and under his immediate command. But, according to his usual indolence, instead of taking advantage of the unprovided state of the Americans, he wasted April, May, and the greater part of June, before he had made all preparations required for the coming campaign. After an ineffective attempt to cut off Sullivan's division from Washington's army, and a ridiculous demonstration before the lines at Middlebrook, the British ingloriously retired with their greatly superior forces.[66] At length, General Howe and a large British force had crossed over to Staten Island, on the 30th of June, and embarked on board the fleet.[67] As

up in two parallel lines, and between them the English, German, and Hessian troops marched to the tune of "Yankee Doodle," according to the statement of Sergeant Lamb, who published a very interesting "Journal of the American War," Dublin, 1809.

[64] By the old narrator already alluded to, the writer of this History has been informed, that as the greater number of those who fought under General Burgoyne belonged to regiments recruited in Ireland, his surrender was to them a cause for rejoicing rather than for regret. Great numbers of the prisoners most willingly joined the Americans, while, owing to their experience and regular discipline, they rendered most effective aid in many succeeding battles fought during the Revolutionary War. Indeed, as deserters from the English colours, few of these ever returned again to Ireland.

[65] See Horace Walpole's "Journal of the Reign of King George the Third, from the year 1771 to 1780," Vol. ii., p. 159.

[66] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. ix., chap. xx., pp. 349 to 353.

[67] See "The Annual Register" for

their destination lay southwards, Washington divined their object was to attack Philadelphia. Accordingly, he proceeded thither by forced marches. Hardly had he 11,000 effective men under his command. During these movements, Commissary-General Charles Stewart[68] served with distinction on Washington's staff, and until the close of the war, he was engaged most zealously for the cause.

While Howe evacuated Jersey, and left seventeen battalions, some cavalry and all the provincials at New York, under General Clinton, he embarked with forty-six battalions and two regiments of cavalry for Philadelphia.[69] With his much inferior army, Washington on the 24th of August paraded that city, and endeavoured to make the greatest possible display, so as to control and intimidate many of the disaffected inhabitants.[70] Numbers of these were Tories, and many others had been opposed to a war, which they thought must be attended with unsuccessful issues. After much uncertainty regarding the British design, and the movement of their fleet from New York, news reached Washington that their ships had been seen at the Capes of the Delaware. Then their destination seemed no longer doubtful.[71] Meantime, General Howe with 18,000 men[72] landed at the head of Chesapeake Bay in Maryland. There, on the 25th of August, the men were set on shore.[73] On the 3rd of September, two divisions under Cornwallis and Knyphausen began their march towards Philadelphia. The American general at first took up a post behind Red Clay creek; but afterwards, by a well directed movement, he fell back on high grounds above Chad's ford, and on the north side of the Brandywine River.[74] Washington made the best dispositions he could to meet the advancing army, although his own was greatly inferior in numbers and in arms. A battery of cannon and a good parapet guarded the ford; while Brigadier General John Armstrong[75] and the Pennsylvania Militia were placed

the year 1777. Vol. xx. History of Europe, chap. vii., pp. 120 to 128.

[68] He was born in the County of Donegal, Ireland, 1729, and in 1750, having emigrated to America, he became a Deputy-Surveyor General of the Pennsylvania province. In 1774, he was a member of the first New Jersey Convention, and in 1775, a delegate to its first Provincial Congress. He was appointed Colonel of the first Regiment of Minute Men raised in that State, and then he was placed over the Second Regiment of the Line. After the war, in 1784-5, he was a representative in Congress from New Jersey. See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography." Vol. v., p. 683.

[69] See "Correspondence of Charles, First Marquis of Cornwallis," edited with Notes by Charles Ross, Esq. Vol. i., chap. ii., p. 29. Published in three volumes. London, 1859, 8vo.

[70] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. ix., chap. xxiii., p. 393.

[71] See Jared Sparks' "Life of George Washington," Vol. i., chap. x., p. 247.

[72] According to Sir William Howe's own "Narrative," &c., he had only about 14,000 men.

[73] See Lord Mahon's "History of England from the Peace of Utrecht," Vol. vi., chap. lv., p. 240.

[74] See "The Annual Register" for the year 1777, Vol. xx. History of Europe, chap. viii., pp. 128 to 130.

[75] He was born in the north of Ireland, and having early emigrated to America, he served with distinction in the war with France 1755-6. He served at Fort Moultrie. After the Revolu-

there to defend it, on the left of that position. To General Sullivan, with six brigades, had been confided the charge on the right, and these were stationed in echelons along the river. The selected field of battle was about thirty miles south from Philadelphia. The American general had sent word to General Sullivan to cross the Brandywine, at a higher ford, but this order was disobeyed; while the failure to do so overthrew Washington's design, and exposed the right wing of his army to manifest danger.[76] On the 11th of September, both armies met and engaged there in an obstinate encounter. General Knyphausen was directed to move with his Hessians in front to the attack; while Lord Cornwallis made a detour higher up, in order to outflank the Americans.[77] Thus it was hoped to prevent their anticipated retreat on Philadelphia. Henry Knox's artillery played with considerable effect on the advancing columns; while Sullivan, Wayne, Conway, Armstrong, Nash, Maxwell, M'Dougal and Reed fought bravely during this encounter. The celebrated and brave general, Anthony Wayne,[78] who commanded the Pennsylvania Line, was placed to defend Chad's ford, which he did with the most gallant resistance possible.[79] The Marquis de la Fayette

tionary war was over, he was sent to Congress, and he held many local offices. He died in Carlisle, Pa., March 9th 1795. See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. i., pp. 91, 92.

[76] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. ix., chap. xxiii., pp. 396, 397.

[77] See Lord Mahon's "History of England form the Peace of Utrecht," Vol. vi., pp. 241, 242.

[78] He was, likewise, as an Irish-American, a member of the Friendly Sons of St Patrick. This benevolent Society had been formed at Philadelphia before the Revolution broke out, and it met without interruption until near the time when the British took possession in 1777. After that period no meetings were held until September, 1778. Several members in the public service were at that time noted as absent in camp or absent at sea. At a meeting held June 17th, 1779, at which General Wayne was present, a resolution was adopted, "that such members of the society as are officers in the army shall not be subject to fine for absence while in service in the field." The society embraced in its ranks many prominent men, consisting of Irishmen born or their descendants in America. The first elected President was William West from July 1774 to June 1776. To him succeeded Benjamin Fuller from 1776 to 1779. Among the members were Robert Morris, the eminent patriot and financier; John Dickinson, author of "The Farmer's Letters;" General John Cadwalader, of the Revolutionary army; Governor Richard Penn; William Bingham, afterwards United States Senator from Pennsylvania, a man of high social position; General John Shee, of the Revolutionary army; William Hamilton, of the Woodlands, one of the largest landed proprietors in Pennsylvania at the time of the Revolution; Judge Richard Peters; Captain John Barry, of the Continental navy; Thomas Fitzsimons, member of Congress from Pennsylvania; General Edward Hand, General William Irvine, Major General Knox, General Walter Stewart, General William Thompson, Major General Anthony Wayne, Colonel Stephen Moylan, Colonel John Patton, Colonel Francis Nichols, Colonel Francis Johnston, Colonel Lambert Cadwalader, Richard Bache, son-in-law of Franklin, and many others. See the account contained in Thompson Westcott's "History of Philadelphia from the Time of the First Settlements on the Delaware to the Consolidation of the City and Districts in 1854."

[79] Colonel Alexander Lowry was an

fought on this day with determined bravery, and he received a severe wound, as did also General Woodford. General Sullivan, who commanded on the American right, moved with his three divisions to intercept Cornwallis; but he was unable to withstand the onset, and his troops fled in confusion. Then Wayne was obliged to abandon his post and Greene brought up his reserve to cover the retreat. Colonel Thomas Butler[80] was distinguished for his rare intrepidity, in rallying a retreating detachment at Brandywine; and, for this effort he was thanked by Washington on the field. For a long time, General Wayne held Chad's Ford; but in the heat of the engagement, Knyphausen's division crossed the river, and a strong detachment also threatened the rear of the Americans. However, these made a well-ordered retreat, and they were not pursued. In the general confusion which ensued, Conway's brigade stood firm. Sullivan, who had a horse shot under him, and Lafayette joined it. Both exerted themselves valiantly to retrieve the disaster, until no further hope of success remained. However, Washington came with two brigades, and their approach checked the British pursuit.[81]

Defeated on the banks of the Brandywine stream, Washington was obliged to retreat, after he had lost 1,000 men in killed and wounded. The loss of Sir William Howe's army was stated by himself as amounting to less than 100 killed and 400 wounded.[82] Among them were fifty-eight officers. The Americans retired at first to Chester; and on hearing of their defeat, Congress ordered Putnam to send forward 1,500 Continental troops with all possible expedition to the relief of Washington. The available militia were summoned, also, to muster for the emergency. Next day, the Americans fell back on Philadelphia.[83] They continued to confront the army of Howe, which moved onward compactly and with caution, never sending a detached party beyond supporting distance. The Americans held Fort Mifflin, on an island in the Delaware, and a few miles below Philadelphia, as also Fort Mercer, nearly opposite and on the eastern bank; while these obstructions prevented the British fleet from sailing up with supplies

Irishman by birth; he was a cordial hater of monarchy, a determined foe to England, and an enthusiastic republican. He advocated a separation from England from the first, and he commanded the Donegal men belonging to Lancaster County, Pennsylvania, at the battle of Brandywine. He received many appointments of honour in his adopted State.

[80] He was brother to Colonels Richard and William Butler, and afterwards for his bravery, he also obtained the same military rank in the American army. He was the son of Irish parents, and born in Pennsylvania, 1754. See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. i., pp. 480, 481.

[81] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. ix., chap. xxiii., pp. 396 to 399.

[82] Such was his official return as published in the *London Gazette*. In the "Writings of George Washington," as edited by Jared Sparks, may be seen in Vol. v., Maps illustrating the Battle of Brandywine, Military Movements in Pennsylvania, and Plan of the battle of Germantown, pp. 58, 66, 86.

[83] See John Marshall's "Life of George Washington," Vol. iii., chap. iii., p. 154.

for Howe's army. Too full of confidence in his position, on the 20th of September, General Anthony Wayne was attacked during night, by the British under Grey. His order was issued to give no quarter, and accordingly one hundred and fifty soldiers were inhumanly massacred. The British killed, wounded, or took as prisoners at least 300.[84]

On the approach of Lord Cornwallis, Washington was obliged to evacuate Philadelphia, and to retire upon Germantown, about six miles westward. In the meantime, the members of Congress had moved in the first instance to Lancaster, and afterwards to York. On the 27th of September, the British occupied Philadelphia.[85] A surprise was now attempted by the Americans. At Germantown, Pennsylvania, both armies met on the morning of the 4th of October.[86] The British were commanded by General Howe, and the Americans were under the command of Washington. After the first fierce onset, the English army began to give way. They rallied, however, and checked the assault, under cover of a dense fog, and on a site having many strong stone enclosures. After a determined resistance, the Americans were forced to yield ground, having lost 1,000 men in that engagement, while the loss of the British was estimated at 600.

The 22nd October, Count Donop with 1,200 Hessians attacked Fort Mercer, but he was repulsed with a loss of 400 of his men killed. The fleet opened fire on Fort Mifflin, when two of the ships were destroyed during the defence, which had been gallantly sustained. Land batteries were afterwards erected, and after a bombardment lasting for several days, both forts were nearly destroyed. The Americans then evacuated them, and they fell into the hands of the British. River communication between the English fleet and army in Philadelphia was thus opened.[87]

On the 15th of December, the American army retired into winter quarters, at Valley Forge, south of the Schuylkill river. During that month, the army numbered between 11,000 and 12,000 : of these, however, more than 2,000 were unfit for duty. When they arrived at Valley Forge, the soldiers erected barracks on the plan of a regular city. They were utterly destitute of almost everything necessary to support life.[88] They had not even ordinary clothing, and many of them were compelled to go barefoot over the frozen ground for want of shoes. There were few if any blankets ; and a lack of nourishment or of proper covering sent hun-

[84] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. ix., chap. xxiii., p. 402.

[85] See Lossing's "Pictorial Field-Book of the Revolution," Vol. ii., chap. xii.

[86] See "The Annual Register" for the year 1777, Vol. xx., chap. vii., pp. 132, 133.

[87] Several interesting reminiscences of events and distinguished persons in Philadelphia, after the entrance of the British army, and to the time of their leaving it, as related by eye-witnesses, may be found in John F. Watson's "Annals of Philadelphia, being a collection of Memoirs, Anecdotes, and Incidents of the City and its Inhabitants from the Days of the Pilgrim Founders," pp. 681 to 691.

[88] See "The Annual Register" for the year 1777, Vol. xx. The "History of Europe," chap. vii., p. 140.

dreds to the hospital. This soon became so pestilential, that soldiers rather preferred dying in the open air. On the first of February following, 4,000 soldiers were unfit for service, and the dissolution of the army was threatened; for notwithstanding their devotion to the Commander-in-chief, and the great cause he maintained, desertions became numerous, and only the most heroic resolution could sustain those who hoped for ultimate success.[89]

Twenty miles from the American camp, in the city of Philadelphia, lay thousands of British troops, well housed, well clothed, and well provisioned. Taking detachments of his brigade, Wayne made many excursions in quest of provisions, and he often forayed to within sight of the spires in Philadelphia. The brigades of Conway, Maxwell, McIntosh, Learned and Poor, whose ranks were well-filled with Irish and Irish-Americans, bore their privations with heroic fortitude, as, indeed, did all the sufferers at Valley Forge. The Commissary Department was unable to procure supplies; the people were unwilling to sell their goods and provisions for almost worthless paper; and, as supplies could not be obtained, the dissolution of the army and the end of the rebellion seemed inevitable. To prevent this, Congress issued an order, requiring each State to furnish a certain quantity of beef, pork, flour, corn, forage and other articles, which were to be deposited at such places as the commander-in-chief should determine. A fixed valuation was to be given, and it was hoped that Congress would be able to keep the army together until spring. That scheme fell through, however, from want of authority to enforce those demands, and owing to the distance of several States from the army. This was the gloomiest period of the Revolution, while the campaigns of 1776 and 1777 in New York, Pennsylvania, and Delaware were unfavourable to the Continentals on the whole.[90]

Meanwhile, several officers of the American army had been induced to criticise in an unworthy fashion the actions of their commander-in-chief, and this movement has been traced mainly to the ambition of General Gates, who had been designated by some as more deserving of that position.[91] Generals Lee and Schuyler, with other officers were implicated in that envious and disgraceful proceeding. Conway had been appointed Major-General and Inspector-General of the American army by Congress[92] against the protest of Washington, who had

"During this enforced retirement in the cantonments, the services of Stephen Moylan and his dragoons were conspicuous, in scouting and in securing the safety of provisions and munitions for the American army.

[90] In "The Writings of George Washington," etc., edited by Jared Sparks' Vol. v., are Maps and Plans, illustrating Operations in the Delaware, October and November, 1777, Attack on Forts Mifflin and Mercer, as also Plan of the Encampment at Valley Forge, pp. 156, 196.

[91] See an interesting account of these transactions in Marshall's "Life of George Washington," Vol. iii., chap. vi., pp. 350 to 366, and pp. 412, 413.

[92] On the 13th of December 1777, his office was made independent of the commander-in-chief, while he was referred to the Board of War for the sanction of his military regulations.

received unfavourable reports regarding him, and these appear to have been well founded.[93] This led to an estrangement between them. The very best and truest public characters cannot escape adverse criticism or unreasoning suspicions; and it was Washington's fate to have his movements and judgment called in question, at this dark period of misery and ill-fortune for the Americans. Conway had largely contributed to spread opinions unfavourable to the great patriot's military reputation, and he also was one of the chief instigators of a plot, known among the revolutionary episodes as "the Conway Cabal."[94] Joined by General Mifflin and a few members of Congress, an effort had been made to supplant Washington as commander-in-chief, and to put either General Lee or General Gates over the army. However, the well known integrity of Washington could not be called in question, while his superior judgment in the conduct of the war was soon justified in the public estimation. The noble Marquis de la Fayette revealed that conspiracy to the great shame of its originators. Having been imprudently led into that cabal,[95] General Conway was obliged to resign his command. He withdrew to York, in Pennsylvania, which was the residence of Congress. After his retirement, however, he indulged in expressions manifesting hostility towards the commander-in-chief. Engaging in an altercation with General Cadwallader, a duel ensued, in which Conway received a wound, for some time thought to have been mortal.[96] Meanwhile, with true magnanimity, Washington trusted that coming generations and events should approve his conducting of the war, and also manifest the greatness of his character.

[93] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. ix., chap. xxvii., p. 454.

[94] A pamphlet had been published in London, 1776, and in the preface it was stated, that when Fort Lee had been evacuated, a portmanteau belonging to General Washington had been left behind, in which were drafts of private letters to his wife and other members of his family, which had been transmitted to England by an officer, into whose hands they had fallen. The series of fictitious letters in the body of the pamphlet represented Washington as expressing sentiments totally at variance with his conduct, and as deprecating the misguided zeal and rashness of Congress in declaring independence, and pushing opposition against Great Britain to so perilous an extremity. The Author of those insidious and spurious epistles has never been publicly known; but they were represented in New York, and industriously circulated in various forms by Washington's enemies throughout the United States. See Jared Sparks' "Life of Washington," Vol. i., chap. x., pp. 266 to 275.

[95] Such is the statement made by General Sullivan, in a letter to General Washington.

[96] While his recovery was despaired of, he addressed an humble apology to General Washington, and dated Philadelphia, 23rd July 1778. In it, he writes: "You are in my eyes the great and good man. May you long enjoy the love, veneration, and esteem of those States whose liberties you have asserted by your virtues." See John Marshall's "Life of George Washington," Vol. iii., chap. vi., p. 413. *note.*

## CHAPTER XV.

Financial and physical Difficulties of the United States Government—Alliance with and Aid from France—Overtures of Peace from England—Evacuation of Philadelphia by the British—Battle of Monmouth—Surprise at Wyoming—Arrival of Admiral d'Estaing—Combination to attack New York—Expedition against Rhode Island—Its Failure—Congress adopts Articles of Confederation—British Expedition against the Southern States.

THE American army was soon in a deplorable condition, nor was Congress—then in a state of bankruptcy—able to supply its wants. Some wealthy private individuals, however, contributed large sums of money, and pledged their credit to borrow more for Congress.[1] The soldiers' clothes were scant and ragged. Their stock of powder was nearly exhausted, and their munitions of war were very scarce. Notwithstanding, while ably and zealously assisted by Generals Putnam, Greene, and Gates, the Commander-in-Chief succeeded in recruiting soldiers. Moreover, he brought the army into a tolerable state of discipline. By great efforts and sacrifices supplies were procured.[2] Money had been assessed among the colonies by order of Congress, and according to the supposed number and resources of their inhabitants. Each colony was to pay its allotted proportion, in four annual instalments. The first issue amounted to two million of paper dollars; but, as no system of taxation had been devised to meet their liquidation, public confidence in their value could not be established. The distresses of the army were urged in vain on Congress, now powerless to afford them adequate relief.[3] Meantime, the Commissioners in France had been instructed to borrow more money there, but to that date they had been unsuccessful. However, national antipathy to England, and motives of commercial gain, as also the popular French sentiment, led to friendly interests and secret co-operation with the cause and fortunes of the Americans.[4]

[1] Foremost among these may be named Robert Morris, a rich merchant of Philadelphia, who made great pecuniary sacrifices for the patriotic cause, and these were continued to the end of the war.

[2] On June 17 1780, twenty-seven members of the society of the Friendly sons of St. Patrick signed a paper setting forth the necessity for a vigorous management of the war, and reciting that "the subscribers, deeply impressed with the sentiments that on such an occasion should govern us in the prosecution of a war on the result of which our freedom and that of our posterity, and the freedom and independence of the United States, are all involved, hereby severally pledge our property and credit for the several sums specified and mentioned after our names, in order to support the credit of a bank to be established for furnishing a supply of provisions for the armies of the United States."

[3] See John Marshall's "Life of George Washington," Vol. iii., chap. vi., pp. 366 to 376.

[4] See James Graham's "History of the United States of North America, from the Plantation of the British Colonies till their Revolt and Declaration of Independence," Vol. iv., Book xi., chap. v., pp. 406, 407.

All over Europe the surrender of Burgoyne's army was received as the harbinger of England's ultimate failure. On the 6th of February 1778,[5] the independence of America was formally declared by France, when an alliance and a treaty of commerce with the confederated states had been settled at Paris.[6] Then Benjamin Franklin, Silas Deane and Arthur Lee were publicly received at the French court, as accredited representatives of the United States of America.[7] The equipment of a French army to embark for the seat of war was decreed. Thence forward, the patriotic cause was deemed to have been assured of success throughout Europe and America.[8]

A French loan was now negotiated; and, during the Spring, a vessel of twenty-four guns arrived in Portsmouth, New Hampshire, with upwards of 11,000 stand of arms, and 1,000 barrels of gunpowder. Meantime, the friends of America in the British House of Commons, Colonel Barre, Edmund Burke and Charles James Fox had introduced several motions, on the state of the nation, to incriminate and to arrest the course of ministers during the early months of this year;[9] but, notwithstanding the justice and force of their reasoning, on every division they were left in a hopeless minority.[10] The English Government at last recognising the gravity of their situation, Lord North introduced two bills into the British House of Commons on the 17th February. He now proposed to concede everything the Americans contended for, except their nominal independence of the Crown. This announcement was humiliating to the pride and obstinacy of the King and ministers, while the concession came too late. Such a sudden abandonment of all points in dispute produced consternation and astonishment among all

[5] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol ix., chap. xxviii., p. 481.

[6] Governor Morris had a chief part in forming those diplomatic instructions addressed to Franklin, the plenipotentiary at Versailles. See Jared Sparks' "Life of Governor Morris, with selections from his correspondence and miscellaneous papers, detailing Events in the American Revolution the French Revolution, and in the Political History of the United States," in Three Vols., Boston, 1832, 8vo.

[7] The negotiations connected with the Treaty of Alliance between France and the United States are described in Judge Marshall's "Life of George Washington," &c., Vol. iii., chap. vii., pp. 436 to 454. The mutual agreement formed as a basis of policy and of action is briefly set down in the Memoranda of the Various Articles of the Treaty concluded between France and America, 6th February 1778, in the hand-writing of the Earl of Carlisle. The original is at Castle Howard. See B. F. Stevens' "Facsimiles of Manuscripts in European Archives Relating to America," 1773-1783; with Descriptions, Editorial Notes, Collations, References, and Translations, Vol. i., No. 70. This valuable seriel work was issued only to subscribers, in folio size, and published at 4 Trafalgar Square, Charing Cross, London, November 1889, *et seq.*

[8] See Jared Sparks' "Works of Benjamin Franklin," &c., Vol. i., Life of Benjamin Franklin, chap. x. pp. 417 to 437.

[9] The Debates in February, March and April, 1778, on reconciliation with the Americans in the House of Lords and Commons are well epitomised, with many interesting State secrets revealed, in Horace Walpole's "Journal of the Reign of King George the Third," &c., Vol. ii., pp. 188 to 264.

[10] See "The Annual Register for the

the supporters of Government in the House.[11] Filled with a rankling hatred of the French, against whom he had brought the Seven Years' War to a successful conclusion, the Earl of Chatham entered the House of Lords on the 8th of April, for the last time, and in an incoherent but a remarkable speech,[12] he urged England to peril even her national existence in a renewal of the American contest, which formerly he had so eloquently denounced. At the conclusion of that exciting harangue, which he had scarcely strength to deliver, he was answered by the Duke of Richmond. Rising to reply, Chatham was seized with an apoplectic fit, and carried from the House of Lords. He expired on the 11th May ensuing.[13]

Under the command of Admiral Count D'Estaing, the French Government had fitted out a fleet of twelve large man-of-war ships, to aid the Americans, together with five frigates. They parted from Toulon, on the 15th of April, and M. Gerard de Raineval, a plenipotentiary minister of Louis XVI. and accredited to Congress, was on board.[14] So also was the American Commissioner Silas Deane.[15] Regiments of the Irish brigades in France were embarked on board the French fleet, destined to assist the Continentals. Among those were the regiments of Berwick, of Walsh, of Fermoy, and of Dillon. A petition[16] had been forwarded to the French War Office, by the regiment of General Arthur Dillon,[17] claiming the privilege of being sent out to fight the English in America. Accordingly, Count Arthur Dillon was appointed commander of those Irish Brigades in the French service. He had now 2,300 men under his orders, for the most part Irish; and, he wrote an interesting account

year 1778," Vol. xxi., History of Europe, chap. vi., pp. 101 to 129.

[11] These propositions were received with "a dull, melancholy silence."—*Ibid.*, chap. vii., p. 133. Also, the "Parliamentary History of England," Vol. xix., p. 1023.

[12] See the account, in Horace Walpole's "Journal of the Reign of King George the Third, from the year 1771 to 1783," edited by Dr. Doran, Vol. ii., pp. 253, 254.

[13] See "New and General Biographical Dictionary," &c., Vol. xii., Art. Pitt, William, Earl of Chatham, p. 258. London, 1798, 8vo. Also, Rev. Francis Thackerry's "History of the Right Honourable William Pitt, Earl of Chatham," Vol. ii., chap. xxix., pp. 275, 276.

[14] See Henri Martin's "Histoire de France," Tome xvi., Liv. civ., p. 427.

[15] See Horace Walpole's "Journal of the Reign of King George the Third, from the year 1771 to 1783," Vol. ii., p. 262.

[16] This was addressed on behalf of all the Irish troops serving in France. Count Dillon gives an abstract of the petition sent by his own regiment to the French War Office, in the beginning of 1779.

[17] He was the son of Lord Dillon, an Irish nobleman, but he was born September 3rd 1750, in the Castle of Braywick, England. After a brilliant military career he returned to Paris, where as a royalist he was arrested; and on the 14th of October 1793, he perished with eighteen other victims on the scaffold, a sacrifice to the revolutionary frenzy of that period. One of his daughters married General Bertrand, and she accompanied her husband to St. Helena, where they remained until the Emperor Napoleon's death in 1821. See "Historical Notes on the Services of Irish Officers in the French Army, addressed to the National Assembly, by one of its Members, General Arthur Dillon, 1792." Translated from the French, by J. P. Leonard, Dublin, 1889, 18mo.

of the services rendered by those troops under his command.[18] They had been mostly recruited from Ireland. The first battalion of his own regiment numbered 1,000 men, and it was afterwards raised to 1,400.[19] With the squadron of M. de la Mothe-Piquet, these Irish troops embarked at Brest on the 5th of April 1779. When news of their departure for the seat of war and their destination had become known, orders were despatched to concentrate the British forces in New York, until further reinforcements could be sent. Accordingly, the English fleet under Admiral Howe raised anchor and sailed out of the Delaware.[20]

Conceiving that the time for compromise and concession had now arrived, the English Ministry despatched Commissioners to treat on conditions of peace with the Americans.[21] The Commissioners arrived in the month of June.[22] At this time, the American army was not in a position to effect any very decisive operations. However, towards the end of May, Washington moved to a strong position at Middlebrook. His troops were soon almost in a state of mutiny, owing to the privations and absence of all necessaries they had endured. In this condition of affairs, British intrigue found its way to the American camp. Placards were posted to seduce the loyalty of Irishmen, serving under Washington. One of these announced such delusive intelligence, as that the affairs of Ireland were then fully settled, and that Great Britain and Ireland were "united as well from interest as from affection."[23] However, those efforts of misrepresentation and seduction failed to convince a single individual.

When the British Commissioners arrived in America, their propositions for peace were submitted to Congress. They issued an absurd manifesto, in which it was vainly sought to excite Protestant prejudice against an alliance with the French papists, while they threatened that if the rebels did not submit within thirty days from its date, war should proceed on the plan of laying the whole country desolate, and that extreme measures should be taken with the vanquished people. In

[18] This Manuscript is now in the Royal Irish Academy.

[19] Count Dillon was grandson to the renowned General Arthur Dillon, who served in the French armies for forty years, and who died in the palace of St. Germains, in 1733. See John Cornelius O'Callaghan's "Irish Brigades in the Service of France," Book x.

[20] See "History of the War in America between Great Britain and her Colonies, from its commencement," 1779, 3 vols., 8vo.

[21] The Commissioners appointed were the Earl of Carlisle, Admiral Lord Howe, General Sir William Howe, Sir William Eden, afterwards Lord Auckland, and George Johnstone, Esq., "for quieting and extinguishing diverse jealousies and apprehensions of danger in the Americans." Accompanied by Lord Cornwallis, they sailed from England in April, 1778. See John Heneage Jesse's "George Selwyn and his contemporanies; with Memoirs and Notes," Vol. iii., pp. 272 to 280. London, 1882, 8vo.

[22] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. x., chap. iv., pp. 122, 123.

[23] See Michael Doheny's "History of the American Revolution," chap. xv., p. 209.

consequence of the insulting language used against his countrymen and religion, Lafayette sent a challenge to the Earl of Carlisle, Chief of the Commissioners. That, however, was declined.[24] One of these Commissioners, named Johnstone, attempted to secure the good offices of Joseph Reed, President of Pennsylvania, by offering him a bribe; he returned the noble answer, "I am not worth purchasing, but such as I am, the King of England is not rich enough to buy me." Thus, British threats and proposals were indignantly despised and rejected. The Americans, who were bound to France that no peace should be made until the complete independence of their country was secured, refused to negociate on any other basis. Moreover, as a means for encouraging the people in their patriotic resolutions and endeavours, Congress gave the widest possible circulation to that foolish manifesto, as if nothing could be conceived more favourable to raise the people's courage and hopes. In the British Parliament, likewise, several of the ministerial opponents, believing that a crisis had now arrived, resolved on proposing a declaration of the most complete colonial independence.

Meanwhile, General Sir William Howe desired to be withdrawn from conducting this war, and his resignation was accepted by the ministry. The British army evacuated Philadelphia on the 18th of June, as French reinforcements were then expected soon to arrive; and under the leadership of Sir Henry Clinton, who became commander-in-chief in North America, the regiments crossed over the Delaware to march for New York.[25] Their force amounted to more than 17,000 effective men. Crowds of loyalists followed, broken in fortune and without a career, leaving as exiles the city of their love. Immediately afterwards, General Arnold was put in command of the city by Washington, and with orders to restrain, so far as possible, every kind of persecution, insult or abuse.[26] Having about 12,000 men under his command, sending forward General Maxwell's brigade to harass the British, and in co-operation with the New Jersey Militia, Washington left Valley Forge. Having ordered the movement of his troops,[27] he crossed the Delaware in pursuit of the retreating British Army.[28] The heat was intense at this season, and the Americans halted for rest at Princetown. After a rapid march of several days, their General came up with the enemy at Monmouth in New Jersey. He had directed General Lee to advance with a considerable division and to attack

[24] In the French language, there is a fac-simile of Lafayette's challenge, in his own hand-writing, to the Earl of Carlisle, and dated Fishkill, 5th October 1778. It may be found in B. F. Stevens' "Facsimiles of Manuscripts in European Archives Relating to America," 1773-1783, Vol. i., No. 102.

[25] See "Narrative of Lieut.-Gen. Sir Henry Clinton, K.B., relative to his Conduct during Part of his Command of the King's Troops in North America." London, 1783.

[26] See Lord Mahon's "History of England from the Peace of Utrecht," 1774-1780, Vol. vi., chap. lviii., p 378.

[27] See Jared Sparks' "Life of George Washington," &c., Vol. i., chap. xi., p. 293.

[28] See Judge Marshall's "Life of Geoge Washington," &c., Vol. iii., chap. viii., pp. 494 to 497.

the British, unless there should be powerful contrary reasons. He then rode back, to bring up the main body in support.[29] On the 28th of June, the obstinate battle of Monmouth was fought, and it commenced before daylight had appeared.[30] About twenty thousand men were engaged in the battle of Monmouth, while Washington, Lee, Layfayette, Greene, Morgan, Knox, Stuart and other distinguished officers were present on the side of the Americans. The division of General Lee was the first to open this engagement, but refusing to obey the order of his commander-in-chief, much confusion and disorder ensued among his troops.[31] Indeed, their leader's conduct was at that time inexplicable.[32] A panic ensued, which Washington succeeded in arresting; but he administered a severe reprimand on the field to Lee for his bad conduct under the circumstances.[33] Twice the British attempted to turn the American flank, but they were repulsed. About two o'clock, a desperate struggle ensued between Greene's Brigade and the Hessians and Grenadiers, commanded by Col. Monckton. Wayne was stationed with an advanced corps of his Pennsylvanians on a rising eminence, with a park of artillery. From this position he kept up a galling fire upon the English centre, and repeatedly repulsed the royal grenadiers, who had advanced to dislodge him with the bayonet. Their leader Monckton, perceiving that victory depended on driving Wayne from his position, harangued his men, and placing himself at their head, he marched in solid column upon the Pennsylvanians. The English advanced until within a few rods of the Americans, when Monckton waving his sword raised a shout and ordered his grenadiers to charge. At the same moment, Wayne gave his signal; a terrible volley burst upon the assailants, and almost every British officer fell. Among them was their leader the intrepid Monckton. Over his dead body the Americans and English fought desparately, until at last the Americans triumphed, and carried it to the rear. The British moved on the right, but a battery under the immediate command of Knox cut through their lines, and drove them back bleeding and disheartened.[34] At the same time, a general assault

[29] The ground and movements of the forces on both sides are shown on a Map delineating the Battle of Monmouth, in "The Writings of George Washington," &c., Vol. v., p. 430. Edition of Jared Sparks.

[30] A very full and circumstantial account of this battle is to be found in Benson J. Lossing's "Pictorial Field-Book of the Revolution," Vol. ii., chap. xiii., pp. 355 to 368

[31] See "The Annual Register for the year 1778," Vol. xxi., "History of Europe," chap. x., pp. 224, 225.

[32] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. x., chap. iv., pp. 129 to 132.

[33] For his conduct at Monmouth, Lee was afterwards tried by Court-martial, and charged with various offences. He was found guilty of misconduct and of disrespectful language to his commander-in-chief. He was suspended for a year. Soon afterwards he was dismissed altogether, for writing an insolent letter to Congress.

[34] During this part of the action, Molly, the handsome and fair-haired wife of an Irish cannonier, displayed great courage and presence of mind. We have already noticed her bravery in firing the last gun at Fort Clinton. She was a sturdy and tall young camp-follower, only twenty-two years old, and in devotion to her husband,

was made along the whole line, and the enemy beaten at every point retreated to a strong position; when Washington directed General Poor[35] to move round upon their right, and General Woodford to march on their left, so that they might renew the attack next norning.[36] During that whole day, the battle raged without much advantage to either side, and night came on, when under cover of the darkness Clinton stole away.[37] In this battle, the Americans lost 229 men, in killed and wounded, while the British loss was more than 400.[38] The retreat, however, cost their general in killed, wounded and missing a much greater number. Moreover, above 800 men deserted their standard during the march through the Jerseys.[39] Clinton continued the retreat, not greatly arrested by the Continentals, until he reached Sandyhook.[40] There his army halted, under protection of the British fleet.[41]

she illustrated the character of her countrywomen of the Emerald Isle. In the action, while her husband was managing one of the field pieces, she constantly brought him water from a spring near by. A shot from the enemy killed him at his post; and, the officer in command, having no one competent to fill his place, ordered the piece to be withdrawn. Molly saw her husband fall, as she came from the spring, and she also heard the order. Dropping her bucket, she seized the rammer, and vowed she would fill the place of her husband at the gun and avenge his death. She performed that duty with a skill and courage, which attracted the attention of all who saw her. On the following morning and covered with blood, General Greene presented her to Washington. Admiring her bravery, he conferred upon her the commission of Sergeant. By his recommendation, her name was placed on the list of half-pay officers for life. After leaving the army, she retired to Fort Montgomery, among the Hudson highlands, where she died. She usually went by the name of *Captain Molly*. See Lossing's "Pictorial Field-Book of the Revolution," Vol. ii., chap. xiii., p. 361. There is an illustration of that incident in describing the battle at Monmouth. Also n. 2, pp. 361, 362 *Ibid.*

[35] General Enoch Poor was of Irish origin, and a native of New Hampshire. He served as Colonel in the Continental army during the expedition to Canada in 1776; and afterwards he was appointed Brigadier-General in 1777, taking part in the battles which led to Burgoyne's surrender. He died in 1780, at Hackensack, N.J. See Ed. O'Meagher Condon's "Irish Race in America," chap. xiii., pp. 182, 183.

[36] Colonel Francis Barber, son of Patrick Barber, of Longford Ireland, received a commission from Congress in 1776, as major of the Third Battalion of New Jersey Troops. He was in constant service during the whole war. He took part in all the battles in the north, and he was severely wounded at Monmouth. He was accidently killed by the falling of a tree at Yorktown, on the day previous to Cornwallis' surrender. His brothers Colonel John and Captain William Barber commanded a company in the New York Line.

[37] See Judge Marshall's "Life of George Washington," &c., Vol. iii., chap. viii., pp. 504 to 517.

[38] See Washington's letter to the President of Congress, describing this battle, and dated July 1st 1778, in "The Writings of George Washington," &c., Vol. v., pp. 422 to 429.

[39] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. x. chap. iv., p. 133.

[40] See the Irish Sergeant Roger Lamb's "Journal of Occurrences during the late American War from its Commencement." 1809, 8vo.

[41] Notwithstanding, when Sir William Howe arrived in England July 2nd, he reported that Sir Henry Clinton's army evacuated Philadelphia for want of provisions. See Horace Walpole's "Journal of the Reign of

On the 2nd of July, the President of Congress and several of its members returned once more to Philadelphia. On the 25th of that month, Congress ordered the emission of one million of dollars more to the public debt; and, from time to time, new issues were authorised While the amount of these was small, the credit of the bills was fairly good; but, when new emissions took place, and no adequate measures for redemption followed, the people began to be suspicious about those frail representatives for money, and their value began to depreciate. During the year 1778, no less than sixty millions and a half were added to the issues already made.[42]

Under the command of Colonel John Butler,[43] born in Connecticut, but a violent Tory who espoused the British cause, 1,100 men were organised and led into Pennsylvania during the summer of 1778. Among the Five Indian Nations in Western New York, he chiefly found recruits.[44] The celebrated Indian Mohawk Chief Thayendanegia, but better known as Joseph Brant,[45] had engaged in the earlier colonial wars, and he urged the Seneca tribe to take part in this expedition. Colonel Zebulon Butler,[46] was one of the earliest settlers in the Wyoming valley, on the Susquehanna River in Pennsylvania. Having served as Lieutenant-Colonel of the Connecticut line, during the campaign of the Jerseys in 1777–8, he was strongly imbued with feelings of hostility towards England. Having become Colonel in March 1778, he was now chosen to defend Wyoming, where he commanded only a very weak garrison.[47] Several Irish settlers fought in the ranks under

King George the Third," &c., Vol. ii., p 282. Thus every lying expedient was resorted to by the English, which might serve to conceal their mischances and defeats from the public.

[42] An interesting account of those financial difficulties is given in Benson J. Lossing's "Pictorial Field-Book of the Revolution," Vol. i., chap. xiv., pp. 316 to 321.

[43] In the colonial wars, he commanded the Indians and served under Sir William Johnston. He also commanded a body of Indians, at the battle of Oriskany, in 1777.

[44] See "The History of the Five Indian Nations, depending on the Province of New York," by Cadwallader Colden, with a Memoir and Notes, by John Gilmary Shea. New York, 1866, 8vo.

[45] He was a Mohawk, and by election the Great War Chief of the Six Nations. In his early youth, he received an English education in New York, and through his friendship with Sir William Johnson, he was accustomed to mix in good society. Before the outbreak of the American Revolution, he visited England, where he was lionized and made much of at Court. He was induced to enter into an active alliance on the side of the British. On his return, he at once led his warriors against the Colonists. For many years, the dreaded Six Nations and their noted chief were a terror and a scourge to the border settlements. After the struggle for Independence was over, Brant made another trip to England, where he again met with a distinguished reception He died among his own people in 1807. See the account of this noted character with a portrait, in Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. i., pp. 359, 360.

[46] He was born in Lyme, Connecticut, 1731. He is said to have been of Irish descent, and to have been a scion of the Ormond Butler family.

[47] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. x., chap. v., pp. 136 to 138.

his command.[48] Among these was Captain William McKerachan, who was the first officer of the Hanover Company.[49] This severe engagement took place, on the 3rd July, 1778.[50] Although a surprise was attempted, the settlers fought desperately.[51] Colonel Butler's bravery was specially manifested in that combined attack of the British Tories and Indians at Wyoming; however, his resistance was soon overcome. Nearly the whole garrison, without respect to age or sex, was massacred with the most savage cruelty.[52] The enemy also burned the houses and destroyed the crops, leaving the whole district a perfect waste Most of the women and children fled to the adjacent mountains for concealment, where many of them afterwards perished.[53]

Meanwhile, after a long and stormy passage, Admiral d'Estaing entered the Bay of Delaware, and cast anchor there, but too late to intercept Lord Howe's squadron.[54] Landing, with his vessels at Newport Virginia on the 11th of July, he soon afterwards followed the enemy to New York, and anchored within Sandyhook, where he intercepted several unsuspecting British crews bound for that city. A combined attack on New York by Washington and the French fleet had been planned. With such object in view, the American Commander-in-chief crossed the Hudson River and encamped on White Plains. That idea was abandoned, however, and another expedition was planned, having for its object the capture of Rhode Island and its garrison of 6,000 men. The American army took up a position, the extreme wings extending from Danbury Connecticut across the Hudson at West Point to Elizabethtown in New Jersey. The fleet of Lord Howe was anchored

[48] The battle here fought and the massacre which followed furnished a theme for Thomas Campbell's charming poem, "Gertrude of Wyoming."

[49] Filled with a spirit of singular modesty and patriotism, he said to Captain Stewart on the morning of the battle fought here: "My pursuits in life have thus far been those of peace; you have been used to war and accustomed to command. On parade, I can manœuvre my men, but in the field no unnecessary hazard should be run; a mistake might prove fatal. Take you the lead; I will fight under you with my men, as an aid or a private in the ranks. Your presence at the head of the Hanover boys will impart confidence." So it was arranged, and they fought together. McKerachan was born in Belfast, County Antrim, in 1746. He fell in the battle at Wyoming. See Miner's "History of Wyoming." Philadelphia, 1845.

[50] See a very full account of it, in Alexander M. Sullivan's "Visit to the Valley of Wyoming," published in Dublin, 1865, 8vo.

[51] See Isaac A. Chapman's "Sketch of the History of Wyoming, with a Statistical Account of the Valley and adjacent Country." Wilkesbarre, 1830, 12mo.

[52] One Indian woman, called Queen Esther, to avenge the death of her son, tomahawked fourteen with her own hand, and near a rock, which still bears her name. A very interesting description of Wyoming and this battle, with graphic illustrations of the local scenery, will be found in Benson J. Lossing's "Pictorial Field-Book of the Revolution," Vol. i., chap. xv., xvi., pp. 337 to 381.

[53] See "The Annual Register for the year 1799," Vol. xxii., History of Europe, chap. i., pp. 7 to 14.

[54] See Judge Marshall's "Life of George Washington," &c., Vol. iii., chap. ix., p. 523.

in Raritan Bay, where the water was shallow, and there it was impossible for the much larger vessels of the French to attack them, except with great risk of running aground, or at a manifest disadvantage. At this time, there were provisions in New York for nine weeks only; so that both the British army and navy were likely to be starved into a surrender, unless they could be relieved.[55] During the course of this year, Congress had entertained the design of again invading Canada, and Lafayette was most anxious to be engaged in that attempt; but, for various reasons assigned by Washington, who did not approve it, that plan was abandoned.[56] An expedition against Newport was now projected, and thither the French fleet sailed. Meantime, Admiral Byron had been sent from England with ships to reinforce Lord Howe; and his squadron, having encountered severe storms,[57] arrived in New York, but scattered, dismasted and otherwise damaged, just eight days after the French departed, so that the English vessels narrowly escaped capture. With a considerable force of militia, General Sullivan marched to Rhode Island in August. To co-operate with him, the French fleet under D'Estaing appeared in Narraganset Bay on the 29th of July.[58] He had 3,500 land troops on board. The British were forced to destroy ten or more armed ships and galleys, carrying two hundred and twelve guns.[59] But, having been lately reinforced, Lord Howe now approached to attack their ships. Both admirals prepared for action, when a storm of extraordinary severity arose. A partial engagement ensued, but without any decisive result.[60] The ships on both sides were dispersed and suffered much damage. Then, D'Estaing was obliged to put into Boston for repairs, while Lord Howe returned to refit in New York.[61] Under the command of General Sullivan—whose action had been paralysed owing to the departure of the French ships—the Americans attacked the British under Pigot, at Quaker Hill on Rhode Island, and obtained a victory over them, on the 29th of August. The loss of men, over 200 on either side, was nearly equal. Sullivan gallantly repulsed an attack made upon him by the British garrison.[62] However, his position was now untenable, so that he was obliged to retreat from Rhode Island,[63] as Lord Howe's fleet again appeared off the coast, with

[55] See Horace Walpole's "Journal of the Reign of King George the Third, from the year 1771 to 1783," Vol. ii., p. 291.

[56] See Jared Sparks' "Life of George Washington," Vol. i., chap. xi., pp. 311 to 314. Also, the "Secret Journal of the Committee of Congress," 1778.

[57] See Horace Walpole's "Journal of the Reign of King George the Third," Vol. ii., p. 288.

[58] See "The Annual Register for the 1778," Vol. xxi., The History of Europe, chap. x., p. 230.

[59] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. x., chap. v., p. 146.

[60] See Horace Walpole's "Journal of the Reign of King George the Third," &c., Vol. ii., pp. 291 to 293.

[61] See Benson J. Lossing's "Pictorial Field-Book of the Revolution," Vol. ii., chap. iv., pp. 78 to 84.

[62] See a very interesting account of the Rhode Island expedition in Judge Marshall's "Life of George Washington," &c., Vol. iii., chap. ix., pp. 529 to 548.

[63] See "The Annual Register for the year 1778," Vol. xxi., History of Europe, chap. x., pp. 231 to 236.

Sir Henry Clinton and about 4,000 troops on board. Notwithstanding the remonstrances addressed to him, Admiral D'Estaing could not be induced to offer any effective co-operation.

To secure uniformity of action and federation, the popular representatives elaborated a scheme for general government. After having debated the issue three times a week for many months, at length Congress adopted the articles of Confederation, on July 9th 1778. Copies of these articles were sent to the various State Legislatures for approval. They did not receive the sanction of all however, until March 1781, when they became the organic law of the Union.

Meanwhile, having returned to New York, Sir Henry Clinton directed Major-General Grey, that he should proceed to Bedford, and there destroy those American privateers, which were known to frequent its harbour and the neighbouring coasts. A similar expedition was undertaken, about the same time, by Captain Ferguson against Little Egg Harbour. Several ships and a great number of small craft were destroyed as a consequence; while magazines, stores, vessels on the stocks and buildings were burned. Major-General Grey also surprised an American regiment of Light Dragoons, commanded by Lieutenant-Colonel Baylor, in a barn near Tappan, where they had taken up their lodging, and where several were inhumanly bayonetted although they sued for quarters.[64] During this summer also, the Americans organized an expedition against East Florida, under General Robert Howe, who had a command of about 2,000 men. A few hundred were Continental troops, the remainder being militia, belonging to the States of South Carolina and Georgia. On their approach, the British destroyed the Fort Tonyn, erected near St. Mary's River, and then retreated towards St. Augustine. However, sickness and death set in among the American forces, and nearly one-fourth of these were lost, so that it was deemed advisable to abandon a further prosecution of that enterprise.

On the 14th of September, Benjamin Franklin was appointed the first Ambassador from the United States to France.[65] His diplomatic work was still continued, and it was successful, by engaging Spain to befriend the American cause in 1779, and Holland the following year; while in the month of August, 1780, the armed neutrality between Russia, Sweden and Denmark was effected. These combinations powerfully conduced to turn the people of Great Britain and Ireland against Lord North's ministry, and to give weight to the arguments of the peace party.

A number of Tory refugees and Indians had fixed themselves in the settlement of Unadilla, and there they were attacked by a regiment of Continental troops, during the month of October. Under John Johnson—a son of Sir William—the Tories and the Indians, led by Brant had spread terror for a long time through central New York.

[64] See Jared Sparks' "Life of George Washington," Vol. i., chap. xi., pp. 305, 306.

[65] See Mignet's "Vie de Franklin," for the career of that distinguished man in France.

In revenge for the destruction of Unadilla, these allies attacked a settlement in Cherry Valley, during the month of November. A pitiless massacre there ensued. The Indians on the Ohio also gave much inquietude to the Americans, and General Andrew Lewis[66] was despatched to restrain their incursions—a task he very successfully accomplished. Likewise, General Hand[67] conducted a successful expedition against the Five Nations in New York.

Despairing of subjugating the Northern and Middle Colonies, and knowing that Savannah had but a small garrison under the American General Robert Howe, towards the close of 1778 Sir Henry Clinton fitted out an expedition by water to invade Georgia. Lieutenant-Colonel Archibald Campbell commanded the 2,000 troops on board, and they were convoyed by some ships of war, commanded by Commodore Hyde Parker. The British landed in the Savannah River, a few miles below the city so named, and preparations were made for an attack on that place, when they had disembarked. The American General attempted a defence, but his force was insufficient to meet the besiegers, and his flank being turned, retreat was impossible. The British followed him, and he suffered considerable loss. Upwards of one hundred of the Americans were killed in the pursuit. Moreover, 38 officers and 415 privates were taken prisoners; while 48 pieces of cannon and 23 mortars fell into the hands of the victors. Thus, Savannah was captured by the British, on the 29th of December. The shipping in the river and a large quantity of provisions, with ammunition and stores, were seized; while the remnant of the American army retreated up the Savannah River for several miles, and at last the fugitives took refuge in the State of South Carolina.

By land and sea, some undecisive actions took place.[68] On the latter element, the American ships were very successful in securing several prizes. Among the many gallant actions performed, those of Captain Nicholas Biddle[69] are especially noteworthy in his ship called the Randolph, a frigate carrying thirty-two guns. After a series of adventurous cruises and daring exploits at sea, on the morning of the 7th of March 1778, he fell in with the British ship Yarmouth of sixty-four guns, and commanded by Captain Vincent. Early in the action, Captain Biddle was wounded, and after it had continued about twenty minutes, the Randolph blew up, when he and over three hundred of his crew perished.[70] It has been stated, that Massachusetts alone had

[66] He was the son of Irish parents, and a native of Augusta County, Virginia. He died in 1778, after his return from the Ohio expedition. See Thomas D'Arcy McGee's "History of the Irish Settlers of North America," chap. viii., p. 57.

[67] In October 1778, he succeeded General Stark in the command at Albany. See *Ibid.* p. 58.

[68] See Stedman's "History of the Origin, Progress and Termination of the American War," Vol. ii., chaps. xxi., xxiii. Dublin 1794. 8vo.

[69] He was in Philadelphia in 1750. See the "American Biographical Dictionary."

[70] See the account in David Ramsay's "History of the American Revolution."

nearly as many seamen fighting the British at sea, and engaged in privateering during the Revolutionary War, as were to be numbered in the land army of all the other colonies.[71] Among the noted privateers during the Revolution, Luke Ryan,[72] commander of the Black Prince and having a commission from the French Government, was distinguished as a daring adventurer, who took many prizes from the English.

## CHAPTER XVI.

Re-organization of Washington's Army—War in the South—General Tryon's Descent on Long Island—Attack on Charleston—Capture of Granada by the French—Indian Hostilities on the Western Frontiers—Naval Exploits of Paul Jones—Military Operations in the North—Attack on Savannah—Defeat of the French and Americans.

In the beginning of 1779, the army of Washington had been strengthened to the number of 16,000, and he began to re-organize it.[1] General Greene, an officer whom he greatly trusted, was set over the quarter-master's department; Baron Stuben replaced General Conway as Inspector-General, and he greatly improved discipline among the troops; Kosciuszko was Engineer in Chief, and he was actively engaged in fortifying the New York Highlands. About this time also, the services of Stephen Moylan and his cavalry were exercised to great advantage on the Hudson River and in Connecticut.

The British General Prevost, who then commanded in Florida, marched to Sudbury in Georgia, which surrendered January 9th. Afterwards, assuming command at Savannah, he sent Colonel Campbell against Augusta with 1,500 men. With the surrender of this place, all Georgia submitted to the invaders. These advantages, when reported

[71] See Edward A. Hale's "Story of Massachusetts." Boston, D. Lothrop and Co.: 1892, 8vo.

[72] He was a native of Rush, in Ireland. He was tried as a pirate at the Old Baily, London, and condemned for execution. However, through the mediation of the Versailles Court, he was afterwards set at liberty. See J. N. Brewer's "Beauties of Ireland," Vol. i., p. 257, *n.*

[1] From Parliamentary and official returns, it appeared, that on the 1st of August 1777, there were, including sick, 37,512 rank and file at New York, and 3,362 in other posts. From an Army List, published by authority at New York, it was stated, that in the beginning of 1779, there were in America, exclusive of Canada, British forces, Sir Henry Clinton, General in Chief, Earl Cornwallis, Lieutenant-General, and fifteen Major-Generals, the 17th regiment of cavalry, two battalions of guards, and twenty-nine battalions of the line; besides the Germans, Lieutenant-General Knyphausen, and six Major-Generals, with twenty-two battalions of the line; moreover, exclusive of artillery and engineers, there were twenty-five corps of Provincials and of Infantry, and four of cavalry. Besides there were many irregular corps of loyalists; and several regiments of militia. See "Correspondence of Charles, First Marquis of Cornwallis," edited, with Notes, by Charles Ross, Esq. Vol. i., chap. ii., pp. 38, 39.

in England, were thought by the Court party to herald the immediate conquest of the Carolinas by Campbell.[2] Under the command of Colonel Boyd, the Tory inhabitants were then organized. Soon their bands became very troublesome, on the frontiers of South Carolina.[3] On the other hand, the Irish Presbyterians appear to have been everywhere bitterly anti-English, and outside New England, it is probable they did more of the real fighting of the Revolution than any other class.[4] The 14th of February, an encounter took place between the Americans under Pickens, and the British under Boyd. The latter suffered a reverse at a place called Kettle Creek, where the American loss was 38, while that of the British amounted to 145 men.

The troops at the South had been placed under the command of General Lincoln, who was now engaged forming an army on the Carolina side of the Savannah River. Under General Ashe, a detachment was sent against Augusta. Campbell was obliged to evacuate that place. But while Ashe was engaged in pursuit of the garrison, on the 3rd of March at Briar Creek[5] near the Savannah River, the British under Prevost came to their relief, and attacked the Americans, who were now surprised and greatly outnumbered. About 150 were killed and 200 taken, with a loss of seven cannon, and almost all their arms, ammunition and baggage.[6] The Americans were utterly routed, while the British loss was only 16. Prevost then crossed the river to invade South Carolina.

The coasts of Long Island Sound were ravaged by General Tryon,[7] with about 2,600 land forces. During the month of March a descent was made upon Connecticut. He surprised and destroyed New Haven, Norwalk and Fairfield.[8] He also scattered a small outpost, near Greenwich, where General Putnam narrowly escaped capture. The fires and destruction of property that accompanied this expedition were wanton and shameful, while nearly every species of barbarity was practised against the unprotected people. The sole object of those invaders seemed to be the indulgence of depredation, so as to cause individual and general distress.[9] However, having collected his forces, Putnam pursued the British, recaptured much of their plunder, and he took fifty prisoners.

[2] See Horace Walpole's "Journal of the Reign of King George the Third," Vol ii., pp. 351.

[3] See David Ramsay's "History of the Revolution in South Carolina," two vols. Charleston, 1785, 8vo.

[4] See William Edward Hartpole Lecky's "History of England in the Eighteenth Century," Vol. iv., chap. xiv., p. 118.

[5] See Horace Walpole's "Journal of the Reign of King George the Third," &c., Vol. ii., p. 357.

[6] See "The Annual Register for the year 1779," Vol. xxii., History of Europe, chap. ix., pp. 179 to 182.

[7] He was the Governor of New York, and he had urged on the British Government vigorous and hostile depredations, as a means to make the New Englanders submit to the settlement proposed by the King's Commissioners. See "Documents relating to the Colonial History of New York," Vol. viii., p. 750.

[8] See William Edward Hartpole Lecky's "History of England in the Eighteenth Century," Vol. iv., chap. xiv., pp. 116, 117.

[9] See Benson J. Lossing's "Pictorial Field-Book of the Revolution," Vol. i., chap. xviii., pp. 411 to 431.

During the month of May, the British General Sir Henry Clinton had despatched an expedition from New York. Soon Norfolk, Portsmouth, Suffolk and Gosport, in Virginia, were severally attacked and destroyed, by Sir George Collier and General Matthew.[10] Great damage was inflicted on shipping and other property along the James and Elizabeth Rivers.[11] Although their booty had enriched those who took part in those ravages, they were of no real advantage to the royal cause. It was supposed, that by involving the inhabitants in losses, they should reflect on the necessity for submission; but the people had learned with pride to make sacrifices for their country, while the irritation and exasperation caused were quickened the more to oppose still greater obstacles to a re-union with the empire. After a brief occupation, the invaders returned to New York with their prizes and plunder.[12]

A more serious attempt was to be directed against the Carolinas and Georgia. An attack on Charleston was now designed by General Prevost, and the Americans prepared for its defence. He arrived before the town on May 11th. It was only possible to collect somewhat less than 3,000 men for its defence, exclusive of the town populatian.[13] General Lincoln hastened to its relief by forced marches, and the British retreated by way of the Sea Islands on the coast, where under protection of a redoubt, part of their force remained for some time. At Stono Ferry on the 20th June, the British under Prevost engaged the Americans under Lincoln. Prevost attempted to carry their strong position, but he was repulsed. The Americans lost 300 men in this action, while the British loss was estimated at 270.

A British force from Nova Scotia had established a post on Penobscot Bay, under Colonel Macleane. The people of Massachusetts resolved on breaking it up, and for that purpose they sent an expedition in July of nineteen armed vessels, under direction of a sea captain named Saltonstall from Connecticut.[14] General Lovel and fiteen hundred militia went on board. This expedition was mismanaged, and it proved to be a total failure.[15] While Colonel Macleane was sustaining a siege in the fort he occupied, Sir George Collier and a squadron from New York arrived in time for his relief. The Americans at first made a show of resistance. This, however, was only to gain time, so that the transports might move higher up the river. That effort, however, proved to be unsuccessful.[16] The American ships were all lost, while the soldiers who escaped from the British took to the woods, through which they

[10] See William Edward Hartpole Lecky's "History of England in the Eighteenth Century," Vol. iv., chap xiv., p. 116.

[11] See "The Annual Register for the year 1779," Vol. xxii., History of Europe, chap. ix., pp. 186, 187.

[12] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. x., chap. x., p. 223.

[13] See David Ramsay's "History of the American Revolution," Vol. ii., p. 155.

[14] See Benson J. Lossing's "Pictorial Field-Book of the Revolution," Vol. ii., chap. i., p. 26.

[15] See "The Annual Register for the year 1779," Vol. xxii., History of Europe, chap. ix., p. 195.

[16] See Lord Mahon's "History of England from the Peace of Utrecht," Vol. vi., chap. lviii., p. 414.

wandered nearly one hundred miles, before they reached any human habitation.[17]

Failing in the attempt on Newport, the French Admiral directed his course towards the West Indies, when he had refitted at Boston.[18] While awaiting reinforcements expected from France, Count d'Estaing made a descent on the Island of Granada. On the 4th of July, at the head of Dillon's Regiment, he bravely assaulted the English fort of the Hospital. With remarkable daring, these Irish-French soldiers carried Granada, and it was taken from the British.[19] Having learned that Admiral Byron, with an English squadron, was approaching to attack the place, half of Dillon's battalion served on board the French fleet. A naval engagement took place on the 6th of July, when the French were victors.[20]

The British commander, Lieutenant Governor Henry Hamilton at Detroit had instigated the Indians to operate against Colonel George Rogers Clarke, who with a force of adventurous pioneers had captured several posts north of the Ohio River. Hamilton had taken post at Vincennes during the winter, intending to attack the Virginian settlements with the advance of spring. However, he was there surprised on the 23rd of February, and the next day he surrendered the fort to Clarke and to the French inhabitants. A convoy of British goods and provisions coming there from Detroit was likewise intercepted; and thus, the whole intended expedition was nipped in the bud.[21]

During the summer of this year, three brigades from Washington's army were placed under the command of General Sullivan, and sent against the Six Nations of Indians in Western New York.[22] A large force of Tories and Indians, led by Brant, Johnston, and the Butlers, was concentrated at Newtown, now Elmira, in the State of New York. James Clinton commanded a detachment of sixteen hundred men, which was sent into that country in order to assist Sullivan's expedition against the hostile Indians.[23] These collected in all their strength

[17] See John R. G. Hassard's "History of the United States of America," chap. xxxi., p. 205.

[18] See Judge Marshall's "Life of George Washington," etc., Vol. iii., chap. ix., p. 568.

[19] See Dr. John Campbell's "Naval History of Great Britain, including the History and Lives of the British Admirals," Vol. v., chap. xxvi., pp. 452, 453. London, 1813, in eight 8vo. vols.

[20] See "The Annual Register for the year 1779," Vol. xxii., History of Europe, chap. x., pp. 199 to 206.

[21] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. x., chap. viii., pp. 194 to 201.

[22] See Benson J. Lossing's "Pictorial Field-Book of the Revolution," Vol. i., chap. xii., pp. 270 to 277.

[23] Clinton was subsequently attached to the main army, and he was present at the capture of Cornwallis. When the British evacuated New York, Clinton made his last appearance in arms. He afterwards retired to his ample estates. He was not suffered always to enjoy the repose he had so fairly earned; but, on several occasions, he was called to receive unsolicited civic honours. He was one of the Convention that formed the present Federal Constitution. James Clinton was one of the most sincere patriots the Revolution afforded. He was as superior in his qualifications for a military life as his brother was in

and selected a strong position, which was fortified with great judgment. When Sullivan approached, he opened on the enemy's works with a cannonade which lasted two hours. The assault given caused great loss to the defenders. On the 29th of August this encounter took place.[24] The British and their allies were completely routed, and when their trenches were forced, they fled in consternation, making no attempt to rally. Afterwards, Sullivan ravaged the whole Genesee valley, and he burned all the Indian villages. Many of their houses were very commodious, and fine fields of corn surrounded them.[25] He also destroyed their crops, as his purpose was to lay waste their whole region, so that the savages could find no future shelter in it.[26]

An adventurous and a brave mariner, who figured in the American Revolution, was the celebrated Scotchman John Paul Jones.[27] Having procured in 1777 the command of an eighteen gun vessel called the Ranger, he made a successful cruise, and captured several valuable English prizes. In 1778 he made a descent on Whitehaven in Scotland, and took two forts, having spiked thirty pieces of cannon. Subsequently, he fitted out in France a squadron of five vessels.[28] One of these, an old Indiaman, had been altered and equipped as a man-of-war, but that ship was imperfectly provided with guns and material. She was named the Bon Homme Richard,[29] and on this vessel the flag of Paul Jones was hoisted. He sailed from L'Orient France, and in August 1777, he hovered round the coast of Kerry.[30] Afterwards, he spread terror along the eastern shores of England; for in the course of a month, he captured or destroyed no less than twenty-six vessels. A fleet of merchant ships was descried September 23rd, under the convoy of two powerful men-of-war, the Serapis Captain Pierson, and the Countess of Scarborough Captain Piercy, off Flamborough Head, on the coast of Yorkshire. With two of his ships, Jones gave chase. After nightfall, he came up with the Serapis. Making ready for action, after trying vain manœuvres to

fitness for civil duties. In battle, he was cool, ready and courageous. No crisis, however unexpected, destroyed the balance of his mind. In temper he was usually mild and affectionate; but, his passions were strong, and when once aroused, terrific. See "The Heroes of the Revolution."

[24] See Jared Sparks' "Life of George Washington," etc., Vol. i., chap. xii., pp. 320, 321.

[25] See William Edward Hartpole Lecky's "History of England in the Eighteenth Century," Vol iv., chap. xiv., p. 117.

[26] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. x., chap. x., pp. 230 to 232.

[27] His Life has been written by John H. Sherburne. New York, 1851, 2nd edition.

[28] See William Edward Hartpole Lecky's "History of England in the Eighteenth Century," Vol. iv., chap. xiv., page 113.

[29] This name was given as a compliment to Dr. Franklin, then in France and agent for the United States, in allusion to his well remembered publication of "Poor Richard's Almanac."

[30] According to the statement of Mr. Lecky, and referring to this period, Ireland "had been left almost defenceless, and was in a condition of extreme peril. The Presbyterians of the North openly sympathised with the Americans."—"History of England in the Eighteenth Century," Vol. iv., chap. xiv., p. 114.

board, Jones lashed his ship side by side, the muzzles of the guns in both vessels actually touching. Then, a furious canonade began.[31] On board of the Bon Homme Richard two of the guns burst during the engagement, which caused great damage to the vessel and her crew. For fully three hours, this desperate combat lasted. A dreadful explosion took place on board the Serapis, and which destroyed several officers and men. Crowds of people lined the shore as spectators, for that engagement was fought in their view and by moonlight. In two different places, fire broke out on board the Bon Homme Richard. However, after dreadful carnage on both sides,[32] the Serapis, a much finer and heavier ship, struck her flag. Paul Jones and his crew now abandoned their own vessel and went on board the prize. A few hours later, the Bon Homme Richard foundered and sank. The Countess of Scarborough, in like manner, struck to one of his other ships.[33] A third vessel of Jones' squadron, commanded by a French officer named Landay, gave little or no assistance during that obstinate combat.

The erection of two forts had been ordered, to command the crossing at King's Ferry on the River Hudson; one of these was to be built at Stony Point, on the west bank, the other was to be at Verplanck's Point, on the opposite side. While the works were still unfinished, Sir Henry Clinton had captured Stony Point, and the British then occupied that post. Whereupon, Verplanck's Point was obliged also to surrender. Washington deemed the recapture of these to be very important for his communications. On the 15th of July, General Wayne was instructed to attack Stony Point, about forty-two miles above New York, and it was the strongest fortress on the Hudson River. A night assault was planned by Washington, and it was conducted with consummate skill and bravery. Lieut.-Colonel Johnson was in command of the British. Their position seemed almost impregnable. Situated upon a huge rocky bluff, an island at high water, and always inaccessible dry-shod, except across the narrow causeway in the rear, it was strongly defended by outworks and by a double row of *abatis*.[34] Upon three sides of the rock were the waters of the Hudson, and on the fourth was a morass deep and dangerous. But Wayne was not easily deterred by obstacles. He resolved at all hazards to storm the fort. He only waited for the ebbing of the tide, and the first deep slumber of the garrison, for moving towards the works. His troops were divided into two columns. Lieutenant De Fleury, a Frenchman, led the van of the right, with one hundred and fifty volun-

[31] Matthew Mease, an Irishman, was the purser in the "Bon Homme Richard" with Paul Jones; he volunteered to serve the guns, in the famous battle between that ship and the Serapis.

[32] According to Dr. John Campbell, "the loss of the Serapis was forty-nine killed, and sixty-eight wounded; that of the Bon Homme Richard was three hundred and six killed and wounded."—"Naval History of Great Britain," etc., Vol. v., chap. xxvi., p. 459.

[33] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol x., chap. xii., pp. 271, 272.

[34] The works of Stony Point and Verplanck's Point are shown on a map, in "The Writings of George Washington," etc., Vol. vi., p. 304. Edition of Jared Sparks.

teers. The van of the left was led by Major Stewart, an Irishman, and it consisted of one hundred volunteers, with unloaded muskets and fixed bayonets. While directing that assault Wayne was severely wounded.[35] An *avant-guard* of twenty picked men for each company, under Lieutenants James Gibbons[36] and Knox, had proceeded to remove the *abatis* and other obstructions. These vans composed the forlorn hope. Of Lieutenant Gibbons' twenty men, seventeen were killed or wounded.[37] There were other distinguished Irish officers with Wayne on that occasion. Colonel Moylan rushed side by side with him up the heights. Colonel Butler led his regiment in person, and Major Murphy commanded two companies.[38] The fort was captured, with a loss of 98 men to the Americans.[39] The storming and capture of Stony Point was regarded as the most brilliant event of the war. The victors, Wayne, De Fluery, and Stewart, were awarded medals by Congress. Sir Henry Clinton came up the river in force soon afterwards, and thus he saved Verplanck's Point. Not choosing to risk a general engagement, Washington then caused Stony Point to be evacuated. However, these posts were held by the English for no very lengthened period. Having re-resolved to transfer all his available troops southwards in October, Sir Henry Clinton abandoned not only those forts, but likewise, Newport in Rhode Island, while he strengthened the fortifications of New York. At Paulus Hook, now Jersey City, on the 18th of August Major Henry Lee obtained a victory over the British, who were surprised during the night. One hundred and fifty-nine prisoners were captured.[40]

The British held Savannah, with a very considerable force of nearly 2,000 men, about this period. Having received directions from the French king, to co-operate with the Americans in the Southern States, Count D'Estaing sailed from the West Indies, on the 1st of September, and soon he arrived off the coast of Georgia, with twenty sail of the line, two ships of fifty guns each, and eleven frigates. His appearance was so unexpected, that he captured an English man-of-war and three frigates. In a short time, the American General Lincoln moved from his encampment, ordering the militia of Georgia and of South Carolina to rendezvous in the vicinity of Savannah, where General Prevost commanded the garrison. Before their arrival, however, D'Estaing had demanded the surrender of the town. To gain time, Prevost asked for a suspension of hostilities during twenty-four hours, to propose specific terms. This request was granted; but before the expiration of that

[35] See Michaud's "Biographie Universelle, ancienne et moderne," etc., Tome xliv., p. 399.

[36] An Irish-American.

[37] Afterwards he became Colonel. He died July 1st 1834, at Richmond, in his 77th year. "American Almanac," 1835.

[38] In a letter from General Anthony Wayne to General Washington, dated July, 1779, there is an account of that assault, in "The Writings of George Washington," Vol. vi., Appendix No. VI., pp. 537 to 540. Edition of Jared Sparks.

[39] See Jared Sparks' "Life of George Washington," etc., Vol. i., chap. xii., pp. 323 to 325.

[40] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. x., chap. x.. pp 223 to 230.

time, Lieutenant-Colonel Maitland with several hundred men had arrived as a reinforcement, and this fortunate junction of their forces encouraged the English to offer an effectual resistance. A fear was entertained by the marine officers, lest the French fleet might be surprised by a superior English armament, or be exposed to the action of storms on a dangerous coast; and as the operations of a regular siege must necessarily be slow, the leaders rashly determined to carry the well-fortified town by assault.[41]

The besieged had strengthened their position with additional defensive works, so that the leaders and united army of the French and of the Americans prepared for an attack by regular approaches. The regiments under Count Dillon's command landed, while the French fleet took up the nearest position possible to co-operate; and, on the 4th of October a furious cannonade was opened from their land and sea batteries. A large American militia force was drafted to make a false attack, while the real object of assault was Spring Hill battery, in advance of the British position. Early on the morning of the 9th, 3,500 French troops, 600 Continentals and 350 citizens of Charleston, moved forward, under their respective leaders, Count D'Estaing and General Lincoln. But a terrific fire from the English batteries and a cross-fire from their galleys met this storming division and tore the heads of columns. The supporting force under Count Dillon failed to carry the place by assault,[42] although two French standards were planted on the British redoubts by the gallant Irish Major Brown.[43] While making the third attempt he was killed.[44] The Irish Colonel Lynch,[45] of the regiment of Walsh, was distinguished for his coolness and bravery at Savannah.[46] The gallant efforts of a brave Irish-American

[41] This decision of the Admiral was taken contrary to the opinions of his other officers. The brave Major Brown remarked to the Count, that although disapproving of such an operation, no cause of complaint should lie against his own conduct.

[42] One company of the regiment of Dillon, which consisted of 194 men, was ordered to charge against an English battery; the assailants did so, and only 96 men returned alive.

[43] He was aid-de-camp to the Count D'Estaing.

[44] No less than sixty-three of his grenadiers were killed or wounded, without counting the fusiliers.

[45] He had previously served with distinction, in the campaigns of India.

[46] At the most critical moment of that sanguinary affair, being at the head of the right of his column, Count D'Estaing directed Lynch to carry an urgent order to the third column, which was on the left. These columns were within grape shot range of the enemy's entrenchments, and on both sides a tremendous firing was maintained. Instead of passing through the centre or in the rere of the columns, Lynch proceeded cooly through the shower of balls and grape shot, which the French and English were firing at each other. It was in vain that M. D'Estaing and those who surrounded him cried out, that he should take another direction. Lynch went on, executed his order, and returned unhurt the very same way. When remonstrated with for his rashness, and asked why he chose such a course: "Because it was the shortest," he anwered. Having uttered these few words he went with equal coolness, and joined a group that was most earnestly engaged in storming the place. He was afterwards promoted to the rank of Lieutenant-Gen-

Sergeant William Jasper[47] are memorable in American history, and his life was there sacrificed to save the American flag.[48] Count D'Estaing was wounded in the assault, which lasted fifty-five minutes, and it ended in disaster to the assailants. The brave Pole Count Pulaski of the Continental army, was mortally wounded.[49] A heroic Irishman, Lieutenant-Colonel Humphrey O'Dunne, was greatly distinguished for his intrepidity under this terrible fire, which he escaped, to gain future honours in the field. But, retreat was inevitable. No less than eight hundred and twenty-one men of the French attacking division were killed and wounded, and, among these figure the Irish names of Brown, major of Dillon's regiment, colonel of infantry; O'Neill and Moran, captains; Taafe, lieutenant; Roche, officer of artillery; Rogers, captain in the regiment of Guadaloupe, with many other Irish names of sub-officers.[50] About four hundred of the American forces were killed and wounded.[51] The loss sustained by the British was comparatively insignificant. The American militia dispersed to their homes, when Count D'Estaing re-embarked his surviving troops and sailed for the West Indies. The patriots of Georgia, who had joined them, fled to the backwoods or across the river. The militia of South Carolina returned to their homes, and General Lincoln repaired to Charleston, followed by what remained of his army.[52]

eral. He commanded the French infantry in the first engagement they had with the Prussians, on the Heights of Valmy, in the year 1792. These particulars have been related by the Count de Segur.

[47] He was born in South Carolina about the year 1750, and he enlisted as a sergeant in the Second South Carolina Regiment. As a guerilla chief he was distinguished in his native State.

[48] During the bombardment of Fort Sullivan, near Charleston, on the 28th of June 1776, the American flag-staff with the colours had been shot down from a British ship. They fell to the bottom of a ditch, which was outside the works. Jasper leaped the parapet, walked the length of the fort, and picked up the flag. In the midst of the iron hail pouring on the fortress, and in the sight of the whole British fleet, he fixed the flag firmly on the bastion. He received his death wound at Savannah, while attempting to plant the colours of his regiment on the English redoubt.

[49] He died October 11th.

[50] See an Article by William J. Onahan, published in Donohoe's "Magazine," Vol. v., pp. 99 to 102. "An Irish Brigade commanded by Count Arthur Dillon, at the Siege of Savannah, 1779."

[51] William Thompson was a native of Pennsylvania, and a relative of Charles Thompson, the secretary of the Continental Congress. He was born about the year 1727, and while a child, he was taken to Orangeburg district, in South Carolina. He was placed in command of the Third Regiment, called the Rangers. With his regiment, he fought in the battle of Sullivan's Island in 1776. He was with General Howe in Georgia, and he served under the command of D'Estaing at Savannah. He behaved gallantly, and suffered much during the greater part of the war. See Lossing's "Pictorial Field-Book of the Revolution."

[52] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. x., chap. xiii., pp. 296 to 298.

## CHAPTER XVII.

Position of General Washington at the Opening of 1780—Siege and Capture of Charleston by Sir Henry Clinton—Financial Depression—General Gates in the South—Partisan Chiefs and their Raids—Brutality of Lord Cornwallis—American Victory at King's Mountain—Treason of General Arnold—Mutiny in the American Army.

DURING the winter season of 1779 and the ensuing spring General Washington was obliged to assume merely a defensive position at West-point;[1] while, in the Southern States, the Americans and French were destined to sustain serious losses. However, without additional reinforcement, the English army could not leave New York. The American troops had been quartered in Morristown,[2] from the middle of February, 1780, to the following month of May; but they numbered only about 7,000 men, and of these the most considerable portion was Irish.[3] At the present juncture, their General could only maintain an attitude of observance for want of additional forces.[4]

[1] Dr. Corcoran, an Irishman, was Surgeon-General of the Middle Department of the Revolutionary army, and afterwards he became the Director-General of Hospitals in the United States.

[2] Mr. Galloway, speaker of the House of Assembly of Pennsylvania, in his examination before a committee of the English House of Commons, June 6th 1779, when asked this question about soldiers in the service of the Congress, "Were they chiefly composed of the natives of America, or were the greatest part of them English?" he answered: "The names and places of their nativity being taken down, I can answer the question with precision. There were scarcely one-fourth natives of America; about one-half Irish, the other fourth were English and Scotch." See also Benson J. Lossing's "Pictorial Field-Book of the Revolution," Vol. i., chap. xiv., p. 309.

[3] During this period, the day of Ireland's National Apostle was celebrated with universal military rejoicings; while the Commander-in-Chief congratulated the troops on tidings lately received, that the Parliament of Ireland had not only engaged on proceedings "calculated to remove the heavy and tyrannical oppressions on their trade, but to restore to a brave and generous people their ancient rights and privileges, and in their operation to promote the cause of America." He then ordered, "that all fatigue and working parties cease for to-morrow, the 17th day, held in particular regard by the people of that nation." On the day itself followed these Division Orders, March 17 1780:—"The commanding officer desires that the celebration of the day should not pass by without having a little rum issued to the troops, and has thought proper to direct the commissary to send for the hogshead which the colonel has purchased already in the vicinity of the camp. While the troops are celebrating the bravery of St. Patrick in innocent mirth and pastime, he hopes they will not forget their worthy friends in the kingdom of Ireland, who with the greatest unanimity, have stepped in opposition to the tyrant, Great Britain, and who, like us, are determined to die or be free. The troops will conduct themselves with the greatest sobriety and good order."

[4] The difficulties under which the American Commander-in-Chief laboured are well set forth, in "Washington's Private Diary," edited by John Gilmary Shea, and published in New York, 1861.

Having placed New York in a state for defence, and leaving Lieutenant-General Knyphausen in command, Sir Henry Clinton resolved to sail for the South, and to conduct an enterprise having for its immediate object the capture of Charleston, then garrisoned by a small body of Continentals under General Lincoln. Accordingly, a fleet, commanded by Admiral Arbuthnot, and having on board a land force of five thousand men, besides two thousand marines, left New York harbour towards the close of December 1779.[5] The English Commander-in-Chief then sailed onwards towards Georgia. After a tedious and dangerous passage he reached Savannah, and in February 1780, he disembarked on the islands below Charleston, to prepare for its siege.[6] On the land side, that town was completely invested by the British army. But, having lost most of their artillery, a great part of their ordnance, and all their cavalry horses, during the tempestuous weather at sea, Sir Henry Clinton despatched an order to New York for reinforcements of men and stores, while 1,200 men were ordered from the garrison of Savannah.

Had Lincoln acted judiciously, he should have abandoned Charleston, having no adequate means for defence against those forces now concentrated against it. Instead of taking this course, he called into that place all the troops he could collect from the outposts. He traced out lines and threw up redoubts, while the defensive works were strengthened and extended. Several sallies were made by the garrison to keep open communications with the interior. However, the Commander of the British cavalry was able to hold the American detachment in check. Especially, on the 14th of April, at Monk's Corner, about thirty miles from Charleston, Lieutenant-General Tarleton encountered fourteen hundred American cavalry, and these were routed with considerable loss. The American squadron fell back to Fort Moultrie, and afterwards to Charleston, as the greatly superior marine force of the British passed the bar on a flowing tide. The investiture of that town was then speedily completed, both by land and sea. Moreover about this time, Sir Henry Clinton received a reinforcement of 3,000 men from New York.[7] Siege works were thrown up, and a cannonade began on the 12th of April. An attempt was made to obtain terms for surrender, which the British commander would not accept. Hostilities then recommenced. When the city could resist no longer, Lincoln was obliged to capitulate. Six thousand soldiers and male citizens were made prisoners of war. During that siege the losses were nearly equal on both sides in killed and wounded. On the 12th of May, Charleston surrendered to the English.[8] The town was plundered by them when

[5] See Jared Sparks' "Life of George Washington," &c., Vol. i., chap. xii., p. 330.

[6] See David Ramsay's "History of South Carolina." The author of this work was an Irish-American, and he became also the historian of the American Revolution. He was a learned and an ingenious man, sincerely religious, austerely moral, and warmly patriotic.

[7] See Hugh Murray's "United States of America," Vol. ii., chap. ii., p. 63.

[8] See Benson J. Lossing's "Pictorial

they obtained possession. The negroes there found were shipped off to the West Indies, where they were sold to other masters.[9]

At the beginning of 1780, the enormous sum of two hundred millions of dollars had been issued by Congress, and no part of their debt had been redeemed. Being aware of these financial embarrassments of the patriots, their English enemies flooded the country with counterfeits of continental emissions. Everywhere, aided by the loyalists, those counterfeits were circulated, and the result was, that the continental money became almost worthless.[10] Prices rose as the money sank in value, and every branch of trade was deranged. Moreover, both in 1779 and 1780, the seasons were unfavourable for the crops. Congress was powerless to stay a downward tendency of the currency, although they had recommended a plan to regulate prices on the basis of twenty dollars to one of specie. The paper money continued to depreciate, and prices still began to rise. Forty dollar bills, in 1780, were only worth one dollar in specie. Had it not been for an extraordinary effort of patriotism on the part of the Philadelphia merchants, the army must have been disbanded.[11] A bank was established in June 1780, and by private association, to support the credit of Congress.[12] This bank continued to exist during the war, and then it gave way to the bank of North America.[13] Owing to such a timely expedient, the war was enabled to go forward, and Washington found himself free to execute his final plans.

When Charleston was threatened, Washington had sent about 2,000 Continental troops to the South, under Major-General Baron de Kalb. The Maryland and Delaware regiments were ordered to march ;[14] but it was found to be a matter of difficulty, to procure munitions for them. After marching through New Jersey and Pennsylvania they embarked at the head of Elk on the 16th April, and landed soon afterwards at Petersburgh. Thence they proceeded through the country towards

Field-Book of the Revolution," Vol. ii., chap. xxix.

[9] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. x., chap. xiv., pp. 301 to 306.

[10] See Lord Mahon's "History of England from the Peace of Utrecht," Vol. vi., chap. lxiii., pp. 415 to 418.

[11] See Thomas D'Arcy McGee's "History of the Irish Settlers in North America," chap. viii.

[12] On the 17th of June 1780, ninety-three Philadelphia merchants signed a paper which obliged them to subscribe a large amount. See the "American Remembrancer," Vol. x., p. 229.

[13] Among the shareholders were twenty-three Irish, or of Irish extraction, who subscribed nearly one half million of dollars, in the following proportions, viz. :—Blair McClenechan, a wealthy Irish merchant subscribed £10,000; L. M. Nesbit & Co., £5,000; Richard Peters, £5,000; Samuel Meredith, £5,000; James Mease, £5,000; Thomas Barclay, £5,000; Hugh Shiel, £5,000; John Dunlap, £4,000; John Nixon, £5,000; George Campbell, £2,000; John Mease, £4,000; Bunner, Murray & Co., £6,000; John Patton, £2,000; Benjamin Fuller, £2,000; George Meade & Co., £2,000; John Donaldson, £2,000; Henry Dill, £5,000; Kean & Nichols, £4,000; James Caldwell, £2,000; Samuel Caldwell, £1,000; John Shee, £1,000; Sharp Delany, £1,000; Tench Francis, £5,500—Total, 442,500 dollars.

[14] See Hugh Murray's "United States of America," Vol. ii., chap. p. 70.

South Carolina. For want of regular supplies of food they suffered much on the line of march, but bore their privations with great fortitude. However, this force arrived too late for the relief of Charleston.

Having left about 4,000 men for the Southern service, under the command of Lieutenant-General Lord Cornwallis, Sir Henry Clinton embarked early in June with the main army for New York. Lord Rawdon was sent to Camden, on the Santee River, there to establish his headquarters, and to place the stores, with a view of over-running both the Carolinas.[15] Rather tardily were the American reinforcements collected to operate against Cornwallis in South Carolina; and General Gates, whose military capacity had been greatly over-rated, was now appointed to command it.[16] As victor at Saratoga, however, his fame revived the spirit of numerous volunteers and militia in the South, while various parties took up arms and flocked to join his standard.[17] Having collected about 6,000 men, De Kalb's troops being included, but without taking sufficient pains to be informed regarding the strength and resources of the enemy, or even without taking precautions to ascertain their movements in front, Gates was impatient to advance. Through pine-barrens, sand-hills and swamps, he reached Clermont on the 13th of August, and next day General Stephens joined him with a large body of Virginia militia. The American General then moved towards Camden on the Wateree River, in the interior of South Carolina.[18] To meet him, Lord Cornwallis marched with a greatly superior force, and there Lord Rawdon had already concentrated his troops.[19] Intending to attack Gates in his position the next day, Lord Cornwallis put his troops in motion during the night. In like manner the American General, after ordering his baggage to the Waxhaws, intended to secure a more eligible position nearer Camden, and at 10 o'clock p.m., on the 15th, his army was set in order and directed to advance.

On the 16th of August, the battle of Camden was fought, Gates' vanguard being surprised on his route, about two o'clock in the morning. Then the action soon became general.[20] The American cavalry of Colonel Armand were at once attacked and driven in upon the infantry. With great want of judgment, Gates then sent forward his militia to meet the advancing regulars of the British army. At the very

[15] See "The Annual Register for the year 1780," Vol. xxiii., History of Europe, chap. x., p. 230.

[16] See John Adolphus' "History of England," Vol. iii., chap. xxxix., p. 316.

[17] See Michael Doheny's "History of the American Revolution," chap. xv., p. 203.

[18] See Lieutenant-Colonel Tarleton's "History of the Campaign in 1780-1, in the Southern Provinces of North America." London, 1787, 8vo.

[19] In September, 1779 1,500 troops arrived from Ireland, and numbers of these deserted to the Americans. This so enraged Lord Rawdon, that on July 1st 1780, he issued the following brutal order: "I will give the inhabitants ten guineas for the head of any deserter belonging to the volunteers of Ireland, and five guineas only if they bring them in alive."—George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. x., chap. xv., p. 311.

[20] See Michael Doheny's "History of the American Revolution," chap xv., pp. 204, 205.

first onset those bands fled, and thus spread a panic throughout the American lines. The brigades of Maryland and Delaware, under De Kalb, stood their ground bravely, for a considerable time.[21] These inflicted great damage on the British. However, their infantry charged the Virginia Militia—who formed the left wing of the American army—with fixed bayonets, and they fled from that field. A considerable body of the North Carolina militia followed their example.[22] The Americans were defeated with considerable loss;[23] and their general retreated to North Carolina, without making any well-directed effort to check the pursuing troopers of Tarleton. After this action, nearly 300 wounded Americans were brought into Camden. Brigadier-General Baron de Kalb was mortally wounded after exhibiting heroic courage in the field.[24] The Americans lost the whole of their artillery, eight field pieces, upwards of 200 waggons, and the greatest part of their baggage.[25] After his disgraceful conduct as a leader became known, Congress removed Gates from his command.[26]

During the absence of Sir Henry Clinton in the South, Major-General Nathaniel Greene held a position to carry on the blockade of New York, and Lieutenant-General Knyphausen deemed it opportune to make a sudden incursion against the Americans. On the 23rd of June, an indecisive battle between the British and Continentals was fought at Springfield, in New Jersey.[27] Knyphausen commanded the British and Greene the Americans. After a severe engagement, when the British took and burned Springfield[28], the invaders were repulsed, and they retired to Staten Island.[29]

When Clinton got possession of Charleston, the conditions of surrender were violated, in order to drive prisoners into the British ranks. The people there were forcibly enrolled as soldiers, and detachments of troops were sent out in various directions to overawe South Carolina. All the inhabitants were required to aid in restoring the royal authority, on pain of being treated as rebels.[30] Cajolery and intimidation were both employed, and their influences seemed for a while to prevail, especially as large bodies of men were sent on various expeditions throughout the State.

[21] See Judge Marshall's "Life of George Washington," Vol. iv., pp. 215 to 235.

[22] See "The Annual Register for the year 1780," Vol. xxiii., The History of Europe, chap. x., pp. 231 to 233.

[23] Lord Cornwallis estimated their slain at eight or nine hundred, and he stated that about 1,000 prisoners were taken.

[24] This German volunteer, who so ably served the Americans, died of his wounds, on the 19th of August, in the forty-eighth year of his age.

[25] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. x., chap. xv., pp. 319 to 323.

[26] Brigadier-General Griffith Rutherford was an Irishman by birth. He commanded a brigade in the battle of Camden.

[27] See Benson J. Lossing's "Pictorial Field-Book of the Revolution," Vol. i., chap. xiv., pp. 323, 324.

[28] See "The Annual Register," for the year 1781, Vol. xxiii. The History of Europe, chap. ii., pp. 17, 18.

[29] See Jared Sparks' "Life of George Washington," &c., Vol. i., chap. xii., p. 335.

[30] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. x., chap. xiv., pp. 307, 308.

Colonel Tarleton was particularly active on these raids. He started with some light infantry and cavalry for the Catawba fords, where General Sumpter had encamped. There Tarleton overtook part of a Virginia Regiment, and although they offered no resistance and sued for quarter, he massacred over one hundred in cold blood. The rout was complete, two pieces of cannon and about 300 men were captured while a number of British waggons and prisoners were re-taken.[31] Elated with their victories, and now confident in their strength, the conquerors grew more insolent and rapacious. Lord Cornwallis having been left as commander in South Carolina, his intention was to carry the British arms northwards, when he had established quiet there, and when the season was more favourable for his movements.[32]

An active partisan warfare in the interior was kept up by Colonel Sumpter,[33] who had gathered around him a number of resolute exiles from that State.[34] In many instances, his irregular bands were successful. On the 12th July, he attacked a detachment of the royal forces and militia, posted in a lane at Williamson's plantation, and completely routed them. In a few days, his troops amounted to 600 men,[35] afterwards raised to about 1,000. They also encountered reverses. The commander of a corps, named Clarke, rendered excellent services in keeping up this contest, especially in the western parts of South Carolina. At Rocky Mount, on the 30th of July, the Americans under Sumpter were attacked by the British and defeated with a loss of 13 men.[36] On the 6th of August, at Hanging Rock,[37] with a loss of 53 men, Sumpter obtained a victory over the British.

But that corps, known as "Marion's Men," were of all others the most enterprising in the South. However, his bands rarely mustered more than from 50 to 200 resolute militia.[38] By the secrecy of his movements, and by the rapidity of his actions, Marion constantly beat up the British quarters, and successfully evaded their attempts to cope with him.[39]

[31] See "The Annual Register for the year 1780," Vol. xxiii., History of Europe, chap. x., p. 234.

[32] At this time the King of England wrote "The intelligence from America is far from unpleasant."—The Correspondence of King George the Third with Lord North from 1768 to 1783, Vol. ii., Letter 601, p. 284.

[33] He had bravely commanded a continental regiment, and to punish his desertion from home, a British detachment had turned his wife out of doors. Then they burned down his house and everything it contained. See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. x., chap. xv., p. 312.

[34] See "The Annual Register," for the year 1781, Vol. xxiii. History of Europe, chap. ii., pp. 19, 20.

[35] After joining the royal banner, a number of the South Carolina militia went over to him, and one Colonel Lisle carried a whole battalion to swell Sumpter's forces. See Hugh Murray's "United States of America," Vol. ii., chap. ii., p. 71.

[36] The English lost 20 men in this encounter.

[37] Colonel John McClure, who commanded the company known as the Rocky Creek Irish, fell at the first fire from the Royalists; while at the same time, four of his cousins lay bleeding near him. All these were of Irish extraction.

[38] See Hugh Murray's "United States of America," Vol. ii., chap. ii., p. 74.

[39] Among his followers, the names of Colonels Horry and McDonad, as

Foremost among these leaders in South Carolina was Andrew Pickens,[40] who became a warm republican when the Revolution broke out, and he was one of the most active among the military partisans of the South. In a proclamation issued by Lord Cornwallis, even more brutally than Clinton, he gave orders that all the inhabitants, who had subscribed and taken part in the revolt, should be punished with the greatest rigour; and also, that those who would not turn out must be imprisoned, and their whole property taken from them and destroyed. He also ordered, that satisfaction should be made for their estates to those who had been injured or oppressed by the Americans.[41] He also ordered in the most positive manner, that every man who had borne arms with the English and afterwards joined the enemy should be immediately hanged.[42] In accordance with that proclamation, numbers of the patriots were hanged and imprisoned; while their persons, without respect to age or sex, were outraged, and their property was confiscated or destroyed. The Cherokee Indians were stimulated, likewise, to join the royalists, and soon their savage excesses were characterised by the burning of houses and by the massacre of their inhabitants.[43]

also of Captain Conyers and McCauly, are conspicuous. See Thomas D'Arcy McGee's "History of the Irish Settlers in North America," chap. iv. p. 42.

[40] He was born in Paxton township, Pennsylvania, on the 19th of September 1739. His parents were from Ireland. In 1752 he removed with his father to the Waxham settlement in South Carolina. He served as a volunteer in Grant's expedition against the Cherokees, in which he took his first lessons in the art of war. From the close of the Revolution until 1794, he was a member of the South Carolina legislature, when he was elected to a seat in Congress. He was commissioned as major-general of the South Carolina militia in 1795, and was often a commissioner to treat with the Indians. President Washington offered him a brigade of light troops under General Wayne, to serve against the Indians in the Northwest, but he declined the honour. He died at his seat in Pendleton district, South Carolina, the scene of his earliest battles, on the 17th of August 1817, at the age of 78 years. In 1765 he married Rebecca Calhoun, aunt of the celebrated John C. Calhoun, one of the most beautiful young ladies of the South. See Benson J. Lossing's "Pictorial Field-Book of the Revolution."

[41] This proclamation was dated, September 16th 1780. See "The Annual Register" for the year 1781, Vol. xxiii. History of Europe, chap. iv., p. 51.

[42] Letter of Lord Cornwallis to Colonel Balfour, commander at Fort Ninety-six, in August 1780. This letter is carefully excluded from "Correspondence of Charles, First Marquis of Cornwallis," as edited by Charles Ross, Esq.

[43] Upon one occasion, with thirteen other whites, Patrick Calhoun, a native of Donegal, Ireland, and father of the celebrated John C. Calhoun, maintained a desperate conflict for hours with the Cherokee Indians, until overwhelmed by numbers, he was forced to retreat, leaving seven of his companions dead on the field. Three days after, they returned to bury their dead, and found the bodies of twenty-three Indian warriors, who had fallen in that same conflict. At another time, he was singled out by an Indian, distinguished for his prowess as a chief, and for his skill with the rifle. The Indian taking to a tree, Patrick secured himself behind a log, whence he drew the Indian's fire four times by holding his hat on a stick a little above his hiding place. The Indian at length exhibited a portion of his person in an effort to

After his victory at Camden, Lord Cornwallis marched his army into North Carolina.[44] He hoped to overrun that whole district, and afterwards to invade Virginia. Bands of Tories were now organised by Major Patrick Ferguson a Scotchman, and by other leaders, to aid the British. These soon committed great ravages and outrages. In Virginia, Colonel Campbell had organised a body of militia and backwoodsmen. With these he marched onwards to the frontiers of South Carolina. On the 7th of October, he there surprised Colonel Patrick Ferguson, and a battle was fought at King's Mountain. He attempted to defend that post by successive charges with the bayonet. However, after a sharp conflict, Ferguson was killed in that engagement.[45] The Americans proved victorious, with a loss of only twenty men. The British lost about 1,000, who surrendered as prisoners of war.[46]

About this period, a name, that had hitherto stood high on the roll of fame and of honourable military achievements, was destined to bring infamy and everlasting disgrace on its bearer. For some time, Benedict Arnold had been intriguing with the British,[47] while the American army was camped north of New York City.[48] An Adjutant-General in the British army, Major John Andre, undertook a dangerous service for his leader. On the 28th of September, while attempting to pass through

ascertain the effect of his shot, when he received a ball from his enemy in the shoulder, which forced him to fly. But the hat exhibited the traces of four balls, by which it had been perforated. The family of Calhoun emigrated at first to Pennsylvania, where they remained some years, and then to the western part of Virginia, whence they were driven by the Indians after Braddock's defeat. They removed, finally, to South Carolina in 1756, when Patrick settled in Abbyville district, where his distinguished son was born. Patrick Calhoun married an Irish-American girl, a daughter of Major John Caldwell of Charlotte county, Virginia. Major Caldwell was afterwards murdered by the Tories, in cold blood, and in his own yard, after destroying his house by fire. The families of Calhoun and Caldwell were stout Whigs, and were not only exposed to hostile Indian incursions, but also to Tory outrages. They maintained their foothold on the soil despite the conflicts of an almost constant border warfare, and adhered to their country, amid the horrors of civil strife and in the face of foreign invaders. Of three paternal uncles of John C. Calhoun, able to bear arms, one perished by the hands of the Tories, another fell at the battle of the Cowpens with thirty sabre wounds, and a third, taken prisoner by the English, was immured for nine months in the dungeons of St. Augustine. Nor was Patrich Calhoun indebted to anything less than a strong arm and a stout heart for his escape from the perils that surrounded him. He served in the Legislature of South Carolina for thirty years. See "Life of John C. Calhoun."

[44] See John Adolphus' "History of England," Vol. iii., chap. xxxix., p. 319.

[45] See A. Ferguson's "Memoir of Colonel P. Ferguson, killed in the American War of 1780 in South Carolina." 1817. 8vo.

[46] See Michael Doheny's "History of the American Revolution," chap. xv., pp. 206-7.

[47] See Jared Sparks' "Life and Treason of Arnold," Library of American Biography, Vol. iii.

[48] The scenes of Arnold's treacherous betrayal of his trust are represented in a Map of Operations on Hudson's River, in "The Writings of George Washington," Vol. vii., p. 216. Edition by Jared Sparks.

the American lines, Major Andre was arrested by three militia men.[49] The prisoner was tried by a court-martial, before which he made an ingenious defence, but sentence of death was passed upon him. His pardon would have been readily accorded, by Washington, had Arnold been delivered in exchange for him; but, this proposition was not accepted by Sir Henry Clinton. Accordingly, on the 2nd of October, Major Andre was hanged as a spy at Tappan, on the Hudson River.[50]

At Fish Dam Ford, on the 18th of November, the American leader Sumpter had an engagement with the British under Major Wemyss. The Continentals were victorious. Then Tarleton with a considerable force went in pursuit of Sumpter, who retreated to a strong position on the bank of the River Tyger. The British leader pushed forward with 250 cavalry and mounted infantry. At Blackstock, on the 20th of November, the American general Sumpter was attacked by, and he bravely encountered, the British general Tarleton, when an obstinate engagement took place. The British were defeated and lost nearly 200 men in that action. The American loss was only 8 men.[51] Tarleton was then obliged to fall back on his infantry,[52] but Sumpter was too weak in force to follow up his victory.[53] During the year 1780, however, disaster and defeat seemed generally most fatal to the enterprise and cause of the Southern Continentals.

Towards the close of that year, the long-suffering Pennsylvanian line unpaid, only half fed and ill clothed, began to murmur, and at length they became mutinous.[54] On New Year's Day 1781, no less than thirteen hundred marched out of camp with arms in their hands, and they started for Philadelphia, to obtain relief from Congress. An effort was made to stop them by General Wayne, who was their idol in action; but they threatened to run him through with their bayonets, while an *émeute* ensued, in which a captain was killed, and several officers were wounded. At Princeton, the agents of Sir Henry Clinton urged the mutineers that they should desert to the British, who would afford them not only relief, but bounties in their necessities. These offers were indignantly rejected, and the agents arrested as spies were handed over to General Wayne. A Committee of Congress was appointed to treat with the troops. It was agreed then, to accept their understanding for the terms of enlistment, to provide them with clothing, and to make arrangements for their pay. Nearly all the Pennsylvanians obtained their discharge, and this greatly weakened the force at Washington's disposal. Those concessions produced a very demoralising effect upon the other soldiers, and a few days

[49] These were named John Paulding, David Williams and Isaac Van Wart.

[50] See "The Annual Register" for the year 1781, Vol. xxiii History of Europe, chap. iii., pp. 37 to 49.

[51] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol x., chap. xiv., pp. 343, 344.

[52] See *ibid.*, chap. iv., pp. 53, 54.

[53] See Lieutenant-Colonel Tarleton's "History of the Campaigns of 1780-1, in the Southern Provinces of North America," p. 178.

[54] See Jared Sparks' "Life of George Washington," Vol. i., chap. xiii., pp. 546, 547.

afterwards, the New Jersey regiments began to revolt.[55] This, however, was put down by force, when two of the ringleaders were tried by court-martial and shot. Congress was startled at these untoward movements. Great exertions were made, as a consequence, to raise money and supplies, so that the condition of their army might be improved.

## CHAPTER XVIII.

**The Action of Lafayette in France—Arnold's Invasion of Virginia—Operations of General Green and of Lord Cornwallis in the South—Battle of the Cowpens—Subsequent Manœuvres—Battle of Guildford Court-House—Various Encounters—Battle of Eutaw Springs—Lord Cornwallis marches to Virginia—French and American Combinations—Investment of Yorktown—Siege—Surrender of Lord Cornwallis and of his whole Army—Reception of the News in England and Ireland.**

THE tide of events now began to turn in favour of the Continentals. Having spent the winter in France, where he was received with great honour and congratulations by his countrymen and by the court,[1] Lafayette had been employed there in earnestly urging the cause of America. Meantime, Admiral D'Estaing had sailed for France. But, it was arranged that another fleet should proceed to America, under the direction of Admiral de Ternay, while an army commanded by the Comte Rochambeau should also embark.[2] Lafayette returned in the spring with this welcome intelligence to Congress and to Washington, whose army he again joined. When Benedict Arnold deserted his former companions-in-arms he was commissioned as Brigadier-General in the British service. His daring and enterprising character having been already well proved, soon he was selected as one best qualified to be leader in an expedition, which it was hoped should create a diversion unfavourable to the cause of the Continentals.[3] Accordingly, in January 1781, he was directed to conduct 1,600 British troops from New York to invade Virginia. When he arrived there he occupied Portsmouth. At this time, Thomas Jefferson happened to be Governor of the State, and he called out the militia to oppose the invader.[4] Arnold also ravaged along the James River, and burned a part of

[55] See *ibid.*, p. 348.

[1] One of his projects while in France was to urge on the government the invasion of Ireland, with a view to establish its independence of England, and thus also to create a diversion in favour of the United States. See Bayard Tuckerman's "Life of General Lafayette," &c., Vol. i., chap. v., p. 110.

[2] See John Miller's "History of the United States from their first Settlement," &c. 1826, 8vo.

[3] See "The Annual Register" for the year 1781, Vol. xxiv. "The History of Europe," chap. v., p. 73.

[4] See Jared Sparks' "Life of George Washington," Vol. i. chap. xiii., pp. 351, 352.

Richmond.[5] He fell back to Portsmouth, however, when the militia began to collect in force.

The direction of American movements in the South, ably conducted by Major-General Greene, was difficult to manage, in the face of greatly superior forces on the enemy's side.[6] Henry Lee had been detached to serve under him. General Morgan also held himself ready to co-operate in this campaign. Early in January, the camp of Lord Cornwallis was pitched in a position between Broad and Catawba Rivers. He had desired to invade North Carolina.[7] With the main body of his forces moving forward, he hoped to separate Morgan from Green. However, on penetrating the design of Cornwallis, Morgan hastily retreated towards North Carolina. He then held a post at the head of Broad River, and known as Cowpens, from which Cornwallis hoped to dislodge him.[8] Meantime, Washington sent Lafayette with some troops to capture the traitor Arnold if possible, and to make an example of him for his perfidy and cruelty. On their arrival, De Ternay's ships were despatched to assail Portsmouth by sea. The British squadron sailed in pursuit. At the entrance to Chesapeake Bay, the French vessels were attacked on the 18th of March. This action proved favourable to the British, and the French vessels were obliged to sail for Newport. Meanwhile, heavy reinforcements were sent to Arnold from New York. At Annapolis in Maryland, the march of Lafayette was arrested by a greatly superior force.

The Americans only numbered 800 men, under the command of General Morgan They took up a position, at a place called the Cowpens, not far from King's Mountain. Thither Lieutenant-Colonel Tarleton marched, having two fieldpieces, with his legion amounting to 1,000 choice foot soldiers, and 350 horse. He opened the attack upon the militia force on the 17th of January. This body at first gave way, after delivering a destructive fire against the assailants of their position.[9] Meantime, Morgan had posted his veteran soldiers, in thick woods, on either flank of the militia. When the British advanced in some disorder to follow up what they deemed an assured victory, the Continental troops poured a deadly fire upon them, while Morgan's horse also charged the royalist cavalry.[10] Colonel Howard followed up this advantage with the bayonet, and so unexpected was the movement, that the British became completely demoralised.[11] In this brilliant action, the

[5] See David Ramsay's "History of the American Revolution," Vol. ii., chap. xxii., pp. 226 to 228.

[6] In the re-organization of his army, Baron Steuben was of great assistance.

[7] See "The Annual Register" for the year 1781, Vol. xxiv. The History of Europe, chap. iv., p. 55.

[8] See Rev. George R. Cleig's "Lives of the most Eminent British Military Commanders," Vol. iii., pp. 143 to 146.

[9] See Tarleton's "History of the Campaigns of 1780 and 1781, in the Southern Provinces."

[10] See "The Annual Register" for the year 1781, Vol. xxiv. History of Europe, chap. iv., pp. 55. Also, C. Stedman's "History of the Origin, Progress and Termination of the American War," Vol. ii., chap. xli., pp. 356 to 361.

[11] In this engagement, the brave young Lieutenant-Colonel William

Americans proved victorious, with the loss of only twelve men killed and eighty wounded; that of the British was ten officers and ninety privates killed, while twenty-three officers and five hundred privates were taken prisoners.[12] Almost all the British infantry, except the baggage guard, were killed or taken. Their two pieces of artillery, eight hundred muskets, two standards, thirty-five baggage waggons, and one hundred dragoon horses, fell into the possession of the Americans. To the honour of the victors, it is declared that notwithstanding the cruel warfare which Tarleton had waged, not one of the British was killed or wounded, or even insulted, after they had surrendered. During that night and following morning, the remnant of Tarleton's force reached Hamilton's Ford, on Broad River, and also the encampment of Cornwallis, at Turkey Creek, about twenty-five miles from the Cowpens. For this defeat, Tarleton's contemporaries censured him severely, and in commemoration of that battle, Congress caused a medal to be struck.[13]

After his great victory, Morgan marched eastwards to meet Major-General Green.[14] Meantime, having received large reinforcements from New York, and collecting the remnants of Tarleton's division, Cornwallis burned his stores and superfluous baggage, so that his soldiers

Washington, a distant kinsman of General George Washington, so distinguished himself by his gallantry as to win a gold medal from Congress. He commanded a cavalry force, and by a daring assault, he drove the British horse to rout. He and General Tarleton had a personal conflict on the field. In the eagerness of his pursuit of that officer, Washington had got far in advance of his squadron, when Tarleton and his two aids, at the head of a troop of the 17th regiment of dragoons, turned upon him. An officer on Tarleton's right was about to strike the impetuous Washington with his sabre, when his sergeant came up and disabled the assailant's sword-arm. An officer on Tarleton's left was about to strike at the same moment, when Washington's little bugler, too small to wield a sword, wounded the assailant with a pistol ball. Tarleton, who was in the centre, then made a trust at him, which Washington parried, and gave his enemy a wound in the hand. Tarleton wheeled, and as he retreated, discharged a pistol, by which Washington was wounded in the knee.

[12] Lord Cornwallis's letter to Sir Henry Clinton, and dated Camp on Turkey Creek, Broad River, Jan. 18th 1781, rather underestimates this loss. However, it is acknowledged by Charles Ross, that he had furnished Tarleton with 700 infantry and 350 cavalry, the best troops of the army, while Morgan had hardly an equal force, of which only 540 were Continentals. See "Correspondence of Charles, First Marquis of Cornwallis," Vol. i., chap. iv., pp. 82, 83.

[13] Among the American soldiers, serving in a private capacity, was especially distinguished a Peter Francisco, born in 1761. He came from Ireland to America, when he was only a boy. He was one of the strongest and most daring men in the American ranks, while he served in both the Northern and Southern armies. He took part in almost all the great battles of the war. As a remarkable instance of courage and dexterity, upon one occasion when taken prisoner in Virginia in 1781, he fought and foiled nine of Tarleton's dragoons, coming safely off in the conflict. He died at Richmond, Va., in 1832. See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. ii., p 525.

[14] See Henry Cabot Lodge's "George Washington," Vol. i., chap. x., p. 293.

might move the faster to overwhelm Morgan's insignificant bands.[15] The American leader was now obliged to retreat across the Catawba River. In consequence of heavy rain, it became suddenly swollen, by the time the British arrived at its banks. Notwithstanding the critical position in which he had been placed, Green hastened a rapid march, and in the same direction, to save his little army. Crossing the Yadkin —also greatly swollen with the recent rains—the Americans secured all the boats on their side, and thus again they foiled Cornwallis' advance.[16] The latter now turned northwards, intending to cut off their retreat upon Virginia. This movement delayed the crossing, and it enabled Morgan to reach the Yadkin River, where Green was stationed. The two divisions of Green numbered but little over 2,000 men; while the English had a greatly superior force, and much better appointed. Having occupied Wilmington and Newbern, Cornwallis soon overran all North Carolina. There he made every effort to rouse and organise the Tories. Nevertheless, Major-General Green returned from Virginia, and by sending out skirmishing parties on horseback in various directions, he kept the British and the Tories in a state of apprehension and alertness, which prevented success to many of their concerted plans.

Having collected a body of six weeks' volunteers from Viginia and Carolina, Green determined to assault the British forces at Gilford Court-House near the present town of Greensborough, North Carolina.[17] There, on the 15th of March, his army was drawn up in three lines. The North Carolina militia were placed in front; the Virginia militia were next; but, as many of these were known to be Tories and serving under compulsion, it was announced to them, before the action began, that a row of sentinels stood behind with orders to shoot the first who ran. The Continentals he placed in the rear, and on these was his chief reliance. The British then advanced to the charge. Almost immediately afterwards, the first line of militia threw down their arms and fled in confusion. For some time, the Virginian militia stood, but in like manner, they gave way before the British bayonets. The Continentals, however, received their assailants with true courage, and checked the British, who fell in great numbers before their steady fire.[18] At length, finding his regiments hard pressed, Cornwallis ordered his artillery to be discharged. This order was obeyed by an indiscriminate fire, which cut down as many of his own men as it did those of the enemy. In this battle, the British loss was 600 men, while the Americans lost only 400. However, Green was obliged to retreat, as numbers

[15] See C. Stedman's "History of the Origin, Progress, and Termination of the American War," Vol. ii., chap. xli., pp. 361 to 367.

[16] See "The Annual Register" for the year 1781, Vol. xxiv. History of Europe, chap. iv., pp. 58 to 62.

[17] See C. Stedman's graphic description of this battle, in "History of the Origin, Progress and Termination of the American War," Vol. ii., chap. xli., pp. 374 to 386.

[18] A very excellent and detailed account of this battle may be found in "The Annual Register" for the year 1781, Vol. xxiv. History of Europe, chap. iv., pp. 65 to 70.

of his men had scattered and deserted. On the whole, the advantage was on his side; for the British had suffered so severely in that action, that they were unable to engage in pursuit.[19] Whereupon, Cornwallis was obliged to fall back towards Wilmington.[20]

From Camden westwards to Fort Ninety-six, and thence to Augusta and Charleston, the British had established a chain of forts. Green formed the bold design of marching into South Carolina to attack their defenders. On the 23rd of April, Marion and Lee attacked Fort Watson on the Santee River, and captured it. On the 25th, Green attacked Lord Rawdon, and a severe engagement ensued, but it was not decisive. Soon, however, Rawdon was obliged to evacuate Camden, and retreat to Charlestown. Marion and Lee captured Fort Motte on the Santee River. Sumpter seized Orangeburg. Lee took possession of Granby. Being joined by Pickens, one of the most active military partizans of the south, Augusta in Georgia was assaulted, and on the 5th of June, it capitulated to the Americans. Fort Ninety-six was strongly garrisoned by the British, yet General Green made dispositions for an attack. Although not successful in the attempt, that post soon afterwards was abandoned. Three regiments[21] which sailed from Cork, in the beginning of June, landed at Charleston to reinforce Lord Rawdon, while General Green had been engaged investing the important fort called Ninety-six.[22] An encounter took place at Spencer's ordinary, on the 25th of June, the Americans being under the command of Pierce Butler.[23] Colonel Simcoe was leader of the British. Towards the beginning of July, the heat became intense, and it was found necessary to suspend operations for a time. Besides, General Green desired to strengthen and supply his army during the interval.

On the 10th of July 1781, Thomas M'Kean was chosen President of Congress, Mr. Huntington having previously resigned.[24] Meantime owing to illness, Lord Rawdon had sailed for England; but the vessel in which he embarked was captured by a French frigate, when he was brought a prisoner to Brest.[25] Having crossed the Santee River in August

[19] See David Ramsay's "History of the American Revolution," Vol. ii., chap. xxiii., pp. 241 to 243.

[20] See Rev. George R. Gleig's "Lives of the most eminent British Military Commanders," Vol. iii., pp. 149 to 153.

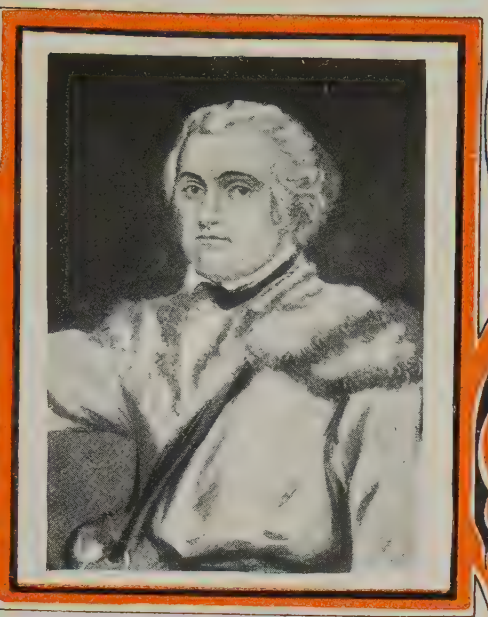
[21] With these, in the 19th regiment, served Lord Edward Fitzgerald as a young officer. He conducted himself with great gallantry in several minor engagements, to the close of that war, when Lord Cornwallis surrendered at Yorktown. See Thomas Moore's "Life and death of Lord Edward Fitzgerald," Vol. i., pp. 17 to 28. London, 1831, 8vo.

[22] See C. Stedman's "History of the Origin, Progress, and Termination of the American War," Vol. ii., chap. xliii., pp. 405 to 415.

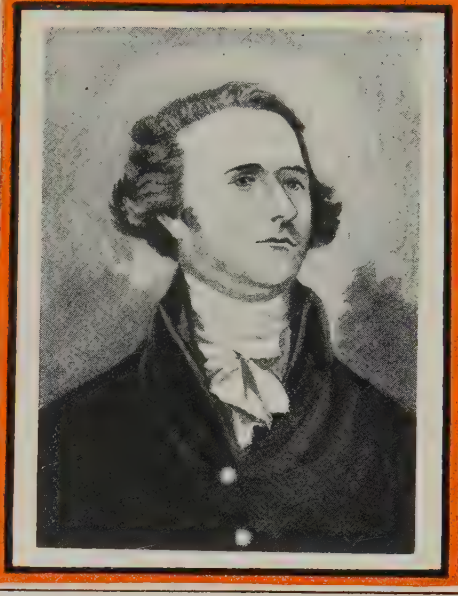
[23] He was the fourth of the Irish and Irish-American brothers Butler, that fought through the Revolutionary War, and he was born in Pennsylvania, in 1760; while a fifth and the youngest of the brothers, named Edward, embraced a military career, and served after the Revolution under General Wayne in 1796. See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. i., pp. 480, 481.

[24] See "The Writings of George Washington," &c., Vol. viii., p. 112. Edition of Jared Sparks.

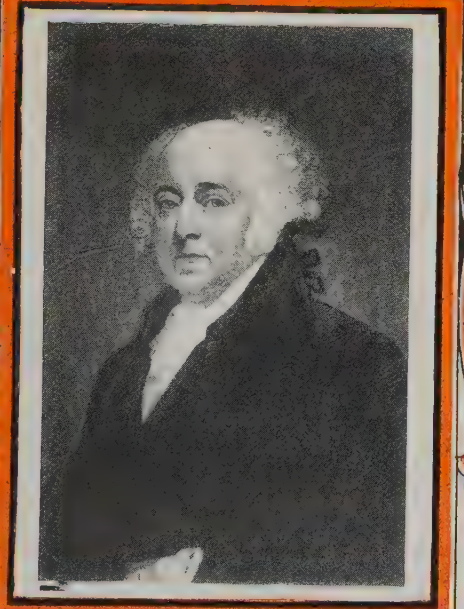
[25] This brave and able officer—born in



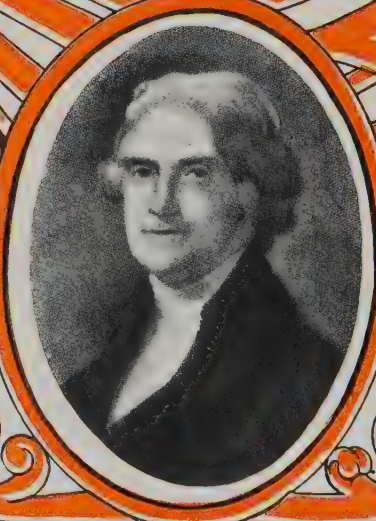
DANIEL MORGAN,
Major-General U S Army



ALEXANDER HAMILTON,
Secretary to the U.S Treasury.



JOHN ADAMS,
Second President of the U.S.



THOMAS JEFFERSON
Third President of the U.S.

General Green marched against the British. They were now commanded by Colonel Stewart. Their forces retired before the Americans, who pursued them down the right bank. At Eutaw Springs in South Carolina, the British took up a position to give battle, and a severe engagement there took place. Colonel William Washington commanded the cavalry, and he was distinguished for his gallantry, especially on this occasion. About 600 men were lost by the British and Americans. The battle of Eutaw Springs was fought on the 8th of September. Both sides claimed the victory. However, Colonel Washington was there wounded and taken prisoner.[26]

The British were now closed up in that narrow tract between the Cooper and Ashley Rivers. Still Green was unable to make any impression on them, as he stood in need of artillery, ammunition and stores. Besides, the militia in large numbers had deserted him. He took up a position, notwithstanding, on the hills of the Santee. Meanwhile, Marion, Sumpter and Lee were most active in their raids on the enemy.[27]

While these incidents took place, Lord Cornwallis had resolved to march upon the State of Virginia. Having effected a junction with the British troops there,[28] he ravaged the country along the James River, and he destroyed property, it is said, to the amount of about ten million dollars. Lafayette had been stationed at Richmond Virginia, with a small force, while General Anthony Wayne had been despatched with troops to aid General Green, and his course also lay through that State.[29] Cornwallis desired greatly to prevent their junction, but he did not succeed. Finding himself so superior in the number of his forces, while scorning his French opponents and the youth of Lafayette, Cornwallis wrote to Great Britain "the boy cannot escape me."

The American Major-General Green and the French Volunteer General the Marquis de Lafayette ably manœuvered against Lord Corn-

Ireland December 7th 1754—served from the opening of the Revolutionary war at Bunker's Hill nearly to its close. He was appointed to command a corps of the Irish Volunteers, but many of these deserted to the Americans. The character he had obtained in South Carolina for excessive military severity was greatly redeemed in after years, when he became the distinguished liberal statesman Earl of Moira, the title by which he is best known. He opposed with great eloquence in the House of Lords the proposed union of Ireland's Parliament with that of Engand in 1799. He warmly advocated the Catholic claims, and he lived to witness the accomplishment of Catholic Emancipation in 1829. On the 28th of November, that same year, he died on board of an English vessel, in the Bay of Naples. To him C. Stedman, who served in the Revolutionary War, dedicated his work in two 8vo. vols., "The History of the Origin, Progress, and Termination of the American War."

[26] See "The Annual Register for 1782," Vol. xxv. History of Europe, chap. ix., pp. 190 to 192.

[27] See David Ramsay's "History of the American Revolution," Vol ii., chap. xxiv., pp. 254 to 281.

[28] See Jared Sparks' "Life of George Washington," &c., Vol. i., chap. xiii., p. 363.

[29] See C. Stedman's "History of the Origin, Progress, and Termination of the American War," Vol. ii., chap. xliv., p. 435.

T

wallis and the English forces under his command.[30] The English General retired towards the mouth of the James River, intending there to embark a part of his army for New York.[31] Owing to the British blockade at Newport, the French army stationed there was inactive. At this time, Washington and his army held a central position between the forces of Lord Cornwallis and those of Sir Henry Clinton in New York. His movements were mysterious, and his real object could not be discovered by the enemy. The French Admiral De Grasse had been engaged during the summer against the English, in the West Indies; but in August, he sailed northwards, to co-operate with Washington,[32] who soon received intelligence of his arrival at Chesapeake Bay. At first, a combined attack of the Americans and the French upon New York had been projected, but finally it was abandoned.[33] It was then resolved, to march conjointly against Cornwallis in Virginia, by sending the whole French army under Rochambeau, and so many of the Continentals as could be spared, to the Chesapeake.[34] The army of Rochambeau marched from Newport to join Washington's forces in the Highlands, and when both were combined, they seemed to threaten Sir Henry Clinton's position. When the movements of Washington were ascertained, and when the French had left Newport, Sir Henry Clinton sent a British force under Benedict Arnold to devastate Connecticut, his native province.[35] Thus, he hoped, that Washington might be induced to turn back for its defence. While the British army was under Arnold's command, he burned New London on the 6th of September, but with the loss of two regiments,[36] and he took possession of Fort Griswold, on the opposite side of the Thames River.[37] There a number of people were massacred.

Meantime, Sir Henry Clinton and his soldiers feared the investment of New York. But before he was aware of their real purpose, Generals Washington and Rochambeau had moved their armies towards the Delaware. Admiral Graves and the British fleet at New York now sailed to the relief of Cornwallis. Off the Capes of the Chesapeake a

[30] See Bayard Tuckerman's "Life of General Lafayette," &c., Vol. i., chap. vi., pp. 122 to 138.

[31] See "The History of the War in America, between Great Britain and her Colonies, from its Commencement to its conclusion, in 1783." Vol. iii., chap. xii., pp. 299 to 233.

[32] See John Gilmary Shea's "Operations of the French Fleet under Count de Grasse." New York, 1864.

[33] See Jared Sparks' "Life of George Washington," &c., Vol. i., chap. xiii., pp. 358 to 363. Also, C. Stedman's "History of the Origin, Progress, and Termination of the American War," Vol. ii., chap. xliv., p. 437.

[34] See Washington's and Rochambeau's joint letter to Count de Grasse from the camp at Phillipsburg, dated 17th August, 1781, in "The Writings of George Washington," &c., Vol. viii., pp. 130 to 133. Edition of Jared Sparks.

[35] See C. Stedman's "History of the Origin, Progress, and Termination of the American War," Vol. ii., chap. xliv., pp. 448 to 451.

[36] See Horace Walpole's "Journal of the Reign of King George the Third, from the year 1771 to 1783," Vol. ii., p. 473.

[37] See Benson J. Lossing's "Pictorial Field-Book of the Revolution," Vol. ii., chap. ii., pp. 42 to 45.

naval encounter took place, on the 5th of September.[38] The English vessels were greatly damaged, and they were obliged to sail for New York in order to refit. Meanwhile, a number of French ships arrived from Newport, to strengthen those under the command of De Grasse; while the armies of Washington and of Rochambeau marched to the head waters of Chesapeake Bay. There both Generals went on board the French fleet, to concert further operations.[39] The American commander-in-chief had thus changed his course of action, by moving south to co-operate with Lafayette and the French fleet. Already it lay in the Chesapeake,[40] having now blocked up the James and York Rivers, while reinforcements were landed for Lafayette. At this time, Cornwallis received instructions from Sir Henry Clinton, which entirely altered his purpose. He now resolved to transfer his whole army to that peninsula between the James and York Rivers, where a British fleet and reinforcements might easily reach him. This too was supposed to be a favourable position for future operations. On the 28th of August, at the head of the English army, General Lord Cornwallis entered Yorktown, Virginia.[41] On the 14th of September, Generals Washington and Rochambeau had joined the division of Lafayette at Williamsburg,[42] between the James and York Rivers.[43]

Cornwallis had been assured by Sir Henry Clinton, that every possible means would be tried by the navy and army to relieve him. In the beginning of October, Washington proceeded to invest the English garrison of Yorktown, with a force of 12,000 men. Here Cornwallis was to be attacked, by the united armies of America and France; accordingly, batteries were constructed, and fire was opened on the town. The English were soon cooped up by land in Yorktown.[44] However, the sea was accessible, and their position was protected by two rivers. Nevertheless, a diversion by the French ships-of-war, that lay at the mouth of York River, was apprehended by Lord Cornwallis. After remaining for two days occupying a strong position in front of Yorktown,

[38] See an account of this engagement, in C. D. Yonge's "History of the British Navy, from the earliest period to the Present Time," Vol. i., chap. xv., pp. 373 to 375. London. 1863. Two vols., 8vo.

[39] See Henry Cabot Lodge's "George Washington," Vol. i., chap. x., p. 306.

[40] See Lossing's "Pictorial Field-Book of the Revolution," Vol. ii., chap. xx., pp. 507 to 530. Also, C. Stedman's "History of the Origin, Progress, and Termination of the American War," Vol. ii., chap. xliv., pp. 441 to 448.

[41] An excellent Map illustrating the operations in Virginia, 1781, may be consulted in "The Writings of George Washington," &c., Vol. viii,, p. 158. Edition of Jared Sparks.

[42] See Jared Sparks' "Life of George Washington," &c., Vol. i., chap. xiii., p. 366.

[43] The movements of the whole Southern Campaign of Lord Cornwallis are illustrated on a Map post-fixed to "Correspondence of Charles, First Marquis of Cornwallis," edited by Charles Ross, Esq., Vol. i.

[44] The news of their distressed state only reached England on the 3rd of November, through Colonel Robert Conway, who had arrived from New York. See Horace Walpole's "Journal of the Reign of King George the Third, from the year 1771 to 1783," Vol. ii., p. 473.

and expecting to be attacked, upon observing that the Americans and French were taking measures, which could not fail of turning the English left flank in a short time, and receiving on the second evening Sir Henry Clinton's letter dated the 24th of September that the relief should sail about the 5th of October, Cornwallis withdrew his troops within the works on the night of the 29th of September. He hoped by the labour and firmness of the soldiers to protect their defences until relief could arrive.

The besiegers broke ground when darkness set in on the 30th, and then constructed on that night and during the following days and nights, two redoubts.[45] On the 6th and 7th of October, the trenches were opened, and cannons were placed in position.[46] Brigadier-General O'Hara commanded on the right of the British position, and Lieutenant-Colonel Abercrombie was on the left.[47] A detachment of Guards, with the 80th company of Grenadiers, under the command of Lieutenant-Colonel Lake, attacked the American position on one side, while a battalion of light infantry, under command of Major Armstrong, attacked the other and both succeeded, by forcing the redoubts that covered them, spiking eleven guns and killing or wounding about a hundred of the French troops who had the guard in that part of the trenches. This happened with little loss on the English side. The cannons, having been spiked in a hurry, were soon rendered fit for service again, and before dark the whole parallel and batteries appeared to be nearly complete. At this time, Cornwallis knew that there was no part of the whole front opposed on which he could point a single gun, and his shells were nearly expended; he had therefore only to chose between preparing to surrender next day, or by endeavouring to get off with the greatest part of the English troops. He determined to attempt the latter, reflecting that though it should prove unsuccessful in its immediate object, it might at least delay the enemy in the prosecution of further enterprises. Sixteen large boats were prepared, and upon other pretexts they were ordered to be in readiness to receive troops precisely at ten o'clock. With these, Cornwallis hoped to pass the infantry over during the night, by abandoning the baggage, and leaving a detachment to capitulate for the townspeople as also for the sick and wounded. On this subject, a letter was ready to be delivered to General Washington.[48]

After making all arrangements with the utmost secrecy, the light infantry, the greatest part of the Guards, and part of the 23rd regiment, landed at Gloucester. At this critical moment, the weather from being moderate and calm changed to a violent storm of wind and

[45] The American Sappers and Miners were under the command of James Clinton. Knox commanded the artillery; under him were Stephens and Carrington.

[46] See "The History of the War in America, between Great Britain and her Colonies, from its commencement to its Conclusion, 1783," Vol. ii., chap. xli., pp. 243, 244.

[47] A Plan of the Siege of Yorktown, October 1781, is given in the "Writings of George Washington," &c., Vol. viii., p. 186. Edition of Jared Sparks.

[48] See C. Stedman's "History of the Origin, Progress, and Termination of the American War," Vol. ii., chap. xlv., pp. 452 to 468.

rain. This nearly drove all the boats, some of which had troops on board, down the river. It was soon evident, that the intended passage was impracticable, and the absence of their boats rendered it equally impossible to bring back the troops that had passed. In such a situation, with the English force divided, their enemy's batteries opened at day-break. The passage between Yorktown and Gloucester was much exposed; but, the boats having now returned were ordered to bring back the troops that had passed during the night. These joined in the forenoon without much loss. The numbers of Cornwallis' army had been greatly diminished by the enemy's fire, but particularly by sickness; while, the strength and spirit of those in the works were much exhausted, by the fatigue of constant watching and unremitting duty. Meanwhile, the American and French batteries raked the English with shot and shell, swept away their defences, and burned some of the shipping.[49]

After a siege of several days, preparations were made to storm two strong redoubts. One was successfully attacked by the Americans, under Colonel Alexander Hamilton,[50] and the other by the French, under Lafayette and Baron de Viomenil.[51] The British works in the meantime were going to ruin. Not having been able to strenghthen them by *abattis*, nor in any other manner than by light fraising, which the American artillery was demolishing wherever they fired, the engineers and principal officers of Cornwallis' army agreed in opinion with their general, that they were in many places assailable in the forenoon, and that by the continuance of a similar fire for a few hours longer, the defences should be in such a state as to render it desperate, with rapidly diminishing numbers, to attempt their maintenance.[52] An assault, which from the numbers and precautions of the enemy could not fail to succeed, urged the British general to capitulate. A correspondence between Generals Washington and Cornwallis ensued on that subject. The terms of the capitulation were at length agreed upon, and better could not be obtained under the circumstances.[53] The conditions of the capitulation were identical with those which the English themselves had imposed on General Lincoln, after his surrender at Charlestown.[54]

Over 7,000 British and Hessian soldiers were in the garrison, and

[49] See Jared Sparks' "Life of George Washington," Vol i., chap. xiii., pp. 367-70.

[50] See Henry Cabot Lodge's "Alexander Hamilton," chap. ii., pp. 25, 26.

[51] See Bayard Tuckerman's "Life of General Lafayette," &c., Vol. i., chap. vi., pp. 145, 146.

[52] Cornwallis observed, in his letter to Sir Henry Clinton, that at this time the British "could not fire a single gun." See "Correspondence of Charles, First Marquis of Cornwallis," edited with notes by Charles Ross, Esq., Vol. i., Appendix, No. ix., p. 512.

[53] Earl Cornwallis wrote a despatch to Sir Henry Clinton, which was dated Yorktown, Virginia, October 20th 1781. This he sent by Lieutenant-Colonel Abercrombie, and it gives a brief account of the occurrences and motives, which induced him to surrender. See *ibid.*, pp. 510 to 513.

[54] See the Articles of Capitulation, *ibid.*, No. xv., pp. 515 to 513.

these were obliged to lay down their arms.[55] More than one-half having been sick or wounded,[56] the allied French and Americans drew up in two straight lines—one facing the other—while the British officers and soldiers and their German auxiliaries, deeply humiliated, passed between them. About two o'clock the garrison sallied forth, and passed through with shouldered arms, slow and solemn steps, the drums beating a British march. The soldiers were all well clad, having been furnished with new suits prior to the capitulation. They were led by General O'Hara on horseback, who, riding up to General Washington took off his hat, and apologised for the non-appearance of Lord Cornwallis on account of indisposition. Washington received him with dignified courtesy, but pointed to Major-General Lincoln as the officer who was to receive the submission of the garrison.[57] By him, they were conducted into a field, where they were to ground their arms.[58] In passing through the lines formed by the allied armies, their march was careless and irregular, and their aspect sullen.[59] Notwithstanding, the French and Americans were highly considerate, treating the vanquished with courtesy and even with generosity.[60] With that character and sense of dignity and magnanimity which distinguished the American Commander-in-Chief, although knowing his troops to be highly elated and filled with inexpressible sensations, yet did he recommend to them the suppression of any unseemly manifestations of triumph.[61]

The English land troops were surrendered as prisoners of war to Congress, while the English naval force was assigned to the French.[62]

[55] See Henry Cabot Lodge's "George Washington," Vol. i., chap. x., p. 309.

[56] See David Ramsey's "Life of George Washington," chap. viii., London, 1807, 8vo. Also, Rev. George R. Gleig's "Lives of the most eminent British Military Commanders," Vol. iii., pp. 155, 166.

[57] See the History of the War in America, between Great Britain and her Colonies, from its Commencement to its Conclusion, in 1783," Vol. iii., chap. xii., pp. 245 to 250.

[58] When the English surrendered and marched there to throw down their arms, as also to deliver up their standards and battle flags, Ensign Wilson, an Irish-American, aged eighteen years, received these spoils from the conquered army.

[59] The order to "ground arms" was given by the platoon officers in a tone of deep chagrin, and many of the soldiers threw down their muskets with a violence sufficient to break them.

[60] In his letter of October 20th 1781, Lord Cornwallis writes:—"The kindness and attention that have been shown to us by the French officers in particular, their delicate sensibility of our situation, their generous and pressing offer of money, both public and private to any amount, has really gone beyond what I can possibly describe, and will, I hope, make an impression in the breast of every officer, whenever the fortune of war should put any of them in our power."—"Correspondence of Charles, First Marquis of Cornwallis," edited with Notes, by Charles Ross, Esq., Vol. i., Appendix No. ix., p. 512.

[61] The conduct of the American army was in conformity with the instructions of Washington: "My boys, let there be no insults over a conquered foe. When they lay down their arms, don't huzza; posterity will huzza for you."

[62] Washington immediately dispatched a messenger to Thomas McKean, President of the Continental

When the President received the welcome news at a late hour, McKean rose from his bed at midnight, and spread the news over the city. Philadelphia was illuminated that night, and next day Charles Thompson read the despatch to Congress. This stunning blow to the hopes of England virtually closed the war.[63] On the very day Cornwallis had surrendered, Sir Henry Clinton sailed with 7,000 troops in thirty-five ships, from New York, hoping to arrive in time for his rescue. But, having reached the Chesapeake, and hearing the result, he again returned.[64]

Although Washington desired next to besiege Charleston, yet De Grasse being obliged to sail immediately for the West Indies, he was necessitated to abandon that enterprise. However, he sent a detachment of two thousand Continental troops under command of General St. Clair southwards to strengthen Major-General Green, who had a considerable force of the English army left to oppose him. The prisoners were marched to Winchester in Virginia and to Fredericktown in Maryland. A part of them was subsequently brought to Lancaster in Pennsylvania. Lord Cornwallis and the other principal officers went by sea on parole. Leaving Rochambeau at Williamsburg, where the French remained until the following summer, the American army was moved again to New Jersey and the Highlands.[65] All these matters having been arranged, on the 5th of November General Washington

Congress at Phildelphia, conveying the glad tidings. His letter giving an account of the surrender is dated, Head-quarters, near York, 19th of October 1781. See 'The Writings of George Washington," Vol. viii., &c. Edition of Jared Sparks.

[63] The news had a terrible effect on Lord North. He threw up his arms, as if he had received a ball in the breast, exclaiming wildly, as he paced up and down the apartment: "My God, it is all over!" However, when Lord George Germain received the earliest intelligence of the surrender, he communicated it by letter to the king, who had been the originator of the idea and measure to tax the Americans, and who warned his reluctant prime minister Granville, that if he were disinclined or afraid to make the attempt, others could be found with sufficient resolution to carry it through. With characteristic obstinancy George III. at once wrote to Lord George Germain, that the principles of his conduct should still be "a prosecution of the present contest," and hoping that none of his ministers would think otherwise. See the anonymous and extravagantly eulogistic work, "George the Third, his Court and Family," Vol. i., sec. iii., p. 280, and Vol. ii., sec. v., p. 2. Two volumes, London, 1820, 8vo These books contain several good copper-plate engravings of the King, Queen, and their children.

[64] In a letter to the Earl of Carlisle, dated New York, 12th December 1781, General Sir Henry Clinton explains the circumstances whereby he failed to co-operate with Lord Cornwallis before the submission of himself and army. See B. F. Stevens's "Fac-similes of Manuscripts in European Archives relating to America," 1773-1783; etc., Vol. i., No. 129.

[65] The reader, who desires a very detailed narrative of events recorded in the present and previous chapter, may consult a very reliable work, Richard Hildreth's "History of the United States of America." First series, from the Discovery of the Continent under the Federal Constitution, 1497-1787. In three volumes, 8vo. The first edition appeared in 1849, but a revised edition was published in 1854. When the war virtually ended, a meeting of the Friendly Sons of St. Patrick was held in

left Yorktown by way of Mount Vernon for Philadelphia, and on the day after his arrival, in Congress he was greeted with a congratulatory address by the President.[66]

In no country of Europe was greater joy and satisfaction generally felt, even if it could not then be publicly expressed, than in Ireland, when those tidings were conveyed from America.[67] Meanwhile, the Irish Parliament had been called together in the month of October, 1781. The news of Lord Cornwallis' surrender reaching Dublin, Mr. Yelverton moved a loyal address to His Majesty recommending the restoration of a lasting and an honourable peace, which was carried by a large majority. Afterwards, on the 11th December, in a learned and most eloquent speech, Henry Flood moved for a committee to examine the precedents and records, in explanation of Poyning's law, a statute which required, that heads of all bills enacted by the Irish Parliament should be sent to England and there approved of, before they could be legislated upon in Ireland. This motion was defeated, however, by a majority of 139 against 67; the ministerial placemen and adherents being then too numerous and over confident in their ability to restrain the popular demand for a free parliamentary constitution.[68] Nevertheless, animated by a patriotic spirit, and with arms in their hands, the Volunteers[69] had resolved on attaining their object. This was soon formulated, that no body of men, other than the King, Lords and Commons, of Ireland, could make laws to bind that kingdom.[70]

December 1781, to invite General Washington and his suite to dine with them; but owing to pressing engagements on the invited guests, their banquet was deferred to January 7th 1782, when with a number of distinguished guests he attended, received a suitable address, and was adopted as an honorary member of the Society.

[66] See Jared Sparks' "Life of George Washington," Vol. i., chap. xiii., pp. 371, 372.

[67] The first news of Cornwallis' surrender was brought from France into England on the 25th of November, and this was soon confirmed by an express from Sir Henry Clinton. See Horace Walpole's "Journal of the Reign of King George the Third, from the year 1771 to 1783," vol. ii., p. 474.

[68] The reader who desires to have a comprehensive understanding of the state of Ireland previous to and including this parliamentary struggle, contemporaneous with the American Revolutionary War, may find the incidents very lucidly stated, in William Edward Hartpole Lecky's "History of England in the Eighteenth Century," Vol. iv., chaps. xvi., xvii., pp. 312 to 560.

[69] For a most accurately historical and elegantly written account of the formation and actions of those national guards, the reader is referred to Thomas McNevin's "History of the Volunteers of 1782." Centenary edition. Dublin: Duffy and Son, 15 Wellington Quay, 18mo.

[70] See Francis Plowden's "History of Ireland from its Invasion under Henry II. to its Union with Great Britain," Vol. ii., Book, iii., chap. v., p. 209.

## CHAPTER XIX.

**Change of Ministry, and Overtures of Peace from England accepted by the Americans—Independence of Parliament obtained for Ireland, and Trade with the United States inaugurated—Peace proclaimed and Recognition of American Independence by the different European Powers—Evacuation of New York by the English, and Disbanding of the American Army—Formation of the United States Constitution—Washington elected First President—His Administration and Policy—Indian Troubles on the Frontiers—Second Term of Washington's Administration—Wayne's Victories over the Indians—Retirement of Washington to private Life, and Election of John Adams as Second President—Differences of the United States with other Powers—Death of Washington.**

ALTHOUGH King George III. had obstinately insisted on the continuance of War,[1] the city of London and the English people were almost unanimous in their desire for a peace.[2] However, notwithstanding his reluctance to resign, Lord North could in vain oppose public opinion, especially when General Conway had moved in February 1782, that the war in America should no longer be pursued. On a division in the House of Commons, this motion was lost by a majority of one: 193 being for, and 194 against it. The matter was pressed again by the opposition; and at length, on the 20th of March, Lord North announced in Parliament, that his administration existed no longer.[3] Meantime, Sir Henry Clinton had resigned his position as commander-in-chief in America, and Sir Guy Carleton[4] was appointed to fill his place.

So disastrous was the last campaign for England, that the Independence of the United States was soon acknowledged by the different European nations, many of these having been neutral during the war: viz., by Sweden and Denmark, in February; by Holland in April;[5] and later still by Russia.

On the resignation of Lord North, the Marquis of Rockingham had been deputed to form a cabinet.[6] As Premier and First Commissioner of the Treasury, he appointed the Earl of Shelburne and Charles James

[1] See "The Correspondence of King George the Third with Lord North from 1768 to 1783," edited by W. Bodham Donne, Vol. ii., Letters 693, 697, 701, pp. 386 to 397.

[2] See Rev. H. Fergus' "History of the Western World," Vol. ii. United States, chap. xi., pp. 198, 199, Lardner's Cabinet Cyclopædia.

[3] See "The Annual Register," for the year 1782, Vol. xxv., History of Europe, chap. vii., pp. 167 to 176

[4] Afterwards created Lord Dorchester.

[5] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. x., chap. xxvi., p. 527.

[6] In writing to Lord North, King George III. reveals the poignancy of his feelings at the change of Ministry. See "The Correspondence of King George the Third with Lord North from 1768 to 1783," edited by W. Bodham Donne, Vol. ii. Letter 724, p. 420.

Fox his Secretaries of State, and Lord Camden was made President of the Council. General Conway was nominated Commander-in-chief of the Forces, and the Duke of Richmond Master-General of the Ordnance.

The first great question introduced by ministers, and that called for immediate solution, was the recognition of Irish Constitutional Independence;[7] next, the arrangement of terms, which might serve for the settlement of those military operations, that had harassed the resources and aggravated the feelings of people, both in Europe and America. After an administration only lasting for three months, the Marquis of Rockingham died on the 1st of July, and the King next appointed the Earl of Shelburne to be his successor in the Treasury. A rupture with Fox and Burke soon followed, and a reconstruction of the Ministry again took place.[8] The secret reasons assigned for their differences were soon a subject for public discussion; but, all parties seemed to agree, that hostilities should cease.[9] The newly formed British Cabinet was very willing to sue for a peace, and proposals to that effect were opened to Congress. The first overtures were not cordially received.[10] Hostilities were generally suspended, however, and accredited representatives to negotiate a treaty were at last nominated, after the Earl of Shelburne and Dr. Franklin had settled preliminaries during the summer of 1782.[11] The United States appointed as their commissioners John Jay, John Adams, and Benjamin Franklin.[12] The latter was chief director in those negotiations, which were conducted without a confidential knowledge communicated to the court of France, although such an instruction was specially enjoined by Congress. The representatives of France, Spain, America and Great Britain assembled in Paris, to deliberate on just conditions, and on the 30th of November 1782, the Commissioners of England and of the United States signed and sealed fair copies of the convention; while the Articles of Peace, although intituled provisional, were made definitive, by a declaration in the preamble.[13] In these it was declared, that His Majesty had acknowledged the United colonies of New Hampshire, Massachusetts Bay, Rhode Island and Providence Plantations, Connecticut, New York, New

[7] "The success of America brought emancipation to Ireland, which had suffered even more than the United States from colonial monopoly."—See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. x., chap. xxvii., p. 548.

[8] See an account of these transactions in Lord John Russell's "Life and Times of Charles James Fox." Vol. i., chap. xvi., pp. 295 to 335.

[9] See "A Complete Account of the debate in the House of Commons, 9th July 1782, in which the Cause of Mr Fox's Resignation and the Great Question of American Independence came under consideration." London, 1782, 8vo.

[10] See Rev. H. Fergus' "History of the Western World," Vol. ii., "The United States," chap. xi., p. 201.

[11] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. x., chap. xxviii., pp. 551 to 558.

[12] See "The Works of Benjamin Franklin," and Life of Benjamin Franklin, by Jared Sparks, prefixed. Vol. i., chap. xiii., pp. 474 to 488.

[13] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. x., chap. xxix., pp. 574 to 591.

Jersey, Pennsylvania, Delaware, Maryland, Virginia, North Carolina, South Carolina, and Georgia to be "free, sovereign and independent States." [14]

While these negotiations were proceeding, under pressing financial difficulties,[15] the American soldiers were badly paid and hardly well provisioned by Congress. Already 100,000,000 dollars had been spent during that protracted contest, while at its close the treasury had a debt of 40,000,000 dollars. Even this did not include the outlay of the separate States, which amounted to 60,000,000 or 70,000,000 dollars more. However, it was a comparatively insignificant sum, as compared with the £250,000,000, which England had contracted at the close of the American War.[16] The monetary affairs of the liberated and confederated States were in a very embarrassed condition at first; but, great efforts were made to remedy those and other experienced inconveniences. This was also the case with regard to Ireland, and by a happy coincidence, she had achieved her partial independence this same year. Commercial relations and trade soon began to revive,[17] as a result of newly awakened national life; and, with Ireland especially, those interchanges increased; a merchant service between both countries was established to a very considerable extent; [18] and, as Irishmen figured very prominently in the war for Independence, so were mutual good offices exchanged in peace, while a bond of sympathy was created and maintained. After the conclusion of this war of the Revolution, the English Major-General Robertson, in the English House of Commons, declared upon oath,[19] the American General Lee had informed him, that "half the rebel Continental army were from Ireland."[20]

[14] Such was the end of the contest between Great Britain and the American Colonies; a contest in which the former had expended upwards of one hundred millions of money, and many thousand valuable lives, and had obtained in return nothing but disgrace and loss of territory; but by which the latter was raised to an independent rank among the nations, which may be productive of more important consequences than can yet be foreseen."—"History of the War in America, between Great Britain and her Colonies from its Commencement to its Conclusion, in 1783." Vol. iii., chap. xiv., p. 266.

[15] These are explained very fully in David Ramsay's "History of the American Revolution," Vol. ii., chap. xvii. Appendix No. II. of Continental Paper Currency, pp. 125 to 136.

[16] See William Edward Hartpole Lecky's "History of the England in the Eighteenth Century," Vol. v., chap. xviii., p. 53.

[17] See Coxe's "View of the United States of America, from 1770 to 1795, being a complete History of its Manufactures and Revenues." 1795, 8vo.

[18] See Lord Sheffield's "Observations on the Trade of Ireland with America and the British Colonies." 1785, 8vo.

[19] In reply to the Right Hon. Edmund Burke a member of the Select Committee. See an article by William J. Onahan, published in Donohoe's "Magazine," Vol. v., No. 2, p. 102. Boston, 1881.

[20] See "The Evidence as given before a Committee of the House of Commons, on the Detail and the Conduct of the American War." London, 1785. Also, among the debates in the Irish House of Parliament, a speech by the Hon. Luke Gardiner, was delivered April 2, 1784, on Irish Commerce, and from which is taken the following passage: "America was lost by Irish emigrants. These emigrations are fresh in the recollection

The fortunate conclusion of this war served greatly the Irish struggle for parliamentary independence. When the convention of the volunteers was called at Dungannon, for the 15th of February, 1782, they consulted at Charlemount House as to the resolutions to be passed. Two hundred and fifty-two delegates, representing 143 corps, unanimously adopted the resolutions drafted by Grattan and Flood as their own, and sent forth anew an unequivocal demand for civil and religious liberty.[21] The example of Ulster soon spread throughout Ireland. A meeting of the Leinster volunteers, Mr. Flood in the chair, echoed it from Dublin; the Munster corps endorsed it unanimously in Cork; Lord Clanricarde summoned together those of the Western counties at Portumna. Strengthened by these demonstrations of public opinion, Grattan brought forward his motion, declaratory of the rights of Ireland, on the 16th of April.[22] The orator had the satisfaction of carrying his address on the subject of Irish legislative independence.[23]

Although the war had virtually closed in America, still were there several skirmishes between the contending forces,[24] especially in the Southern States, where Charleston and Savannah were held by the British.[25] After the capture of Lord Cornwallis, General Washington, with the greatest part of his force, returned to take up a position near New York. An officer, who reflected the opinion of many in the army, wrote a letter which suggested the idea that he should be declared king.[26] This proposition, however, was indignantly rejected by the patriotic Commander-in-chief, who wrote a reply, dated May 22nd 1782.[27] On the 13th of May, Major-General Knox and the officers of the American army founded a society known as that of "The Cincinnati."[28] Among civilians, this confederation excited great jealousy and suspicion. On the ground of its aristocratic features, and a fear on the part of Republicans, that the design was to establish a Monarchy in America,[29]

of every gentleman in this house. I am assured, from the best authority, the major part of the American Army was composed of Irish, and that the Irish language was as commonly spoken in the American ranks as English. I am also informed, that it was their valor determined the contest, so that England had America detached from her by force of Irish emigrants," etc.

[21] See an interesting account of these proceedings, in Sir Jonah Barrington's "Rise and Fall of the Irish Nation," chap. vi., pp. 89 to 109. Paris, 1833, 8vo.

[22] See the account of these movements in William Edward Hartpole Lecky's "History of England in the Eighteenth Century," Vol. iv., chap. xvii., pp. 481 to 560.

[23] See Francis Plowden's "History of Ireland, from its Invasion under Henry II." Vol. ii., Book iii., chap. v., pp. 221, 222.

[24] Some deplorable outrages and raids occurred about the period of suspense between war and peace.

[25] See David Ramsay's "History of the American Revolution," Vol. ii., chap. xxvi., pp. 291, 292.

[26] See John Adolphus' "History of England from the Accession to the Decease of King George the Third," Vol. iv., chap. liv. p. 14.

[27] See Jared Sparks' "Life of George Washington," Vol. i., chap. xiv., pp. 381-83.

[28] An account of its establishment and rules will be found in "The Writings of George Washington." Vol. ix., Appendix No. i., pp. 495 to 500. Edition of Jared Sparks.

[29] See John Adolphus' "History of

it was greatly decried; however, it afterwards assumed a shape perfectly unobtrusive, and insufficient to alarm the most susceptible feelings.[30] During the spring and summer of this year, the British held Savannah and Charleston against the weak American forces under the command of Generals Green and Wayne. However, the latter operating in Georgia, caused the evacuation of Savannah, on the 11th of July—the loyalists retreating into Florida, and the regulars to Charleston. This city, the Americans could not then hope to recover by force of arms,[31] and a cessation of hostilities was looked for by the belligerents on both sides.

On the 8th of October, a treaty between Holland and the United States was formed. The preliminary articles of peace between Great Britain and France, upon which those with America should take effect, were not signed until the 20th of January 1783. Those with Spain were executed at the same time.[32] The action of the Peace Commissioners was ratified by Congress in March 1783.[33] On the 19th of April of the same year—just eight years after the first revolutionary struggle at Lexington—a proclamation was published in Washington's camp at Newburg, announcing the end of the war. A definite peace between Great Britain and the United States was finally signed at Paris on September 3rd.[34] Peace was also proclaimed between Great Britain and the other powers at war with her, viz.:—France, Spain, and Holland.

About this time, some emissaries had spread an incendiary address among the soldiers at Newburg, to organize and enforce their wrongs and demands upon Congress. Their pay had been long in arrear. However, Washington called his officers together, and he delivered a sensible and patriotic address, which had the effect of quelling a spirit of mutiny.[35] Afterwards, he urged upon Congress to give every officer on his discharge a sum equivalent to five years' pay.[36] Before the army was disbanded, their Commander-in-chief addressed a circular letter to the Governors of all the States, from his Head Quarters at Newburg, on the 8th of June 1783.[37] On the 2nd of November,

England," &c., Vol. iv., chap. liv., pp. 15, 16.

[30] Among others, as a jurist and soldier, Ædanus Burke, Chief Justice of South Carolina, wrote a pamphlet, under the name of Cassius, against its constitution, and this was afterwards translated into French by Mirabeau. The original had for its motto —"Blow ye the trumpet in Sion."

[31] See George Bancroft's "History of the United States," Vol. x., chap. xxviii., pp. 560 to 565.

[32] See C. Stedman's "History of the Origin, Progress, and Termination of the American War," Vol. ii., chap. xlvi., p. 497

[33] See R Proud's "History of Pennsylvania," Vol. ii. Philadelphia, 1798, 8vo.

[34] See "The Works of Benjamin Franklin," Vol. i. Edited by Jared Sparks. The Life of Benjamin Franklin, chap. xiv., p. 501.

[35] See Rev. H. Fergus' "History of the Western World," Vol. ii. The United States, chap. xi., pp. 205 to 214.

[36] This was to be given in money or securities at six per cent. per annum, instead of half-pay for life. See David Ramsay's "History of the American Revolution," Vol. ii., chap. xxvii., pp. 326, 327.

[37] See "The Writings of George

Washington issued his farewell address to the army.[38] It was dated from Rocky Hill, near Princeton.[39] However, it was only on the 4th of December following, that an affecting leave-taking between Washington and his general officers was arranged; when his emotions were too strong to be concealed, and tears of sensibility also started in the eyes of his companions-in-arms.[40] On the 25th of November, the city of New York was evacuated by the British forces, and Washington made his public entry into it.[41] His troops marched thither by way of King's Bridge, and with great manifestations of popular rejoicing. Taking leave of his heroic companions-in-arms, General Washington resigned his commission as Commander-in-chief into the hands of Congress then in session at Annapolis, Maryland, on the 23rd of December. Moreover he refused every pecuniary indemnity for his invaluable military and civic services.[42] He then sought his home, at Mount Vernon on the Potomac, with the publicly expressed thanks of the nation, and the grateful recognition of all good men.[43]

When the war for Independence had finally closed, and when the new Republic had been solidly established, over 50,000 Catholics are estimated as forming a religious body, not yet organised into a distinctive ecclesiastical province.[44] The members of the Catholic Church lived chiefly in Maryland, Virginia, and Pennsylvania, with some more distant French settlers in Missouri, Illinois, Michigan and Indiana;[45] while all of these were immediately subject either to the Vicar Apostolic of the London district, in England, or to the Bishop of Quebec. Now the Catholics of the States addressed the Holy See, on the subject of their wishes. In the year 1784, they were placed temporarily under the Rev. John Carroll as Prefect Apostolic, the celebrated Benjamin Franklin recommending him earnestly as a man of

Washington," Vol. viii., pp. 439 to 452. Edition of Jared Sparks.

[38] See David Ramsay's "Life of George Washington," chap. ix., pp. 247 to 255.

[39] See "The Writings of George Washington," &c., Vol. viii., pp. 491 to 496. Edition of Jared Sparks.

[40] See Judge Marshall's "Life of George Washington," Vol. iv., chap. xii., p. 677.

[41] See David Ramsay's "Life of George Washington," chap. ix., p. 225.

[42] See M. Guizot's "Vie Correspondence et Ecrits de Washington." Tome ii., chap. xiv., pp. 202, 203. Publiés d'après l'Edition Américaine et précédés d'une Introduction sur l'Influence et le Charactere de Washington dans la Révolution des Etats-Unis d'Amérique. Paris, 1840. 8vo.

[43] See Upham's "Life of George Washington," Vol. ii., chap. xxi.

[44] The early progress of religion, within the United States, has been treated with great research by John Gilmary Shea, in his "History of the Catholic Missions amongst the Indian Tribes of the United States." This brings the account from A.D. 1529, to A.D. 1854, in a second edition published at New York.

[45] The "Discovery and Exploration of the Mississippi Valley," published at New York, 1853, 8vo. and "Early Voyages up and down the Mississippi," published at New York, 1862, 4to., were edited by the same previously mentioned accurate writer; as likewise, the well-known work of the Jesuit Father, F. X. de Charlevoix, the "History and General Description of New France." This was translated into English, by John Gilmary Shea, with extensive Notes, and published by him in six 8vo volumes, New York, 1866.

superior ability, a zealous priest, and a sincere patriot. This choice accorded entirely with the desires of the American Catholic priesthood and people. Subsequently, Pope Pius VI. established the See of Baltimore, November 6th 1789, when the Rev. John Carroll became its first bishop.[46] The growth of the Church, under his able and wise administration, was steadily progressive year by year, until a hierarchy had been formed to divide his labours.[47]

The first Ambassador from the United States to the Court of St. James was John Adams. He had an audience with the King of Great Britain and Ireland, on the 2nd of June 1785. A rebellion against the collection of taxes was organized in Massachusetts, by one Daniel Shays—an ex-captain in the Revolutionary army—December, 1786. After a short but very active campaign, the militia force, under General Lincoln, suppressed that revolt.

The want of centralized action and direction among the various States, during the war, had frequently produced confusion and failure. It prevented co-operation for the common defence, and oftentimes a mischievous division of forces; while, it was not always possible, wisely to regulate commerce or finance.[48] A convention to form the constitution of the United States was appointed to meet at Philadelphia, on the 14th of May 1787.[49] Washington was unanimously chosen as President of that Assembly.[50] A document prepared by the Convention was submitted to the people for their approval. After a thorough discussion, lasting in some of the States for two or three years, the Federal Constitution was at last accepted by all. Some of the members opposed it, however, as giving too much consolidated power to the general government, and as trenching on State Rights.[51] After four months' deliberation, the representatives adopted and ratified that Constitution of the United States, on September 17th 1787. John Marshall, who became Chief Justice of the United States, will ever figure prominently on the roll of great American statesmen. He was largely instrumental in framing that Constitution. Marshall ranks high as a jurist and as a pure and noble-minded man, while personally

[46] See the "American Quarterly Review," Vol. i., No. 1., pp. 155, 156. Article by John Gilmary Shea, The Catholic Church in American History.

[47] A most comprehensive narrative of ecclesiastical affairs from the earliest period, to the year 1866, is to be found in the late John Gilmary Shea's magnificently illustrated and learned work, "A History of the Catholic Church within the Limits of the United States from the first attempted Colonization to the present Time," with portraits, views, maps, and facsimiles. In four Roy. 8vo. volumes. New York, 1866 to 1892.

[48] See T. Coxe's "View of the United States of America, from authentic documents," 1795, 8vo.

[49] The historic and explanatory origin and progress of formation for the Constitution of the United States, is admirably and briefly furnished under the Article so headed in "The Encyclopædia Americana," Vol. ii., pp. 380 to 386.

[50] See Jared Sparks' "Life of George Washington," &c., Vol. i., chap. xv., p 435.

[51] Among these was the able jurist, Ædanus Burke, a Member of Congress from South Carolina, 1789-1791.

he was a remarkable character.[52] The old Constitution of the United States was framed by a Convention of Delegates,[53] who resolved to abolish the former articles of Association. If two-thirds of the States gave their assent to that form of government agreed on, it was to become operative on the 4th of March 1789.[54] It was adopted in 1788, but the Constitution did not come into operation until the former date.[55]

The several States gave in their adhesion as follows:[56] in 1787, December 7, Delaware was the first State that accepted the constitution; December 12 Pennsylvania accepted the constitution; December 18 New Jersey accepted the constitution. In 1788, January 2, Georgia accepted the constitution; January 9 Connecticut accepted the constitution; February 6 Massachusetts accepted the constitution; April 28 Maryland accepted the constitution; May 23 South Carolina accepted the constitution; June 21 New Hampshire accepted the constitution; June 26 Virginia accepted the constitution; July 26 New York accepted the constitution; and November 21 North Ca olina accepted the constitution.[57] North Carolina and Rhode Island at first opposed the Federation; but, these States finally acceded—the former in November 1789, and the latter in May 1790.[58] Subsequently added to the Union were States formed at a later period.[59] According to the Constitution,[60] the President and Vice-President cannot be chosen from

[52] His writings are very valuable, as giving an insight into the spirit and intent of the American Constitution.

[53] See "Debates in the House of Representatives of the United States, during the First Session of the Congress, Part I., Upon the Constitution, Powers of the House, with respect to Treaties; The Second Part upon the subject of the British Treaty." Published at Philadelphia, and printed for Benj. Franklin, in the year 1796, in a thick 8vo volume of 750 pages.

[54] See Benjamin Perley Poore's "Federal and State Constitutions."

[55] The reader, who desires to find a very able and impartial historic account of the colonial formation, and of the changes brought about by the War of Independence to the establishment of this confederation, should especially consult the First Tome of Auguste Carlier's great work, "La République Americaine Etats-Unis." It appeared in Paris 1890. Four volumes.

[56] The readers may find a brief and very exact historical synopsis of the several States and their respective Constitutions, at least, to the time of publication, 1885—in "The Encyclopædia Americana," Vol. ii., pp. 386 to 391.

[57] See J. Morse's "American Geography, View of the present state of America; with a short History of America from 1484, History of the Early Colonists, Articles of Freedom by Washington, Jackson," &c., 1794, 8vo.

[58] See Taylor's "New Views of the Constitution of the United States," published at Washington, in 1823. 8vo.

[59] See George Bancroft's "History of the Formation of the Constitution," in two 8vo. volumes, 1882.

[60] The provisions and spirit of this excellent system of government are well set forth in an elaborate work—"The American Commonwealth," by James Bryce, M.P., in three volumes. Vol. i. treats about the National Government, Part i., chapters, xxxv., pp. 1 to 538; Appendix to 592. Vol. ii., Part ii., The State Governments, chaps. xxxvi. to lii., pp. 1 to 317; Part iii., The Party System, chaps. liii. to lxxvi., pp. 321 to 626. Appendix to 683. Vol. iii., Part iv.,

the same State. This negative proviso is a good arrangement. Its intent is to strike at sectionalism; but interpreted in the fulness of its spirit, it also seeks to remove inequalities of race and religion, and to unify all Americans into one people. Under the original provisions of the Constitution, the person having the second highest number of votes for President became Vice-President. By that arrangement, two men of directly opposite political views might, and in fact did, become elected to the offices of President and Vice-President in the same adminstration.[61] The President of the United States holds this office for four years. He must be a native of the United States, and at least he must have attained thirty-five years of age. Nor is he elected directly by the popular vote, but rather by a College of Electors, chosen by the people, in a proportionate ratio of divisional and indirect representation. Wherefore, the President does not hold the same relation to the country at large, that a Govenor does to a State, which he presides over by a direct popular vote.[62]

As a temporary seat of Government, New York was selected, and the old City Hall in Wall Street was designed for the use of Congress. Meantime, in January 1789, electors were chosen to cast the votes of their respective States for President and Vice-President. George Washington was unanimously elected the first President, and his term dates from this very year.[63] John Adams was chosen as Vice-President. It was intended that the new government should have commenced its operations on the 4th of March; but, from accidental causes, Charles Thompson was not able to announce Washington's election to him officially at Mount Vernon, until the 14th of April following.[64] Of all the Presidential Candidates from the beginning, Washington alone can fairly be said to have been the country's choice.[65] Eleven candidates ran against him, among whom were John

Public Opinion, chaps. lxxvi. to lxxxvii., pp. 3 to 170: Part v., Illustrations and Reflections, chaps. lxxxviii. to xcvii., pp 173 to 363; Part vi., Social Institutions, chaps., xcviii., to cxvi., pp. 367 to 386 London: Macmillan and Co., and New York, 1888. 8vo.

[61] See the exhaustive work on this subject—Judge Joseph Story's "Commentaries on the Constitution of the United States; with a preliminary View of the Constitutional History of the Colonies and States before the Adoption of the Constitution," in three Royal 8vo. volumes, 1833. He also published "A Familiar Exposition of the Constitution of the United States," 12mo, 1834.

[62] The work of Richard Hildreth, "History of the United States of America," may be consulted for further information, on this subject, and on succeeding events. Second series. From the Adoption of the Federal Constitution to the end of the sixteenth Congress 1788-1821. In three Volumes, 8vo., the first edition issued in 1852, and a revised one in 1855.

[63] See Jared Sparks' "Life of George Washington," &c., Vol. i., chap. xv., p. 440.

[64] See David Ramsay's "Life of George Washington," &c., chap. xi., p. 298.

[65] It may be observed, likewise, that subsequently and to 1824, in most cases, the Legislatures of the various States chose the successive Presidents. The title which was at first conferred upon the chief magistrate of the Republic was, "His Highness, the President of the United States and Protector of our Liberties," but after a short time it was discontinued.

Adams and John Handcock ; and yet, of the electoral votes cast, which were 73 in all, Washington received 69. Nothing could exceed the people's joy throughout all the States, when it was declared, that Washington had been elected as their first President. His journey from Mount Vernon to New York resembled a great triumphal procession. Especially on his arrival in the latter city he was received with an enthusiasm and emotion, that quite overpowered the mastery of his feelings. On the 30th of April, his inaugural speech was delivered to the Senate and House of Representatives.[66]

After matured deliberation, the President formed his executive.[67] He resolved on nominating to offices the men he deemed the most deserving of consideration, and likely to promote the public good.[68] For the administration, Thomas Jefferson was selected as Secretary of State, while Alexander Hamilton became Secretary of the Treasury, and he managed the finances in such a manner, that they were soon restored to something like order. Henry Knox became Secretary of War.[69] The office of Attorney-General was assigned to Edmund Randolph.[70] With these able men, Washington administered the government so wisely and well, that he soon acquired the reputation of being as thorough a statesman as he had been renowned for his generalship.[71] Before and about this time, the question concerning the abolition of the slave trade and regarding the emancipation of slaves within the United States was agitated, and especially it was advocated by the Quakers in Pennsylvania.[72] In the Southern States, however, such measures were strenuously opposed.[73] The first Tariff Act was passed by Congress, A.D., 1790.

Soon after the formation of a Constitution for the United States, it was deemed necessary to detach a portion of territory, where the general government should be assembled for the affairs of administration. As a consequence of such direction, in 1788-89 the States of

[66] See "The Speeches. Addresses, and Messages of the several Presidents of the United States," &c., pp. 29 to 34. Philadelphia, 1825, 8vo.

[67] See Jared Sparks' "Life of George Washington," Vol. ii., chap. xvi., pp. 12, 13.

[68] See David Ramsey's "Life of George Washington," chap. xi., pp. 318, 319.

[69] In 1794 he retired from this dignified post, and settled with his family at Thomastown, in Maine. He died in the year 1806.—Peterson.

[70] These formed his cabinet. See John T. Morse's "Thomas Jefferson," chap. viii. pp. 96, 97.

[71] On the 17th of April, 1790, the United States mourned for one, among the most illustrious of her patriots, Benjamin Franklin, who died in the eighty-fourth year of his age. See the excellent Life of this great man, chap. xv., p. 350, in "The Works of Benjamin Franklin," edited by Jared Sparks, Vol. i.

[72] They put forth in print, "Case of the Oppressed Africans," 1784, and afterwards they formed an association, with a "Constitution of the Pennsylvania Society for setting Negroes free." Philadelphia, 1788. Also, in Trenton was published "A serious Address to the Rulers of America, and American Injustice in tolerating Slavery." 1788.

[73] See Ramsay's "Objections to the Abolition of the Slave Trade," 1788.

Maryland and Virginia ceded a tract of land, ten miles square, and lying on both banks of the river Potomac. It was at the head of tidal water, and 160 miles from its mouth. On the 17th of July 1790, President Washington signed a bill, to place the seat of the general government in that new District of Columbia. In 1791 a city was there laid out, and on a grand scale, to become the capital of the Union. At first—but only for a short while—it was denominated Federal City. Afterwards, in compliment to the President who selected the site, it was called Washington.

With the course of 1790, the first Census of the United States was taken, when it was discovered, that the inhabitants amounted to 4,049,600, and of this number 695,655 were slaves. According to a Report, furnished by the Secretary of the Treasury, the revenue reached 4,399,473 dollars, while the exports amounted to over twenty, and the imports to twenty-three, millions of dollars.[74] The circumstances of the people began to improve most rapidly, under the popular President chosen, while a regular and firm government was established.

The arrangement of finance had been entrusted to Colonel Hamilton, and at this time, the public debt of the United States had reached an aggregate of 54,000,000 dollars. He proposed to invest the whole of that amount, with a sinking fund for its gradual liquidation, and to make provision for the payment of the interest. After some opposition, this measure was carried. A greater difficulty was experienced, respecting the general government assuming those debts contracted by particular States. With certain modifications, and after violent debates between the Federalists and anti-Federalists, Hamilton's plan passed both Houses.[75] New taxes had to be imposed, in order to meet the necessities of government. He next projected the plan for a national bank, on which measure the cabinet was divided; yet, on mature consideration, the President gave his sanction to the bill. The imposition of heavy taxes and the general financial scheme of Hamilton soon rendered him very unpopular. The official and private correspondence of Washington,[76] while President of the United States, most thoroughly illustrates his great sagacity and abilities for civil government. Having a mind superior to party influences, he mediated wisely between the opposing interests and views that prevailed in his cabinet. Especially, Jefferson and Hamilton held very conflicting opinions on questions of public policy. In politics, Chief Justice Marshall was a Federalist, and he warmly defended the administration of Washington. One of those strongly opposed to some measures of Washington's government was Pierce Butler, Senator from South Carolina.[77]

[74] See that valuable work, "Eighty Years' Progress of the United States," Vol. i. Commerce of the United States, chap. i., p. 144. New York, 1861, royal 8vo

[75] See Rev. H. Fergus' "History of the Western World," Vol. ii. The United States, chap. xiii., pp. 233 to 236.

[76] This may be found in "The Writings of George Washington," &c., Vol x., xi., as edited by Jared Sparks.

[77] He was born in Ireland, 11th July 1744, and he was the third son

Towards the close of the last century, as the white settlers began to advance into the interior, beyond the boundaries of Pennsylvania and New York, the Indian tribes became alarmed at their growing numbers, and showed a disposition to prevent the progress of further colonization.[78] Many of the emigrants descending the Ohio River were waylaid and murdered. Reprisals were the natural consequence. Accordingly, General Harmer was sent with a force of about 1,500 men, to prevent such outrages, in September 1790. The service rendered on this occasion was deemed to be very inefficient; and accordingly, Washington obtained authority to embody 2,000 men to serve for six months, when they were placed under General St. Clair, who was governor of the Western territory. His object was to destroy the Miami settlements, and to expel the Indians from that district. Major-General Butler, an Irish American, held the rank of Colonel in the Continental army, and he was joined in the expedition directed towards the Wabash. However, having encamped near their villages with 1,400 men and awaiting reinforcements, before sunrise on the 4th of November 1791, the troops were roused by the Indian war-cry and taken by surprise. Numbers of the militia fled, and then the general ordered a retreat, which was effected only amid the greatest confusion. St. Clair was utterly defeated, near the present site of Fort Wayne in Indiana, having sustained a loss of 631 killed, among whom were 37 officers, while 263 were wounded. During this scene of disorder, Major-General Butler was tomahawked and scalped by the Indians.[79]

On the 4th of March 1791, Vermont, formed out of the former territory of New York, was admitted into the Union. For a second term

of Sir Richard Butler, fifth Baronet, and allied to the Dukes of Ormond. Before the Revolution he had served in the British army, and after his resignation he settled in Charleston, S.C. He became a delegate from that Colony in 1787, and in 1788 he was a member of the Convention that framed the American Constitution. He approved of the war of 1812, and he died in Philadelphia, February 15th 1822. See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. i., p. 480.

[78] We are informed by Hugh Henry Brackenridge, that in 1794 the Midland States of America, and the Western parts in general, were half Ireland. He had been a chaplain in Washington's army, and he was well acquainted with the spirit, enterprise and bravery of the natives of that island. He was the author of "Modern Chivalry," one of the finest political satires America has produced. He makes the clown in his book an Irishman. It was published at Pittsburg, in 1794. In the preface, he writes: "It has been asked why, in writing this memoir, I have taken my clown from the Irish nation? The character of the English clown I did not well understand; nor could I imitate their manner of speaking. That of the Scotch I have tried, as may be seen in the character of Duncan. But I found it, in my hands, rather insipid. The character of the Irish clown, to use the language of Rosseau, 'has more stuff in it.' . . . The character of the Irish clown will not be wholly misunderstood. It is so much known among the emigrants here or their descendants, that it will not be thrown away."

[79] Colonel Thomas Butler also fought at the defeat of St. Clair, when his brother Richard lost his life. Thomas Butler led his battalion to a charge of bayonets, and seated on horseback, after his leg had been broken by a ball. His life was saved by Captain Edward Butler, also a brother.

of four years, in 1793, although reluctant to continue in the office, Washington was re-elected President.[80] On his re-nomination, the total electoral vote was increased by the accession of new States to 135 votes, of which number Washington received 132. By a majority of votes, John Adams was preferred to George Clinton, his competitor, for the Vice-Presidency.[81] During this administration, those Indian troubles in the western and southern parts were a source of disquiet to the Government.[82] Attempts had been made to establish a peace with the tribes north of the Ohio; but the Miami and Wabash Indians convoked a meeting of sixteen nations, when it was determined to accept no terms short of making that River the boundary between them and the United States. General Wayne was now selected to conduct the war, having 2,600 regulars and 1,029 mounted militia under his command. When the Indian Chief, called Little Turtle, heard that Wayne was coming, he advised his people to make peace. However, they would not follow this advice, and in the summer of 1794, an advance was made on their settlements along the Miami River. Occupying a fortified post, Major M'Mahon[83] was attacked on the 7th of July, but he successfully defended the spot, with a loss of 22 killed and 30 wounded. The Indians occupied Grand Glaise, as their chief fort; but, on the 7th of August, it was precipitately abandoned when Wayne approached. However, they retired on their main body, strongly entrenched behind felled trees and within a thick wood. Wayne ordered his troops to move cautiously, to rouse the enemy from their covert with fixed bayonets, and then to fire when they appeared or fled. The cavalry were sent round on their right and left flanks. By this movement, the Indians, dislodged from their coverts, were driven in confusion through the woods, until they found shelter under the guns of the English fort.[84] Wayne soon destroyed their villages and drove the Red Men before him, until he reached the Maumee River, in the north-western parts of Ohio. He then fortified some defensive positions, while the main body of the Indians retired beyond his reach. But, the system of short service caused that general to urge upon Congress the necessity for sending him a force to maintain a permanent peace on the frontiers.

The celebrated political contests between the Federalists, favouring the Constitution as it was and desiring a strong central government, and the Anti-Federalists, wishing to limit the powers of Congress, and to give more independent authority for the several States, were vigorously carried on about this time. The chief leaders of the former party were Washington, Adams, and Hamilton;[85] while Jefferson was chief leader of

[80] See Guizot's "Vie de Washington," Tome ii., chap. xviii., pp. 295 to 299.

[81] See Rev. H. Fergus' "History of the Western World," Vol. ii., The United States, chap. xiii., p. 243.

[82] See B S. Barton's "Origin of the Tribes and Nations of America." Philadelphia, 1798, 8vo.

[83] He was Irish by descent.

[84] See 'The Annual Register" for the year 1795, Vol. xxxvii., the History of Europe, chap. viii., pp. 144, 145.

[85] See Henry Cabot Lodge's "Alexander Hamilton," chap. v., vi., vii., pp. 84 to 152.

the Anti-Federalists,[86] also called Democrats or Republicans—these two latter names being then used indiscriminately to designate one and the same party. On the 2nd of April 1792, the United States Mint was established at Philadelphia. On the 1st of July 1792, the State of Kentucky as the fifteenth was admitted into the Union.[87]

Scarcely less exciting and interesting in America were the scenes of the French Revolution, than if they had there a local origin.[88] The fate of King Louis XVI. and of Queen Marie Antoniette was greatly lamented, especially by the Federalists, many of whom believed that the principles of their own republican institutions were now on trial and in danger of signal failure. The Anti-Federalists strongly sympathised with the French revolutionary party, and even wished to aid them against the coalition of European powers. The favourers of Washington and the Federalists, however, insisted on observing a strict neutrality.[89] As a minister from the French Republic, Citizen Genest arrived in America April 1793, when the Jeffersonian party manifested extraordinary rejoicings for that representative, and organised public receptions to honour him.[90] The revolutionary tri-colour was worn by crowds of people. Such encouragement induced that over-zealous ambassador to fit out privateers in the American ports. Even his insolence was carried so far, that he violently inveighed against the President's peaceful inclinations. He conducted himself with such impropriety, that at length Washington requested the French Government to recall him.[91] This demand was reluctantly complied with; but in turn, when his successor Fauchet arrived, in February 1794, the French Republic requested the recall of Governor Morris, the American Minister in Paris, who did not sympathise with the extreme revolutionists. To promote a better understanding between their governments, Washington sent James Monroe, a Virginian Senator, who became too ardently attached to the revolutionary principles, and who desired to identify the cause and interests of both republics.[92]

Notwithstanding the clear terms of the treaty in 1783, through various pretexts the British kept possession of forts in the north-western territories. Moreover, they insisted on a right of search to

[86] See George Tucker's "Life of Thomas Jefferson," 2 vols., London, 1837. 8vo.

[87] See L. De Colange's "National Gazetteeer," &c., p. 528.

[88] For the causes and results of this great turning event in modern European history, the reader is referred to M. A. Thiers' "Histoire de la Revolution Francaise," in ten Tomes, Paris, 1836, et seq. 8vo. For very different views on this subject, the reader may consult Sir Archibald Alison's "History of Europe," 1789-1815, in ten volumes. Edinburgh, 1883 to 1842, 8vo.

[89] See David Ramsay's "Life of George Washington," chap. xii., p. 330.

[90] See John Alphonsus' "History of Europe," &c., Vol. v., chap. lxxxiv., pp. 511 to 517.

[91] See Jared Sparks' "Life of George Washington," &c., Vol. ii., chap. xviii., pp. 49 to 53

[92] See "The Annual Register," for the year 1796, Vol. xxxviii., chap. xi., pp. 171 to 174. Also, "Histoire de France depuis 1789 jusqu' a nos Jours," par Henri Martin, Tome iii., chap. i., pp. 21, 22. Paris, 1787, *et seq.*, 8vo.

confiscate French property found on board of American vessels, while they claimed all sailors, supposed to have been at any time British subjects. Even those who had been naturalised in the United States were not spared, for the absurd doctrine was sought to be maintained, "once a born subject always a subject." Besides, native Americans had been carried away and compelled to serve in the British fleet.[93] Such proceedings naturally created great discontent, and even a strong disposition was manifested among the people for a declaration of war against Great Britain. However, the Cabinet of Washington sought to arrange this dispute; and accordingly, John Jay was sent as a special envoy to London.[94] After a long discussion, it was agreed, that the western posts should be surrendered by the 1st of June 1796.[95] With some difficulty, an unsatisfactory settlement was arrived at, and on the 13th November 1794, a treaty was ratified. The impressment of seamen was a question left unsettled, while the orders in council, afterwards issued, caused great injury to American commerce.

A most commanding site for the building having been granted, in the newly-laid out city of Washington, by Daniel Carroll, the corner-stone of the capitol was accordingly laid, September 18th 1793. An excise tax had been imposed on whiskey, and it became so unpopular in Western Pennsylvania, that secret societies were organized to resist the collection of whiskey duties. In 1794 the officers of the law were attacked, and formidable riots took place. However, the President called out 15,000 of the militia from Pennsylvania and from other States. That insurrection, after causing some alarm, was speedily quelled.

When Washington had signed the treaty with England, his policy was to observe an attitude of neutrality in the war between that power and France. Great resentment was then felt and expressed, not alone by the French ambassador Fauchet and his government, but by their partisans in the United States, while the American ambassador in Paris was inclined to favour such sentiments. In a spirit hostile to American commerce, the French government issued orders for the capture of vessels carrying provisions to any British port. In consequence of this mandate, extensive depredations took place at sea. The President then found it necessary to recall Monroe; still, he judged it prudent to select as his successor a tried friend of liberty, Mr Pinkney of South Carolina, who had not appeared in any of those measures disapproved by France. When Monroe and Pinkney waited on the French minister with their letters of recall and credence, they were both treated with marked coldness. At length came a mandate from the Directory, that Mr.

[93] More than 500 American vessels had been subjected to this violence by the English cruisers. See M. A. Thiers' "Histoire de la Revolution Francaise," Tome vi., chap. xx., p. 39.

[94] See General Washington's "Epistles, Domestic, Confidential, and Official." New York, 1796, 8vo.

[95] See Hugh Murray's "United States of America," Vol. ii., chap. iii., pp. 154, 155.

Pinkney should leave France, and accordingly he repaired to the Hague.[96]

All the great personal influence of Washington could not allay the dissensions in his cabinet. For Hamilton's integrity of character and talents the President had a high esteem, while appreciating his judgment and sagacity on most matters of public policy. He also entertained a sincere affection for and friendly intercourse with that able and accomplished man. Moreover, he endeavoured to persuade Jefferson that any public collision with his political rival should be avoided. However, the Democratic party and press indulged in calumnious invectives against the Federal minister, and these accusations were reproduced in the House of Representatives. He was charged with being ambitious, intriguing and despotic. On the 1st of January 1795, Alexander Hamilton resigned his office as Secretary of the Treasury, and private affairs then obliged him to resume the exercise of his legal profession.[97] On June 1st 1796, the State of Tennessee was admitted into the Union.[98]

Towards the close of that year,[99] declining to hold office for a third term, Washington met the legislature. His previous messages and speeches[100] were always received with that respectful attention, which they so well deserved; but this was an occasion, when the members of Congress manifested an emotion that could not be repressed. The celebrated Farewell Address of Washington, issued on the 15th of September,[101] was published, and in it was announced his determination to abandon public cares, and to spend the remainder of his days in the privacy of domestic life. In that manifesto, he admonished the people to preserve union and to quell every attempt to promote sectional dissension. Therein he recommended to Congress likewise those measures[102] which he thought essential for securing national honour, independence and prosperity.[103] Soon afterwards, the whole country seemed to realize the true greatness of his character. On the occasion of his retirement, the members of Congress and of the different State Legis-

[96] See Justin Winsor's "Narrative and Critical History of America," Vol. vii., pp. 464 to 467, and 517.

[97] A long interval elapsed after death before his son John C. Hamilton published "The Life and Writings of Alexander Hamilton," in 1851.

[98] See L. De Colange's "National Gazetteer," &c., p. 988.

[99] See Jared Sparks' "Life of George Washington," Vol. ii., chap. xix., p. 78.

[100] These, with his Proclamation as President, and his replies to various public Addresses, are printed in "The Writings of George Washington," &c., Vol. xii., as edited by Jared Sparks.

[101] See Jared Sparks' "Life of George Washington," &c., Vol. ii., chap. xix., pp. 77, 78. The text of his Address is to be found in the Appendix, pp. 317 to 338.

[102] See "Speeches, Addresses, and Messages of the several Presidents of the United States, Declaration of Independence, Washington's Farewell Address," &c., Printed at Philadelphia, in 1825.

[103] The legislation of the earlier sessions of Congress may be found in "Laws of the United States of America," published in Philadelphia, 1796, in three volumes, 8vo.

latures prepared suitable addresses and resolutions. When he left the capital at the close of his term, on the 4th of March 1797, a vast multitude pressed around him in the streets, while manifesting every possible mark of affection and respect. From his door, he turned to say farewell, but his eyes filled with tears, and silent gestures alone gave expression to the intensity of his feelings.

The federal candidate John Adams, who was the next President in succession to Washington, and his intimate friend, received 71 electoral votes out of a total of 138. Thomas Jefferson, who was the Democrat candidate in opposition, failed by four votes to secure a majority;[104] but as the Constitution then stood, he became Vice-President, although strongly opposed to the general policy of that government of which he formed a part.[105] On the 4th of March, 1797, Washington assisted at the inauguration of his successor as President,[106] who on that occasion delivered his Inaugural Address.[107]

For some time the United States had been successively embroiled with England, Spain and France.[108] The misunderstanding between the United States and Spain chiefly originated about the interpretation of the former peace treaty, as to the American right claimed for navigation of the Mississippi River to the sea, all the Louisiana Territory being then under Spanish rule, as also respecting the exact boundaries of Florida. American vessels attempting to descend the Mississippi to New Orleans were seized and forfeited. Attempts were made to open negotiations in 1793, but the views of the negotiators proved to be widely divergent. Notwithstanding, on the 27th of October 1795, a Treaty with Spain was at last signed.[109]

Meantime, a great ferment had been excited throughout the United States, on learning the indignity with which their ambassador had been treated in Paris. The President Mr. Adams issued a spirited message on the 16th of May 1797. In this, he commented severely on the action of the French Government, while he recommended the augmentation of the sea and land forces. However, a commission was appointed for purposes of negotiation, when Marshall, Gerry and Pinkney were engaged to conduct it. The French Foreign Minister was Tallyrand, who intimated through his agents, that a loan amounting to £1,200,000 for the Directory, with a douceur amounting to £50,000 for their joint

[104] See "The Annual Register," for the year 1796, Vol. xxxviii. History of Europe, chap. xiii., p. 208.

[105] This able statesman, while Vice-President of the United States, wrote a remarkable work, "A Defence of the Constitutions of Government of the United States of America." It appeared at London, 1794, in Three Volumes, 8vo. A portrait of the writer is prefixed.

[106] See "The Speeches, Addresses, and Messages of the several Presidents of the United States," &c., pp. 116 to 124.

[107] See Henry Cabot Lodge's "George Washington," Vol. ii., chap. vi., pp. 270, 271.

[108] See Jared Sparks' "Life of George Washington," &c., Vol. ii., chap. xvii., pp. 26 to 28.

[109] See Justin Winsor's "Narrative and Critical History of America," Vol. vii., pp. 476, 477.

use, should guarantee the settlement of the American claims.[110] These terms were refused. Moreover, on the 18th of January 1798, a law was passed by the French Government subjecting to capture every vessel, which should contain any article of British fabric or produce. When these transactions became known in the United States, public feeling was greatly excited, and Congress authorised an augmentation of the naval and military forces. When war with France was apprehended, General Washington was called from his retirement, and again assumed command of the army.[111] He chose Alexander Hamilton as his second to conduct the operations of that anticipated war. Hostilities had even commenced at sea, Commodore Truxton of the Constellation, mounting 38 guns, having captured the French L'Insurgent of 50 guns. These differences—which at first seemed so threatening,[112] were happily adjusted however, and in favour of the New Republic, as Tallyrand had disavowed his agents, and now expressed the strongest wish for peace.[113] On receiving this intimation, the President prepared a new commission, comprising Oliver Ellsworth Chief Justice, and Mr. Murray, who accordingly proceeded to Paris, in order to treat with the French Government.[114]

Towards the close of the last year of the last century, being out of doors and superintending his farm, the illustrious Washington had contracted a cold, and it almost immediately produced inflammation of the throat.[115] This attack proved fatal, after a very brief illness. On the 14th of December, he calmly expired in his house at Mount Vernon. Intelligence of his death having reached Congress, the members instantly adjourned until the next day. When re-assembled, John Marshall, then a member of the House of Representatives, and subsequently Chief Justice of the United States, addressed the Speaker in eloquent terms, and moved resolutions of condolence. The Senate, in like manner, expressed deep regret in an address to the President John Adams. To this he replied in words of warm eulogy and profound emotion.[116] When this news was publicly announced, universal mourning overspread the land. The Congress, then in session at Philadelphia, did special honour

[110] See "Official Correspondence between the Envoys of the American States and Mons. Tallyrand, on the Subject of the Disputes between the Two Countries," 1798.

[111] See Rev. H. Fergus' "History of the Western World," Vol. ii., The United States, chap. xiv., pp. 263, 264.

[112] See "A Speech of R. Harper, delivered in the House of Representatives of the United States, A.D. 1798."

[113] On this subject the reader may find much information in a work recently published, "Correspondence Diplomatique de Tallyrand." Le Ministere de Tallevrand sous le Directoire, avec Introduction et Notes par C. Pallain. No. xxvii., pp. 302 to 310. Paris, 1891, 8vo.

[114] See William Henry Trescott's "Diplomatic History of the Administrations of Washington and Adams, 1789-1801." Boston, 12mo.

[115] See Henry Cabot Lodge's "George Washington," Vol. ii., chap. vi., pp. 293 to 298.

[116] See David Ramsay's "Life of George Washington," &c., Vol. viii., chap. xiii., pp. 405 to 412. An Appendix to this work contains the will of General Washington.

to Washington's memory.[117] Not alone in the United States, but throughout Europe, all friends of liberty, and all who could appreciate true nobility of character, joined in regret when they heard of his death. In France, Napoleon Buonaparte as First Consul and the Republic decreed extraordinary honours, ordering black *crepe* to be placed for ten days on all the regimental colours, and a great ceremonial to take place, with a funeral oration in the church of the Invalids, at Paris.[118] In no other country was his death more lamented than in Ireland, where the people at large so greatly admired the career of that illustrious man, and the struggle for freedom, in which he had been so long and so devotedly engaged.

---

## CHAPTER XX.

The Seat of Government transferred to Washington—Election of Thomas Jefferson as President—Treaty between France and the United States—Cession of Louisiana—War waged against the States of Barbary—Re-election of Jefferson as President—Aaron Burr's Conspiracy—Peace proclaimed between the United States and Tripoli—Injuries inflicted on American Commerce by France and England—Outrage on the Ship of War Chesapeake—Public Excitement against England—Failure of Negotiations to effect Peace—Indian Troubles in the North-West—Subsequent Events.

In the year 1800, the chief seat of Government in the United States was removed from Philadelphia and placed in the newly-founded city called Washington, after the illustrious chief and first President of the Republic. The original Capitol, although in a good style of building and imposing in appearance, was erected chiefly with white freestone, and covering an area of more than an acre,[1] having five wide avenues radiating from the public garden surrounding it, and intersecting other streets. With its two wings, each 100 feet in front, the building was 362 feet in length, having an average depth of 121 feet, projections on the main front,[2] inclusive of the steps, being 65 feet, with a portico of twenty-two Corinthian columns, and on the rere 83 feet with a like portico

[117] See Jared Sparks' "Life of George Washington," &c., Vol. ii., chap. xix., pp. 92 to 94.

[118] See M. A. Thiers' "Histoire du Consulat et de l'Empire," Tome i., Liv. ii., pp. 217 to 221.

[1] In many of the old Histories and Geographies published in the United States, engravings of the original structure may be seen, and thus its appearance may be contrasted with the building as it now stands.

[2] This looks towards the east, and especially during the sunshine days of Summer and Autumn, the Capitol appears with dazzling splendour on that side until noon; then, after full illumination of the southern wing, the setting sun sheds its brilliance on the western wing.

supported by ten columns.[3] The main building was surmounted by a plain dome, 120 feet in height, with two subordinate domes of much smaller size surmounting the wings. Before the late Confederate War, however, a design for extending and remodelling the whole was approved by Congress, and harmonising with the architectural style of the former structure. Two additional wings were destined for the modern terminations, each having a frontage of 238 feet, with a depth of 143 feet, exclusive of porticos and steps. Corridors 44 feet long by 50 feet wide connect the new wings with the former buiding. A solid and grand basement platform, ascended by a number of steps included, gives a length of 751 feet to the entire structure,[4] the later additions being of white marble. The projections and porticos upon all the disconnected sides produce a most elegant composition, but hardly in very perfect proportion with the original noble edifice. The old dome has been removed, and a new one most exquisitely designed, combining lightness and elegance with solidity, has been erected in its stead. At present, the Capitol at Washington far surpasses in size and grandeur any civic building in the world. [5]

In the year 1800, Adams was again proposed for President, as the Federal candidate; but, the opposition interest then prevailed, and he only obtained 65 votes. [6] In this fourth Presidential contest, the Democratic candidates Thomas Jefferson [7] and a political adventurer of doubtful character, [8] Aaron Burr, received 73 votes each. The result being a tie, the choice of President devolved upon the House of Representatives, which, after thirty-five equal ballotings, at last elected Jefferson by a single vote of majority—Delaware and North Carolina

[3] See "Gazetteer of the World," Vol. xiv., p. 441.

[4] It now covers an area on the ground of 153,112 superficial feet, or over three and a half acres.

[5] This is the deliberate opinion of the present writer, who has seen most of the chief cities in Europe, and who during a late visit to Washington and the United States, had been afforded opportunities for inspection and comparison. The interior chambers and halls of the Capitol are at present receiving decoration, from several accomplished artists; fresco paintings of various great national and historic events being embellishments for the walls, while numerous grand marble statues of the distinguished heroes and statesmen of the Republic are in course of preparation by eminent sculptors, and are being placed in position in the rotundas and passages. Liberal sums of public money are annually voted by Congress to effect such improvements.

[6] "The Life and Works of John Adams," edited by C. F. Adams, appeared in Ten 8vo Volumes, Boston, 1850 to 1856.

[7] We obtain the most authentic account of this illustrious man, with many most important details of United States history during his time, from the work edited by his relative, Thomas Jefferson Randolph, and intituled "Memoirs, Correspondence, and Private Papers of Thomas Jefferson, Late President of the United States," now first published from the Original Manuscripts," in Four Vols., 8vo. London,, 1829.

[8] "Memoirs of Aaron Burr, with Selection from his Correspondence," were edited, in two volumes, by Matthew L. Davis, and published in New York, 1837, 1838, as also his Private Journal during his residence abroad, with Selections from his Correspondence, in two volumes 1838.

not voting. Aaron Burr then became Vice-President. The great abilities of Jefferson were exercised in promoting extreme democratic principles, and in the reduction of the large military and naval establishment, formed by his predecessor for the national defence. This also enabled him to reduce taxation, and it tended to make his administration highly popular.[9] The second Census of the United States, in 1800, reached to the number of 5,308,483 souls,[10] while the revenue had increased to 12,945,000 dollars.

When the United States Commissioners arrived in Paris, these found the French Directory overthrown, and the Consulate established, Napoleon Buonaparte exercising supreme power as First Consul. The latter then had reason to apprehend an approaching war with Great Britain. He desired to arrange matters with them, so as to avoid hostilities with the Americans. On the 30th of September 1800, the United States formulated a treaty with the French Government. The injurious decrees were revoked, and a liberal compensation was stipulated for depredations perpetrated on American commerce. At length, a satisfactory treaty was signed, on the 31st July 1801. On the 16th of March 1802, a Military Academy was founded at West Point on the Hudson River, and some miles northward from the city of New York. On the 19th of February 1803, Ohio was admitted as a New State into the Union.[11]

After a long contest in which France had been engaged against some of the chief European Powers, towards the close of 1801 a general peace was proclaimed.[12] In the following year, Spain ceded Louisiana by treaty to the French Republic. However, a rupture in the pacific relations between England and France had again occurred; and Napoleon Buonaparte, then First Consul, finding himself about to engage again in war, knew that he could not defend the distant Territory of Louisiana from being seized upon by Great Britain, then having complete command of the seas. Negotiations soon passed between himself and Jefferson, when it was arranged, that 15,000,000 dollars should be paid as the purchase for this vast tract of country by the United States. Moreover, one quarter of that sum was designed to indemnify American citizens for claims against France. Accordingly, on the 30th of April 1803,[13] by Treaty France ceded that vast Territory of Louisiana,[14] and on those conditions which were mutually advantageous.[15] This purchase included all those regions west of the Mississippi River, and not then under Spanish dominion. Towards the close of that year, formal possession of Louisiana was transferred to the United States.[16]

[9] See John T. Morse's "Thomas Jefferson," chap. xiii., xiv.

[10] See the "Encyclopædia Americana," Vol. i., p. 768.

[11] See Dr. L. De Colange's "National Gazetteer," &c., p. 745.

[12] See M. A. Thiers' "Histoire du Consulat et de l'Empire." Tome iii., Liv. xi.

[13] See "The Annual Register" for the year 1803, Vol. xlv., History of Europe, p. 338.

[14] It is said to have comprised 933,928 square miles.

[15] See Barbe-Marbois "Histoire de la Louisiane et de la Cession de cette Colonie par la France aux Etats-Unis de l'Amerique septentrionale." Paris 1829, 8vo.

[16] See Justin Winsor's "Narrative

To secure immunity for their commerce, the great powers of Europe, as well as the United States, had been accustomed to pay tribute to the Barbary States, Tunis, Tripoli, Algiers and Morocco. Their piratical vessels swarmed on the seas, captured several ships, and reduced their seamen to a state of slavery. Such condition of affairs continued to the beginning of the late century. The Bey of Tunis had demanded additional presents from the United States. This was now refused, and it was resolved instead, to equip an American squadron and to send it against the Corsairs. Accordingly, in March 1801, Congress declared war against Tripoli, which State had already taken the initiative, by threatening to blockade American ships in the Mediterranean. A desperate engagement at sea between the Enterprise of fourteen guns, Captain Sterrett,[17] and a Tripolian ship of equal force, continued for three hours and a half, when the latter struck her flag, with a loss of fifty killed and wounded.[18]

In 1803, Commodore Preble[19] was sent to the Mediterranean in command of a squadron, with which, having menaced Tangier, he first humbled the Emperor of Morocco, and forced him to make terms. Then his attention was directed to Tripoli. However, Captain Bainbridge, in the Philadelphia, ran upon a sunken rock while reconnoitring that harbour, and not being able to get his frigate off, he was forced to surrender, October 31st. His men were all reduced to slavery, while the officers were held for ransom. Somewhat later, Lieutenant Stephen Decatur entered the harbour of Tripoli in a small schooner. With seventy picked men, he boarded the captured frigate, and drove off the Tripolitan crew. Having then set the vessel on fire, he sailed out under the guns of the city without losing a single man.[20] For this gallant action, he was promoted to be a captain.[21] In the achievement of this enterprise, Captain Stewart[22] of the Syren rendered the most effective aid.

and Critical History of America," Vol. vii., pp. 478 to 480.

[17] See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. v., p. 667.

[18] See James Fenimore Cooper's "History of the Navy of the United States of America," Vol. i., chap. xviii., pp. 411, 412. London edition, 1839, 8vo.

[19] See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. v., pp. 104, 105.

[20] See "The American Navy, its Ships and their Achievements," by Charles Morris, chap. ii., pp. 38 to 41. London, 1898, 8vo.

[21] Stephen Decatur, called the Nelson of America, was born in the State of Maryland 1779, and he is said to have been the son of an Irish mother. He was indebted to Commodore Barry for his warrant as a midshipman in the Naval service of the United States, and he afterwards served with great distinction in the war of 1812. See James Fenimore Cooper's "History of the Navy of the United States of America," Vol. ii., chap. ii., pp. 19 to 36.

[22] He was born in Philadelphia, Pa., July 28th 1778. His mother, whose maiden name was Ford, was of Irish birth. At the early age of thirteen, Charles Stewart commenced his nautical career in the merchant service; in 1793, he entered the American Navy as lieutenant, and was assigned to the ship United States, commanded by Commodore John Barry. In 1800, he was appointed commander of the U. S. sloop Experiment. See James

In July 1804, Commodore Preble brought his ships before Tripoli to try the effect of a bombardment. Accordingly, on the 3rd of August, the squadron approached within gunshot of the town; he opened on the shipping and batteries a tremendous fire of shot and shell, which was promptly returned. A number of the Tripolitan vessels were captured by boarding at the mouth of the harbour. Several bombardments and attacks succeeded at intervals throughout the month. But, on the 4th of September, the Commodore resolved on trying a new experiment, by sending a fire ship, commanded by Captain Somers, into the harbour during the night, hoping thus to destroy the enemies' fleet. However, that vessel blew up prematurely, and all the crew were killed.[23]

When Jefferson's first term of office had expired, his conducting of public affairs had been so popular, and the republican party still dominant, he was re-elected by 162 votes out of 176.[24] During his first administration, Aaron Burr had sided with the Federalists; and, in 1804, when the same President had been chosen by the Republicans, General George Clinton of New York was elected Vice-President. Thus disappointed in the primary object of his ambition, Burr stood candidate for the Governorship of New York; but Hamilton, a man of high principle and character, opposing him, although supported by many of the Federalists, Burr was again defeated. Whereupon, sending a challenge to his successful opponent, both parties fought a duel near the Hudson River, and opposite to New York, July 11th 1804. At the first fire, Hamilton was killed, and his loss was universally regretted; his splendid talents and political consistency having won the respect even of his party adversaries.[25] Although serving bravely in the army, Washington had entertained a bad opinion of Burr's personal character, while he was noted for profligacy and deceit. The year following, Burr engaged a number of naval and military officers to join in a mysterious expedition. He began to collect boats, stores and arms, in Ohio,[26] so that he might move down the Mississippi and seize on New Orleans. It was thought, that he could there gather a force, to invade Mexico, or to establish a monarchy in the territory west of the Allegany Mountains. In September and October 1806, Jefferson had information about those preparations, and General Wilkinson, who commanded near New Orleans, received orders to take precautions. On the 25th of December, Burr assembled from sixty to one hundred men at the mouth of the Cumberland River, and with these he sailed down the Mississippi. However, as a greatly superior opposing force had been

Fenimore Cooper's "Lives of Distinguished American Naval Officers," Philadelphia and Auburn, 1846. 8vo.

[23] See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. v., p. 605.

[24] See Hugh Murray's "United States of America," Vol. ii., chap. iii., p. 171.

[25] See Henry Cabot Lodge's "Alexander Hamilton," chap. x., pp. 249, 250.

[26] He engaged the unfortunate and wealthy Harman Blennerhassett, who had a magnificent seat on an island in the Ohio River near Marietta, to take part in this conspiracy, which caused his utter ruin. See James Parton's "Life and Times of Aaron Burr," New York, 1858.

assembled, his followers soon dispersed, and he tried to effect an escape. He was pursued, and in February 1807, he was arrested for treason on his way to Mobile.[27] His coadjutor had openly announced the intention to attempt a separation of the United States. On the 3rd of August, at Richmond, Aaron Burr was tried for treason; but the Chief Justice Marshall was of opinion that he only contemplated an expedition against Mexico, a power with which the country was at peace. Thus, he was acquitted on the main charge, and soon afterwards he sailed for Europe. The President felt greatly dissatisfied with that sentence of the Chief Justice.

In the beginning of 1805, Captain William Eaton United States Consul at Tunis had planned a daring enterprise with Hamet, an elder brother to the Bey of Tripoli, and whom the latter had driven from that throne. They raised a force of 400 men in Egypt, and on the 26th of April they captured the Tripolitan port of Derne, in concert with two vessels of the American squadron. During the months of May and June, succeeding attempts were made to retake the town, but these signally failed. The bashaw now proposed favourable terms of peace, which were accepted by the authorised agent of government. This treaty was subsequently ratified by the President and Senate. Accordingly, in 1805 peace was re-established between the United States and Tripoli. Tunis also sued for peace, and for several years succeeding, the depredations of the Barbary cruisers ceased.[28]

In the meantime those great wars waged by the Emperor Napoleon Buonaparte had bent the European powers beneath his sway; but, the great superiority of the English navy at sea had prevented any vessels leaving the ports of France, without imminent danger of capture.[29] By an order in council of 1806, the British Government had declared all the French ports to be in a state of blockade, from Brest to the mouths of the Elbe.[30] Then Buonaparte retaliated by proclaiming a blockade of all the British ports. Hitherto, as a neutral power, the United States had derived extraordinary advantages from their commercial and naval intercourse with the belligerent nations. Another order in council followed in 1807, which forbade neutral vessels to enter a French port,

[27] See "Life of Aaron Burr," by Samuel L. Kapp, New York, 1835.

[28] See Justin Winsor's "Narrative and Critical History of America," Vol. vii., pp. 374, 375.

[29] Meanwhile, as regarded neutral powers, England had set up the doctrines, *first*, that the flag does not cover the merchandize, and the property of the enemies is subject to confiscation on neutral vessels; *secondly*, that a neutral vessel has no right to be a carrier between a parent country and its colony; *thirdly*, that a neutral vessel may enter an enemy's port, but that it cannot sail from one port to another in possession of an enemy. See "Memoires pour servir a l'Histoire de France sous Napoleon, écrits a Sainte-Hélène, sous la dictée de l'Empereur, par les Généraux qui ont partagé sa Captivité, et publiés sur les Manuscrits entièrement corrigés de sa Main," Tome, ii., Dicté au Genéral Gourgaud, son Aide-de-Camp. Neutres, sect. iv., p. 106. Londres, 1823, 8vo.

[30] See Alison's "History of Europe," Vol. vi., chap. xlvii., pp. 329, 330, and n. *ibid.*

without previously entering a British port, and being there subjected to an impost. Again, Napoleon replied by publishing his celebrated Milan decree, whereby any vessel, which should submit to British search or pay any duty whatever to England, was rendered liable to French confiscation. To meet these measures, the United States declared an embargo, ordering all the vessels abroad to return, while the shipping whether native or foreign in their ports was detained.

The extension of American commerce had induced great numbers of British seamen to embark on board the United States vessels, where they obtained higher wages and escaped from impressment for British ships of war. This very general desertion threatened to cripple the English navy, as a grand means for national offensive and defensive purposes. Then a claim had been set up, to search all American vessels in quest of deserters. Even naturalised seamen were subjected to seizure by the British cruisers.[31] During this contest, the impressment of American seamen by Great Britain raised a great ferment in the United States, and a report was made to Congress, that the number of sailors taken from their vessels, since the war had commenced, was no less than 4,228, of whom only 936 had been discharged. It was also alleged, that by far the greater proportion of these had been natives of America, and that in 697 recent cases, only 23 were British, and 105 doubtful, as the proofs of origin were not duly regarded even when produced.

During the brief administration of Charles James Fox, hopes were entertained that those causes of disagreement might be settled through diplomacy; while Pinkney [32] and Monroe[33] the American Commissioners provisionally signed a treaty.[34] However, on being submitted to Jefferson, he refused to sanction that agreement, or even to refer it for consideration to the Senate. On the death of Mr. Fox, the Tories succeeded to power. In prosecution of negotiations, they refused even to grant a security against future impressments. In a message to Congress on the 10th of February 1807, Jefferson recommended the construction of gunboats, with a view to eventualities of which already he had a forecast.

An inexcusable outrage and insult were offered on board the American frigate Chesapeake, when she left Hampton roads Virginia, in June 1807. That vessel had been fired upon and boarded by the Leopard man-of-war in search of deserters from some of his Britannic Majesty's ships.[35] This

[31] Not alone, by asserting the right of visit did the English assume the police of the seas, and an inquisition over all the world's commerce; but, in exercising these visits, they took away the best seamen, pretending they had been English subjects and deserters from their navy. See J. Michelet's "Histoire du XIX. Siecle," Tome iii., Liv. iii., sect. x., p. 254. Paris, 1872-1875, 8vo.

[32] See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. v., p. 26.

[33] "The Life of Monroe," written by Daniel C. Gilman, has appeared in the American Statesmen series, Boston, 1883.

[34] See Alison's "History of Europe," Vol. v., chap. xlii., p. 670.

[35] It having been ascertained, that four British seamen were harboured on board the American frigate Chesa-

capped the climax of previous provocations, between Great Britain and the United States.[36] Soon afterwards the President issued a proclamation excluding British ships of war from all the coasts and waters subject to his jurisdiction. Meanwhile, a violent and general feeling of irritation had been excited throughout the United States. The democratic American press[37] fanned the flame, and the large foreign element—especially from Ireland—laboured with the war party to excite hostilities against England.[38] Although King George III. was now unwilling to provoke another dispute with America, and had consented that a liberal and honourable explanation should take place, in reference to the capture of the Chesapeake; yet, in a speech to parliament in 1808 he declared, that the American demand to withdraw the continuance of search was inconsistent with the maritime rights of Britain.[39]

From January 1st 1808, the importation of slaves into the United States was prohibited by law. This provision left authority for Congress to prevent their migration from State to State, or into the Territories, but it was made under a dubious form of words. A policy to limit the area of slavery was also implied.[40] The third census of the union was again taken in 1810, and it showed the population had increased to 7,239,881.[41]

One of the first acts of administration was to remove the embargo, while non-intercourse was merely prescribed against England and France. A lengthened and tortuous negotiation then entered upon only resulted in misunderstandings between the British and American cabinets. At last in 1811, Mr. Foster was sent out as plenipotentiary, to offer compensation for injury done, in the case of the Chesapeake, and to state that the orders in Council were virtually revoked. However, the right of search was not abrogated, and American vessels still continued to be seized and searched. Having served a second term by re-election, Jefferson resigned the Presidency.[42] The Federalists sought

peake and their surrender refused, the British man-of-war Leopard poured a broadside into the Chesapeake, which killed twenty men. See James Fenimore Cooper's "History of the Navy of the United States of America," Vol. ii., chap. vii., pp. 117 to 133

[36] See "The Annual Register" for the year 1807, Vol. xlix., pp. 718, 763.

[37] Some of those Irish insurgents of education who escaped from the British Government, after the Rebellion of 1798, were editors and writers for influential newspapers; thus, the *Intelligencer* at Washington was edited by Gales; the *Whig*, at Baltimore, by Baptiste Irving; at Philadelphia, the *Aurora* was edited by Duane, and the *Democratic Press* by Binns. All of these were United Irishmen

[38] See S. G. Goodrich's "Recollections of a Lifetime," &c., Historical, Biographical, Anecdotical, and Descriptive, Vol. i., Letter xxvii., pp. 440, 441. New York and Auburn, 1856, 8vo.

[39] See "King George the Third, his Court, and Family," Vol. ii., sect vii., p. 345.

[40] See the "Encyclopædia Americana," Vol iv., p. 526.

[41] See *ibid.*, Vol. i., p. 768.

[42] He then retired to his seat at Monticello, where he received a cordial welcome from the inhabitants of Albemarle County in Virginia. See "Memoirs, Correspondence, and Private Papers of Thomas Jefferson," Vol. iv., p. 131. For a very excellent account of transactions under his government, the reader is referred to

to elect Mr. Pinkney, but he was defeated by a large majority; and in 1809, James Madison[43] of Virginia succeeded. Clinton was again elected Vice-President.

When the non-intercourse law expired in May 1810, the American government announced, if either France or England should not repeal its abnoxious decrees, that measure must be renewed against the power refusing. Whereupon to annoy his adversary, Napoleon issued a proclamation in August, revoking the decree from the 1st of November following, so far as America was concerned. However, when pressed on the policy of England Foster admitted, that a general revocation of the French decrees must precede a repeal of the British orders in Council.[44] Early in November, Mr. Madison summoned Congress and issued his proclamation,[45] declaring that unrestrained commerce with France was allowed, but that all intercourse with Great Britain was prohibited.[46]

Meantime, the English Government had stationed ships of war before the principal harbours of the United States to board and search merchantmen, many of which were sent to British ports as legal prizes. In one instance, Commodore Rogers, commander of the President frigate, in May 1811, met a British war vessel off the coast of Virginia; when in the evening, he hailed and was hailed in turn; but a shot was fired immediately, and it struck the main mast of the President. The Commodore returned the fire, and in a few minutes silenced the guns of his adversary; he then hailed and was answered, that the ship was the war sloop Little Belt of eighteen guns. Thirty-two of her men were killed and wounded, while the vessel was much disabled during that brief encounter. This spirited action of the American Commodore was universally applauded throughout the States, and indignation was excited to the highest pitch against the intolerable conduct of the English. Deprived of the religious and civil rights of citizens in their own country before emancipation had been obtained, those Irish Catholic exiles, who were already very numerous, exercised a powerful influence in hastening on and sustaining a war, as they had a rancorous hatred against the party of ascendancy, that dominated in the councils of England, and who opposed all efforts made for popular reforms and social progress. The Federal party and nearly the whole commercial interest—especially in New England—wished for a peaceful solution of the international difficulty. However, the public feeling had been too generally aroused, and it was soon felt, that the administration should take a decided course to obtain national redress.[47]

Henry Adams' "History of the United States of America" during the First and Second Administrations of Thomas Jefferson, Vols. i. to iv., London and New York, 1891, 8vo.

[43] His Life has been written by William C. Rives, and published in Three Volumes. Boston, 1859 to 1868.

[44] See "American State Papers" (Foreign), Vol. iii., pp. 435 to 457.

[45] See the "Madison Papers," published at Washington, in Three Volumes, 1840.

[46] For particulars of his administration, the reader may consult Henry Adams' "History of the United States of America," Vols. v. to ix.

[47] See Henri Martin's "Histoire de

In a message of the President, dated November 5th 1811, enumerating the wrongs sustained from the British government, he proposed an augmentation of the military and naval force, with the imposition of additional duties and customs to meet the increased expenditure. Authority was given by Congress, to raise an addition of 70,000 men for the standing army, and the President was authorised to accept the services of 50,000 volunteers, as also to order out the militia, when deemed necessary to reinforce the navy, and to arm merchantmen in self-defence. Meanwhile, the Indians on the north-western frontiers had been committing serious depredations, and the white settlers were greatly alarmed. Whereupon, during the autumn of this year, Governor William Henry Harrison,[48] having the fourth United States regiment under Colonel Boyd[49] with a body of Kentucky and Indiana militia, prepared to move on the Wabash, where Tecumseh, a Shawnee chief, and his brother known as the Prophet, a famous medicine man, had their principal villages.[50] It was very generally known, that British agency had originated those troubles, and this belief greatly increased national antipathy against that power. The Indians were signally defeated, in a battle fought at the Tippecanoe junction of the Wabash, on the 7th of November. This repulse quelled the frontier disturbances for a time; but Tecumseh was soon in arms, and with a regular commission in the British service.

In February 1812, it became known that a Mr. Henry was employed by General Craig, Governor of Canada, to stir up opposition against the war party in the Northern States; but, his agency on their behalf being disavowed by the British government, he then gave information to the adverse power. That repudiation by the English Ministry, however, was not generally credited; and, revelations then made lent still greater force to the democratic resolve, that the President and the Senate should no longer hesitate about an open declaration of war against England. In April, another embargo was laid on American vessels, and this action so greatly inflamed popular resentment that those hoping to procure peace through negotiation could no longer resist the course forced upon the American government. In the midst of such excitement, the Vice-President of the United States George Clinton[51] died in Washington on the 20th April, having rendered great services, both in a military and civil capacity, to the government of the United States.

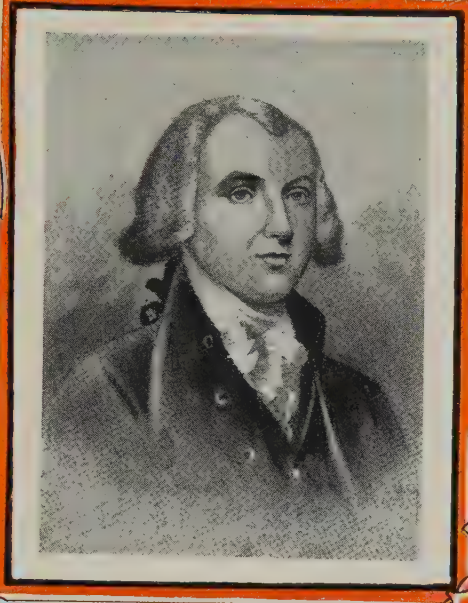
France, depuis, 1798, jusqu' a nos Jours," Tome iv., chap. i., p. 2.

[48] His Life has been written by Moses Dawson, and published in Cincinnati, 1834; by James Hall, Philadelphia, 1836; by Richard Hildreth, 1839; and by Samuel J. Burr, New York, 1840. He died in Washington in 1841, and consequently the foregoing biographies are incomplete. One of the latest Lives of this eminent soldier and statesman is that written by H. Montgomery, and published in New York, 1853.

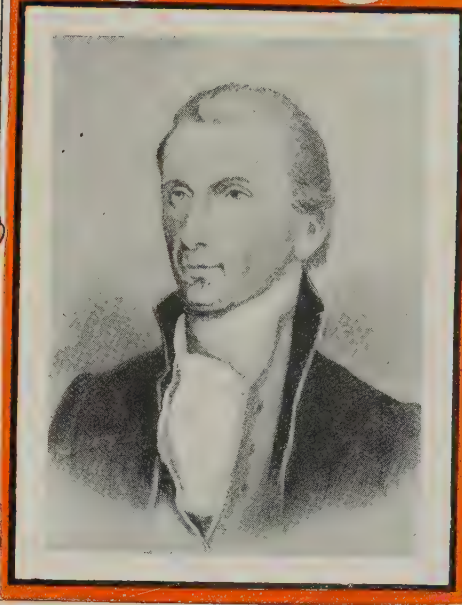
[49] See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. i., p. 340.

[50] An interesting account of these famous chiefs may be found in Edward Eggleston's "Tecumseh and the Shawnee Prophet," New York, 1878.

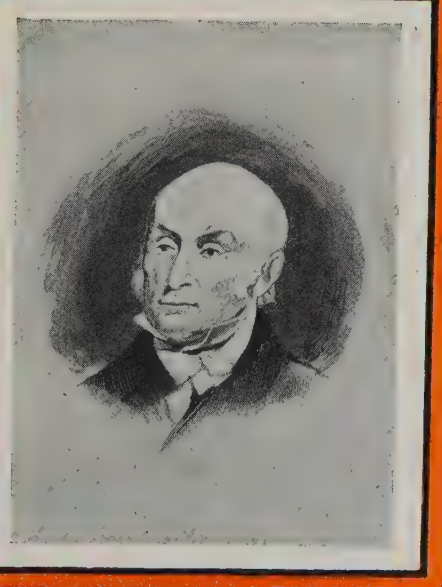
[51] See an account of him, in Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. i., pp. 659, 660.



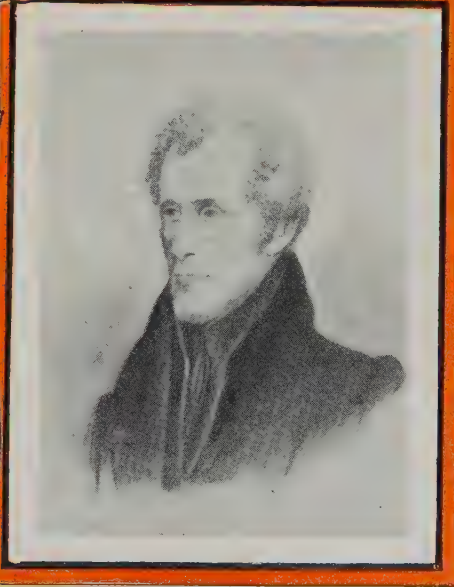
JAMES MADISON
Fourth President of the U.S



JAMES MONROE,
Fifth President of the U.S



JOHN QUINCEY ADAMS,
Sixth President of the U.S



ANDREW JACKSON,
Seventh President of the U.S.

On the 8th of April, Louisiana was admitted as a new State and the eighteenth, into the Union.[52] Afterwards, the name of Louisiana Territory was changed, by the United States authorities, to that of the Missouri Territory, on the 4th of June 1812. A governor was appointed in the person of William Clarke;[53] courts of justice were established; and a council was formed, when Missouri was advanced to the second grade of government, at that time, by an act of Congress.

## CHAPTER XXI.

**War declared against England—First Invasion of Canada—Naval Engagements—American Preparations for another Invasion of Canada—Operations under General Harrison—English Fleet off the Eastern Coasts of the United States—Engagements in Canada—Commodore Perry's Victory on Lake Erie—General Jackson's Victories over the Southern Indians—Failure of General Wilkinson's Expedition against Montreal.**

On the 1st of June 1812, the President issued a message to Congress, recounting the wrongs inflicted on the country, and submitting the question, whether the United States should continue to endure them or declare war.[1] With closed doors, this message was discussed. John Randolph and the Federals were outvoted in a resolution against the war, and a speech in support of that motion was stopped, by sixty-seven to forty-two voices. The propriety and expediency of repealing the Orders in Council had been considered by the British Government; and accordingly, on the 23rd of June,[2] these were revoked unconditionally, but with a proviso, that if the American Government did not, after due notice, repeal the Non-intercourse Act, that revocation should become null, while the original orders should revive.[3]

Meantime, on the 18th of June, an act of Congress was passed by a considerable majority,[4] and war was declared against England. Next

[52] See Dr. L. De Colange's "National Gazetteer," p. 585.

[53] See the "Encyclopædia Americana," Vol. iii., p. 750.

[1] Before this time, George Canning was Secretary of State for Foreign Affairs in England, under the Duke of Portland as Premier, and he maintained "the right of searching for, and if found, of impressing the subjects of Great Britain who might have volunteered or been kidnapped, or seduced, to serve as sailors in the navy or mercantile marine of the United States; that right was grounded by the British Government on the universal principle, that no man can relieve himself from that indelible allegiance which he owes to the Government under which he was born."—Augustus Granville Stapleton's "George Canning and his Times," chap. xi., p. 149. London, 1859, 8vo

[2] At this date, the order appeared in the *London Gazette*.

[3] See Sir Archibald Alison's "Lives of Lord Castlereagh and Sir Charles Steward, the Second and Third Marquesses of Londonderry," &c. Vol. i., chap. vii., p 527.

[4] The British Minister at Washington Foster soon afterwards stated in the British House of Commons, that among the members of Congress who voted for the war, there were no less

day its proclamation was issued, and enlistments were authorized. General Henry Dearborn[5] was commissioned as Commander-in-chief, while James Wilkinson, Wade Hampton, William Hull, and Joseph Bloomfield were appointed Brigadiers. On the part of England, Admiral Warren commanding on the station, and Sir George Prevost Governor of Canada, were directed to propose an armistice, as a preliminary to the restoration of peace. Unless coupled with a stipulation, that the right of search should also be renounced, President Madison rejected that overture. Whereupon, the Americans resolved on opening the war, by an invasion of Canada.

At the commencement of this campaign, the Governor of Michigan also General of Brigade Hull was unsuccessful.[6] Having assembled 500 regulars and 2,000 militia at Detroit, he crossed the Strait, and published a boastful proclamation, announcing the speedy and entire subjection of Canada. Meantime, the British Captain Rogers had seized Michillimakinac, in the northern part of Michigan, where with Tecumseh and his Indians he was soon joined by General Brock, commanding a large detachment of regulars and the Canadian Militia. Hull had threatened a British garrison at Fort Malden for some time; but now, being opposed in considerable force, he retreated across the river followed by Brock. Hull then shut himself up in Detroit, in the Michigan Territory.[7] Distrusting the numbers and stability of his raw forces to hold that place, the American General surrendered his army to the number of 2,340, with thirty-three pieces of cannon,[8] on the 16th of August.[9]

than six members of the late Society of United Irishmen. See Hildreth's "History of the United States of America." Second series. Vol. iii., p. 317.

[5] He was born in New Hampshire 23rd of February 1751. He served with distinction in the Revolutionary War; but, he did not fulfil the expectations formed of him, during the War of 1812-1814. He died at Roxbury, Massachusetts, on the 6th of June 1829. See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. ii., p. 117.

[6] This General had served with great distinction in the Revolutionary War, and afterwards in Shay's Rebellion. However, the government had not given him notice of the declaration of war in sufficient time, while the British General Brock, in Canada, had previous intelligence of it, and a force of 2,000 regular troops prepared to take the initiative. See the "Encyclopædia Americana," Vol. iii., p. 363.

[7] At a later period, this General describes these events and seeks to justify his actions in a history of the "Campaign of the North-west Army, 1812," published in 1824.

[8] See Archibald Alison's "History of Europe," Vol. x., chap. lxxvi., pp. 659, 660.

[9] The news of this disaster was brought to Washington by Colonel Lewis Cass, who commanded an Ohio Regiment, and his exaggerated statements produced strong prejudice against Hull at that time, and which the true historic accounts have not since wholly obliterated. Accordingly, Hull was found guilty of cowardice by a court martial, and sentenced to be shot. However, the President remitted that sentence, in consideration of his past services: and, most probably, because the government itself deserved the greatest share of blame. In 1814, General Hull published a Defence of his conduct, while after his death in 1825, an account of his Life was published by his daughter

Other reverses by land soon followed. On the Niagara frontier, Colonel Van Rensselaer, with a small body of troops and militia, crossed below the Falls from Lewiston, where a large body of militia still remained. Those forces were commanded by General Wadsworth. [10] A battle was fought at Queenstown, on the 13th of October. At first, the Americans stormed the Heights, and drove the enemy from their batteries, General Brock being killed in the onset. [11] However, General Sheaffe restored the battle. As no inducement could urge the militia at Lewiston, to cross the river and support their comrades, 1,014 of the invaders were either killed or captured. After a severe action, in which Lieutenant-Colonel Winfield Scott [12] and Captain John E. Wool were especially distinguished for their valour, the Americans were defeated. [13]

The Seminole and Creek Indians had inflicted great depredations, during the winter of 1812, on the frontier settlers of Georgia; when, at the head of 2,500 Tennesse volunteers, General Andrew Jackson marched into their country, and for a time compelled submission. [14] He had been directed by the Government to proceed down the Mississippi, for the defence of the lower country. [15] As Major-General of militia, he first attracted public notice through his military talents, while conducting the campaign against the Creek Indians in Georgia and Alabama. [16]

At sea, with their small navy, the United States achieved glorious successes. [17] Thus, on the 13th of August, Captain Porter of the United States frigate Essex captured the British sloop-of-war Alert. On the 19th of the same month, the United States frigate Constitution—Captain Hull [18] commanding—encountered the British frigate Guerrière—Captain Dacres commandant—near the Gulf of St. Laurence. This latter was a desperate engagement lasting for an hour, until the main and

Mrs. M. Campbell, and by his grandson Rev. J. Freeman Clarke, in 1848.

[10] See Alison's "History of Europe," Vol. x., chap. lxxvi., pp. 662, 663.

[11] See Christie's "Memoirs of the War in Canada," pp. 67, 68.

[12] The particulars of the life of this celebrated man are embodied in "Memoirs of Lieut.-Gen. Scott., LL.D.," writtten by himself, in two volumes, 8vo., London and New York.

[13] See the "Annual Register" for the year 1812, Vol. liv., General History, chap. xix., p. 253.

[14] See "Civil and Military History of Andrew Jackson," New York, 1825, for a very excellent narrative of these and his subsequent actions.

[15] See Charles Knight's "English Cyclopædia," Biography, Vol. iii., col. 574.

[16] See the "Encyclopædia Britannica," Vol. xiii., p. 533. Ninth edition: Edinburgh, 1875, *et seq.*

[17] The British naval historian of this war, William James, has stated much to diminish the merit of the United States commanders and seamen, in his accounts of the various succeeding engagements; while, on the other hand, James Fenimore Cooper has undertaken to refute several of those statements in his "History of the Navy of the United States of America." Hereafter, we shall generally refer, in brief, to both authorities, for the naval actions; the London edition of Cooper, 1839, being the only one we had been able to procure.

[18] See an account of him in Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. iii., pp. 309 to 311.

mizzen masts of the Guerrière went over her side, and she lay on the water a complete wreck. Then unavoidably she struck, and having lost fifteen killed and sixty-three wounded, that vessel was captured. [19] The crew being removed, the hull was set on fire by the victors. [20] On the 18th of October, the United States sloop-of-war Wasp, and the British sloop-of-war Frolic, had an engagement near the Bermudas. Each vessel carried nine broadside guns. A desperate encounter took place. [21] The Wasp suffered severely in her rigging. Her opponent, however, besides injuries still more severe, had the greater part of her crew killed and wounded. At length, having come to close quarters, the American seamen boarded the Frolic, and she surrendered. About two hours afterwards, the British man-of-war Poictiers, a seventy-four, fell upon the Wasp and her prize, when both were captured and carried to Bermuda. [22] On the 25th of October, an engagement took place between the frigate United States, Captain Decatur, and a British frigate the Macedonian, Captain Carden, near the Azores. This action lasted for two hours. At the end of that time, and having nearly all her masts and rigging shot away, the Macedonian was obliged to strike, with thirty-six men killed and sixty-eight wounded. [23] The Americans had only five killed and seven wounded. Captain Carden presented his sword to the conqueror, when the Macedonian was taken; but it was returned to him by Captain Decatur, with a compliment paid for his valour. The prize was conducted to New York. [24]

An army had been mustered by General Dearborn at Plattsburg, and this was destined to operate on the northern frontiers of New York. Under his chief command were some 10,000 men, stretching along the Canadian line from Plattsburg to Michigan. [25] On the 16th of November, he broke up the encampment at his own station, and marched to Champlain on the Canadian line; [26] yet, nothing very effective followed immediately from this movement. At sea, on the 22nd of December, the British frigate Southampton captured the American brig

[19] The American loss in killed and wounded was only 14. See the "Encyclopædia Americana," Vol, iii, p, 363,

[20] For a British version of this action the reader is referred to William James' "Full and correct Account of the Chief Naval Occurrences of the late War between Great Britain and the United States of America; preceded by a cursory Examination of the American Accounts of their Naval Actions fought previous to that period; to which is added an Appendix with Plates," Chap. v., pp. 97 to 125, and Appendix Nos. 8, 9, 10, 11 and 12, pp. xii. to xxi. London: 1817, 8vo.

[21] See the "Annual Register" for the year 1812, Vol. liv., General History, chap. xix., pp. 200 to 203.

[22] See James' work, Chap. vi., pp. 139 to 154; also, Cooper's "History of the Navy of the United States of America," Vol. ii., pp. 208 to 211.

[23] See the "Annual Register" for the year 1812 Vol. liv., General History, chap. xix., pp. 203, 204.

[24] See James chap. vi., pp. 154 to 167, and Cooper, Vol. ii., chap. xi., pp. 205 to 207. Also, Dr. John Campbell's "Naval History of Great Britain," Vol. viii., chap. xxxiii., pp. 282 to 284.

[25] See S. G. Goodrich's "Recollections of a Lifetime," &c., Vol. i., Letter xxviii., p. 453.

[26] See the "Annual Register" for the year 1812, Vol. liv., General History, chap. xix., p. 204.

Vixen. Five days afterwards, both vessels were totally wrecked. However, on the 29th of December the United States frigate Constitution, commanded by Commodore Bainbridge, captured the British frigate Java, Captain Lambert, off the coast of Brazil. The British vessel was greatly damaged, and an effort was made to board the American; but soon the fore and the main-top mast fell, as also Captain Lambert, who was mortally wounded.[27] Thinking the Java had struck, Banbridge moved some distance to adjust his rigging; but seeing her flag still flying, he approached and obtained a raking position to renew the action. The Java then surrendered, having lost twenty-two killed, and one hundred and two wounded; while the Americans acknowledged a loss of nine killed and twenty-five wounded, among the latter being the Commandant himself. On surrender of the crew, the prisoners were removed on board the Constitution, and the Java was burned.[28] This series of triumphs by sea caused great rejoicings throughout the United States;[29] and their naval force, which was very limited at that period,[30] soon spread its fame over the civilized world. Elated by their previous triumphs at sea, as intelligence of those defeats arrived, the English were then stunned with the foregoing instances of successive disasters to their navy in the combat of single vessels.[31]

After vain negotiations to accommodate matters, during the close of the preceding year,[32] the war was renewed in 1813. The administration had been very generally reproached, for not having conducted it more efficiently; and accordingly, for the coming campaign the American land forces were divided into three armies. General Dearborn was placed near lake Ontario, with the army of the centre; General Hampton was stationed at Lake Champlain, with the army of the north; while Major-General William Henry Harrison, in Ohio, was to operate against Detroit and to recover the Territory of Michigan, with the Western Army.

[27] See James, chap. vii., pp. 168 to 194. Also, Cooper, Vol. ii., chap. xii., pp. 219 to 225.

[28] See "The American Navy, its Ships and their Achievements," by Charles Morris, chap. iii., pp. 47, 48.

[29] On the authority of James, it has been asserted by several succeeding writers, that during this war, the British vessels were for the most part inferior in size, complement of men, number, and weight of guns, to those of the United States. This statement has been ably handled and refuted, in several instances, by James Fenimore Cooper, in his valuable work, "History of the Navy of the United States of America."

[30] At the outbreak of the War in 1812, Paul Hamilton was Secretary of the United States Navy. Meantime, navy yards had been created at Washington, Brooklyn and Boston. All the warships were at once commissioned, and the clerical force was increased to 22 vessels. William Jones succeeded Hamilton in 1813, as Secretary of the Navy; and in turn B. W. Crowninshield was successor in December 1814. See "Encyclopædia Americana," Vol. iii., p. 817.

[31] See Alison's "History of Europe," Vol. x., chap. lxxvi., p. 672.

[32] The correspondence between Lord Castlereagh and Mr. Russell as also that between Admiral Warren and Mr. Monroe on the subject of effecting an armistice had been laid before Congress. Afterwards, those documents were printed in the American papers.

Although nothing very decisive took place on either side, numerous engagements followed by sea and land. On the 10th of February, 1813, the United States sloop Hornet, commanded by Captain James Lawrence, captured the British brig Resolute. On the 24th of the same month, the Hornet engaged the British brig Peacock; when after a most bloody and destructive action, lasting for an hour and a half, the latter was found to be in a sinking state. An effort was then made by both crews to save those on board; but that vessel went to the bottom with thirteen of her own men, and three belonging to the Hornet, which had captured her.[33]

Meantime General Harrison had been appointed to conduct the war on the north-western frontiers.[34] Under him, General Winchester held a command, and as the British now threatened Frenchtown on Raisin River in Michigan, he crossed over to attack Fort Detroit. He then marched to the relief of Frenchtown.[35] A battle was fought there on the 18th of January, the Americans under Allen losing 67 men, but repulsing their opponents with a loss of 88. However, under the leadership of General Proctor, the English from Fort Malden surprised the Americans on the 22nd of January, at the Fort of Ogdenburg.[36] These were obliged to surrender, after a gallant defence.[37] Such as were able to march were taken to Canada; the sick and wounded were left behind, but these were soon massacred by the Indians. While the American loss was 946, that of the British was only 182, as the result of that encounter.[38]

Meantime the Americans had continued to augment their naval force in Sackett's Harbour on Lake Ontario; and this was intended to renew their invasion of Canada. The flotilla was under the command of Commodore Chauncey, who was prepared to co-operate with an expedition planned by General Dearborn. On his way to join Winchester, Harrison had stopped to erect Fort Meigs, at the rapids of Maumèe, in north-western Ohio.[39] There, he was soon besieged by two thousand British and Indians, respectively commanded by General Proctor and by Tecumseh. At length, General Green Clay with a body of Kentucky troops came to his relief. On the 9th of May the British and Indians were obliged to retire.[40]

[33] See James, chap. viii., pp. 109 to 207, and Cooper, Vol. ii., chap. xii., pp. 227 to 230.

[34] See Richard Hildreth's "Life of General William Henry Harrison," 1839, 18mo.

[35] See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. vi., pp. 560, 561.

[36] See Alison's "History of Europe," Vol. x., chap. lxxvi., pp. 685, 686.

[37] See General John Armstrong's "War of 1812," Vol. i., p. 67.

[38] See the "Annual Register" for the year 1813, Vol. lv., General History chap. xvi., pp. 179, 180.

[39] See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. iii., p. 79. Under General Harrison served a brave Irish Volunteer, named Ned Blackstock, whose family removed to the United States after the Rebellion of 1798, during which his brother Sam was barbarously murdered by a squad of the king's troops. This family gave name to the town of Blackstock, where they had settled, and which was situated on the line between Chester and Fairfield Counties, in South Carolina.—*Charleston News and Courier.*

[40] See the "Annual Register" for

With the army of the centre comprising 1,700 men, General Dearborn crossed Lake Ontario in the spring, on board fourteen armed vessels.[41] His object was to capture York, now known as Toronto, in Upper Canada. The English then were under the command of General Sheaffe, who was soon obliged to fall back on that town. General Pike led the assault, while the American flotilla under Chauncey had worked its way into the harbour.[42] The town was taken by the Americans, on the 27th of April; but before retreating on Kingston, the British blew up their magazine.[43] Pike and two hundred of his men were killed by that explosion. The British burnt a large ship on the stocks and a quantity of naval stores, while the Americans carried off three hundred prisoners. About an equal number were killed on either side in that action.[44]

A powerful English fleet, under Sir John Borlase Warren, had been despatched to create a diversion on the eastern coast of America; and so vigilantly was the blockade maintained, that trade and commerce of the United States were greatly restricted, with enormous loss to the public revenues.[45] With a light squadron, Admiral Sir George Cockburn arrived on the 3rd of March, and he made various descents on the shores along the Delaware River and on Chesapeake Bay.[46] A land force under Sir Sydney Beckwith was directed to co-operate. A succession of raids then ensued. A large depôt of stores was captured at Frenchtown, on the Elk River. On the 3rd of May, Havre de Grace in Maryland was burned by the British blockading vessels.[47] Yet, these raids were not attended with any marked advantage to the invaders. An attack was made on Norfolk, but the assailants were repulsed, June 22nd. On the 24th an attack on Craney Island failed; but, on the 26th of that month, Admiral Cockburn and Sir Sydney Beckwith took Hampton,[48] with the guns in its batteries. On the 12th of July, Admiral Warren captured two fine brigs, the Anaconda and Atlas, in Ocracoke harbour,[49] North Carolina.[50] Again, on the 10th of August, the British attacked St. Michael's, Maryland. However, they were then defeated. On the 14th of August, Queenstown in Maryland was taken by the British An American squadron of frigates had put to sea from New York; however, a British squadron of superior strength met them. The frigates were pursued to New London, and there blockaded.[51]

the year 1813., Vol. lv., General History, chap. xvi., pp. 181, 182.

[41] See Alison's "History of Europe," Vol. x., chap. lxxvi., p. 686.

[42] See General John Armstrong's "War of 1812," Vol. i., pp. 129 to 132.

[43] See the "Annual Register" for the year 1813, Vol. lv., General History, chap. xvi., p. 180.

[44] See Christie's "Memoirs of the War in Canada" pp 74, 75.

[45] See Alison's "History of Europe," Vol. x., chap. lxxvi., pp. 675, 676.

[46] See William R. O'Byrne's "Naval Biographical Dictionary," pp. 205, 206.

[47] See the "Annual Register" for the year 1813, Vol. lv., General History, chap. xi., p. 109.

[48] See William R. O'Byrne's "Naval Biographical Dictionary," p. 206.

[49] See Cooper's "History of the Navy of the United States of America." Vol. ii., chap. xix., pp. 312 to 326.

[50] See "Annual Register" for the year 1813, Vol. lv., General History, chap. xi., pp. 110, 111.

[51] See Alison's "History of Europe," Vol. x., chap. lxxvi., p. 684.

The British Commander-in-Chief Sir George Prevost landed with a thousand men, at the eastern end of Lake Ontario, and Sir James Lucas Yeo[52] put out with a squadron from Kingston harbour,[53] to co-opera te in a joint attack on Sackett's Harbour. This assault was made by the British, on the 29th of May. A New York militia officer General Brown rallied a small body of Volunteers to co-operate with a small detachment of regulars, and he opposed such resistance to the English, that they were repulsed, and retired to their vessels, leaving behind many of their wounded.[54] Conceiving his force inadequate to attempt further operations, Sir George Prevost re-embarked his troops.[55]

The principal American army on Lake Ontario was about 6,000 strong under General Dearborn, while Commodore Chauncey had a naval force to support him, in a joint attack on Fort George,[56] at the western extremity of the Lake. The British to the number of 1,000 were under the command of General Vincent. After a spirited resistance, with a loss of 350 men, he blew up the fort, and then retired to a strong position on Burlington Heights, near the head of the Lake.[57] On the 27th of May, Fort George and Fort Erie surrendered to the Americans. The British were pursued to the Western end of Lake Ontario, where they collected detachments from Chippewa, Fort Erie and other points, to the number of 1,600 men.[58] On their retreat, however, they turned, and by night attacked General Chandler at Stony Creek on June 6th. In this engagement, the British lost 150 men.[59] The Americans advanced to Queenstown, where they mustered a force of nearly 6,000 on the Niagara frontier. On that same day, the British burned Sodus town, on Lake Ontario, while they obtained some other advantages over the Americans in that quarter. Unable to penetrate further, General Dearborn then retired to Fort George.[60] There he was attacked by the British ; but finding it should be vain to assault the place, General Prevost left a force to besiege it, and then returned to Kingston.[61] This campaign of General Dearborn gave great dissatisfaction to the Americans. The Government soon manifested disapprobation by removing

[52] This officer had served when young under Admiral Cosby, and had distinguished himself on various subsequent occasions. See Dr. John Campbell's "Naval History of Great Britain," Vol. viii., pp. 407 to 409.

[53] See the "Annual Register" for the year 1813, Vol. lv., General History, chap. xvi., pp. 182, 183.

[54] See Christie's "Memoirs of the War in Canada," pp. 77 to 79.

[55] See General John Armstrong's "War of 1812," Vol. i., pp. 123 to 147.

[56] See the "Annual Register" for the year 1813, Vol. lv., General History, chap. xvi., p. 182.

[57] See General John Armstrong's "War of 1812,". Vol. i., pp. 133, 135.

[58] See Christie's "Memoirs of the War in Canada," pp. 75, 76.

[59] They were repulsed, but the American Generals Chandler and Winder were made prisoners, in the confusion that followed, and it was claimed as a British victory.

[60] See the "Annual Register" for the year 1813, Vol. lv., General History, chap. xvi., p. 183.

[61] See Alison's "History of Europe," Vol. x., chap. lxxvi., p. 691.

him from command. His place was then filled by General Wilkinson,[62] whose antecedents hardly fitted him for the position.[63]

So powerful was the British naval force despatched against America during the spring and summer, that the United States vessels were blockaded in nearly every port, nor was there opportunity for the combats of single ships, such as had hitherto occurred. At this time, however, the Chesapeake frigate, then commanded by Captain James Lawrence, who had been promoted from the Hornet, was lying in the harbour of Boston.[64] A British vessel of equal size, and commanded by Captain Broke, lay to near the lighthouse. The latter naval officer challenged Lawrence to come out and meet him singly, while he promised that other British ships should keep at a distance during their engagement.[65] On a hasty notice, and not having his full complement of men on board, Lawrence set the Chesapeake's sails, and bore down on his adversary. At half-past five o'clock on the 1st of June, both ships engaged within fifty yards of each other. After exchanging three broadsides, the Chesapeake fell upon the Shannon, and the rigging of both vessels was soon locked together; but early in the action, the English broadside had caused great execution; Lawrence fell mortally wounded, and Broke, seeing the American crew in a state of confusion, gave orders to board,[66] These were immediately executed, while only an irregular and a partial resistance could be offered. During the engagement, after being wounded, Lawrence raised himself from the deck of the vessel and shouted, "Comrades, don't give up the ship!" The Chesapeake was captured, after an action which lasted for only fifteen minutes, and when she had lost a large proportion of her officers and crew.[67] Captain Broke brought his prize into Halifax, and there Lawrence was buried with military honours.[68] The Shannon lost in killed and wounded only 83, while the Chesapeake had 61 killed, and 106 wounded.[69]

[62] He has written a work "Memoirs of my own Times," in three volumes. It was published in Philadelphia, 1816. A "Review of General Wilkinson's Memoirs" was subsequently published by General John Armstrong.

[63] Although serving in the Revolutionary War, his character was noted for deceit and intrigue. He was strongly suspected by Jackson, to have been a confederate in Aaron Burr's conspiracy. His treason has been pretty clearly proved in Humphry Marshall's "History of Kentucky," in two vols., Frankfort, Ky., 1824, and the charges are more fully related in Charles Gayarre's "Spanish Domination in Louisiana," New York, 1854.

[64] The circumstances that led to the succeeding encounter are given in great detail by James, chap. ix., pp. 211 to 251.

[65] See the "Annual Register," for the year 1813, Vol. lv., General History, chap. xi., pp. 108 to 110.

[66] See C. D. Yonge's "History of the British Navy," Vol. ii., chap. xxxvi., pp. 313 to 316.

[67] See Cooper, Vol. ii., chap. xvi., pp. 284 to 290.

[68] Afterwards, his remains were brought to New York, and interred in Trinity Church Graveyard. See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. iii., pp. 640, 641.

[69] James states of the prisoners taken: "The Chesapeake's gunner, Matthew Rogers, was an Irishman; the carpenter, George Miller, a native of Nova Scotia; and there were 34 others of the crew recognised as Bri-

General Green Clay, who had been left in command at Fort Meigs, was attacked by General Proctor and by Tecumseh with 4,000 men in July. They failed, however, to make any impression, and then turned aside to attempt the reduction of Fort Stevenson, at Lower Sandusky. There, Lieutenant George Croghan,[70] only twenty-one years of age, commanded a small garrison of one hundred and sixty men. He had but one mounted gun. However, he made a most gallant defence. Although assisted by gunboats, on the 2nd of August, the assailants were repulsed and with severe loss.

Notwithstanding the closeness of the British blockade, some of the American vessels had kept the sea. Among these was the brig Argus, commanded by Captain Allen, who took a number of prizes near the English coast. His vessel created so much alarm, that several cruisers were despatched in quest of her. On the 14th of August, the British man-of-war Pelican encountered her off the harbour of Cork, and for some time a gallant fight was maintained,[71] in which Captain Allen was mortally wounded before his ship surrendered. The United States brig Enterprise, Lieutenant Burrows, captured the British brig Boxer Captain Blythe, on the 5th of September, after a short action off the coast of Maine.[72] Both of these commanders were killed, and they are buried in the same grave at Portand. Moreover, the frigate Essex, commanded by Captain Porter, made a brilliant and successful cruise in the Pacific, where she captured a number of merchant-men and several armed ships. She inflicted great damage, likewise, on the British whaling business, on that ocean. The United States frigate President, and the British schooner Highflyer, met on the 23rd of September. The latter was captured. Having taken command of the Constitution in July 1813, Captain Stewart sailed from Boston, December 13th, on a cruise to the Guiana Coast. He had an encounter at sea, which resulted in the capture of the English schooner Picton.

A young master-commandant Oliver Hazard Perry had volunteered for service on Lake Erie, where his zeal and abilities were rewarded by the appointment he ambitioned. At Presque Isle, now Erie, State of Pennsylvania, he built and launched several vessels with extraordinary energy, and in a brief term, during the summer and autumn. He soon equipped a fleet of ten sail, to cope with an English flotilla, under the command of Commodore Barclay.[73] The latter had six fine vessels

tish subjects. One man was hanged at Spithead; and several were pardoned. By some mismanagement, the first named notorious traitor Matthew Rogers, instead of being sent home for trial, was allowed to return, laughing in his slieve, to his *adopted* country."—James, chap. ix. p. 238.

[70] His father was Major William Croghan of the Revolution, of Irish birth, and his mother was a sister of General George Rogers Clark. He was born near Louisville, Ky., in 1791, and after a distinguished military career he died in New Orleans, January 8th 1849.

[71] See "The American Navy, its Ships and their Achievements," by Charles Morris, chap. iii., p. 49.

[72] See Alison's "History of Europe," Vol. x., chap. lxxvi., p. 682.

[73] See the "Annual Register," for the year 1813, Vol. lv., General History, chap. xvi., pp. 187, 188.

of greatly superior size and weight of metal. However, the American squadron under Commodore Perry met the opposing ships near the western end of the Lake, on the morning of September 10th.[74] An engagement ensued which lasted for three hours. In his own ship the Lawrence, Perry bore the great brunt of that attack, until she was so badly injured as to be useless.[75] Then, he abandoned her, and in an open boat rowed to the Niagara through the thick of battle. With this brig he sailed into the British lines, while delivering a terrible broadside on right and left as he passed. He then turned, and at short range, he continued a deadly discharge. Soon Commodore Barclay fell dangerously wounded, and his first lieutenant was killed. Then Commodore Perry returned on board the Lawrence and hoisted his colours. The two chief British vessels the Detroit and Queen Charlotte were at last compelled to surrender; when soon the smaller vessels followed such an example, their united crews having one hundred and thirty-five killed and wounded.[76] The Americans utterly destroyed or captured the British flotilla,[77] which surrendered. This victory gave the Americans complete control on Lake Erie.[78]

Soon afterwards, the squadron was employed to transport General Harrison's troops to Canada. The British evacuated Detroit, on the 28th of September, as also Fort Malden; these positions being no longer tenable. The English and their allies the Indians retreated up the River Thames, which flows into Lake St. Clair.[79]

Another very exasperating course of procedure was adopted by the English authorities towards the close of this year. When some of the United States army had been captured, an inquisition was made to ascertain if any of them had been born as British subjects; for the odious and absurd doctrine had prevailed, that once a subject allegiance could not be transferred under any circumstances to another nation. Accordingly in October, about twenty-three United States soldiers were placed in close confinement and sent to England, to answer the charge of treason, and of their having been British subjects. The greater number of these happened to be Irishmen. By way of retaliation, General Dearborn threatened to confine twenty-three British soldiers as hostages for their safety. To this threat the Prince Regent replied, that if his own subjects were condemned and executed for the aforesaid offence, and that if the law of retaliation were carried out by the Americans, double the number of their officers and men in confinement should be

[74] See James, for a detailed account of the preparations made for this naval engagement, and the issue, chap. xii., pp. 283 to 295.

[75] See Cooper, Vol. ii., chap. xxvii., pp. 446 to 469.

[76] See C. D. Yonge's "History of the British Navy," Vol. ii., chap. xxxvi., pp. 327 to 330.

[77] See Alison's "History of Europe," Vol. x., chap. lxxvi., pp. 692 to 695.

[78] On obtaining this signal victory, Commodore Perry wrote a brief despatch, which he sent to General Harrison by a messenger. The words were: "We have met the enemy, and they are ours."

[79] See John R. G. Hassard's "History of the United States of America," chap. xlii., pp. 260 to 263.

put to death, while the war was to be prosecuted with unmitigated severity against all cities, towns and villages in the United States.[80] Needless to state, this barbarous avowal was received in a spirit of indignation and defiance, while it lowered still more the British Regent and Government in the esteem of civilized Europe.

It must be remarked, that Major-General Harrison[81] had taken Mobile from the Spaniards, April 12th.[82] He and General Andrew Jackson served the United States with distinction during this campaign.[83] When the former had driven the English from Michigan, and his own troops took possession of it, he issued a proclamation, to re-establish the civil rule of that territory in conformity with the Republican institutions. Under General Cass, the government was reorganised.[84]

In the Spring of 1813, Tecumseh had visited the Creek Indians in the south-west, when he exhorted them to take up arms and exterminate the whites. Accordingly, on the 30th of August, over three hundred settlers, who sought refuge in Fort Mimms on the Alabama River, were piteously massacred, a few only escaping to convey that sad intelligence to some neighbouring stations. Again, General Jackson marched into the southern wildness with 3,500 Tennessee militia. He was ably assisted by General John Coffee,[85] who with a detachment encountered a large body of Indians at Tullushatchie, where they fought with such desperation, that nearly every warrior perished. However, they occupied another strong position on the Tallapoosa. While the main body of Jackson's force attacked their fort, Coffee's detachment guarded the River at Horse-Shoe Bend to prevent their escape. Driven from the fort and opposed on the river banks, they fought with increased fury and contempt of death. Over six hundred were killed, when four hundred yielded as prisoners, and three hundred escaped in flight. The militia lost fifty-five killed, besides one hundred and forty-six wounded. On the 9th of November, General Jackson with 1,200 men again defeated a large force of the Creek Indians, at Talladega, where nearly three hundred were killed. Here Colonel William Carroll bravely led the attack.[86] At Hillabee, General White surprised

[80] See the "Annual Register" for the year 1813, Vol. lv., General History, chap. xvi., pp. 190, 191.

[81] He had already given proof of great military talents as Commander-in-Chief of the American military forces, in the war of 1811 against Indians. See Le Dr. Hoefer's "Nouvelle Biographie Generale," Tome xxiii., col. 461.

[82] See the "Annual Register" for the year 1813, Vol. lv., General History, chap. xvi., pp. 180, 181.

[83] See John S. Jenkins' "Life of General Andrew Jackson," Seventh President of the United States, with Appendix: containing the most important of his State Papers, chap. iv.. v., pp. 55 to 86. Auburn, N.Y., 1847, 12mo.

[84] See H. Montgomery's "Life of Major-General Harrison," Cleveland, O., 1852.

[85] His father was an Irishman, and he was born in Prince Edward County, Va., in June 1772. In October 1809, he married Mary Donelson, a sister of Andrew Jackson's wife At the beginning of the war of 1812, he raised a cavalry regiment, and so greatly distinguished himself in several battles, that he was known as "brave Jack Coffee." He died near Florence, Ala., in July 1834.

[86] He was an Irish-American, born

a range of Indian towns; while General Floyd from Georgia, and the Governor of Alabama, General Claiborne, gained considerable advantages over the Red Men.[87]

Meanwhile, Major-General Harrison had moved a force of 3,500 up the River Thames, and he entered Amhertsburg without resistance, General Proctor retiring with 1,300 troops before him. At Moravian Town Upper Canada, on the 5th October, the Americans overtook the British and Indians, who there made a stand.[88] This has been sometimes called the battle of the Thames, because the river flanked the British position on one side, while a wood was on the other. Little resistance was offered, however, when Colonel Richard M. Johnson[89] at the head of the Kentucky Mounted Volunteers charged the British and Indians in front. Their troops soon fell into confusion. Throwing down their arms they surrendered, General Proctor and his staff having turned in flight and made their escape. About seventy were killed in the onset, while six hundred were made prisoners. The Indians fought much better than their disciplined allies. In this battle, however, the Indian Chief Tecumseh, was killed. Then his forces scattered in various directions.[90]

A part of the British squadron on Lake Ontario was captured by the Americans in October. Then, Commodore Chauncey had complete control of its waters, and that circumstance was regarded as most opportune for an expedition of importance and conceived on an extensive scale. Nevertheless, misunderstanding and want of timely co operation or concentration, between the American leaders and their respective forces, led only to disappointment and mutual recrimination. Intending to capture Montreal, General Wilson had arranged to move down the St. Lawrence in boats with 8,000 men, and he expected General Wade Hamilton with a supporting force of 6,000 to advance from Lake Champlain.[91] At the end of October, the latter came up with a British advanced guard of 1,000 men, commanded by Colonels Salaberry and M'Donnell. These were strongly posted on the River Chateauguay. Having in his assault on attacking them October 26th withdrawn his troops, Hampton retreated upon Plattsburg.[92] Meantime, having rendezvoused at the eastern extremity of Lake Ontario, Wilkinson embarked his forces in boats and began to descend the River St. Lawrence. Colonel Morrison with a British land-force hovered

in Pittsburg, Pa., in 1788. He died in Nashville Tenn., March 22nd 1844.

[87] See Hugh Murray's "United States of America," Vol. ii., chap. iv., p. 197.

[88] See the "Annual Register" for the year 1813, Vol. lv., General History, chap. xvi., p. 188.

[89] Afterwards Vice-President of the United States, born in Bryant's Station Ky., in 1781. Having served his country, both in a civic and a military capacity, he died in Frankfort Ky., November 19th 1850. See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. iii., pp. 443, 444.

[90] See John R. G. Hassard's "History of the United States of America," chap. xlii., p. 263.

[91] See Hugh Murray's "United States of America," Vol. ii., chap. iv., pp. 192, 193.

[92] See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. iii., p. 69.

along the banks, and considerably harassed the flotilla. To oppose them, General Brown landed with a large body of troops. An indecisive battle was fought near Williamsburg in Canada, on the 11th November, between the British and Americans. Then the latter re-embarked and continued their voyage. Soon intelligence reached them of Hampton's retreat. Thus disconcerted, and Hampton failing to meet him as required, Wilkinson abandoned the attempt to reach Montreal.[93] He then returned into winter quarters, near St. Regis on the St. Lawrence.

Meantime, to carry on the operations against Lower Canada, the Americans had greatly reduced their forces on the Niagara frontier. Thither Sir James Yeo had conveyed reinforcements, and General Vincent had resolved on hostile movements. On the 2nd of December, the British despatched an expedition, and burned the public stores at Cumberland Head on Lake Champlain.

The danger of a Canadian invasion having been removed, Colonel Murray advanced with a strong British force from Kingston.[94] The small American garrison under General McClure[95] at Fort George, now untenable, was attacked by the British. General Vincent having pushed on to Newport, the place was evacuated by McClure, and he reduced it to ashes. The orders received from Government were, to abandon Fort George, and to have the garrison removed to Fort Niagara; while the exposed part of the frontier was to be protected, by destroying such Canadian villages in its front, as might best shelter the enemy during the winter.[96] The Americans were driven across the Niagara River on the 12th of December.[97] Colonel Murray then passed over with a considerable opposing force. On the 18th of December, the British and Indians surprised Fort Niagara,[98] and there they captured a large quantity of arms and stores. Immediately afterwards, they attacked a body of Americans, who were discharging red-hot shot against Queenstown, and defeated them. They killed 250 of the Americans.

A large British contingent then crossed the Channel under General Drummond and Riall to Blackrock, which was stormed. The fugitives were pursued to Buffalo, where the American General Hall had assembled two thousand men to defend that rising town. On the 28th of December, Buffalo was taken and burned; all the naval establishments there and at Blackrock were destroyed; while the Indians, let loose on the surrounding country, took ample vengeance, it was asserted,[99] for

[93] See the "Annual Register" for the year 1813, Vol. lv., General History, chap. xvi., pp. 188 to 190.

[94] See Alison's "History of Europe." Vol. x., chap. lxxvi., p. 669.

[95] He was born near Londonderry Ireland in 1771, and he died in Elgin, Ill., August 16th 1851.

[96] See General John Armstrong's "War of 1812," Vol. i., p. 20.

[97] See the "Annual Register" for the year 1813, Vol. lv., General History, chap. xvi., p. 190.

[98] See Benson J. Lossing's "Pictorial Field-Book of the American Revolution," Vol. i., chap. x., p. 226.

[99] By Sir George Prevost, in "a noble proclamation" which was soon afterwards issued. Such are the ex-

the conflagration of Newark. A number even of women and children in the neighbourhood were massacred. On the 29th of December, the villages of Lewistown, Youngtown, Manchester, and Tuscarora, in New York State, were burned by the British while the inhabitants were left completely defenceless. This inhuman species of warfare created intense indignation and disgust throughout the United States. However, such desultory raids and conflicts, causing only private losses of life and injuries to property, led to no important results on either side of the St. Lawrence during the course of this year.

Several naval engagements took place, meanwhile, between ships of the rival nations. The results were surprisingly in favour of America; while numerous vessels were captured by her seamen, and even privateers sailed from her ports, to have a share in those maritime enterprises. On the 20th of April, the British frigate Orpheus of 36 guns, with the schooner Shelbourne in company, captured the American sloop of war Frolic, of 22 guns, after an exciting chase.[100] On the 29th April, the United States sloop of war Peacock Captain Warrington[101] captured the British brig L'Epervier Captain Wales, off the coast of Florida, after an engagement lasting 45 minutes.[102] The United States sloop of war Wasp Captain Johnston Blakeley[103] captured the British sloop of war Reindeer Captain Manners June 28th. The two vessels, meeting in the British Channel, were locked together yard-arm and yard-arm. For twenty-five minutes, the action was maintained with great resolution. In two attempts to board, the British were repulsed. Having lost her captain, purser, with 27 men killed and 40 wounded, the Reindeer was obliged to strike her colours.[104] The Wasp had 11 killed and 15 wounded.[105] For their gallantry in this action, the President and Congress presented medals and swords to Captain Blakeley and his crew. After remaining eighteen days at L'Orient, the Wasp refitted and sailed from that port. On the 30th of August, she captured the British brig Lettice, Henry Cockbain master, and on the 31st the brig, Bon Accord, Adam Durno master. Next she fell in with a convoy of ten sail, in charge of the Armada, a ship of 74 guns,

pressions of Alison, in his "History of Europe," Vol. x., chap. lxxvi., pp. 700, 701.

[100] See James, chap. xiv., pp. 334 to 338.

[101] See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. vi., pp. 368, 369.

[102] See James, chap. xv., pp. 341 to 350. Also, Appendix, No. 76, for Captain Warrington's account of the action, pp. cxxix., cxxx.

[103] He was born near Seaford, County of Down, Ireland, in 1781, and at a very early age, with his father John, emigrated to the United States. He obtained a midshipman's warrant, February 5th 1800. In 1807, he was made lieutenant, and in 1813, he commanded the brig Enterprise. That same year, in August, he was promoted as commander of the Wasp. See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. i., pp. 286, 287.

[104] See the "Annual Register" for the year 1814, Vol. lvi. General History, chap. xv., p. 174.

[105] See James, chap. xv., pp. 354 to 360. For Captain Blakeley's detailed account of this action, see Appendix, Nos. 78, 79, pp. cxxxi. to cxxxiv.

as also a bomb-ship. Captain Blakeley succeeded in cutting out and capturing the British brig Mary, John D. Allan master. On the night of September 1st, having escaped the Armada, the Wasp fell in with the brig Avon, Captain the Hon. J. Arbuthnot, and an action ensued which lasted 43 minutes, when the British vessel surrendered, and she sank immediately afterwards.[106] That same year, the Wasp, its gallant captain and crew, were lost during a cruise, and no trace of them was ever obtained.[107]

## CHAPTER XXII.

Discontent of the Peace Party at the Continuation of the War—Renewal of the Canadian Invasion—Operations under General Brown—Battles at Plattsburg and on Lake Champlain—Propositions for a Peace—Campaign in the South—Great Victory of General Jackson at New Orleans—Treaty for Peace ratified—Commodore Stewart's brilliant Victory at Sea, and Closing of the War.

MEANWHILE, the ineffectiveness of their plans, the want of concert between their generals, the blockade of their harbours, the stoppage of their foreign trade and the consequent failure of their customs, had necessitated large loans and a variety of taxes, on the part of the Americans, to provide for their war expenditure. Hitherto, they had been in a great measure relieved from such burdens, and from debts so familiar to the people of the older European Nations;[1] and as those direct and excise taxes fell most heavily on the New England and Eastern States, so a vigorous agitation was then resumed by the Peace Party. Discontent at its continuance in the North was openly and strongly expressed, while the dissolution of the Union was even threatened, at some public meetings. This agitation led to a repeal of the embargo and non-importation Acts in 1814. However, the great European war was then at an end, between the allied armies and the Emperor Napoleon.[2] The English were now left free, to send all their

[106] In this, as in the previous action, Captain Blakeley greatly extols the merits of Lieutenant Reilly, Tillinghast, Bury, and sailing-master Carr. See *ibid.* Appendix, Nos. 87, 88, pp. cli. to clv.

[107] See Cooper, Vol. ii., chap. xx., pp. 231 to 344.

[1] The following statement gives an idea of the degree to which the National Debt of England had increased: "In the year 1792, the last complete year of peace, the debt of Great Britain had amounted to £237,400,000; the debt of Ireland to about £2,250,000. The entire debt of the United Kingdom only slightly exceeded £239,650,000. In 1815, the last year of the war, the capital of the debt of Great Britain amounted to about £834,360,000; the capital of the Irish debt exceeded £26,770,000. The entire debt of the United Kingdom reached £861,000,000. The debt in 1792 imposed a charge of £9,301,000 on Great Britain, and £131,000 on Ireland. The charge of the debt in 1815 had risen (without the sinking fund) to £32,645,618."—Spencer Walpole's "History of England from the Conclusion of the Great War in 1815," Vol. i., chap. i., p. 28. London, 1878, et seq. 8vo.

[2] The reader who desires to have a

disposable military and naval forces against the Americans. On the 25th of April, the British Government declared all the ports north and south of New York to be in a state of blockade.[3] Such a proclamation effectively destroyed the hopes of the Peace party to procure an accommodation, and even strengthened the United States Government in their efforts to prosecute the war.

Having taken two prizes, the American frigate Essex, Captain Porter, equipping one of these armed with twenty guns and sixty men, had been run into the port of Valparaiso in South America, on the 9th of February, by the British frigate Phœbe, Captain Hillyar, supported by the Cherub brig.[4] A close blockade of three weeks followed, during which Captain Porter made various foiled attempts to escape, without the aid of his lesser consort. On the 28th of that month, the Essex was brought to action in the roads, and with the utmost gallantry her commander maintained an unequal contest,[5] the Phœbe exchanging broadsides with his vessel, and the Cherub raking her decks. Soon the carnage on board the Essex was frightful; twice did the vessel take fire; and with a loss of 58 killed and 94 wounded, after an action lasting forty minutes, Captain Porter was obliged to haul down his flag.[6] The British loss was very trifling, only five killed and ten wounded. Nearly one hundred British seamen were on board the American vessel when the action commenced; but just as their vessel was about to surrender the survivors jumped overboard, and of these forty reached the shore by swimming, thirty-one were drowned, while sixteen were picked up when on the point of perishing. All of these men had anticipated summary execution had they fallen into the hands of their victors.

During the winter of 1813–14, the Canadian Houses of Assembly made great efforts to augment their military force to the number of 8,000 men,[7] while their chief towns subscribed large sums to aid the transmission of troops. The Indians were stimulated, likewise, to renew the war.[8] By land, no considerable movement was attempted on either side, until the American General Wilkinson collected a large force from Platsburg and Burlington, on Lake Champlain. With this body of men, he marched against the Canadian outposts. On the 30th of March 1814, a battle was fought at La Colle Mills, between the Americans under Wilkinson and the British under Hancock. The attack was not successful, and in that engagement the Americans lost

comprehensive and clear narrative of those incidents which led to that result, during the closing months of 1813, and the spring of 1814, may find the statement in M. A. Thiers' "Histoire du Consulat et de l'Empire," Tome xvii., Liv. li., lii., liii.

[3] See Alison's "History of Europe," Vol. x., chap. lxxvi., p. 710.

[4] See James, chap. xiii., pp., 305 to 320.

[5] See the "Annual Register" for the year 1814, Vol. lvi., General History, chap. xv., pp. 173, 174.

[6] See Cooper, Vol. ii., chap. xv., pp. 255 to 272.

[7] See Alison's "History of Europe," Vol. v., chap. lxxvi., p. 712.

[8] See Christie's "Memoirs of the War in Canada," pp. 117 to 122.

138 men, while the British loss was only 56. In Upper Canada, General Drummond and Sir James Yeo combined an attack by land and water on Fort Oswego, situated near the Lake so called. This place was captured by the British on the 4th of May. Afterwards, Sackett's Harbour was closely blockaded. On the 31st, Captain Popham attempted to destroy the American flotilla in Sandy Creek, with 200 seamen and marines. These hoped to capture a considerable quantity of naval and military stores. However, they were repulsed by more numerous forces, having lost 70 men during the attack.[9]

The Americans had concentrated forces in the neighbourhood of Buffalo, and these were destined for another inroad on Upper Canada. Two strong brigades were there posted, under the command of General Ripley.[10] It was known that a large proportion of Canadians had sympathised in the American efforts to wrest their country from the British dominion.[11] The former New York militia general Brown[12] had been created Major-General in the regular army, and during the summer of 1814, he had sought and obtained permission to attempt anew the invasion of Canada. With five thousand men, the Americans crossed the Niagara River below the Falls on the 3rd June. Without firing a single shot, Fort Erie was captured by them, with its garrison of 170 men. Having thus easily effected a landing, General Ripley advanced to the neighbourhood of Chippewa, where General Riall had collected a force of 1,500 regular troops, with a contingent of 1,000 militia and a body of Indians. These had occupied an entrenched camp. Notwithstanding, the British soldiers advanced to commence the action at 5 o'clock in the afternoon June 5th, by sending the militia and Indians forward to encounter the Kentucky Rifles, who soon dispersed them. Then the main body consisting of the King's Royal Scots and the 100th regiments, with their militia, advanced in column, the Americans receiving them in line with great steadiness and with a most destructive discharge. At Chippewa this battle was fought and with great resolution, the British being commanded by General Riall. The American advance was led by Brigadier-General Scott, and when their enemy deployed in a bayonet charge of the 11th Infantry, led by Major John McNeill,[13] the English loss was so serious, that their General felt constrained to draw them

[9] See John Armstrong's "War of 1212," Vol. ii., pp. 63 to 74.

[10] See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. v., p. 258.

[11] A number of the inhabitants of Upper Canada had been arrested for high treason, and were tried on that charge in the month of May, when fifteen were convicted, and out of these eight were executed at Burlington in the district of Niagara, on July 12th. See the "Annual Register" for the year 1814, Vol. lvi., General History, chap. xvi., p. 183.

[12] On the 19th of July 1813, he was appointed Brigadier-General in the regular army, and on the 24th of January 1814, he was placed in command of the army at Niagara.

[13] Of Irish descent. He was born in Hillsborough N.H., in 1784, and for this gallant action he was Brevetted Lieutenant-Colonel. He afterwards attained higher military and civic distinctions, and he died in Washington D.C., February 23rd 1850.

to their entrenched camp. The British lost 550 men in this engagement. The Americans proved victorious, with a loss of 300 men. Afterwards, General Riall retreated to Burlington Heights, at the western end of Lake Ontario, and Queenstown was occupied by the Americans.[14]

Meantime, some transports had arrived at Queenstown, conveying a large contingent of veteran troops, who had served under Lord Wellington during the Peninsular war.[15] Soon Lieutenant-General Drummond arrived with a reinforcement. The British under General Riall had again advanced, but they were once more compelled to retreat. They encountered General Brown at Bridgwater, near the Falls. Then General Drummond drew up his lines in order of battle. A gallant attack was led against them by Scott, about sunset on the 25th of July, although the Americans were inferior in point of numbers. The battle was fought with great obstinacy for three hours, yet without considerable advantage gained by either side. Then there was an intermission, during which the Americans were engaged in bringing up reinforcements to drive the British from those heights on which they were posted. Both armies had met at a place called Lundy Lane, and the contest lasted till midnight. A battery was gallantly captured by Colonel James Miller,[16] which decided the fortune of the day in favour of the Americans. Both Brown[17] and Scott were severely wounded. The Americans lost 743 men, and the British 878.[18] It seemed to be a drawn battle; the victory being claimed both by the British and by the Americans. The latter however were left in possession of the field. The American commander Ripley, having charge of their troops, retired the next day to Fort Erie, where General Gaines[19] assumed the chief command. On the 1st of August, Drummond laid siege to Fort Erie, which was obstinately defended. In a vain attempt to take the place by a night assault on the 15th, the British lost nearly 1,000 men. When General Brown recovered from his wounds the following month, he assumed command. Making a vigorous sortie, he destroyed the British works, and captured four hundred prisoners. General Drummond then abandoned the siege. Afterwards, on the 5th of November blowing up that fort, the Americans retired beyond the river.

While these operations were carried on beyond the Atlantic, attempts had been made for the restoration of peace in Europe. Under the mediation of Russia, the Americans offered to treat, but this proposition was declined by the British Government. Later still it was arranged,

[14] See John Armstrong's "War of 1812," Vol. ii., pp. 88, 89.

[15] See the "Annual Register" for the year 1814, Vol. lvi., General History, chap. xvi., p. 182.

[16] He descended from the original Irish settlers of New Hampshire and he was born in Peterborough, N.H., April 25th 1776. He died in Temple, N.H., July 7th 1851. When asked by General Scott, if he could take the battery, his modest reply was "I will try, Sir."

[17] See an account of him in Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. i., p. 401.

[18] See the "Annual Register" for the year 1814, Vol. lvi., General History, chap. xvi., pp. 182, 183.

[19] See an account of him in Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. ii., pp. 571, 572.

that Gottenburg should be the place for Commissioners of both contending powers to assemble; but afterwards, circumstances produced a change in favour of Ghent. On the 30th July, the British Government appointed as their Commissioners Admiral Lord Gambier,[20] Henry Goulbourn,[21] and William Adams to treat on propositions for peace with the United States. Those plenipotentiaries arrived at Ghent, August 6th. Already in that city the American Commissioners selected to arrange a treaty had met. These were—John Quincy Adams,[22] Albert Gallatin,[23] James A. Bayard,[24] Henry Clay,[25] and Jonathan Russell.[26] The conditions presented by the British Commissioners, as a basis for negotiation, were deemed inadmissible; and accordingly, the American plenipotentiaries did not hesitate to give a decided and an unanimous negative to their demands. The proceedings were laid before the American Congress on the 11th of October by the President, and an equal unanimity prevailed in both houses for their rejection.[27]

Joined by a squadron under Admiral Cochrane, a formidable British fleet comprising between fifty and sixty sail arrived during the month of August in the Chesapeake, and directed by Rear Admiral Cockburn.[28] On the 25th of April, he had proclaimed a blockade of the whole American coast. A land army, destined for co-operation and amounting to 5,000 men under the command of Major-General Robert Ross,[29] sailed in transport vessels from Bermuda on the 3rd of August, and those forces were disembarked on the Patuxent River, at St. Benedict's about fifty miles from Washington, on the 19th of that month.[30] While a part of their fleet ascended the Potomac, his army marched towards the capital.[31] An American militia had assembled at Bladensburg, about six miles from that city. It was commanded by General Winder. A few marines, directed by Commodore Barney, and some artillery had been drawn to

[20] See an account of him in Rolfe's "Naval Biography," Vol. ii., p. 82.

[21] See Leslie Stephen's and Sidney Lee's "Dictionary of National Biography," Vol. xxii., pp. 283 to 285.

[22] See William H. Seward's "Life and Public Services of John Quincy Adams." Auburn, N.Y., 1859, 8vo.

[23] See the "Life and Writings of Albert Gallatin," edited by Henry Adams. Philadelphia, 1879.

[24] See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. i., pp. 196, 197.

[25] See Epes Sargent's "Life of Henry Clay," published in 1844, edited and completed by Horace Greely in 1852. 8vo.

[26] See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. v., p. 353.

[27] See the "Annual Register," for the year 1814, Vol. lvi., General History, chap. xvi., pp. 177, 178, and 191 to 193.

[28] See William O'Byrne's "Naval Biographical Dictionary," pp. 205, 206.

[29] For a detailed and graphic account by an eye-witness of the achievements resulting from this expedition the reader is referred to an anonymous book, but written by the Rev. George R. Gleig, and intituled: "Campaigns of the British Army at Washington and New Orleans in the years 1814, 1815." By the Author of the Subaltern. Fourth edition, corrected and revised. London, 1836, 8vo.

[30] See *ibid.*, chap. vii. pp. 85 to 96.

[31] See Henry Adams' "History of the United States during the Second Administration of James Madison," Vol. ii., chap. v., pp. 127 to 131.

that position. The result of such feeble means for defence might readily be anticipated.[32] There, after an ineffectual attempt to stop the invaders, on the 24th of August the militia fled.[33] The British loss in this action did not exceed 250 in killed and wounded.[34] The President and other officers of the government took refuge in the country,[35] as the invaders then advanced on Washington, which they reached at 8 o'clock in the evening.[36] No adequate force of Americans having assembled for defence, the British took possession of that city. They burned vessels then constructing in the dock yard, and the arsenal, with several of the public buildings, such as the Capitol, including the Senate house and the House of Representatives, the President's House, the Treasury, etc.,[37] not connected with nor used for military purposes. Some of those edifices were costly monuments of taste and of the arts. Others were repositories for the public archives, not only precious to the United States' Confederation, as memorials of its origin and of its early transactions, but interesting to all nations, as contributing to the general stock of historical information. Those atrocities inflicted a Vandalic injury on valuable treasures of science and literature. The unavoidable evils of active warfare are sufficiently deplorable ; but this was an impolitic as it was a barbarous and a disgraceful act, ordered too by the British Government.[38] An indignant spirit was then aroused among the citizens of Washington, and it spread throughout the Republic ; while the whole civilised world exclaimed against such an outrage on the rules of modern warfare. Moreover the British compelled the inhabitants to sacrifice all their shipping and merchandise to save the city of Alexandria ; while Baltimore was next threatened with capture. However, while leading the advance against that city, Major-General Ross[39] having been mortally wounded in a skirmish, and an attack on Fort McHenry having failed,[40] the British army, on the 13th September, retired to their shipping.[41]

It was arranged that fourteen thousand veterans sent to Canada this year should invade New York, under the command of Sir George Prevost. Accordingly, while a British squadron under Captain George Downie[42]

[32] See S. G. Goodrich's "Recollections of a Lifetime," Vol. i., Letter xxx., p. 490.

[33] See "Campaigns of the British Army at Washington and New Orleans in the years 1814-1815," chap. ix., pp. 118 to 127.

[34] See the "Annual Register" for the year 1814, Vol. lvi., General History, chap. xvi., p. 184.

[35] See "The Campaigns of the British Army at Washington and New Orleans in the years 1814-1815," chap. x., pp. 128 to 142.

[36] See *ibid.*, pp. 184, 185.

[37] See C. D. Young's "History of the British Navy," Vol. ii., chap. xxxvi., p. 334.

[38] See S. G. Goodrich's "Recollections of a Lifetime," Vol. i., Letter xxx., p. 490.

[39] He was born about 1766 in Rostrevor Ireland, and he served in Holland, Egypt and Spain under the Duke of Wellington, who selected him for this American expedition.

[40] This result inspired Francis Scott Key of Maryland to write the beautiful and popular national song of the "Star-spangled Banner."

[41] See "The Campaigns of the British Army at Washington and New Orleans in the years 1814-1815," chaps. xiii., xvi., pp. 174 to 203.

[42] He was born in Ross Ireland, and had entered the British navy

sailed up Lake Champlain,[43] to co-operate with him, the land force marched along the Western shore, in the direction of Plattsburgh. Under Brigadier-General Alexander Macomb,[44] the Americans were only able to muster 1,500 troops for its protection. These were judiciously posted, however, behind the Saranac, a rapid stream near the town; but little time was afforded to throw up entrenchments, and these were of a very imperfect character as works for defence.

On Lake Champlain, and at the entrance to Plattsburg Bay, the Americans had stationed a small squadron, very inferior in size and equipment to that of the British, and it was under the command of Commodore Thomas MacDonough.[45] He obtained a great victory, however, on the 11th of September,[46] when the English fleet attacked him. After an obstinate fight, which lasted fully two hours, all the British vessels were captured, except a few small gun-boats that escaped. Early in the engagement, Captain Downie was killed, with forty of his crew on board the Confiance, and as many were wounded.[47] Nearly at the same time a battle was fought at Plattsburg, then defended by three redoubts and by two block houses. Prevost directed a desperate attack, in vainly attempting to force the passage of the Saranac.[48] He was met at every point by Macomb, who made a gallant defence. General Robinson advanced to ford the Saranac, but he did not reach the point of attack until shots from the American works announced the victory of their fleet. General Brisbane was instructed to make a circuit and to assault them in the rear. Both movements were mismanaged. The English were finally repulsed, with a loss of nearly 200 men.[49] The destruction of the English fleet by MacDonough caused Sir

when young, having seen much active service before this period. See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. ii., p. 221.

[43] In August, the Confiance, a frigate of 47 guns, had been launched at Isle Aux Nois, while three brigs and schooners, with some gun-boats, had been prepared by the British. See C. D. Yonge's "History of the British Navy," Vol. ii., chap. xxxvi., p. 330.

[44] His father—also named Alexander—was born in Belfast Ireland, July 27th 1748, and he emigrated to the United States in his youth. He was associated with John Jacob Astor and others at Detroit in the fur trade. He became a great speculator in shipping and landed estates, having purchased from the State of New York, in 1791, no less than 3,670,715 acres on the St Lawrence River, including all the thousand islands that belonged to that State. His distinguished son was born in Detroit Mich., April 3rd 1782, and he entered the army at an early age. He was actively engaged in Canada during this campaign. See George H. Richard's "Memoir of Alexander Macomb." New York, 1833,8vo.

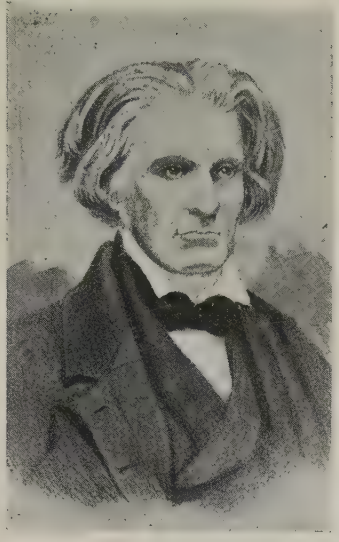
[45] He was born in Newcastle Co. Del., December 23rd 1783.

[46] See "History of the United States, from their First Settlements as Colonies to the Close of the War with Great Britain in 1815." 1826, 8vo.

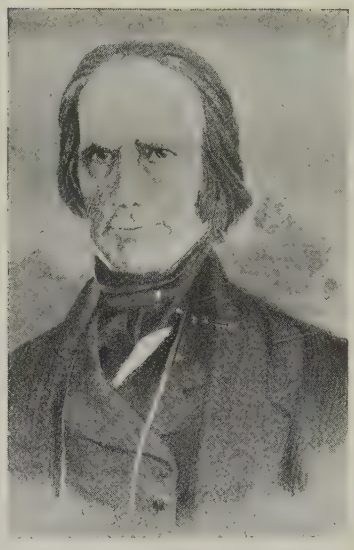
[47] See C. D. Yonge's "History of the British Navy," Vol. ii., chap. xxxvi., p. 332. The incidents of this celebrated naval engagement are given in most interesting detail, and in his graphically characteristic style, by James Fenimore Cooper, in his "History of the Navy of the United States of America," Vol. ii., chap. xxix., pp. 491 to 516.

[48] See the "Annual Register" for the year 1814, Vol. xlvi., General History, chap. xvi., pp. 190. 191.

[49] See Alison's "History of Europe," Vol. x., chap. lxxvii., pp. 732 to 737.



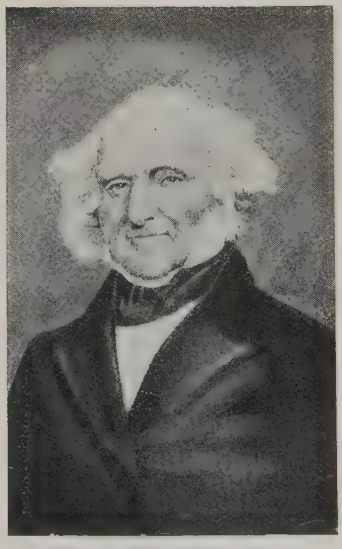
JOHN C. CALHOUN,
Vice - President of the U.S.



HENRY CLAY,
Senator of the U.S.



THOMAS MAC DONOUGH,
Commodore of the U.S. Navy.



MARTIN VAN BUREN,
Eighth President of the U.S.

George Prevost to retreat hastily on Canada, while the flight from Plattsburg was effected in great disorder.[50] Over 400 men were lost through desertion, during the depression, greatly caused by their defeat, and owing to the facilities afforded by their retreat. Great indignation was expressed by the British officers at the conduct of their general, while the loyalists of Canada and Great Britain were loud in their murmurs. The result was, that Sir George Prevost resigned, and demanded a court-martial to investigate his conduct. Soon afterwards he died, and thus escaped a verdict and a sentence, which must have covered his memory with disgrace.[51]

The Americans attempted a sortie from Fort Erie on the 17th of September, when they did great damage to the British works. They were repulsed however, with a loss of 511; that of the British having been 600, of whom one-half were made prisoners. On the 21st, Drummond retired to higher and better quarters near Chippewa. From Sacket's Harbour, the American Major-General George Izard [52] marched with 4,000 troops to the relief of the besieged; but, as the British had then a decisive superiority on lake Ontario, it was deemed best to withdraw the garrison and to blow up Fort Erie. All the troops then recrossed the Niagara, and withdrew into the American territory.[53]

Towards the close of 1814, important manœuvres took place in Florida and Lower Louisiana. In the former colony—which then belonged to Spain—permission had been given to the British, for the purpose of fitting out an expedition against the Americans on Mobile Bay, so that they might make use of Pensacola Port. At this time General Jackson commanded in the south,[54] and he remonstrated with the Spanish authorities against such a breach of the neutrality laws binding on nations. However, no redress could be obtained.[55] Where-

[50] A very graphic account of this battle was given to the writer, by an Irish army pensioner who was then and there engaged. One amusing anecdote he thus related. When the retreat was ordered, direction was also given to destroy the stores, so that they might not fall into the hands of the Americans. Among other objects consigned to destruction was a barrel of whiskey which was stove in, and the liquor began to flow on the ground in a copious stream. A comrade Irish soldier, on seeing this wilful waste, took the regulation helmet from his head, and placing it under the vent, he soon filled it with whiskey. Then, in a serio-comic mood, he cried out, "Here's the health of King George, who ran away at the battle of Plattsburg." Next, taking a very considerable drain, he afterwards passed the remainder round to the retreating men of his company.

[51] See C. D. Yonge's "History of the British Navy," Vol. ii., chap. xxxvi., p. 332.

[52] See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. iii., p. 372.

[53] See Alison's "History of Europe," Vol. x., chap. lxxvi., pp. 738 to 740.

[54] On the 31st of May 1814, he was appointed Major-General in the regular army. See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. iii., p. 376.

[55] One of the most interesting and reliable accounts of the military actions of General Jackson is that of his chief engineer Major Lacarrere Latour, and written in French. It has been translated by H. P. Nugent, and published in Philadelphia, 1861, with the title, "Historical Memoir of the

upon he marched upon Pensacola, and on the 7th of November, he took possession of that town, which was used by the English as a base for operations.[56]

Meantime, the British forces, retiring from Baltimore, having sailed to the West Indies, were destined for another expedition, which it was hoped should result in the capture of New Orleans, and in command of the Mississippi navigation. The American government had intimation of such a design, and fully recognised the great importance of securing that position. Although occupying a low and an unhealthy site on the left bank of the river, and not favoured by natural advantages for defence; yet, that city had already become the *entrepot* for commerce, while its possession by the English must have seriously damaged the resources and the trade of all the Western States and territories. The country around the mouths of the Mississippi was perfectly level, and swamps abounded in most places. The months of November and December were selected, as affording the best seasons for a descent; and accordingly, when all their forces had been collected, the invaders departed from the West Indies. Some of the finest regiments in the British service were on board the ships.[57] To oppose this expedition, the United States government engaged General Jackson, who assembled about 4,000 men, and hastened towards the scene of military operations, with an array composed of some few regulars and a militia force. A small flotilla of gunboats was stationed at Lake Borgue, east of New Orleans, and adjoining the Gulf of Mexico. Other detachments were directed against Louisiana, as news had arrived of the rendezvous of troops and vessels in the West Indies. General Jackson made the best preparations he could to meet that formidable armament. Evacuating Pensacola and the Spanish territory, he then marched to Mobile.[58]

It was now found necessary to cover New Orleans, which the British designed for capture; and Jackson arrived there on the 2nd of December.[59] The population in Louisiana was mostly of foreign origin; but by his exhortations and energy, he roused the citizens to instant action; and soon he had every person capable of wielding a pick or handling a spade engaged in the erection of fortifications below the city, while local volunteers were trained in the art of defending them. He also proclaimed martial law in this great emergency, so that he might expedite and control all requisite arrangements; for he learned that the State Legislature of Louisiana had some intention to negotiate.[60] Before this period, the Most Rev. John Carroll Archbishop of Baltimore had

War in West Florida and Louisiana, in 1814-15." It is accompanied by an atlas containing eight maps.

[56] See the "Encyclopædia Britannica," Vol. xiii., Art. Jackson (Andrew), p. 533. Ninth edition. Edinburgh 1881, 4to.

[57] See "The Campaigns of the British Army at Washington and New Orleans in the years 1814-1815," chap. xviii., pp. 248 to 268.

[58] See John S. Jenkinson's "Life of General Andrew Jackson," chap. vii., pp. 99 to 101.

[59] See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. iii., p. 377

[60] See Hugh Murray's "United

appointed the Very Rev. William De Dourg to be Administrator-Apostolic over the diocese of Louisiana and over the two Floridas. The latter dignitary ordered public prayers to be offered by the Catholics in the New Orleans churches, while the United States troops were being led by the "Hero of the Floridas" to defend their altars and firesides against foreign invasion.[61] This action called forth the highest expression of his approbation from General Jackson.[62]

Meantime, with a great armament, the English had arrived off the Mississippi shoals on the 8th of December,[63] and twelve thousand troops were mustered under the command of General Sir Edward Packenham, an Irish officer, distinguished for his military services and courage. The fleet alone numbered four thousand sailors and marines. On that bank of the Mississippi opposite New Orleans, American batteries had been placed, entrenchments had been formed, and a force of militia was stationed to defend them; since it could not be known whether the British General would move direct on the city with his entire army, or divide his regiments for an assault on both sides of the river. The first operations of the British were directed against Lake Borgue, and Commander M. Lockyer of the Sophie with upwards of forty gun boats and nearly 1,000 men were engaged on this service. The American gunboats, commanded by Lieutenant Thomas Ap. Catesby Jones,[64] after a brave resistance, were captured by a greatly superior British naval force. In this engagement, the latter lost over 90 men in killed and wounded.[65]

The United States troops occupied a defensive position on both sides of the Mississippi, immediately below New Orleans. About eight miles from that city, the British landed on the 22nd of December,[66] In the evening of the following day, General Jackson made a sudden attack on their camp, and at first they were thrown into great disorder, but they soon rallied. After an obstinate struggle, Jackson withdrew his troops to the fortifications he had erected, having inflicted great loss on the enemy. On the left bank of the Mississippi, the Americans, posted behind a rampart of cotton bales, were attacked on the 28th of December, and again on the 1st of January 1815.[67] The British artillery set the cotton bales on fire, and these being found useless were afterwards removed. The defended approach to the city was by a neck of land, hardly a mile wide, and judiciously entrenched with a breastwork in front, while the parapets were lined with American cannon at close distances. Their defenders' right rested on the Mississippi, in which an

States of America," Vol. ii., chap. iv., pp. 205, 206.

[61] See John Gilmary Shea's "Life and Times of the Most Rev. John Carroll," Book ii., chap. v., p. 671.

[62] See Gayarre's "History of Louisiana," p. 154. New York, 1866, 8vo.

[63] See Alison's "History of Europe," Vol. x., chap. lxxvi., p. 740.

[64] See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. iii., p. 470.

[65] See C. D. Yonge's "History of the British Navy," Vol. ii., chap. xxxvi., pp. 340 to 342.

[66] See "The Campaigns of the British Army at Washington and New Orleans, in the years 1814-1815," chap. xix., pp. 269 to 283.

[67] See *ibid.*, chap. xxii., pp. 325, 326.

armed vessel was moored so as to enfilade any advancing assailants, while their left touched a thick wood.[68] General Coffee with his volunteers vigorously assisted in these operations. Having tried a cannonade without much result, General Packenham desisted. Soon afterwards, both armies received reinforcements.[69] From subsequent movements observed in the British camp, a speedy attack in force was anticipated by the Americans.[70] Under the direction of General Packenham, his officers and troops had made arrangements for an advance. Having directed a considerabale detachment of his men to act under Colonel Thornton, on the right bank of the river, these landed there on the 7th. They were instructed to advance against the militia posted at that place. According to a preconcerted signal, a simultaneous attack was designed. The elite of Packenham's regiments, and the great preponderating body of his army, were marshalled in ordered lines for the advance in front.[71]

This combined assault took place early on the 8th of January, 1815,[72] and just at daybreak, on the right bank of the Mississippi. There the English, having landed during the night, drove the United States troops without much resistance from their entrenchments.[73] The Americans, however, could not be dislodged from their lines on the left bank, where General Jackson directed the operations as chief. General Coffee was in command of their left wing. The British forces in close array marched steadily to the works, the 44th regiment being ordered to carry the ladders and fascines requisite for scaling the entrenchments. This order was very imperfectly carried out, and much confusion ensued when the signal for action was given. Approaching in close columns, the British were allowed to come near the breast-works, when General Jackson gave the word for a simultaneous discharge. Whole platoons of the British soldiers fell before the entrenchments. Their regiments had no means ready for escalade, as the ladders and fascines were left scattered on the field. Then the forlorn hope retreated, and confusion spread among their ranks. Again however they rallied, and were directed by their generals and officers to renew the attack. But, similar results were experienced, in a fearful loss of life.[74] For an hour, espe-

[68] See the "Annual Register" for the year 1815, Vol. lxvii., General History, chap. xiii., p. 123.

[69] The Rev. George R. Gleig estimates the British force at the Battle of New Orleans as consisting only of 6,000, while the Americans are stated to have had double that number present. This statement is exactly reversed in an American account, setting down the latter at 6,000 and the British at 12,000 men. See S. G. Goodrich's "Recollections of a Lifetime," Vol. i., Letter xxxi., p. 502.

[70] See "The Campaigns of the British Army at Washington and New Orleans, in the years 1814-15," chap. xxi., pp. 305 to 324.

[71] See Alison's "History of Europe," Vol. x., chap. lxxxvi. pp. 742, 743.

[72] See Armstrong's "War of 1812," Vol. ii., pp. 107 to 170.

[73] See "The Campaigns of the British Army at Washington and New Orleans, in the years 1814-1815," chap. xxii., pp. 332 to 340.

[74] Fuller details are given in a narrative, "The Battle of New Orleans,'

cially at every approach of their enemy, the American fire did not slacken a single instant. This galling storm mowed down the assailants with discharges of artillery and musketry, at each attempt made to advance on the defenders. In proportion to the determination of the British, a dreadful slaughter ensued, until at length consternation spread. After desperate efforts of valour and repeated assaults, their regiments fled in complete disorder. Early in the battle, General Packenham was killed, with a very large proportion of his officers and men. The second in command, General Gibbs, was mortally wounded,[75] and General Keane, who led on the reserve headed by the 93rd or Sutherland Highlanders, shared the same fate.[76] It was vain to continue the attack on an enemy so securely posted, and so skilfully commanded by their brave leader. The British lines were completely broken, and whole companies were annihilated before their final retreat. The killed and wounded among the Americans were inconsiderable for the great triumph achieved.[77] The British lost over two thousand men, in killed, wounded, and prisoners.[78] Their humiliation was all the greater, because they had confidently anticipated a signal victory.[79]

When that battle ceased, the command of the British troops devolved on General Lambert, who deemed it necessary to abandon that enterprize, after the immense losses sustained and the demoralization of his whole army. Accordingly, the victorious forces on the right bank of the Mississippi were recalled and re-united with the main body.[80] When all the troops had been collected, they were embarked on board the war vessels and transports in the river, and they again sailed for the West Indies, preparatory to their homeward return.[81]

The battle of New Orleans most gloriously ended the war for the Americans, and rejoicing was universal throughout the United States.[82] There, but for some time after the foregoing events, it was known to the

published in Baltimore, 1825. See, likewise, Charles J. Ingersoll's "Historical Sketch of the Second War between Great Briain and America." The First Series, 1812-13, was issued at Philadelphia, in 1845-49; the Second Series, for 1814-15, in 1852.

[75] See S. G. Goodrich's "Recollections of a Lifetime," Vol. i., Letter xxx., p. 502.

[76] See Alison's "Histoy of Europe," Vol. x., chap. lxxvi., pp. 743, 744.

[77] See Jenkin's "Life of General Andrew Jackson," chaps. vi., vii., viii., ix., pp. 87 to 157.

[78] See the "Annual Register" for the year 1815. Vol. lxvii., General History, chap. xiii., p. 123.

[79] According to General Andrew Jackson's official report, the Americans lost only 62 killed and wounded. See Justin Winsor's "Narrative and Critical History of America." Vol. vii., chap. vi., p. 404.

[80] See "The Campaigns of the British Army at Washington and New Orleans, in the years 1814-1815," chap. xxiii., pp. 341 to 356.

[81] See *ibid.* chap. xxiv., pp. 357 to 362.

[82] On the 19th of January 1815, General Jackson addressed the Very Rev. William de Bourg, to ask a public service of thanksgiving in the Cathedral at New Orleans. Accordingly it was held there, on the 23rd of that month, the Administrator-Apostolic meeting the victorious General at the door with an eloquent address. See Major Lacarriere Latour's "Historical Memoir of the War in West Florida and Louisiana in

combatants on either side, that terms of accommodation had been arranged by the commissioners of the rival nations. Peace had been agreed upon at Ghent in Belgium, on the 24th of December 1814, by the plenipotentiaries of those powers implicated.[83] On the 27th it was ratified by Great Britain; but, like most treaties, its stipulations left various important matters undecided, and still open to contention. Nothing was said, either on the flag covering the merchandise or on the right of search for seamen, claimed and exercised by Great Britain.[84]

During the interim, however, the port of New York had been blockaded by a British squadron, and there Commodore Stephen Decatur junior[85] of the President frigate, with some other vessels, waited an opportunity to sail out of that harbour for the West Indies. Taking advantage of a storm, which blew the enemy's ships off the shore, and accompanied by the brig Macedonian, Decatur sailed from New York on the 14th of January. The President was chased by the British frigate Endymion Captain Henry Hope, who, on closing, maintained a fierce engagement, lasting for two hours and a half. This action was indecisive, when another British frigate the Pomone came to his aid. Having lost over one hundred men in killed and wounded, while Decatur's ship was pierced in every part of her hull, and with several of his guns disabled, the President was obliged to surrender, after a combat highly creditable to her gallant commander and his crew.[86]

The British sloop of war Favourite, Captain Maude commandant, arrived at New York February 11th, with the treaty of peace signed by the commissioners. Although its terms were not then known; yet was the popular feeling of satisfaction manifested in a variety of ways, and especially by an impromptu public procession through Broadway. All over the country, but especially in the New England States, similar demonstrations took place.[87] Nor was the expression of joy less felt by the people of Great Britain. On the whole, that war had procured no gain to either country, while it resulted in great loss of life and vast expense to both the belligerent powers.[88] On February 17th, that treaty

1814-15," translated by H. P. Nugent, pp. lxviii., lxxi., Philadelphia, 1816, 8vo.

[83] Its provisions are set forth in the "Annual Register," for the year 1815, Vol. lvii., Foreign State Papers, pp. 352 to 358.

[84] See Alison's "History of Europe," Vol. x., chap. lxxvi., p. 748.

[85] His father, a distinguished American naval officer, bore the very same name, and he was distinguished as Senior. See the "Encyclopædia Americana," Vol. ii., p. 590.

[86] See C. D. Yonge's "History of the British Navy," Vol. ii., chap. xxxvi., pp. 318 to 320. The most complete and satisfactory account of the operations by sea during this war is Theodore Roosevelt's "Naval War of 1812." New York, 1882, and subsequent editions.

[87] See S. G. Goodrich's "Recollections of a Lifetime," Vol. i., Letter xxx., pp. 503 to 505.

[88] For an excellent narrative of its progress and conclusion, the reader is referred to J. Russell's "History of the War between the United States and Great Britain, Compiled Chiefly from Public Documents," Hartford, 1815, second edition. This work contains a list of 1,400 captures of British vessels during that war.

was ratified by the President and Senate. The British forces then evacuated the United States.[89]

Before the result of those negotiations became known, a few hostile encounters took place at sea. On the 26th of January, the American privateer Chasseur, after a sharp action of fifteen minutes, captured the British schooner St. Laurence by boarding. Later still, His Majesty's ship Penguin fell in with the United States ship Hornet Captain Biddle, and after a resolute resistance, and a loss of 32 men, she surrendered to the Americans.[90] While Commodore Stewart was having a cruise in 1815,[91] and on the 20th of February, the British ship Cyane, 34 guns, with 185 men, and a sloop of war Levant, 21 guns and 156 men, hove in sight. Both vessels were chased by the Constitution, which mounted 44 guns. The latter ship took up a position, at some distance from the British vessels, then ranged in a line to receive their opponents. The American crew were distributed in two separate divisions; the one on the forecastle directing its fire against the Levant, Captain the Hon. George Douglas commander, while that on the quarterdeck fired on the Cyane, Captain Gordon Falcon commander. About 6 hours and 5 minutes, p.m., the Constitution came to close quarters, and the action was commenced by broadsides, both the British ships supporting their enemy's fire for 15 minutes with great spirit. That naval engagement lasted for forty minutes, when the Cyane struck her colours, fired a gun, and surrendered. Then the Levant wore off before the wind. Having taken possession of her consort, Captain Stewart gave chase to the Levant. She then hove to, and exchanging broadsides, having fired on the Constitution when closed upon, the Levant also surrendered, at 10 p.m. In this engagement, Captain Stewart lost 3 men in killed and 12 wounded, while the British loss was 35 killed and 42 wounded.[92]

[89] See "History of the United States from their first Settlement as Colonies, to the close of the War with Great Britain in 1815." On the American side, one of the most valuable and comprehensive collections is John Brannan's "Official Letters of the Military and Naval Officers of the United States During the War with Great Britain," Washington, 1823.

[90] See James, chap. xx., pp. 480 to 499. Also Appendix, Nos. 111, 112, pp. cc. to ccv.

[91] In 1814 Stewart wedded Delia Tudor, the most beautiful and accomplished lady in Boston Leaving his bride to fight his country's battles, and asking her what wedding gift he should bring her back, she replied, "Bring me back a British frigate." This mandate he more than fulfilled, having brought two captured vessels into the port of Boston. Miss Tudor, whom he married, was the daughter of Judge William Tudor of Boston, who had been among the first to join Generals Washington and Lee; he was made Aide-de Camp to Washington, and Judge Advocate-General of the American Revolutionary army—being a great patriot, and an accomplished lawyer. He held rank in the army as Lieut.-Colonel, equivalent to that of Lieut.-General nowdays. He was remarkable for the extreme generosity of his character, and the penetration of his intellect. Two years before the Revolution broke out, he predicted it and forecast its results.

[92] From 1816 to 1820 Stewart commanded the Mediteranean squadron, and the Pacific squadron from 1821 to 1823. He afterwards served as naval commissioner and as a commander of the home squadron, and

Only one of his captures, the Cyane, with a prize crew, could be brought to New York: for the Constitution was in turn chased by a heavy British squadron, under the command of Sir George Collier.[93] However, the Levant was unable to escape from re-capture, which was effected in Port Praya, and in neutral waters, under the Portuguese guns. By superior manœuvring, the Constitution eluded the British squadron, and proceeded to Brazil, where the prisoners were landed. Afterwards she returned to Boston, with the news of her remarkable success. These achievements of Stewart are ranked among the most brilliant naval victories of that memorable struggle; and when proclaimed, they rendered him most popular throughout the United States.

## CHAPTER XXIII.

War with Algiers—Progress of the United States—James Monroe elected President—General Jackson's Invasion of Florida and its Acquisition by the United States—Contest about the Admission of Missouri into the Union—Visit of La Fayette—John Quincy Adams elected President—Rise of the Anti-Masonic Party—General Andrew Jackson elected President—Indian Disturbances—John C. Calhoun raises the Question of State Rights—Nullification announced in South Carolina—The President's Proclamation and its Effects.

THE expenditure during the war had been very considerable, and as it was not yet known how long the outlay might continue, it was found necessary to provide for the further prosecution of hostilities. On the 9th of January 1815, Congress imposed a direct tax on the United States of 6,000,000 dols. President Madison vetoed the United States Bank Bill on the 20th of that month.

During the continuance of the war which was now closed, a rupture ensued between the Republican Government, determined on the redress of certain injuries inflicted, and the Dey of Algiers. The crew of an

commandant at Philadelphia. He retired from active service, but resumed in 1859 command of the Philadelphia naval station as senior flag officer. In July 1862, he was created rear-admiral by special act of Congress, he being at that time the only man upon whom that high honour had been conferred. Over seventy years of his life had been spent in the service of his country. It was said of him, that he never was defeated, and his naval victories are among the greatest of which America boasts. His services were frequently recognised by Congress, and he was given a sword of honour by the State of Pennsylvania. He was very popular in his day—so much so that he was seriously proposed for the Presidency of the United States. But he most positively forbid the use of his name in that connection. Having attained the advanced age of ninety-one, he died at Bordentown, New Jersey, in November 1869. See the "Encyclopædia Americana," Vol. iv., pp. 596, 597.

[93] See James, chap. xix., pp. 457 to 479. Also Appendix, Nos. 108, 109, 110, pp. cxcv. to cc.

American vessel had been seized and condemned to slavery. No sooner had the treaty of Ghent been concluded, than the Government resolved that effective measures should be taken to settle the difficulty. Accordingly, with a fleet of nine vessels, Commodore Decatur was despatched to the Mediterranean in May. After passing the Straits of Gibraltar, his ship the Guerriere captured a large Algerine man-of-war, and the very best in the Dey's navy. A brig was also taken. Soon the Commodore appeared before Algiers, and forced the Dey to come on board his vessel. A demand was made that he should renounce all future claim of tribute from America; that he should abandon the practice of reducing prisoners of war to slavery, and surrender all Christian prisoners then in his possession;[1] as also that he should pay a sum of money for an indemnity. After some negotiation, and in a manner favourable to the Americans, that dispute with the Algerines was adjusted. Certain indemnities from Tunis and Tripoli were likewise exacted.[2]

Emigration now began to set in steadily from distant countries, treaties were negotiated with Indian tribes, and internal improvements followed. On the 11th August 1807, Robert Fulton,[3] distinguished for his engineering and mechanical skill, inaugurated a great revolution in transit by water, and took his improved steamboat the Clermont, from New York to Albany.[4] It afterwards plied as a packet for passengers between both cities.[5] Ocean navigation, begun by Stephens in 1808, was made an assured success by the voyage of the Savannah in 1819, and taken from Savannah Ga., to Russia, *via* England. At first, however, sails were made to do a great part of the work. That same year the Sirius arrived in Cork harbour from America, July 13th. The Sirius was a ship of 700 tons burden, and 250 horse power. This ship sailed from Cork, while the Great Western sailed from Bristol England, on the same day, in 1838. They both arrived in New York at nearly the same hour. Important treaties were entered upon with the Indians of the north-western territories, and those were signed in September. On the 5th of March 1816, Congress imposed a third direct tax upon the States for 3,000,000 dols. In April, the United States Bank was chartered by Congress for twenty years, with a capital of 35,000,000 dols. On the 11th of December 1816, Indiana was admitted into the Union as a new State.[6]

At the elections of 1816, the democratic or anti-Federalist party

[1] See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography." Vol. ii., p. 121.

[2] See the "Annual Register," for the year 1815, Vol. lvii., General History, chap. xiii., p. 125. Also Mackenzie's "Life of Decatur," Appendix viii.

[3] His father, a native of Kilkenny Ireland, emigrated to Pennsylvania early in the eighteenth century. See James Renwick's "Life of Fulton," in Spark's "Library of American Biography," First Series, Vol. x.

[4] See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. ii., p. 563.

[5] See J. F. Reigart's "Life of Fulton," Philadelphia, 1856, 8vo.

[6] See L. De Colange's "National Gazetteer of the United States," p. 492.

again succeeded in electing James Monroe of Virginia, then Secretary of State, as President, and D. D. Tomkins as Vice-President.[7] Mr. Monroe had formerly served with distinction in the revolutionary war. He was also a man of engaging manners and of an upright character. The Seminole and Creek Indians in Georgia, Alabama and Spanish Florida, made inroads on the white settlers in 1817. A force was mustered, under General Jackson, who marched against them. In various encounters he routed the savages. He also destroyed many of their villages.[8]

The term of Mr. Madison's presidency came to a close on the 4th of March, in the year 1817.[9] The candidate who succeeded him, James Monroe, was duly inaugurated as President, and destined to serve in turn with great ability.[10] John Quincy Adams was appointed Secretary of State. In his remarkable presidential speech, on the occasion of his inauguration, Mr. Monroe was able to congratulate the country on its prosperous condition, and to suggest wise provisions for its defence, as also for the promotion of its industries.[11]

It being believed that the Spaniards had incited the Indians to disturbances, in April 1818 General Jackson invaded Florida. He captured St. Mark's, and there hanged two British subjects, who were tried by courtmartial and convicted, for stirring up the Indians to hostilities, and for supplying them with arms. Afterwards, Jackson seized Pensacola. He then sent the Spanish troops and civil authorities to Havana. Against these strong measures the Spanish Government vigorously protested, as a gross violation of the neutrality laws. However, the United States Government pleaded, that they were necessary under the circumstances. After some negotiation, a compromise was effected, and one very advantageous to the United States. In February 1819, at Washington, a treaty for the cession of the Floridas by Spain, on payment of 5,000,000 dols.[12] was brought to a successful issue. In 1821, it was rather reluctantly ratified by the Spanish King. The treaty was concluded nevertheless at Washington, and thus the control of the entire Atlantic and gulf sea-board, from the St. Croix to the Sabine, was secured to the United States.[13]

[7] James Monroe received 183 votes of the electoral college against 34 cast for Rufus King, the candidate of the Federalists; while John Quincy Adams, John C. Calhoun, William H. Crawford, and William West were members of the Cabinet during his entire administration. See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. iv., p. 360.

[8] See Justin Winsor's "Narrative and Critical History of America," Vol. vii., p. 406.

[9] He then retired to his estate at Montpellier, Va., where he devoted himself to study and literature, and died in 1836, at the age of eighty-five. See Pierre Lerousse's "Grand Dictionnaire Universel du XIX. Siecle," Tome x., pp. 896, 897. Paris, 4to.

[10] See William Grimshaw's "History of the United States," chap. xiii., Philadelphia, 1822, 8vo.

[11] See the "Annual Register for the year 1817, Vol. lix., General History, chap. xiv., pp. 144 to 151.

[12] See the "Annual Register" for the year 1819, Vol. lxi., pp. 170, 176, 234.

[13] See Daniel C. Gilman's "Life of James Monroe," in the American Statesman series, Boston, 1880.

Taking off the western half of its territory, on the 10th of December 1817 Mississippi was admitted into the Union as a new State; the eastern half of the former denomination having been erected into a new Territory called Alabama. On the 3rd December 1818, Illinois was brought as a new State into the Union. On the 2nd of March 1819, Alabama was admitted into the Union as a new State.[14] Pensions were voted this year for soldiers who had served during the Revolutionary War. Internal revenue duties were likewise abolished. Moreover, General Jackson was appointed Governor of Florida, where his firmness and promptitude in restoring order, and in enforcing his decrees, obtained general commendation. Ill-health however, compelled him to resign that office in 1821.[15] Meantime, the United States began to press France for payment of claims urged by their merchants, whose vessels and cargoes had been unlawfully seized by the Emperor Napoleon Buonaparte. A counter claim was set up by France, for compensation to owners of vessels, on account of alleged infractions regarding the eighth Article of the Louisiana Purchase Treaty in 1803.[16]

On the 15th of March 1820, the State of Maine was formed, and admitted into the Union, although the boundary line from the British possessions had not then been settled.[17] The population of the United States in 1820 was also declared to be 9,638,190. The National Debt then amounted to 90,987,427 dols. The politico-economistic policy, best adapted to increase the revenue and develop the resources of the United States, had been earnestly discussed by representative men and public journalists about this time, and extremely divergent were their views in reference to customs' duties on foreign manufactures. While the people of the Northern and Middle States were favourable to a high protective tariff, for the promotion of native manufacturing industries and producers;[18] those of the Southern States held different

[14] See "Dr. L. De Colange's National Gazetteer," &c., p. 655.

[15] See John S. Jenkins' "Life of General Andrew Jackson," chap. x., pp. 169 to 172.

[16] See Justin Winsor's "Narrative and Critical History of America," Vol. vii., pp. 496, 497.

[17] See Dr. L. De Colange's "National Gazetteer," &c., p. 603.

[18] A very influential upholder of this system was Matthew Carey, son of William Paulet Carey, a United Irishman. Both were born in Ireland, and had been engaged as writers and publicists, before they had emigrated to the United States and towards the close of the last century. Matthew Carey started a largely circulating newspaper, the *Pennsylvania Herald*, which he edited in Philadelphia, where he married in 1791, and settled down to business in the book trade. There too he founded the Hibernian Society. In 1819, he wrote and published the "Vindiciæ Hibernicæ," which was an examination of charges against the Irish cruelties in the Rebellion of 1641, and which he proved to have been mainly fabrications of bigots and enemies. Besides other works, in 1822 he published "Essays on Political Economy." Soon afterwards, he issued a series of tracts, in defence of his favourite protectionist theories, He was an active advocate for the promotion of public works, as also one of the originators of the Pennsylvania canal system, resulting in a most useful scheme for internal State improvements. He died in Philadelphia, September 16th 1839. See "Irish Celts," by a Member of the

opinions, as they were chiefly cultivators of the land and of its products, and they naturally desired to obtain articles for general purposes at the lowest prices, or from any country, without undue taxation to foster home enterprises.

For some time, a contest had been carried on in Congress between the Southern Representatives in favour of admitting Missouri into the Union as a new State, with a constitution recognising slavery, and the Northern Representatives, who opposed such an institution. After much acrimonious discussion, a compromise was at length entered upon, and giving assent to admission; but with a proviso, that for the future, slavery should not exist in the territories or states, north of 30 deg. 30 min. North latitude. On such understanding, the new State was sanctioned March 6th, and finally admitted into the Union August 10th, in 1821.[19] This result formed an epoch in a subsequent fierce struggle,[20] between the free and slave labour opponents of North America.[21]

In the presidential Message of 2nd December 1823 was enunciated the policy—vaguely and popularly held after the establishment of Independence in the United States—that the American Continents, North and South, were thenceforth not to be considered objects for colonisation by any European power. Moreover it was declared, that the United States should consider every attempt to extend the European system to any portion of the Western Hemisphere as dangerous to American peace and security. Besides, the President announced, that if any European power should interfere with the governments in North or South America that had established their independence of European control, such interference must be regarded as the manifestation of an unfriendly disposition towards the United States. This celebrated declaration, known as the "Monroe Doctrine," expressed the dominant sentiment of men belonging to all parties, while it has since received the approval of successive administrations, as also of the foremost publicists and statesmen.[22]

In 1824 the aged French General Lafayette re-visited the great Republic, for which in youth his sword had been so generously drawn. He was received with every demonstration of popular veneration and enthusiasm.[23] On March 4th, in the year 1825, John Quincy Adams[24] was inaugurated President of the United States, and John C. Calhoun[25]

Michigan Bar, *sub voce*. Carey (Matthew.)

[19] See Dr. L. De Colange's "National Gazetteer," &c., p. 655.

[20] See Monette's "History of the Discovery and Settlement of the Valley of the Mississippi." Vol. ii., Book v., chap. xvii., pp. 549, 550.

[21] See Professor J. E. Cairnes' "Slave Power," chap. vii., p. 181. London, 1862, 8vo.

[22] See George F. Tucker's "Concise History of the Monroe Doctrine," Boston, 1885, 8vo.

[23] See E. de la Bedolliere's "Vie politique du Marquis de Lafayette," Paris, 1833, 8vo.

[24] For particulars of his career, the reader may consult the "Diary of John Quincy Adams," edited by Charles F. Adams, in 12 vols. Philadelphia, 1874 to 1877, 8vo.

[25] His grandfather James Calhoun emigrated from Donegal Ireland, to

was chosen as Vice-President. This year, the corner stone of the Bunker Hill Monument was laid on the 17th of June, the anniversary of that celebrated opening battle of the revolution. On the 7th of September, General Lafayette embarked for France in the United States frigate Brandywine. On the 4th of July 1826, and on the fiftieth anniversary of the Declaration of Independence, it was a remarkable coincidence that both John Adams of Massachusetts, and Thomas Jefferson of Virginia—its only two signers who had been chosen as Presidents—died on that same day. On the 13th of September, one William Morgan, who had published a book[26] divulging the secrets of Freemasonry, was abducted from Canandaigua New York, and he was never afterwards heard of; while a general opinion prevailed, that the Freemasons had drowned him in Lake Ontario. For a number of years afterwards, this suspicion created a strong feeling of resentment throughout the United States, and an Anti-Masonic Party was formed to counteract the progress of Masonry. The Winnebago Indians had become troublesome about this time, and they had massacred some of the whites. In the year 1827, heavy forces were sent against them. They were thus overawed, and they surrendered a number of murderers belonging to their tribe. A protectionist policy for manufacturing industry, and at a time when the principles of free commercial intercourse were little known, had prevailed in the Northern States, and had resulted in a tariff very objectionable to the Southern people in 1828.

After Mr. Adams retired, General Andrew Jackson of Tennessee,[27]

Pennsylvania in 1733, while his father Patrick Calhoun was but six years old at the time of this emigration. In 1770, he married Martha Caldwell, a native of Virginia, and the daughter of an Irish Presbyterian emigrant. John C. Calhoun was born in Abbeyville District S.C., March 18th 1782, and he died in Washington D.C., March 31st 1850. For a complete account of his political opinions and career, the reader is referred to his Works, edited by Richard R. Cralle, in six volumes, New York, 1853, 1854, 8vo.

[26] It was intituled: "Illustrations of Freemasonry, by one of the Fraternity who has devoted Thirty Years to the subject," 1826. A second edition appeared in 1827, with an account of the Kidnapping of the Author.

[27] A full account of this very remarkable General and Statesman, whose father,—also called Andrew—, emigrated from Carrickfergus Ireland, in 1765, and whose mother Elizabeth Hutchinson belonged to a family of linen drapers from the same quarter, may be found in his Life, written by James Parton, in three volumes, New York, 1861, 8vo, and in another biography, by William G. Summer, Boston, 1882. He was born in Wrexham Settlement, on the border between North and South Carolina, March 15th 1767, and he died at the Hermitage, near Nashville Tenn., June 8th 1845. It does not seem to be clearly known whether the log cabin in which he was born stood within North or South Carolina, although he speaks of himself as being a native of the latter State. He only received a very defective English education, in one of the common schools of the country; but this deficiency was in a great measure supplied by a natural shrewdness and sagacity, with habits of close observation, and an inflexible independence of character, which obtained for him the popular *soubriquet* of "Old Hickory."

who had been elected President, was inaugurated on the 4th of March 1829. He selected the Cabinet from men not wholly devoted to his policy, and after some differences all of these resigned. In 1830, the fifth census of the United States was taken, when the population amounted to 12,866,020. The Cabinet being dissolved, a new Cabinet was formed on the 19th of April 1831, and this proved to be more in harmony with the President and his policy.[28]

For a long time, the American Government had claimed from France an indemnity for their vessels seized and confiscated, as a consequence of the Berlin and Milan decrees under the Empire. This demand had been eluded through various pretexts, under the Restoration; however, after the Revolution of 1830 a treaty was signed at Paris by the Government of King Louis-Philippe, on the 4th of July, 1831, acknowledging indebtedness to the amount of 25,000,000 francs for damages done to American maritime commerce, and from this was to be deducted a remittance of 1,500,000 francs on behalf of French citizens having counter claims. However, this treaty could not be executed without being submitted to the French Chambers, having sole power to vote the necessary funds.[29] On the 1st of January 1832, the National Debt of the United States had been reduced to 24,332,234 dollars. A Bill was brought before Congress, to renew the charter for the United States Bank, in the year 1832, and it passed in the Senate and House of Representatives. However, for a long time Jackson had formed his opinion, that the Bank held too great a monopoly, while its directors were prone to indulge in over rash emissions of paper money and in dangerous speculations.[30] Accordingly, that Bill was vetoed by the President on the 10th of July.[31]

During this administration some Indian troubles occurred, especially on the borders of the Mississippi. The Indian Chief, Black Hawk,[32] a noted leader of the Sac and Fox tribes, had disputed the rights of white settlers to certain lands. In 1831 and 1832, General Gaines and General Scott moved a force of United States' troops and militia against them. The Indians were driven back to Wisconsin River. There they sustained a defeat, inflicted by General Dodge, on the 21st of July 1832. These disturbances were speedily suppressed, however, by the United States' troops. On the 1st and 2nd of August following the Indians were completely defeated at the River Bad Axe, by General Atkinson.[33]

[28] See John S. Jenkins' "Life of General Jackson," chap. xi., p. 178

[29] See Justin Winsor's "Narrative and Critical History of America," Vol. vii., chap. vii., p. 496.

[30] See M. Le Dr. Hoefer's "Nouvelle Biographie Generale," Tome xxvi., col. 157, 158, Art. JACKSON (*Andre*).

[31] See John S. Jenkins' "Life of General Andrew Jackson," chap. xi., pp. 178, 179.

[32] A "Life of Black Hawk," edited by J. B. Patterson, and taken from his own account, was published in 1834.

[33] See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. i., pp. 114, 115.

Their Chief Black Hawk was captured on the 27th of that month, and deposed. For a time he was confined in Fortress Monroe.

A matter still more affecting internal tranquillity, between the Northern and Southern States,[34] engaged public attention. Congress had passed laws for the imposing of duties and imposts on foreign imported commodities. The southern people, almost exclusively devoted to agriculture, conceived ideas opposed to the favourite theories of manufacturers and mechanics in the Northern States. These advocated a protective tariff to foster domestic manufactures, and desired to create a public revenue through customs levied from the products chiefly of English manufacturing industry. Such policy had procured various restrictive laws directed against foreign commerce, since the conclusion of the late war with England; and as the taxation for purposes of revenue was found to militate against freer demands, especially for cotton, the principles of Free Trade became most popular in the South. Moreover Jackson was opposed to the measure of a protective tariff, and during his first term of office, several public men had declared against it. Resistance was threatened and nullification of its provisions was frequently proclaimed, especially as the sentiment began to spread. These repeated complaints and reclamations increasing, Congress was obliged to make some modification in the customs then levied, and accordingly the tariff underwent revision; but the alteration was deemed to be so insignificant, that the Southern representatives redoubled their remonstrances, and even their menaces, so that very serious consequences were apprehended. The people in South Carolina, at a public convention in November 1832, declared the acts of Congress to be null and void. Other States in the South had manifested a sympathy with such doctrine and policy, while they prepared to co-operate. Between the Free and Slave States jealousies and misunderstandings thus began to prevail.[35]

These sectional differences were greatly promoted by the re-elected Vice-President John C. Calhoun, an able man and a Southern politician,

[34] Mons. Alex's De Tocqueville observes, that almost all these differences, which may be remarked between the characters of the Americans in the Southern and in the Northern States have originated in slavery. He adds, likewise, that slavery dishonours labour; it introduces idleness into society, and with idleness, ignorance and pride, luxury and distress. It enervates the powers of the mind and benumbs the activity of man. The influence of slavery, united to the English character, explains the manners and social condition of the Southen States. See his celebrated work, "De la Democratie en Amerique." Tome ii., chap. x., Paris edition of 1836, 12mo.

[35] In 1831, at a public dinner to commemorate the birth-day of Thomas Jefferson, after sundry regular toasts seemed to indicate a drift of sentiment in favour of nullification, Jackson suddenly arose and gave a toast: "Our Federal Union; It must be preserved." Whereupon Calhoun, who was present, promptly replied in a toast: "Liberty, dearer than the Union," and this he accompanied with a speech. However, the stern and menacing attitude of Jackson during its delivery was noticed by the nullifiers, who felt greatly chagrined and overawed.

but a disappointed candidate for the Presidency. Certain declarations of state rights, in reality anarchial and subversive of Congressional authority, were broached. The Federal Government was warned, that any attempt on its part to enforce the revenue laws should immediately provoke South Carolina to secede from the Union; and accordingly, an ordnance of nullification was announced to take effect on the 1st of February 1833, while preparations for war were at once begun.[36] However, these pretensions were not acknowledged by the great body of the nation.[37] President Jackson took a decided course, when the State of South Carolina assumed a defiant attitude. He issued a Proclamation on the 11th December 1832, in which it was asserted, that the power to annul a law of the United States assumed by one State was incompatible with the existence of the Union, that it was expressly contradicted by the Constitution, and unauthorized by its spirit, while inconsistent with every principle on which it was founded, and destructive of the great object for which it had been formed. Such declaration, and the bold, politic, energetic measures resorted to, overawed the leaders and people of South Carolina.[38] However, Governor Hayne of that State issued a counter-proclamation, and it left in Southern minds feelings of resentment and dissatisfaction, which were manifested on many future occasions. A few days afterwards, Calhoun resigned the Vice-Presidency, and he was elected to the Senate, where he took a persistent stand in defending the ordinance of nullification.

On the 16th of January 1833, President Jackson sent a Message to Congress, deprecating the action of South Carolina, in declaring a determination to nullify certain laws of the United States. To show that he was resolved to enforce the Congressional law at all hazards, he sent a naval force under Lieutenant Farragut to Charleston Harbour, and ordered General Scott to have troops ready for entering South Carolina if necessary. Overawed by this course, when the 15th of February came, the nullifiers deferred action. A compromise tariff had been recommended by Henry Clay[39] of Kentucky, providing for the gradual reduction of duties until 1842, after which all duties were to be kept at 20 per cent. This measure was approved during that month, and it also enabled the nullifiers to claim an advantage, as also an excuse to retreat from their discredited and unpatriotic position.

[36] On the 14th of November 1832, Charles Carroll of Carrollton, Maryland, and the last survivor of the Declaration of Independence, died aged nine-five.

[37] See M. le Dr. Hoefer's "Nouvelle Biographie Generale." Tome xxvi., Art. JACKSON (*Andre*), col. 155.

[38] Nevertheless, a Union convention assembled in that State at Columbia, and it announced an intention of supporting the President. Moreover, the Southern people generally were averse to the attitude of South Carolina, as being both precipitate and unconstitutional.

[39] For a full account of this eminent man, the reader is referred to Rev. Calvin Cotton's "Life and Times of Henry Clay," in six vols., containing his Speeches and Correspondence, 1846 to 1857. A revised edition appeared in 1864. Also Carl Schurz's "Life of Henry Clay," in two volumes, Edinburgh, 1887, 8vo.

## CHAPTER XXIV.

**Re-election of General Jackson to the Presidency—He refuses a Charter to the United States Bank—Revolt of Texas from Mexico—Election of Martin Van Buren as President—General Harrison succeeds as President—On his Decease, John Tyler the Vice-President assumes that Office—Disputes with Great Britain in Reference to the Boundaries of Maine and Oregon—James Knox Polk inaugurated President—War with Mexico—Victories of General Zachary Taylor—Operations of General Scott—Success of General Kearney in New Mexico and California—Battles of Cherubusco, Molinos del Rey, Chepultapec, and Sierra Gordo—Triumphant entry of General Scott into the City of Mexico—The Mormon and Western Migrations.**

THE important and successful stroke of policy adopted by the President was generally approved by the people, and it assured General Jackson a second term of office in 1833.[1] The President had now commenced to manifest a dominant will; while in opposition to the disapproval of his cabinet, and especially adverse to the Secretary of the Treasury, he resolved on a financial measure, the ultimate consequences of which could not then be foreseen. Not satisfied with imposing his *veto* on renewing the United States Bank charter, the President on his own authority caused the government funds to be withdrawn from its chief office at Philadelphia and from its various branches, to be deposited in several local and independent banks. This course of action caused the United States Bank to restrict its credits and discounts, while the immediate results were to cause a general disturbance of trade transactions, especially in the great commercial cities and centres of the Union.[2] Although John Tyler of Virginia was opposed to the Bank, yet he did not favour Jackson's assumption of powers, deemed to be incompatible with constitutional provisions. In connection with this dispute arose the new party-name of Whigs, as applied to the opponents of Jackson, whose adherents were then regarded as extreme Democrats.

The President's refusal to grant a new Charter to the United States Bank, and the temporary stagnation of trade that ensued, greatly impaired his popularity with the commercial classes. Especially in South Carolina, but nevertheless for distinct reasons, he was held in extreme aversion. On the 28th of March 1834, the United States Senate passed a resolution in which it declared, that the Executive had assumed authority

[1] The returns from the electoral colleges exhibited the following result: "Andrew Jackson received two hundred and nineteen votes, and Henry Clay forty-nine; John Floyd received the eleven electoral votes of South Carolina; and seven were given for William Wirt in Vermont."—John S. Jenkin's "Life of General Andrew Jackson, Seventh President of the United States, with an Appendix, containing the most important of his State Papers," chap. xi., p. 180.

[2] See Sir Archibald Alison's "History of Europe," continuation. Vol. vi., chap. xxxvii., pp. 263, 264.

and power, not conferred by the Constitution and Laws, but in derogation of both. However, being inflexible in his resolves, as also conscious of his probity and popular influence, such declaration was disregarded. On the 15th of April, President Jackson sent a Message to the Senate protesting against those resolutions condemning his official acts.[3] Notwithstanding that derangement of the currency, and the temporary interruption of trade, a season of prosperity soon afterwards set in, and the public debt was entirely liquidated during the year 1835.[4]

Before this time, the Southern Indians or Seminoles were alleged to have been guilty of inroads against the United States settlers on the borders of Florida. In May 1832, a treaty had been entered into with their chiefs, and in which, upon certain conditions, these Indians were to remove west of the Mississippi. However, after some delay spent in fruitless negotiations, with occasional and mutual outrages by both whites and Indians, some of the latter under the half-breed Osceola or Powell took up arms. Only about 450 men were in the garrison at Fort King and Fort Brooke, commanded by General Clinch.[5] The latter desired to attack the enemy lurking in almost inaccessible swamps, and he sent to Fort Brooke for as many men as could be spared to co-operate in the movement. On the 28th of December 1835, Major Dade and his command, consisting of 110 men, set out to join him; but these were surrounded, and after a long struggle, they were massacred by the Seminoles.[6] Only three of that number escaped.[7]

Meanwhile, the French Chambers had repudiated the action of their ministry,[8] and in 1834, the treaty of indemnification was returned to the United States protested. This action evoked a menacing Message from the President, towards the close of that year; and he declared, that if the Chambers did not revoke their decision in the following session, war between both countries must ensue. He was asked authorization from Congress, to seize upon the property of French citizens in the United States that amount of 25,000,000 of francs specified in the treaty of 1831, and in the meantime to provide prudently for future eventualties. However, to avoid a war—likely to prove disastrous for both countries—both the Senate and the House of Representatives recommended more patient diplomacy to settle those differences. Offended by the action of the President, the French government had recalled their ambassador at Washington, and had also offered his passports to the American Ambassador in Paris. However, the latter remained to effect his object through a pacific negotiation. On this subject the President felt extreme irritation, and had repeatedly signified his intention of

[3] See John S. Jenkin's "Life of General Andrew Jackson," chap. xi., p. 184, and Appendix, Note c., pp. 245 to 263.

[4] See *ibid.* p. 185.

[5] See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. i., p. 658.

[6] See *ibid.* Vol. ii., p. 53.

[7] See Justin Winsor's "Narrative and Critical History of America," Vol. vii., chap. vi., pp. 406, 407.

[8] See Henri Martin's "Histoire de France depuis 1789, jusqu'a nos Jours," Tome v., chap. iii., p. 79.

proceeding to extremities, if the United States claims were much longer resisted.[9] On the 15th of January 1836, President Jackson transmitted his French Indemnification Message to Congress. His demand was presented anew to the French Cabinet. For nearly two years of suspended diplomatic relations, an open rupture had been anticipated.[10] Prudential considerations at length prevailed, and the 25,000,000 of francs was voted by the French Chambers, on condition that Jackson's offensive expressions towards France were withdrawn. Accordingly, explanations and a qualified retractation were afforded. But for the spirit of conciliation evinced by both the American Houses, and especially by the Senate, this dispute might have brought about the most serious complications.[11]

One of those ardent spirits, who usually have to bear with persecution and contumely for the prosecution of philanthropic movements in advance of their time, William Lloyd Garrison had begun the advocacy of slavery abolition in Massachusetts and throughout the Northern States.[12] Through the press and from the platform agitation spread. Nor did his efforts cease, until he lived to see them crowned with complete success.[13]

In March 1835, Texas revolted from Mexico, and declared its independence,[14] chiefly through the agency of Southern American settlers and sympathisers, who wished to draw her into the Union, in order to consolidate more the slave-power. General Samuel Houston, of Northern Irish descent, was chosen as Commander of the Texan bands, and soon these were brought into collision with the army of General Antonio Lopez de Santa Anna, the Mexican President.[15] On the 21st of April, a battle

[9] When Dr. Richard Robert Madden visited him January 1835, at the White House in Washington, this topic of conversation was introduced. "When the President warmed on this subject he said:—'I thought myself done with the sword, and never likely to unsheath it more. But, if things come to the worst, and we are forced into war, I am quite ready to take the field again as I was when younger, to walk over—the invaders of our soil—at New Orleans." The veteran lost his stoop for a few seconds, his eyes brightened, and his grey hairs, it seemed to me, bristled up momentarily, as he stumbled forward a few paces from the fireplace repeating the words—"Just as ready as ever to walk over any enemy of my country." This explosion of the expiring energies of an old soldier was perfectly natural in its enthusiasm, there was no affectation in it."—"Memoirs (chiefly autobiographical) from 1798 to 1886," edited by his son, Thomas More Madden, M.D., F.R.C.S.E., chap. xvi., p. 96. London, 1891, 8vo

[10] See Justin Winsor's "Narrative and Critical History of America," Vol. vii., chap. vii., pp. 494 to 497.

[11] See Michaud's "Biographie Universelle, Ancienne et Moderne," Tome xx., Art. *Jackson* (Andre). pp. 445, 446.

[12] See "William Lloyd Garrison and his Times; or Sketches of the Anti-Slavery Movement in America, and of the Man who was its Founder and Moral Leader," by Oliver Johnson, with an Introduction, by J G. Whittier, as also a Portrait. London, 8vo.

[13] William Lloyd Garrison was born in Newberryport Mass., December 10th 1805, and he died in New York City, May 24th 1879.

[14] See Justin Winsor's "Narrative and Critical History of America," Vol. vii., chap. vii., p. 505.

[15] General Thomas J. Rusk was Secretary of War to the Republic of Texas during the Revolution of 1835-6, and he was subsequently the first

was fought at San Jacinto, in Texas. The Mexicans were defeated, and Santa Anna was made prisoner. His captors wrung from him an acknowledgment of Texan independence. This opened the way for regular diplomatic relations with the United States.[16] Soon a party favourable to annexation was there formed, especially in the South, and John C. Calhoun became the chief leader of the aggressive annexationists.[17] On the 15th of June 1836, Arkansas was admitted as a new State into the Union.[18]

When the year 1836 came, the friends of the existing administration were enabled to elect Martin Van Buren[19] of New York, eighth President of the United States, especially as he had been opposed by no less than three different candidates.[20] He was put forward as a northern man with southern principles, and this announcement rendered him acceptable to the Slave States. On the 26th of January 1837, Michigan was admitted as a new State into the Union. General Jackson retiring into private life[21] on the 4th of March, Martin Van Buren was inaugurated as President. The deposits of United States revenue had been placed in the custody of selected banks since 1833; and these had been used too freely, with a view to foster trade, but in reality to stimulate still more private speculation. The State Banks became insolvent also in many instances about this time, and commercial failures were very severely felt.[22] The fiscal embarrassments of the government now urged the President to develop his idea of an independent Treasury for the safe-keeping and disbursement of the public moneys. He succeeded in procuring the assent of Congress to this radical measure.

Chief Justice of the Republic. He was the Commanding General of the Republic at one time, and participated in a number of battles during the years of the Republic. Rusk was President of the Constitutional Convention of Texas in 1845, and he was three times elected to the United States Senate. He was the son of Irish parents, who lived near Greenville, South Carolina.

[16] See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. v., pp. 393, 394.

[17] See Horace Greeley's "American Conflict," chap. xii.

[18] See L. de Colange's "National Gazetteer of the United States," &c., p. 81.

[19] His Life has been written by William H. Holland, and published at Hartford, 1835, and also in German by Francis J. Grund and by William Emos, published at Washington, the same year; another biography was written by David Crockett, and published at Philadelphia in 1836, and one by William L. McKenzie published at Boston in 1840. As he died on the 24th of July 1862, the foregoing are imperfect narratives; but soon after his death, a Life of him was written by Allen Butler, and published in New York, 1862. The most complete biography is that of Edward M. Shepard, published in Boston, 1888.

[20] These were William H. Harrison, Hugh L. White, and Daniel Webster. In the electoral college he had a majority of 57 votes.

[21] Before doing so, he issued a Farewell Address to his fellow citizens of the United States, which enters upon a defence of his financial policy, and which offers many other wise suggestions for the government of the Republic. See John S. Jenkins' "Life of General Andrew Jackson," &c. Appendix, Note D., pp. 264 to 286.

[22] See Sir Archibald Alison's "History of Europe," continuation, Vol. vi., chap. xxxvii., pp. 264 to 271.

During Martin Van Buren's administration, some disputes occurred with Great Britain in reference to those political and religious difficulties which led to the Canadian rebellion, chiefly directed by a brilliant young leader, Louis Joseph Papineau, Speaker of the House of Assembly.[23] Bands of insurgents were assembled, but towards the close of 1837 they were dispersed, and their commander William Lyon Mackenzie[24] fled to the United States. A body of American sympathisers had been established on Navy Island, Lake Erie. The loyalists of Canada sailed to Fort Schlosser, and there under its guns cut out an American vessel, the steamer Caroline, which on capture was sent adrift over the Falls of Niagara. An American citizen was killed during that capture. The United States government protested against such an invasion of its territory during a time of peace. The British ambassador at Washington sought to justify it as an act of self-defence, and for that act his government assumed responsibility. So the matter rested until 1840, when one McLeod boasted in New York, that he had been engaged in such transaction, and he was then arrested by the authorities, as also charged with the murder. Afterwards, the British minister demanded his release. The case led to a correspondence between Lord Ashburton and Daniel Webster.[25] Under the presidency of William Henry Harrison, that dispute was finally settled, the Attorney-General of the United States having entered a *nolle prosequi* in the Supreme Court of New York.[26] In 1840, the sixth census of the United States returned their population at 17,069,453.[27]

Towards the close of 1840, General Harrison of Ohio was elected President, and John Tyler[28] of Virginia, Vice-President. On the 4th of March 1841, the term of General Harrison's administration commenced, and on the 4th of April—just one month after his inauguration—the President died in his sixty-ninth year. By a provision of the United States Constitution, John Tyler succeeded in that office, and thus he completed the term of four years.[29] A measure for the establishment of a new national bank was vetoed by Tyler, to the great disappointment and alienation of his supporters among the Whig party.[30] A rectification of the north-eastern frontier of Maine,[31] which had been disputed between

[23] See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. iv., pp. 642, 643.

[24] See for an account of him in Charles Lindsey's "Life and Times of McKenzie," Toronto, 1863.

[25] See the "Life and Works of Daniel Webster," Vol. vi., pp. 292 to 303.

[26] See Justin Winsor's "Narrative and Critical History of America," Vol. vii., chap. vii., p 494, n.s., and Vol. viii, chap. iii., pp 151 to 161.

[27] See L. de Colange's "National Gazetteer of the United States," &c., pp. 38, 39.

[28] He was of Irish descent. For detailed notices, the reader may consult Lyon Gardiner Tyler's "Letters and Times of the Tylers," in two volumes, Richmond, 1884, 1885, 8vo.

[29] See Joseph Irving's "Annals of Our Time," p. 32. London, 1869, 8vo.

[30] See S. M. Maury's "Statesmen of America in 1846," p. 119. London, 1847, 8vo.

[31] See the American views on this question ably urged in "Right of the United States of America, to the North-Eastern Boundary claimed by them." Revised by Albert Gallatin, New York, 1840, 8vo.

the United States and Great Britain threatened for a time to be serious; however, these differences were finally adjusted. Sir Robert Peel, then prime minister of England, selected Lord Ashburton for a pacific mission, and he proceeded to America early in 1842. The right of searching ships on the high seas was then abrogated, while the Americans obtained about seven-twelfths of the disputed territory, and the British only five-twelfths. The Hon. Daniel Webster carried on the negotiation as plenipotentiary on the part of the United States.[32] On the 9th of August that same year, the Ashburton Treaty was formally concluded at Washington, and it settled that vexed boundary question.[33]

In consequence of strong remonstrances, addressed by some of the Catholic Bishops of the United States, against obliging the children of their communion to read the Protestant Bible in the public schools, a bigoted feeling was aroused among the different sects, and from the pulpit and in the press it was very generally represented that the Catholics desired to exclude the Scriptures altogether from those institutions. Anti-religious riots took place in Philadelphia during May 1844; Catholic churches, institutions and houses were burned down by an infuriated mob, while bloody collisions took place in the streets between them and the defenders.[34] The excitement spread also to New York, where agitation commenced.[35] The so-called Native American Party was now organized, with hatred to Catholicity and especially of the Irish Catholics as its basis. However, energetic and resolute measures were taken by Mayor Morris of New York to quell disturbances there, and these were happily successful.

Once more between Great Britain and the United States, disputes arose in reference to the rectification of a boundary line on the Oregon territory.[36] About this time, the United States government had fitted

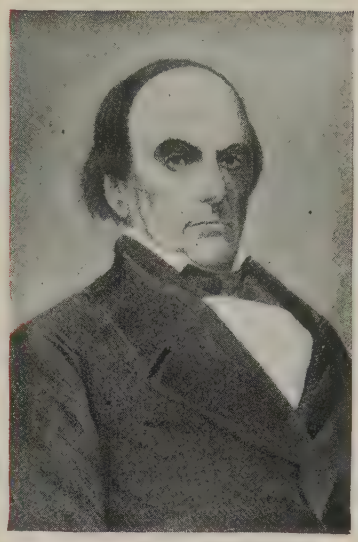
[32] See "Life of Henry John Temple, Viscount Palmerston; with selections from his Correspondence," by the late Rt. Hon. Sir Henry Lytton Bulwer (Lord Darling), Vol. iii., edited by the Hon. Evelyn Ashley, chap. ii., p. 62. London, 1870 *et seq.* 8vo.

[33] See Sir Archibald Alison's "History of Europe," continuation, Vol. vii., chap. xli., pp. 91 to 96.

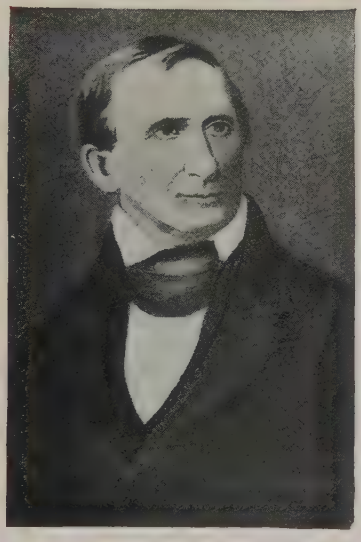
[34] At this time, the Catholic Bishop of Philadelphia, Rt. Rev. Francis Patrick Kenrick, intervened with counsels of wisdom and moderation to quell those riots.

[35] In New York, the Rt. Rev John Hughes Catholic Bishop, a man of great decision and firmness, approved of the Catholic citizens defending their own lives and property, if law and the executive authorities could not avail. This approval was exceeded, however, when a large Irish society, with divisions throughout the city, had resolved, that in case a single church was attacked, buildings should be fired in all parts, and that New York should be involved in a general conflagration. This menace had the effect of preventing further outrages there; but, in various other places, very bad feeling and scandalous actions were manifested. See John Gilmary Shea's "History of the Catholic Church within the Limits of the United States," Vol. iv., Book i., chap. ii., and Book ii., chap. i.

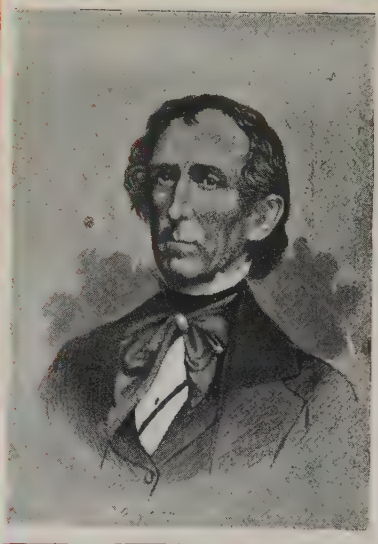
[36] For some useful information on this subject see Dunn's "History of the Oregon Terrtory and British North-American Fur Trade, with Account of the Habits and Customs of the Native Tribes with Specimens of their Language," large map affixed, published in the year 1844, 8vo.



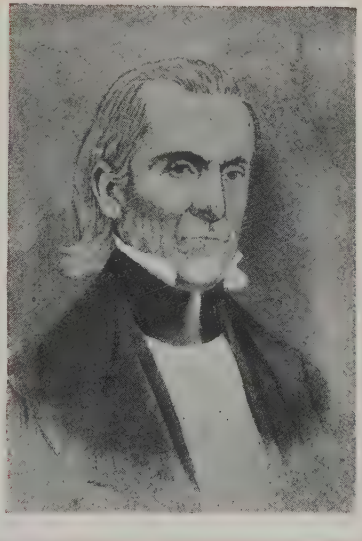
DANIEL WEBSTER,
Secretary of State.



WILLIAM HENRY HARRISON,
Ninth President of the U.S.



JOHN TYLER,
Tenth President of the U.S.



JAMES KNOX POLK,
Eleventh President of the U.S.

out an expedition to examine and report on the topography and resources of the distant western regions subject to their authority.[37] Several years previous, a convention had been arranged between Great Britain and the United States, that the whole of Oregon territory should be open to settlers from both countries; but, this state of affairs then led to the inconvenience of not knowing to which government allegiance was really owing. Especially from 1842, great numbers of hardy adventurers from the States began to penetrate those wild tracts of country in quest of settlements; and in 1843, the President was constrained to notify the British Government, that he was about to end an existing state of joint occupancy, and that a fixed boundary line should be formed. Feeling then ran high among the people of the United States, with regard to the line of demarcation in Oregon; and this was strongly set forth, especially in the Democratic journals, and by defiant leaders of that party. The citizens and emigrants of Irish birth were particularly insistent on a demand, which they hoped might lead to a declaration of war between Great Britain and the Republic.[38] These difficulties were arranged, however, by the Earl of Aberdeen, who sent out a proposal for compromise, and on terms favourable to America in 1846.[39] On the 28th of December 1846, Iowa was admitted as a new State into the Union.[40]

On the 4th of March 1845, James Knox Polk[41] of Tennessee was inaugurated as the eleventh President of the United States. Texas[42] having revolted from Mexico, the new administration resolved on receiving it as a slave State into the Union. Mexico protested against this proceeding, but in vain. When Congress met in December, there was a Democratic majority in both houses. As Texas pressed for admission into the Union, the President declared in his Message, that its annexation was a matter which only concerned its people and those of the United States. Again, Congress was informed, that the American army under General Zachary Taylor[43] had been ordered to occupy the western bank of Nueces River, beyond which Texas had never hitherto exercised jurisdiction. Wherefore, on the 29th of December, 1845, Texas was admitted as a new State into the

[37] A very interesting account of it may be found in F. C. Fremont's "Narrative of the Exploring Expedition to the Rocky Mountains in 1842, and to Oregon and North California, in the Years 1843-44." London, 1846, 8vo.

[38] The author, who was then living in the United States, had a good opportunity for knowing the universality and intensity of such sentiment.

[39] See Sir Archibald Alison's "History of Europe," continuation, Vol. ii., chap. xli., pp. 96 to 100.

[40] See L. de Colange's "National Gazetteer of the United States," &c., p. 497.

[41] He was of Irish descent, and after his death, June 15th 1849, appeared "James Knox Polk," by John S. Jenkins, Buffalo, 1850.

[42] For an interesting description of this extensive State, the reader is referred to the Abbe Emanuel Domenech's "Seven Years' Residence in the Great Deserts of North America," two vols. Illustrated with 58 woodcuts. London, 1860, 8vo.

[43] The Life of General Taylor has been written by Joseph R. Fry and Robert T. Conrad, published at Philadelphia, 1848.

Union.[44] Two days later, an Act was passed, which extended the United States revenue system over that doubtful territory beyond the Nueces. This was regarded as tantamount to a declaration of war against Mexico.

Accordingly, General Taylor marched from Corpus Christi, on the 8th March 1846, with an army of 4,000 men. He advanced to the banks of the Rio Grande opposite Metamoras, and there made provision for the defence of Fort Brown, which was regularly intrenched. Refusing to leave that position, the Mexican General Arista[45] crossed the river below Fort Brown, with a force estimated at 6,000 regular troops, ten pieces of artillery, and a number of auxiliaries. Meantime, General Taylor had marched to Point Isabel, in order to obtain additional supplies. When the Mexicans[46] were reported to be in his front, General Taylor halted his men, and calling a council of war, he resolved to give battle early on the next day. However, dense copses of thorn-bushes, called chaparrel, covered the Mexican position, and greatly impeded the movements of the attacking force. It was only at night on the 8th of May, and after a stubborn resistance, that the commander of the United States forces won that well-contested battle at Palo Alto. The enemy then retired, and took up a strong position on the day succeeding at Resaca de la Palma.[47] Again, General Taylor advanced, and in the afternoon of the 9th, his infantry opened the attack, by pushing through the chaparrel on either side of the road; but, when the Mexican batteries opened, these checked the forward movement, and did considerable execution. At length, a squadron of dragoons was ordered to charge on the artillery. Then the gunners were cut down at their pieces, and the United States infantry soon rendered victory complete. The Mexicans were said to have lost one thousand men in both of these engagements. Soon afterwards they precipitately recrossed the Rio Grande. During the absence of General Taylor, Fort Brown had been heavily bombarded, and the commander Major Brown had been killed. Soon followed the capture of Metamoras, of which General Taylor took possession on the 18th of May.

For several months succeeding, the United States forces were obliged to assume merely a defensive position there, until a division of volunteers had been added. A fortified town of great natural strength, called Monterey, was garisoned by 10,000 Mexicans under General Ampudia. In the month of September, having collected 6,625 men of all arms, General Taylor marched against the place, and on the 19th of that month, he encamped before the town. During this period, nearly if not quite one-half of the rank and file among the regular

[44] See "Encyclopædia Britannica," Vol. xxiii., pp. 205, 206. Ninth Edition.

[45] See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. i., p. 89.

[46] See Edward D. Mansfield's "Mexican War, a History of its Origin, and a detailed Account of the Victories which terminated in the Surrender of the Capital, with the official Despatches of the Generals," chap. ii., New York, 1848, 8vo.

[47] See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. i., p. 67.

United States troops were Irishmen by birth;[48] and, among the volunteers, great numbers of their nationality were enrolled, on the breaking out of this war.[49] The position at Monterey was a formidable one, and a desperate assault was led against it, on the 21st.[50] This battle ended with signal advantage to the United States troops, yet with considerable loss of men in killed and wounded.[51] After a spirited defence, General Ampudia surrendered by tendering certain conditions, which were accepted on the 24th; but, the United States government refused to ratify an armistice proposed in the Capitulation. Meanwhile, a new plan of campaign had been adopted, and General Scott[52] was to be sent as Commander-in-chief against Mexico, with a large military and naval force destined to land at Vera Cruz, and thence to march direct upon the capital. He was also empowered to withdraw troops and material of war from General Taylor. The latter was directed to move upon Victoria, and the Mexican Commander-in-chief Santa Anna now resolved to take advantage of his weakened force—only 5,400 of all arms, and few of these were regulars. In the beginning of January 1847, the fleet operations being directed by Commodore David Connor,[53] General Scott landed a force on the Gulf Coast, and he then commenced preparations for the seige of Vera Cruz.

Meantime, General Santa Anna had collected a well-appointed army of 20,000 men, and with these he marched against General Taylor, who fell back to a narrow pass, in front of the hacienda at Buena Vista. On the 22nd of February, the Mexicans commenced with some skirmishing; but on the morning of the 23rd, a general assault took place on the position. Throughout that entire day, the battle continued with varying fortune. Repeated attacks were made by the Mexicans, and always with great loss of men. However, all these efforts were foiled by General Taylor, and at evening the enemy retired. Then during the

[48] Among those distinguished as officers was Peter John Sullivan, born in Cork 1821, and who served gallantly through the Mexican war. Afterwards, he fought in the Confederate war of 1861. When promoted as Brigadier-General, he was distinguished in the battle of Shiloh. See *ibid.* Vol. v., p. 742.

[49] As the writer of this work then lived in the United States, the facts personally known to him, on which the statement here made is founded, were clearly within his own observation and cognizance.

[50] The opening and incidents of this battle, and soon after its occurrence, were described in detail to the writer, by Major Morrison, an officer who was wounded there, and who afterwards had been appointed Commandant over the United States soldiers, in Jefferson Barracks, State of Missouri.

[51] Among these, General William O. Butler of Kentucky and a son of General Pierce Butler, who was born in Ireland 1744, fell severely wounded while heading a charge. He was sent home to recover. He joined the army again, and he took part in the capture of Mexico. He lived to be 90 years of age, and he died August 6th 1880. See "Irish Celts," by a Member of the Michigan Bar, *sub voce* Butler, Gen. Wm. O.

[52] See "Memoirs of General Scott," written by himself, two Vols. New York, 12mo.

[53] He was of Irish descent, and had already distinguished himself in the naval service from 1813 to 1815. See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. i., pp. 707, 708.

night, he returned along the same route by which he had previously advanced. This dearly-won victory of Buena Vista was decided on the 23rd of February,[54] and it greatly advanced the military reputation of the United States general.

On the 9th of March, the United States troops landed at Vera Cruz to the number of 12,000 men.[55] The trenches were then opened, and on the 22nd a mortar-battery began to fire on the city, while the siege guns were brought to bear two days later. The fortress of San Juan de Ulloa was at length reduced.[56] On the 26th the Mexicans capitulated, and on the 29th Vera Cruz with its garrison of 5,000 men surrendered to the United States army. On the 8th of April, Scott began his march towards Jalapa.[57] Meanwhile, Santa Anna had occupied the strong mountain-defile of Sierra Gordo, formed by the Rio del Plan. Here, 12,000 Mexican troops were posted.

The soldiers under General Scott's command moved forward at sunrise against the entrenched position, on which Santa Anna had drawn up his men.[58] The battle of Sierra Gordo was fought early on the 18th of April, the United States troops 8,500 strong advancing to the attack. At 2 p.m. the enemy was driven from every part of his position, with a loss of more than 1,000 men killed and wounded. In this obstinate encounter, Brigadier-General James Shields[59] displayed extraordinary valour, and he fell most dangerously wounded[60] while leading the Illinois troops. The fortified pass of Sierra Gordo was at length carried. The Mexicans had five generals, with 3,000 officers and men taken prisoners, as also 43 cannon and 4,500 stand of arms captured. Their General Santa Anna then retreated with the rest of his troops.

In order to reach the capital a mountain range had to be crossed,

[54] See Edward D. Mansfield's "Mexican War," chap. iv., viii.

[55] See Lieutenant R. Semmes' "Campaign of General Scott in the Valley of Mexico." Cincinatti, 1852, 12mo.

[56] In the bombardment, Commodore David Connor's ships rendered most effective assistance.

[57] See "General Scott and his Staff," published in Philadelphia, 1848, 12mo.

[58] This able, intriguing and enterprising man was born in Jalapa, February 21st 1795, and he died in the City of Mexico, after many vicissitudes of life June 20th 1876 A revolution in 1846 had called him to the chief command of the Mexican Army, and in the December of that year, he became President of Mexico

[59] He was born at Dungannon Ireland, in 1810, and when a young man in 1816, with his parents he emigrated to the United States. At first he had to toil for daily bread, but afterwards he rose to distinction as a lawyer and a politician. He represented three different States, Illinois, Minnesota and Missouri, in the United States Senate. Adventurous and brave, he had served under General Taylor on the Rio Grande, and later still in the Confederate War. He was Governor of Oregon, and he died in Iowa, June 1st 1879. A fine statue of him adorns the Capitol in Washington.

[60] At first, he was supposed to have been mortally wounded, as a ball passed through his right lung and came out through his back. A Mexican surgeon is said to have healed that wound, by passing a silk handkerchief through it from breast to back, and thus cleaning it from an internal congestion of blood. See "Irish Celts," by a Member of the Michigan Bar, *sub voce*, Shields, General James.

as General Scott moved forward in pursuit. The next operation of importance was the dislodgment of the Mexicans from Jalapa, and here the Major-General of Volunteers Robert Patterson[61] especially distinguished himself in the attack on their position. After a vigorous defence it was carried. On the 19th of April, General Scott took possession of Jalapa. On the 22nd, he entered Perote where a strong castle stood. Afterwards, the large city of Puebla was taken on the 15th of May.[62] Here, however, sickness retarded further operations by the United States forces, who suffered much from the climate. Reinforcements were required, before the army could march forward for the city of Mexico.

Meanwhile a diversion had been planned, to divide and distract the Mexican forces, and in a part of their territory most open to invasion and less capable of defence. A volunteer force had been levied in the Western States,[63] and joined by some regular troops, these were placed under the direction of General Stephen Watts Kearney.[64] He conducted an army over the plains, through New Mexico and California, during the autumn of 1846.[65] Having established a provisional civil government in Santa Fe, he continued his march, and on the 6th of December, he fought an engagement at San Pasqual, where he was twice wounded. Subsequently, he commanded a detachment of sailors and marines with some dragoons, at the passage of San Gabriel River. On the 8th and 9th of January 1847, he fought a skirmish on the plains of Mesa. For his services in this campaign, he received the brevet of major-general.[66]

In the meantime, General Santa Anna was busily occupied in raising a new army and in fortifying the capital. For this purpose he had mustered 30,000 men, and he devised with great judgment an elaborate system of fortifications. Nor could General Scott move his army in that direction before the 7th of August. He then marched with 10,000 troops by the national road. The Mexicans were in position at the Castle of San Antonio, having the fortified heights of Churubusco behind them. An entrenched camp had been stationed at Contreras, which was attacked and carried by General Persifor F. Smith, after a

[61] He was born in Cappagh, County of Tyrone Ireland, in 1792. He emigrated to the United States at an early age, and began his military career in the war of 1812. In the still later Confederate War, he was appointed Major-General of Volunteers 1861, over the department of Pennsylvania, Delaware, Maryland and the District of Columbia. See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. iv., p. 673.

[62] See Lieutenant Raphael Semmes' "Campaign of General Scott in the Valley of Mexico," Cincinatti, 1852, 8vo.

[63] See T. J. Farnham's "Life, Adventures and Travels in California," to which are added the Conquest of California.

[64] He was of Irish descent, and he served gallantly in the war of 1812-14.

[65] See Edward D. Mansfield's "Mexican War," &c., chaps. v., vi.

[66] Afterwards, he was created Governor of California, from March until June 1847. In May 1848, he was made military and civil governor over the City of Mexico. See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. iii., pp. 496, 497.

contest which only lasted for fifteen minutes, on the 20th of August. About the same time, General Worth assailed the Castle of San Antonio, which was taken. The Mexican troops were commanded by Santa Anna.

Meanwhile the enemy had a very formidable position at Churubusco. An attack in general force was then directed against the heights. On the very same day, a third victory was secured by the United States troops.[67] However, an armistice was proposed by General Santa Anna until the 7th September, to allow of negotiations for peace. Meanwhile, the Mexican General availed of the interval to strengthen still more his defences. Those overtures he proposed did not result in aught save the resumption of hostilities. Operations were commenced by the American army against Molino del Rey, south-west from the city of Mexico, where an army of 14,000 had been stationed. General William Jenkins Worth[68] led the attack, which had been made on that position September 8th, at the head of 3,400 men. During that assault, Second Lieutenant Ulysses S. Grant[69] particularly distinguished himself for gallant behaviour, and afterwards he was promoted on the field of battle.[70] This position of Molino del Rey General Worth carried, but with a loss of one-fourth the soldiers under his command.[71]

[67] In this engagement, and at the head of his regiment, fell Colonel Pierce M. Butler, son to the South Carolina Senator of the Revolutionary War. He was of Irish descent and elected Governor of South Carolina in 1838. He was born in South Carolina, in 1798. See "Irish Celts," by a Member of the Michigan Bar, *sub voce* Butler, Pierce M.

[68] He had already distinguished himself in the war of 1812-14 in Canada, as also at the battle of Monterey. He was engaged in all the battles from Vera Cruz to Mexico. As Commandant of the Texas Department after the war, he died of cholera at San Antonio, May 17th 1849. See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biograpy," vol. vi., pp. 615, 616.

[69] Afterwards, the renowned Commander-in-Chief of the United States army that concluded the great Confederate War, and who became President of the United States. He was born at Point Pleasant Clermont County Ohio, on the 27th of April 1822, and he was of Scottish descent, Matthew Grant having arrived from Scotland, at Dorchester Mass., in May 1630. He was baptised Hiram Ulysses, but he dropped the former name when he entered the Military Academy at West Point in 1839. After graduation in 1843, he was attached as Brevet-Lieutenant to the Fourth Regiment of U. S. Infantry, and assigned to duty at Jefferson Barracks near St. Louis, Mo. He went with his Regiment in September 1845, to serve in Texas, under the command of General Zachary Taylor. He participated in the battles of Palo Alto and of Resaca de la Palma in 1846, and in other engagements the year succeeding. See Edward C. Marshall's "Ancestry of General Grant and their Contemporaries," also Personal Memoirs of Ulysses S. Grant," written by himself, in two volumes, 8vo, 1885, 1886.

[70] He was then brevetted to the rank of First Lieutenant.

[71] During these attacks, General Philip Kearney—born of Irish parents in New York 1815—greatly distinguished himself by his gallantry and daring cavalry charges, on the powerfully supported artillery of the Mexicans. In one of these attacks he lost an arm. See "Irish Celts," by a Member of the Michigan Bar, *sub voce* Kearney, General Philip.

The strongly fortified and wooded eminence of Chapultapec was still held by the Mexicans. Dispositions were made for the assault by General Scott. On the 13th of September, the United States troops were led to the attack by Major-General John Anthony Quitman,[72] but they encountered a most obstinate resistance. The conduct of Lieutenant Grant was so highly approved in this assault, that it won for him another promotion, Amid great slaughter, the heights of Chapultapec were at length carried. That very same night, Generals Worth and Quitman advanced with some forces and stormed two gates, which left them in possession of the capital. The former was the first to enter the city of Mexico. With a remnant of his army, General Santa Anna resigning the presidency afterwards retired towards Puebla.

On the morning of the 14th, the city of Mexico was thus opened to the advance of the United States troops. Accordingly General Scott marched in with his soldiers, and occupied the national palace.[73] However from the houses the citizens fired on the troops, and some street fighting took place. This was soon suppressed, and when order was restored a contribution was levied on the city of 150,000 dollars, two-thirds of which General Scott remitted to the United States, and this sum was designed to found military asylums. Taxes were also levied to support the army, and a civil organisation was established under protection of the troops.

The spirit of commercial enterprise, manufacturing industry and railway extensions now began to manifest extraordinary development throughout the United States. Migration of families and individuals from the older settlements to the western territories was specially noteworthy. The public lands were entered, and largely brought into cultivation. Newly formed cities and towns were universally increasing in size and population. Wisconsin was admitted as a new State in the Union, August 6th 1846.[74]

Long before this period, one Joseph Smith,[75] had proclaimed himself a prophet, and pretended he had angelic visions. His doctrines were said to be published in "The Book of Mormon," and a Mormon Church was organised in 1830. He also claimed miraculous powers, and soon he had numerous followers. He brought many of these to settle in Missouri, whence they were expelled in 1838 by mob violence. Afterwards, they took refuge in Illinois.[76] There they founded a city and a temple, at a place called Nauvoo. Soon divisions and confusion ensued; popular prejudice was once more excited; the neighbouring inhabitants

[72] See J. F. H. Claibourne's "Life and Correspondence of John A. Quitman, U.S.A., and Governor of the State of Mississippi," New York, 1860, 8vo.

[73] See Lieutenant Raphael Semmes' "Campaign of General Scott in the Valley of Mexico."

[74] See MacCabe's "Gazetteer of Wisconsin."

[75] He was born at Sharon, in the State of Vermount, December 23rd 1850. See "The Mormons, or Latter-Day Saints: a Contemporary History." London, 1852, 8vo.

[76] See Daniel P. Kidder's "Mormonism and the Mormons," New York, 1842, 8vo.

rose in arms against them; when Joseph Smith and his brother Hiram were soon arrested on a charge of treason. Confined in Carthage, on the evening of June 27th 1844, a band of over 100 ruffians rushed into the jail and fired upon the brothers. Hiram was killed first, and Joseph then fell pierced with several bullets.[77] However, their sect was not to be daunted by these misfortunes; but to the number of 5,000 or 6,000, the followers resolved on a project of distant colonisation. Accordingly, a great migration of Mormons crossed the plains through Missouri, towards the latter part of 1846, and in the earlier part of 1847, to found their new settlements in the Western Territories of the United States. These emigrants were under the leadership of Brigham Young,[78] and they selected Salt Lake as the site on which to build their chief city. He was chosen as successor to Joseph Smith, and on the 12th of March 1849, he was elected Governor of Deseret, understood by the Mormons to signify "land of the honey-bee." Afterwards it was formed into a State and called Utah. Numerous accessions took place each subsequent year, and soon a large colony was formed.

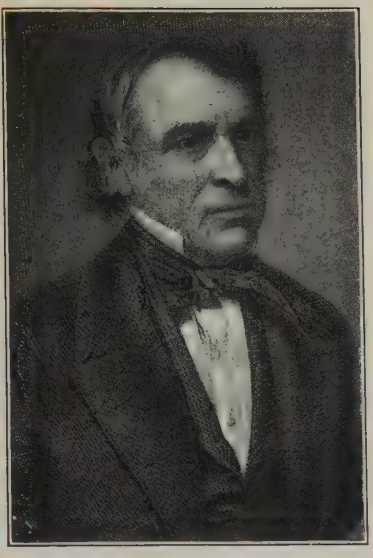
Moreover, news having spread abroad, that gold had been discovered in great abundance in the newly-conquered Mexican territories, thousands of the United States citizens began to flock westwards, having resolved to try their fortunes in those hitherto almost unexplored regions.[79] Numbers were disappointed, however, in the immediate object of their search; yet the energy and enterprise of those adventurers generally found reward in other channels of industry.[80] Besides, those distant tracts of land were settled by hardy and intelligent bodies of immigrants, who soon began to develop the natural resources of those western wilds extending beyond the Rocky Mountains to the distant Pacific Ocean, and who there became the pioneers of progress and civilisation.

[77] See "The Mormons: or Latter-Day Saints, with Memoirs of Joseph Smith," London, 1851, 8vo.

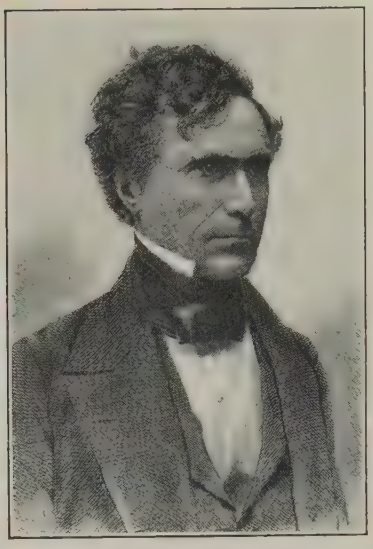
[78] He was born in Whi ingham State of Vermont, June 1st 1801 and his father John was a farmer who served in the Revolutionary War. Brigham embraced the Mormon doctrines and was baptised in 1832. Afterwards he was ordained an elder, and he engaged in Canada preaching, baptising and organising missions. In 1835 he was chosen one of the "twelve apostles." In September 1839, he set out for England, and emigrated from that country 1000 proselytes to Mormonism. Although polygamy is strictly forbidden in the Book of Mormon, and in other publications before Joseph Smith's death; yet Brigham Young claimed that a revelation commanding it was to be received as doctrine, when he had been established in Utah. He died in Salt Lake City, August 29th 1877.

[79] See "Travels in Oregon and History of the Gold Regions, with plates." This work appeared in New York, 1852.

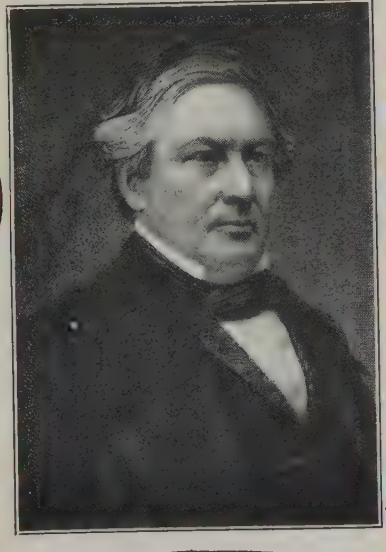
[80] See D. T. Armstead, "Gold Seeker's Manual." Also, "Four Months among the Gold Finders in California," by T. Brooks, M.D.



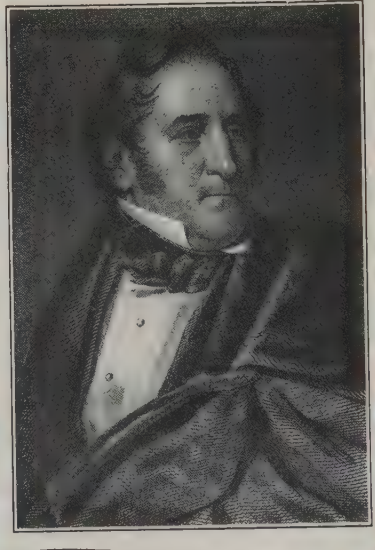
ZACHARY TAYLOR,
Twelfth President
of the United States.



FRANKLIN PIERCE,
Fourteenth President
of the United States.



MILLARD FILMORE,
Thirteenth President
of the United States.



THOMAS H. BENTON
Senator of the
United States

## CHAPTER XXV.

**Peace with Mexico**—General Zachary Taylor elected President—His Death—The Succession devolves on Millard Filmore, Vice-President—Irish Emigration to the United States—Franklin Pierce becomes President—The Native American Party—Agitation on the Subject of Slavery in the Free and Slave States—James Buchannan's Presidency—Raid of John Brown in Virginia—Contests in Kansas between the Slavery and Anti-Slavery Parties—Abraham Lincoln elected President—The South declares for Secession from the United States—Formation of the Southern Confederacy—Seizure of the Arsenals, Magazines and Forts of the Union—Proclamation of President Lincoln—Volunteering—The Irish Brigade formed.

THE possession of their capital precluded all hope of prosecuting the war successfully on the part of the Mexicans. Commissioners were now appointed on both sides to propose terms of accommodation.[1] Peace was concluded in February 1848. The cession of a vast territory formerly held by Mexico[2] was the result of a treaty. Thenceforth annexed to the United States[3] was the greater part of that tract of country called California by the Spaniards in 1536. Then, it had been occupied by Indian tribes having separate names and using different languages.[4] By the early Spanish Jesuit missionaries, many of those had been Christianised, and several stations had been erected, towards the close of the seventeenth and in the earlier part of the eighteenth century. Those missionaries were succeeded by the Franciscans and Dominicans.[5] The Bay of Monterey had been selected by the Spaniards, as the chief port of entry from the Pacific, and there a settlement had been formed; but the growth of a white population was slow, even after Mexico had revolted from Spain. The mineral and agricultural resources of that extensive territory had yet to receive proper development.

On the 30th of May 1848, the treaty between the United States and Mexico was ratified, when California and New Mexico[6] were ceded

[1] See William Jay's "Review of the Causes and Consequences of the Mexican War." Boston, 1849, 8vo.

[2] See William H. Emory's "Report of the United States and Mexican Boundary Survey." Washington, 1857, 4to. This is a magnificently illustrated work.

[3] See John Hayward's "Gazetteer of the United States of America," p. 106, Hartford, 1853, 8vo.

[4] See "Voyage Round the World by Way of the Great South Sea." This thick octavo volume, with map and plate, appeared in 1757.

[5] See John Gilmary Shea's "History of the Catholic Church within the Limits of the United States, from the first attempted Colonization to the present Time," Vol. iv., Book vi., chap. v., pp. 329 to 357.

[6] Some of the descriptive works of great interest hitherto published on New Mexico and California are: "Congressional Reports on New Mexico and California," Plates and Maps

to the former power. This gave a continuous line of Pacific Coast from south to north, joining Oregon,[7] and reaching to the British possessions in Canada. However, this annexation of territory having come as free soil into the United States, southern passions were once more revived, and John C. Calhoun, although ill and physically weak at the time, still persistently demanded, that the holders of slaves were entitled to emigrate thither and to colonise, without detriment to their fortunes or positions as slave-holders. This policy was resolutely opposed by the talented and eloquent Senator of Missouri, Thomas Hart Benton,[8] so that a bitter contest took place between both of these able adversaries.[9]

When James Knox Polk's term of office had expired, the Whig General Zachary Taylor[10] was inaugurated President, and Millard Filmore of New York was recognised as Vice-President.[11] The subject of slavery extension or repression, in the newly acquired territories, was then agitated. The settlers were mostly from the Free States, and in February 1850, they adopted a constitution which prohibited slavery within the bounds claimed for California. This proposal excited the most violent opposition; while some of the very extreme men of the South declared for secession, in case that area for slavery extension were restricted. On both sides, discussion became very acrimonious in Congress. It was settled by a compromise however, on the admission of California into the Union, September 5th, 1850,[12] as a free State.[13] Having been stricken with bilious fever, General Taylor died, after a short presidency of only one year and four months, and during the term of his administration, on July 5th 1850. Millard Filmore then succeeded in office.[14] The latter had not the advantage of an early education, and he was in a great measure self-instructed, while engaged as an apprentice to a wool-comber; but afterwards he became a lawyer, and a member of Congress. His cabinet was composed of talented and enligh-

by Lieut. Emory Albert Cook, and Johnson; also, "Notes of Travels in California," by Colonel Fremont and Major Emory.

[7] For further information the reader is referred to Greenhow's "History of Oregon and California."

[8] See an account of him in Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. i., p. 242.

[9] Before his death in Washington, April 10th 1858, Thomas H. Benton edited an "Abridgment of the Debates of Congress from 1789 to 1850," in fifteen volumes, New York. Subsequently, Vol. xvi. of this work was published in 1861.

[10] He was opposed by Louis Cass, in the Democratic interest. The latter was born in Exeter N.H., Oct. 9th 1782, and he was the son of Jonathan Cass of Irish extraction. See H. R. Schoolcraft's "Life of the Hon. Louis Cass." 1848. 8vo.

[11] He was born in New York, January 7th 1800. He was inaugurated President, July 10th, 1850. He died in New York, March 8th 1874.

[12] See L. de Colange's "National Gazetteer of the United States," p. 179.

[13] See "Abraham Lincoln, a History," by John C. Nicolay and John Hay, Vol. i., chap. xviii., pp. 327 to 329. New York and London, 1890, et seq. 8vo.

[14] See Fisher's and Colby's "American Statistical Annual" for the year 1854, p. 19.

tened men; while the policy of peace preservation at home and abroad became their ruling principle, especially by endeavouring to repress internal revolutions in the island of Cuba. These disturbances were greatly fomented by interested and reckless agencies throughout the United States.[15]

The seventh census of the United States was taken in 1850, when the population was found to be 23,191,074. In the commencement of the last century, the number of people in Ireland had reached to over 5,000,000. In 1821, the Irish Census Commissioners gave their first complete enumeration at 6,801,827. In 1831, they stated it at 7,657,401. The population of Ireland, as returned by the census in 1841, was 8,196,597.[16] Soon afterwards, and chiefly owing to a succession of famine years, it began to decrease. In the year 1851, the population had been reduced to 6,574,278, while in the year 1861 it had still further decreased to 5,798,967. The total number of Irish, who left the United Kingdom between 1841 and 1851, was 1,240,737.[17] The number of persons emigrating from Irish ports, during the period from 1st April 1851 to 7th April 1861, according to the returns obtained by the Registrar-General, was 1,208,350.[18] The vast majority of those emigrants left this country for the United States of America.[19]

On the 4th of July 1851, the corner stone of the Capitol extension was laid at Washington. Meantime, when President Taylor's cabinet had resigned consequent on his death, Mr. Filmore appointed Daniel Webster[20] as Secretary of State,[21] with an exceedingly able staff of co-labourers in the administration.[22] Whatever the wisdom of Filimore's course may have been, his great desire was to quell those differences of policy that actuated the leaders of party, north and south, and to preserve tranquillity throughout the States. One of his earliest official acts was to send a military force to New Mexico, in order to protect that territory from invasion threatened by Texas, and in reference to

[15] See M. le Dr. Hoefer's "Nouvelle Biographie Generale," Tome xvii., Art. FILLMORE (*Millard*) cols. 697 to 699.

[16] See Thom's "Irish Almanack and Official Directory" for 1871, p. 880.

[17] See W. J. Bromwell's "History of Immigration to the United States, exhibiting the Number, Age, Sex, Occupation, &c., of Passengers arriving in the United States, with Naturalization and Passenger Laws," &c. 1856, 8vo.

[18] See "The General Report of the Census of Ireland for the year 1861," part v., pp. ix., xiii. Dublin, 1864.

[19] See the "Annual Reports and Laws of the Commissioners of Emigration of New York, from May 5th 1847, to 1860, inclusive, with Tables and Official Documents," New York, 1861, 8vo.

[20] The "Life of Webster" has been written by George Ticknor Curtis, in two volumes. New York, 1870. 8vo.

[21] See Webster's "Works," with a biographical sketch by Edward Everett, in six volumes. Boston, 1851, 8vo.

[22] These were Thomas Corwin, Secretary of the Treasury; William A. Graham, Secretary of the Navy; Charles M. Conrad, Secretary of War; Alexander H. H. Stuart, Secretary of the Interior; John J. Crittenden, Attorney-General; and Nathan K. Hall, Postmaster-General. Of these, Daniel Webster died, while Messrs. Graham and Hall retired in 1852, these being replaced respectively by Edward Everett, John P. Kennedy, and Samuel B. Hubbard.

its disputed boundary.[23] On the 21st December, the Congressional Library at Washington was destroyed by fire.

Contrary to the approval of Daniel Webster,[24] a number of compromise measures were introduced, which were intended to tide over existing political difficulties. Among the most objectionable, the Fugitive Slave-law was passed and sought to be enforced, although it was most obnoxious to a large portion of the northern Whig party, and to all the anti-slavery men. Its object was to compel the return of escaped negroes to their former masters. Its execution came to be resisted in several instances throughout the free States, and several escaped slaves were rescued from custody of the United States marshals, even with loss of life.[25]

At a subsequent election, Franklin Pierce of New Hampshire[26] was returned by a great majority of votes over General Scott the Whig candidate,[27] and he was inaugurated President, on the 4th of March 1853. His cabinet was selected from various sections of the country; and among the most eminent members of it were Messrs. Marcy, Guthrie, Caleb Cushing[28] and Jefferson Davis.[29] The Vice-President was William R. King of Alabama. For the two first years of his presidency, Pierce was greatly influenced in his policy by the most ardent men of the Democratic party; and thence resulted grave complications with Mexico, as also with Spain, on the subject of Cuba, and moreover with England regarding the Clayton-Bulwer treaty.[30] However, the abilities of Marcy,

[23] See Chamberlain's "Biography of Millard Fillmore," Buffalo, 1856, 8vo.

[24] See "Webster's Private Correspondence," edited by his son Fletcher Webster, in two volumes. Boston, 1856, 8vo.

[25] See Thomas Hart Benton's "Thirty Years' View," the first volume of which appeared in 1854, the second and last in 1856. New York, 8vo.

[26] He was of Irish descent, and his father Benjamin had already distinguished himself in the revolutionary war by his courage and services, retiring in 1784 with the rank of captain, having then devoted himself to legal studies. Afterwards, his son Franklin, who was born in New Hampshire, November 23rd 1804, became Member of Congress and Senator of the United States, retiring from a legislative career to pusue his legal avocations in 1842. However, on the breaking out of the war with Mexico, he volunteered as a private soldier in a company formed at Concord N.H. In March 1847, he was created Brigadier-General. He served at Vera Cruz, and took part in the sanguinary battles fought at Molino del Rey and Chapultepec. At the Democratic Convention in Baltimore June 1852, he was nominated for the office of President by that party. He died October 8th 1869.

[27] Of the 296 votes, then comprising the electoral college, Pierce obtained 254, and Scott only 42.

[28] He wrote a valuable work, "Growth and Territorial Progress of the United States," published in 1839, as also many other works. See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. ii., pp. 38, 39.

[29] The Life of this remarkable man—the well-known President of the Southern Confederacy in after years—has been written by an admirer, Frank H. Alfriend, and it was published in New York 1868, while that by Edward A. Pollard, with the sub-title "Secret History of the Confederacy," published in Philadelphia 1869, holds him to have been mainly resposible for that disastrous war.

[30] See Thompson's "Presidents and their Administrations," Indianapolis, 1873, 8vo.

Secretary of State, were successfully employed in composing those difficulties.[31] In 1854, a large purchase of territory from Mexico was made by the United States.[32] This same year, the Illinois Senator Stephen A. Douglas introduced a Bill, which virtually repealed the Missouri compromise of 1820, and which provided for the creation of two new territories, Kansas and Nebraska, on the basis of what was called popular or squatter sovereignty, it being intended that the settlers there might determine for themselves whether in the event of their becoming States, slavery should be admitted or excluded. This procedure was favoured by the Administration and by the Democratic party in general, while it was opposed by the anti-slavery party. However, the measure became law in the month of May. The most disastrous results ensued, when Kansas became the scene of disorder and violence.[33] Every effort was made by the people living in the Eastern States to despatch immigrants thither, and who would be disposed to vote for free soil; while from the South, and especially from Missouri, the partisans of slavery moved thither as settlers—many only for a time, and in order to acquire the right to vote on that question. Soon rival legislatures were set up, and afterwards dissolved by armed and hostile bands; murders and riots succeeded; at the elections, wholesale frauds were practised, and voters were driven forcibly from the polling places.

The necessity for explorations and surveys, to ascertain the most practicable route for railroads extending from the Mississippi River to the Pacific Ocean, now occupied the attention of Congress.[34] Sectional differences, with sectarian and party prejudice, began to increase. Jealousy for the growth of a Democratic party, favourable to the continuance or spread of slavery, with an increase of the foreign voting element, supposed to be largely influenced by their agents, mainly contributed, but only for a short time, to the existence of a new political organization. This "Native American" party—as it had been called—advocated the restriction of the franchise, and urged that it should be curtailed, so far as it applied to the immigrant population of the States. That party also developed into a secret society, called the "Know Nothings," and it selected Millard Filmore as their candidate for President in 1856; but, when that election took place, he only received the eight electoral votes in his own State of Maryland. Still the "Native Americans" were mainly actuated by intolerant sentiments against

[31] See M. le Dr. Hoefer's "Nouvelle Biographie Generale," Tome xl., Art. PIERCE (*Franklin*), cols. 124 to 127.

[32] See Hubert H. Bancroft's "History of the Pacific States, Mexico," Vol. v., chap. xiii., San Francisco, 1885.

[33] See "Abraham Lincoln, a History," by John G. Nicolay and John Hay. Vol. i., chap. xxii., pp. 393 to 407.

[34] Valuable Congressional Reports in twelve large quarto volumes were published in 1855, at Washington, and furnished the most useful topographical statistical and historical information regarding the great Western Territories. These volumes are profusely illustrated with maps and engravings. They served to lay out the roads and lines of route for future railways, as also to promote industry and commerce.

Catholics; and, through the New England States, it was especially manifested by many aggressive menaces in mob hostility, and even in the perpetration of several outrages.[35]

An effort had been made by the Administration to purchase Cuba from Spain, as urged by the Southern politicians; and accordingly, President Pierce suggested the holding of a conference by the American Ministers to Spain, England and France, to consider the question at Ostend in 1854. The result of their deliberations was a memorandum addressed to the President and declaring, that Cuba was a necessary annexation for the United States; that it was a duty to prevent emancipation of slaves in the Island; and that if Spain refused to sell it, the United States would be justified in taking forcible possession. These declarations created great indignation throughout the Free States, and the agitation of that subject was set in abeyance by the Cabinet.

Most violent and factious quarrels between the free-soil and pro-slavery men developed into something like civil war in the territory of Kansas. Governor Andrew H. Reeder arrived at Leavenworth in October 1854; but he soon found it necessary to check the endeavours of the Missouri invaders of the territory, designated "Border Ruffians," who claimed a right to vote at the ensuing elections. Meantime, towards the close of 1855, a Convention assembled at Topeka had framed a Free State Constitution, which was submitted to the legal voters, and it received popular endorsement. The Pierce Administration then deposed Governor Reeder because he favoured this movement, which was declared to be insurrectionary. Governor Shannon was appointed to succeed, and he gave every possible countenance to the pro-slavery faction.

Anti-slavery sentiments and interests soon began very generally to prevail, and the feeling aroused, especially among the New Englanders, came more openly into collision with the inhabitants of the southern slave States. The war with Mexico begun in the interests of slavery,[36] and ended in the organization of a free State in California, with free territories belting the continent so far as the Pacific Ocean. This gave a rude shock to the initial dream of a universal slave empire; and it was virtually obliterated, when the failure to colonize Kansas, and to coerce its adoption of slavery by the appliance of Federal power, showed the progressive bent of public opinion. Thenceforward, nothing was left between the steadily increasing anti-slavery sentiment of the North and the slave systems of the South, but a precarious hold on the General Government. An almost autocratic control of their own State Governments led to the adoption of desperate but most impolitic measures in the South, to obtain an ascendancy over the Free States. Although

[35] Various cases are furnished in the Fourth Volume of John Gilmary Shea's "History of the Catholic Church within the Limits of the United States," Books vii., viii., ix., x., xi.

[36] See A. A. Livermores "War with Mexico reviewed," Boston, 1850, 8vo.

a Fugitive Slave-law had been obtained; still, its provisions were annulled or evaded by the Northerners. These were protectionists in principle, for the supposed encouragement of their domestic manufactures; while the Southerners, being chiefly engaged in agriculture, advocated free trade and a low tariff. The ambitions and jealousies of leading politicians and of journalists tended most to fan the flames of dissension, and to promote those party divisions.

The Republican party, which was next formed, achieved a great triumph at the opening of Congress in December 1855, when Nathaniel P. Banks was elected as their Speaker in the House of Representatives. That new organization also put in the field its first candidate John Charles Fremont, for the Presidency, in 1856.[37] Although a native of Savannah Georgia, and educated in the University of Charleston, he was opposed to the extension of slavery in the newly acquired territories, which he had so ably and adventurously explored. In 1850, he had been elected Senator to Congress for California, while he obtained great eminence in America and in Europe as the result of his published Travels, which were translated into different languages. Millard Filmore was the native American candidate selected. James Buchanan[38] of Pennsylvania, selected by the Democratic party,[39] was advanced however to the Presidency. On the 4th of March 1857, the inauguration took place. Not long afterwards, the Mormons laid claim to a vast extent of territory around Utah, which they hoped to reserve for themselves. Soon their prophet and governor Brigham Young was brought into collision with the United States officers appointed by the President to regulate affairs in that distant region. He raised troops, and several immigrants were massacred there during the summer. However, the President sent a force of 2,500 troops to quell a threatened rebellion, and order was somewhat restored.

A slave named Dred Scott had sued for his freedom on the ground that his master had taken him into the Free State of Illinois. An appeal was taken to the Supreme Court of the United States, and there it was ruled, that a negro could not become a citizen, while Chief-Justice Taney stated, that the authors of the Declaration of Independence entertained the opinion, as negroes were so far inferior to their masters, those slaves had no rights which white men were bound to respect. Moreover, he pronounced the Missouri Compromise Act to be unconstitutional, because it forbid slavery in the territories north of latitude 36° 30′, while he maintained, that Congress had no right to interfere with slaves, as these were private property.[40] This decision created intense excitement and indignation throughout the north, where the Abolitionists were in the greatest number; and it served to spread

[37] He had married the daughter of Thomas H. Benton. See the "Encyclopædia Americana" Vol. iii., pp. 7, 158

[38] He was Irish by descent and born April 23rd 1791. He died in Pennsylvania, June 1st 1868.

[39] See Joseph Irving's "Annals of Our Time," p. 320.

[40] See "Decisions of the Supreme Court of the United States in the Case of Dred Scott *v.* J. F. Sandford." New York, 1857, Roy. 8vo.

their sentiments, through the medium of associations, of the press, and of popular agitation. In 1858, May 11th, Minnesota was admitted as thirty-second State into the Union;[41] and also during this year, the first Atlantic cable was laid between Ireland and Newfoundland. The originator of this great project was Cyrus Field of New York.[42] However, the first cable laid was found to be imperfect, and it failed to work; but eight years later, his persevering exertions were rewarded with permanent success. On the 4th of February 1859,[43] Oregon was organised and admitted as a new State in the Union.

Meantime, the question of slavery had excited the most violent passions and recriminations between the Free and the Slave States. Having a preponderating influence in Congress, the latter perseveringly sought to enforce the Fugitive Slave Law. The Abolitionists formed associations to aid slaves who desired to escape, and to protect them once they had reached free soil. Moreover, several of the Free States passed Personal Liberty Acts, to prevent the restitution of slaves to their former masters, without the trial by jury of every individual claim, so as to obstruct effectually such rendition.

A heroic man named John Brown,[44] who had already distinguished himself in Kansas by his ardent zeal to abolish slavery, had there gathered a little band of from fifteen to twenty resolute adventurers.[45] With these, his name soon become a terror in the lawless guerilla warfare of that time. In course of those skirmishes one of his sons was killed and another was mortally wounded. During the years 1857 and 1858, meditating and conspiring with other abolitionists in the Eastern States, he returned to Kansas, where he headed an armed foray into Missouri, whence he carried away eleven slaves into Canada. But he resolved on a more hardy enterprise. On the 17th of October 1859, having assembled a few followers, John Brown commenced a raid at Harper's Ferry, with a view to raise an insurrection among the negroes in Virginia. This attempt was unsuccessful, however, and he was captured. Having through his energy and personal exertions greatly aided to liberate Kansas from the stigma of slavery, John Brown then paid with the forfeit of his life that stern sense of opposition so long exercised

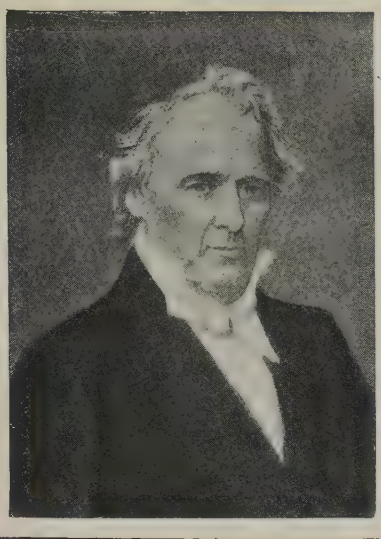
[41] See Dr. F. De Colange's "National Gazetteer of the United States," p. 650.

[42] See an account of him in the "Encyclopædia Americana," Vol. iii., p. 38.

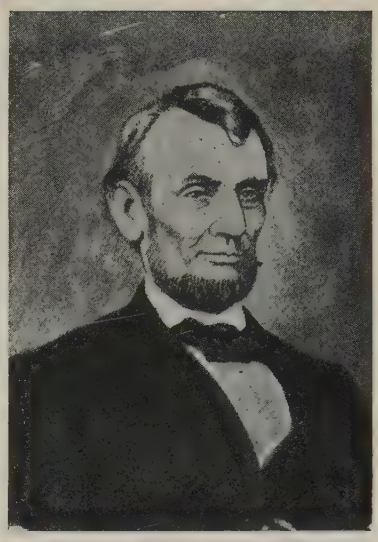
[43] See Dr. L. Colange's "National Gazetteer of the United States," p. 755.

[44] He was born at Torrington State of Connecticut, in 1800. Having devoted his life to the emancipation of slaves, and having become an enthusiastic abolitionist, eleven of his children were living in 1854; when, with the first rush of emigrants to Kansas, four of his sons moved thither, and when the Border Ruffian hostilities broke out, he followed them with arms and money contributed in the North.

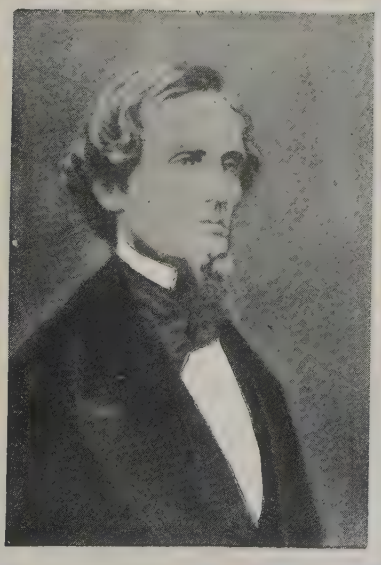
[45] It has been stated, that while camping out in Kansas, he prayed very fervently, and saw visions; while he believed, that he wielded the Lord's sword and that of Gideon, also having faith that angels encompassed him. "One man on the right, and ready to die," he said, "will chase a thousand." See James Redpath's "Life of John Brown," p. 48.



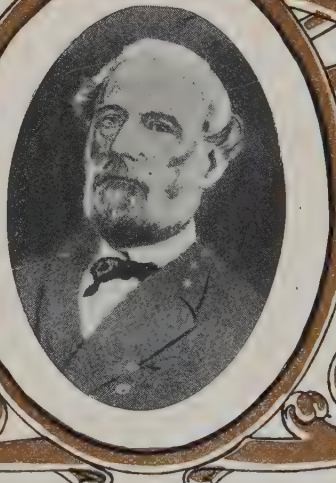
JAMES BUCHANAN,
Fifteenth President of the U.S.



ABRAHAM LINCOLN,
Sixteenth President of the U.S.



JEFFERSON DAVIS,
President of the Confederate States.



ROBERT EDWARD LEE,
Commander-in-Chief of Confederate Army.

against the hated institution.[46] Having been wounded and disabled he was subjected to a form of trial, and before the court having proclaimed his hatred of slavery, he was condemned to death, and hanged on the 2nd December, that same year. Some of his companions were executed a few days subsequent.[47]

The President resisted for a time the admission of Kansas as a free State into the Union. Within that territory the rival parties stood in hostile array against each other, and peace was only maintained, through the agency of United States troops. No less than six Governors had been successively appointed by the President. Two of these had been removed. Three of them resigned their offices, in despair of effecting any favourable issue. However, on the 29th of January 1861,[48] Kansas became a free State, in accordance with the votes of a great majority of its inhabitants. Then the Anti-Slavery party soon drew within its vortex all other political organizations in the Free States, excepting the old Democratic party. Under the name of the Republican party, a consolidated front was opposed to the assumed slavery interests.[49] Hopeless disunion spread in the Democratic ranks, and the irrepressible conflict was hastened on, when their convention for the election of a President sat at Charleston and Baltimore in the spring and summer of 1860.[50] Dissensions prevailed, and the candidates selected for President and Vice-President were defeated at the ensuing election in November, when Abraham Lincoln of Illinois[51] was chosen as President, and Hannibal Hamlin of Maine became Vice-President. This contest was a trial of strength between the Northern and Southern States. The latter were foiled and defeated, as a result of the election.[52] The die was thus irrevocably cast, for the agitators of the cotton States had openly declared a purpose, to secede from the Northern States in the event of electoral success in the latter.

South Carolina was the first of the Southern States to institute active measures for withdrawing from the Union on the election of Mr. Lincoln, and it was the first to decree an ordinance of Secession. On Nov. 7th 1860, an Act was passed by its Legislature calling a State Convention.

[46] See "Life and Letters of John Brown," edited by F. B. Sanborn, with Portrait. Boston, cr. 8vo.

[47] See Pierre Larousse's "Grand Dictionnaire Universelle du XIXe Siecle," Tome ii., p. 1324. *Art.* BROWN (John), abolitionniste Americain.

[48] See L. de Colange's "National Gazetteer of the United States," p. 521.

[49] See President Buchanan's "Administration on the Eve of the Rebellion: a History of Four Years before the War," chap. ii., p. 48, London, 1865, 8vo.

[50] As shown in the Report of their Proceedings.

[51] This illustrious man was born on the Big South Fork of Nolin Creek, in La Rue County, about three miles from Hodgensville, in the State of Kentucky, February 12th 1809.

[52] In 1860, the total number of slaves in the United States was 3,953,587. Thus, Kentucky had 225,483; Tennessee, 275,719; Maryland, 87,189; Missouri, 114,931; Delaware, 1,798; Western Virginia, 12,754; the seventeen counties of Eastern Virginia counted 26,561. There were 29 slaves in Utah, and 15 in Nebraska. The total number of slaves in Louisiana was 221,726.

On the same day, the United States officials in Charleston resigned, and on the 11th, the South Carolina Senators withdrew from the United States Senate. An election of delegates having been held on December 6th, the Convention assembled at Charleston on the 18th, and it passed the ordinance of Secession on the 20th,[53] without a dissenting vote. Commissioners were appointed to visit Washington, and to treat with President Buchanan for possession of the Federal property within the limits of their state, while others were sent to the slave-holding states, to invite their co-operation and to aid in the formation of a Southern Confederacy. Their representatives in Congress had withdrawn, moreover, and Governor Pickens proclaimed the dissolution of the Union between South Carolina and other States of the North. Fort Moultrie and Castle Pinckney were soon afterwards seized by the State of South Carolina.

Abraham Lincoln had not yet as entered on his term of office; but on the 9th of January 1861 President Buchanan announced in his message to Congress, that the arsenals, magazines and forts of the Union had been seized in some States, although these had not formally seceded. Early in that year, the States of Mississippi, on January 9th, of Florida, January 10th, of Alabama, January 11th, of Georgia January 19th, and of Louisiana on January 26th, practically seceded.[54] Their example was followed by Texas, on the 1st of February. The people in these States seized on all the forts, arsenals, custom houses, and other Federal property within them. Virginia, Arkansas, Tennessee, and North Carolina joined that confederacy during the spring and summer months.[55] The slave States of Maryland and Delaware were bound to the North, however, owing to their geographical position. The area of these eleven seceding States comprised 767,893 square miles,[56] being about eight times the size of Great Britain. Sympathisers in other States endeavoured to aid the movement;[57] however, except in Missouri and Kentucky—also Slave states—they failed to affect very important co-operation. The Southerners seemed desirous of precipitating a civil war, but

[53] See Joseph Irving's "Annals of our Time," p. 434.

[54] See John R. G. Hansard's "History of the United States of America," Part Fifth. The Civil War, chap. li., p. 313.

[55] See Lieutenant-Colonel Fletcher's "History of the American War from 1861 to 1865," vol. i., chap. ii., p. 19. London, 1865, 8vo. This work, by an officer of the Scots Fusilier Guards, in three volumes, is admirably illustrated, with topographical plans of the battles during the war from 1860 to 1865.

[56] The free population of these States was estimated in 1860, at 5,581,649, and the slave population, at 3,520,116; making a total of 9,101,765. The four other slave states—Delaware, Maryland, Kentucky and Missouri—contained a free population of 2,698,841, and a slave population of 429,441.

[57] See that valuable work, "Histoire de la Guerre Civile en Amérique," par M. le Comte de Paris. Tome Premier. Paris, 1874, et seq., 8vo. Not only was the author an actor and observer of the war, in which he served as a volunteer in the United States armies, but he had access to the most excellent authorities for the authentication of his statements.

the Northerners wished to avoid it[58]; while many patriotic and wise men on both sides dreaded the results of what appeared to be an impending and inevitable conflict.

A convention of the seceded States was held at Montgomery Alabama, on the 4th of February. There, on the 8th of that month, a constitution for the Confederate States was voted by the Assembly; while Jefferson Davis[59] of Mississippi was elected Provisional President, and Alexander H. Stephens[60] of Georgia was named Vice-President of the Confederate States. These leaders in the movement soon assumed all the functions of their respective offices. They resolved to act, without any attempt to have their proceedings sanctioned by a popular vote. Meanwhile, officers in the United States army and navy of southern proclivities tendered their resignations, and prepared to take service in the military and naval organisations about to be established. Recruiting for the army of the South went on with great activity, and a Navy Department was formed.[61]

Actual hostilities had already commenced. Fort Sumter, at the entrance to Charleston Harbour and commanded by Major Anderson, still held out, and Fort Pickens at Mobile was saved by Lieutenant Slammer. Vessels were despatched with troops and stores, to relieve Fort Sumter and other defences at Charleston, so as to prevent them falling into the hands of the Confederates. The militia of the South were ready and equipped, while they assembled from all sides; the North was comparatively disarmed and taken by surprise, while the President's irresolution and weakness of character, combined with insincere professions of compromise and concession, had paralysed greatly the decisions of Congress, as also patriotism and activity among all true lovers of the Union.

President Lincoln's inauguration followed on the 4th of March.[62]

[58] See Henri Martin's "Histoire de France depuis 1789, jusq' a nos Jours," Tome vi., chap. viii., pp. 302, 303.

[59] This able and ambitious man has written a remarkable work, entitled, "Rise and Fall of the Confederate Government."

[60] At first, he had argued against secession; but his State having revolted, he was resolved on following its fortunes. In appointing him to a provisional and secondary place, it was astutely calculated, that others who preserved any attachment to the union might be rallied under the flag of secession.

[61] The fullest information on its origin and proceedings may be found in the "History of the Confederate States' Navy, from its Organization to the Surrender of its last Vessel," by J. Thomas Scharf, A.M., LL.D. Second Edition. Albany, N.Y., 1894, 8vo.

[62] A most important historical contribution, not alone to the life-long actions and services of this distinguished President, but also to the events of the Great Confederate Rebellion has been written, and in an admirable manner, by John G. Nicolay and John Hay for "The Century Magazine," in a series of articles beginning in November 1886 and closing early in 1890. In the latter year, these articles largely augmented in matter and fully revised have appeared, in a series of ten fine 8vo. volumes, bearing for title, "Abraham Lincoln: A History," This truly magnificent work has been published by the New York Century Co., and by T. Fisher Unwin, London, 1890,

Then, he declared, that the institution of slavery, where it already existed in the States, could not legally be interfered with, nor should he interfere with the established rights of the States.[63] On the same occasion,[64] he denounced the threatening attitude of the secessionists, and declared his intention to maintain in every State the laws of the Union. The Southern officers, educated in the Military Academy at Westpoint who constituted a majority in the United States regular army, also many of their sympathisers in the navy, renounced allegiance to the general government.[65] John B. Floyd of Virginia, who was Mr. Buchanan's Secretary at War and a zealous secessionist, had transferred from northern to southern arsenals in 1860 an immense quantity of cannon, muskets, ammunition and other warlike stores.[66] The Southern leaders, aware of these treasonable practices, promptly seized on the military posts and stores within their limits. The regular army had been scattered at remote posts, where its services were useless, and most of the navy was on foreign stations. Soon the Confederates had a large force of volunteers embodied, and well provided for the contingencies of the dreadful civil war which was about to ensue.

When President Lincoln entered upon his memorable term of office, on the very next day Major-General Beauregard was despatched by the Southern President Davis, to take command of a force assembled at Charleston.[67] On the 12th of April, batteries were brought to bear on Fort Sumter. After a furious bombardment and with the loss of a few men, the interior being in flames and many of the guns being dismounted, the fort was surrendered by Major Anderson the United States commandant, on the 14th of April. The garrison embarked, however, on board vessels which were near, and sailed for New York. This hostile proceeding of the Southerners caused intense excitement and indignation among the great majority of people belonging to the Northern States.[68]

Terms of accommodation had been proposed by sincere lovers of the Union, who wished to avoid the inevitable disasters of a civil war, to proceed on a scale of vast magnitude; but they came to nothing, so violent were the passions excited among the Southerners, especially by their re-

*et seq.* It contains numberless portraits of the distinguished men, who were contemporaries of President Lincoln, both on the Federal and Confederate side, besides several maps, illustrating the localities where the military movements took place, with plans of the various battles fought through the great war of secession.

[63] On this subject, see Auguste Carlier's "L'Esclavage dans ses Rapports avec l'Union Americaine," Paris, 1862.

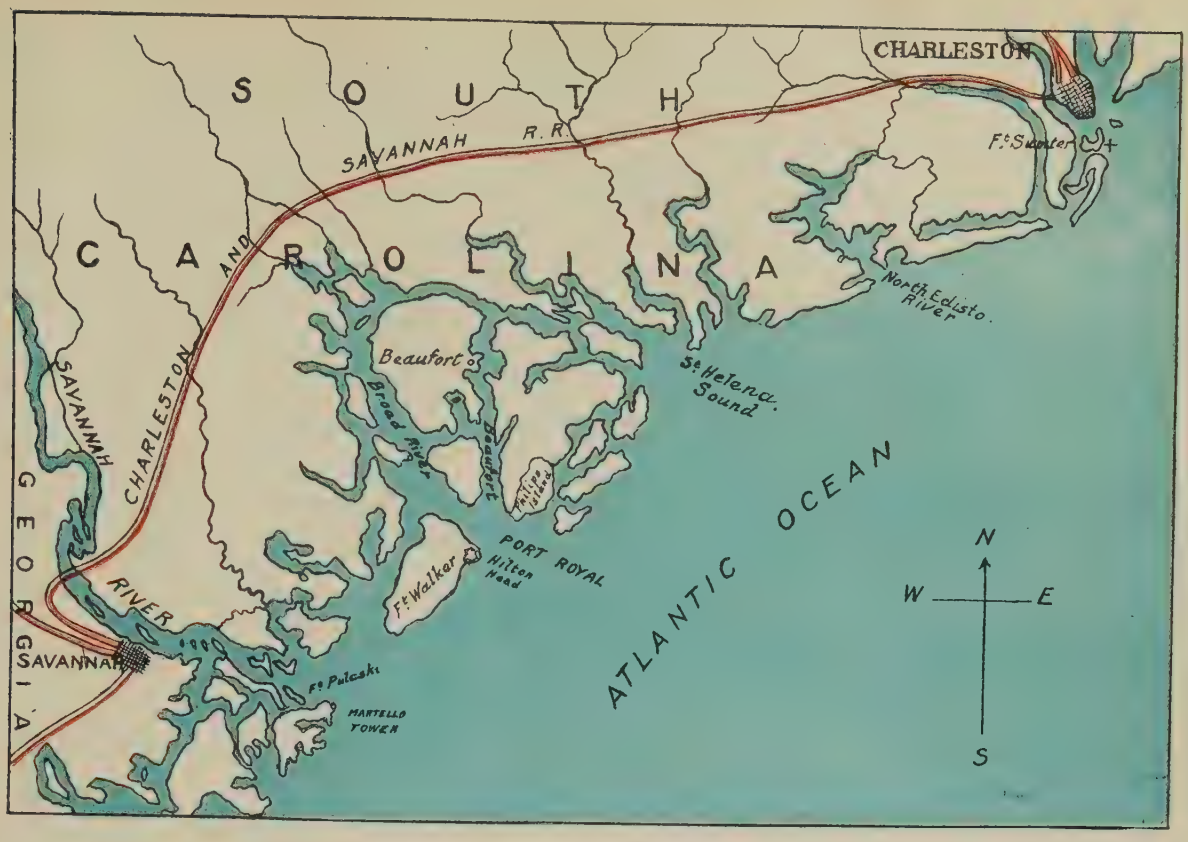
[64] See Joseph Irving's "Annals of our Time," p. 440.

[65] See M. le Comte de Paris, "Histoire de la Guerre Civile en Amérique," Tome i., Liv. i., chap. iii., pp. 193 to 237.

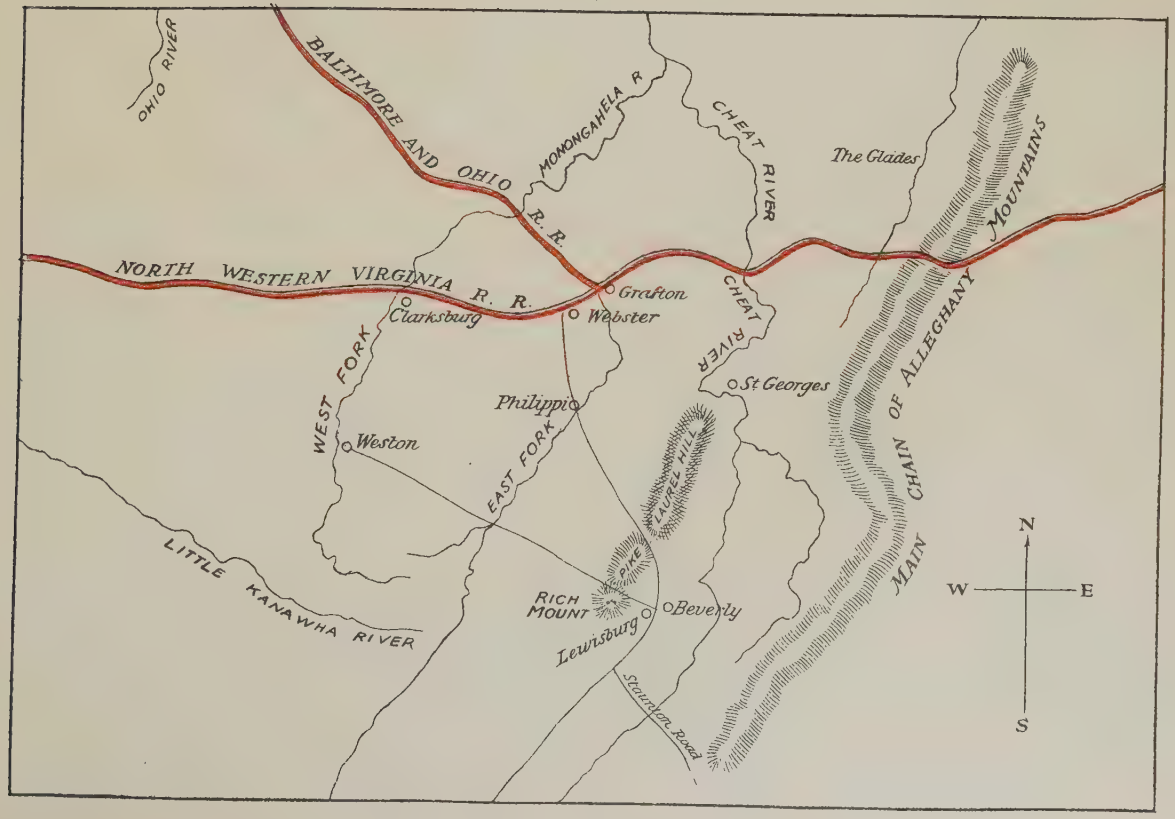
[66] See the "Encyclopædia Americana," Vol. iii., p. 103.

[67] See Lieutenant-Colonel Fletcher's "History of the American War from 1861 to 1865," vol. i., chap. iii., p. 36.

[68] A very reliable and complete account of those proceedings may be found in Brevet Major-General S. W. Crawford's "Genesis of the Civil War, the Story of Sumter 1860 61," chap. i. to xxxii., New York, 1887, 8vo.




ATTACK ON FORT SUMTER.




CAMPAIGN-GROUND IN WEST VIRGINIA.

cognised leaders. Moderate counsels were rejected. The South insisted on separation and the establishment of an independent Confederacy, in which slavery must be perpetuated. The North was conscious that this precedent of secession once established, the anticipated future grandeur and greatness of the American Republic could never be realised. Before this war of secession, the total population[69] of the Union was 31,429,891, including the territories; and of this population, eleven States, representing a little over nine millions, had revolted.[70]

On the 15th of April, President Lincoln issued a proclamation. In this, he denounced those illegal combinations of the seven seceding States, and he called out the militia of the United States to the number of 75,000.[71] On the 18th of April, the arsenal at Harper's Ferry was captured by the Virginia militia, and, as secession was rife throughout all that region, even Washington was placed in great danger of being seized. On the 20th, the navy yard at Norfolk, with United States ships and munitions of war partly destroyed, fell into the hands of the secessionists.[72]

Especially in New England, New York and the Middle States, the volunteer corps and the militia promptly, and with enthusiastic ardour, proffered their services to aid in quelling the incipient rebellion. Foremost among those volunteers was Colonel Michael Corcoran, who commanded the Sixty-ninth New York Regiment, composed exclusively of Irish or Irish-Americans to the number of 1,800,[73] and Catholics almost to a man. Of these, 1,000 were ready for embarkation to defend Washington city, towards the beginning of April; on the 23rd, amid great demonstrations of popular rejoicing, they marched through New York city,[74] and embarked that same evening, together with the

[69] The aggregate area of the nineteen free States was then 997,281 square miles, and the population, in 1860, reached to 18,979,695.

[70] For the foregoing and many of the following statements, the reader is referred to an interesting historic *resume*, in the "British Almanack," for 1864.

[71] See Joseph Irving's "Annals of our Time," p. 443.

[72] See Scharf's "History of the Confederate States Navy," &c., chap. vii., pp. 128 to 140.

[73] The officers of this renowned regiment were—Colonel, Michael Corcoran; Lieutenant-Colonel, Robert Nugent; Major, James Bagley; Adjutant, John M'Keon; Volunteer Aids, C. G. Halpine and John Savage; Chaplain, Rev. Thomas J. Mooney, who was succeeded by Rev. B. O'Reilly, S.J.; Engineers, James B. Kirker, John H. M'Cann, and L. D. Homergue; Surgeon, Robert Johnston; Assistants, Drs. James L. Kiernan, J. Paschal Smith, and P. Nolan; Quartermaster, Joseph P. Tully; Paymaster, Matthew Kehoe; Sergeant-Major, Arthur Tracey; Colour-Sergeant, — Murphy.

[74] The component individuals and numbers were—Company A, Captain James Hagerty; First-Lieutenant, Theodore Kelly; Second-Lieutenants, Daniel Strayne and Denis F. Sullivan; Orderly Sergeant, Bermingham, with one hundred and twenty men. Company B,—Captain Thomas Lynch; First-Lieutenant, Thomas Leddy; Second-Lieutenant, W. H. Giles; Orderly Sergeant Cahill; with one hundred and fourteen men. Company C—Captain James Kavanagh; First-Lieutenant, John H. Ryan; Second-Lieutenant, J. Rowan, with eighty-six men. Company D—Captain Thomas Clarke; First Lieutenant,

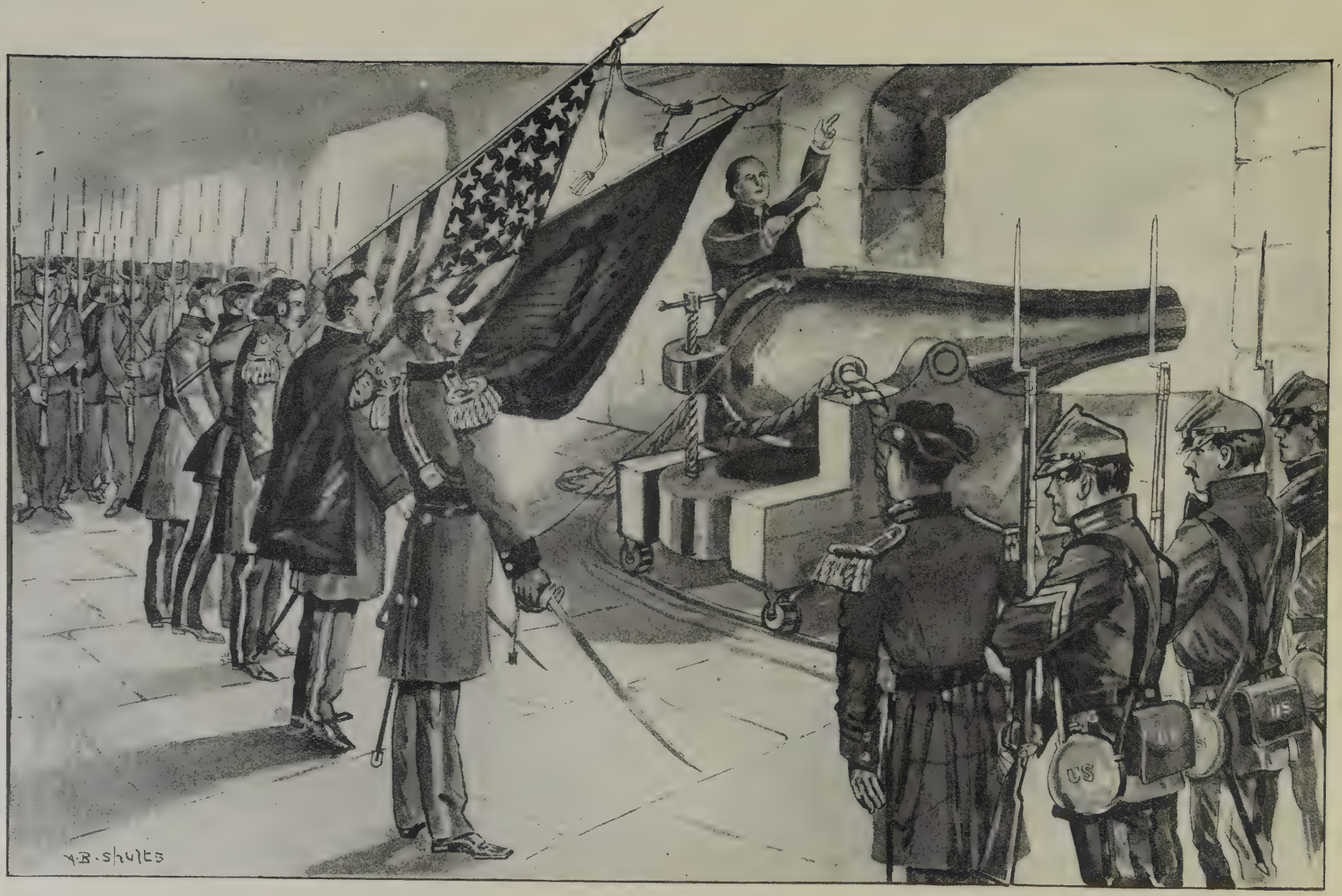
Eighth and Thirteenth Brooklyn Regiments. When the fleet reached Anapolis, the Sixty-ninth were placed on Arlington Heights in Virginia, to guard the line of railroad from Anapolis to Washington. There they engaged in throwing up a fortification, and in honour of their colonel it was called Fort Corcoran, the first of such defences erected during the approaching contest, and over which a flag of the United States was raised.[75] Soon they were joined by the remainder of their regiments, and by Captain Thomas Francis Meagher, who had raised a company of Zouaves in New York.[76] From the New England and other States, numbers of Irish and other recruits were daily arriving with the various regiments that had been mustered into service, and that were being hastily concentrated in that most important position.

On the 19th of April, the President issued another proclamation in which he gave notice that the ports of South Carolina, Georgia, Alabama, Mississippi and Texas were placed under blockade. The important navy-yard at Norfolk Virginia, menaced by the Confederate

Thomas Fay; Second-Lieutenants, James L. Dungan, and Michael O'Boyle; Orderly Sergeant, M. Maguire, with one hundred and twenty men. Company E—Captain P. Kelly; First-Lieutenant, John Bagley; Orderly Sergeant, Andrew Reed, with one hundred men. Company F—Captain John Breslin; First-Lieutenant, P. Duffy; Second-Lieutenants, M. P. Breslin, —Dalton, with one hundred men. Company G—Captain Felix Duffy; First-Lieutenant, Henry J. M'Mahon; Orderly Sergeant, Thomas Phibbs, with one hundred and twenty men. Company H—Captain James Kelly; First-Lieutenant, W. Butler; Second-Lieutenants, James Lyons and James Gannon; Orderly Sergeant, F. Welpley, with one hundred and twenty-six men. Company J—Lieutenant John Coonan, commanding; Second-Lieutenant, Thomas M. Canton, with one hundred and two men.

[75] See Captain D. P. Conyngham's most interesting and valuable book, "The Irish Brigade and its Campaigns," chap. i., pp. 11 to 13. Glasgow and London edition, 8vo.

[76] This brilliant Irish patriot, orator and soldier was born in Waterford Ireland, on the 3rd of August 1823. He was educated from the age of nine, at Clongowes Wood College County of Kildare, by the Jesuits, for six years, when he was sent to Stonyhurst College, near Preston in England, leaving that institution in 1843. He then joined Daniel O'Connell in his demand for a Repeal of the Union, but soon afterwards he became allied with the Young Ireland Party, whose object was to obtain Irish independence of the English Government by force of arms. On the failure of that movement in October he was captured, convicted of treason and condemned to death, which sentence was afterwards commuted to banishment for life. He was banished to Van Diemen's Land, but in 1852 he escaped to the United States. He was there admitted to the bar, but at the beginning of the Civil War, he abandoned that profession to engage in a military career. He was prominent in all the early battles fought in the East, but after the battle of Chancellorville, his brigade became so decimated that he resigned its command. In 1864, he was re-commissioned brigadier-general of volunteers. In January 1865, he was relieved from duty in Tennessee, and ordered for report to General Sherman in Savannah; however, the close of the war prevented his performing any further military service. Afterwards, he became Secretary of Montana Territory, and while acting Governor there, he fell from the deck of a steamboat into the Missouri River, near Fort Benton, where he was drowned on the 1st of July, 1867.




COPYRIGHTED

BAPTISM OF BIG GUN

At Fort Corcoran, (the first fort built by Union troops) in June 1861, Rev. Thomas J. Mooney, Chaplain of the 69th Regiment, N. Y., baptised a large gun, dedicating it to the defense of the Stars and Stripes, and naming it "Hunter" in honor of Colonel David A. Hunter, Commander of the Brigade, in which the 69th served.

forces, was dismantled with its stores, while the Federal officers sunk or destroyed several vessels to prevent their capture. On the 3rd of May, President Lincoln again issued a proclamation, calling out for service of the United States, during three years or during the continuance of the war, 42,000 volunteers.[77] He recognised the fact, likewise, that the Executive had been too weak in trained and organised defenders for an emergency such as the present, and he decreed that the regular army should be increased by 23,000 soldiers, while the navy should be reinforced by 18,000 seamen.[78]

## CHAPTER XXVI.

Opening of the Rebellion in Missouri—The Confederate Constitution—Maryland—West Virginia—General Beauregard placed over the Confederate Army in Virginia—Provision made by Congress to carry on the War—The Confederates establish their Seat of Government at Richmond—General McDowell commanding the United States Troops advances to meet the Confederates—Battle of Bull Run—Defeat of the Federals—Reverses of the Federals in Missouri—Measures taken by Congress—Troubles in Kentucky—General Thomas West Sherman obtains a Victory over the Confederates in South Carolina—General Scott, Commander-in-Chief of the United States Army, resigns—Jefferson Davis elected President over the South—Action of Napoleon III. and of Lord Palmerston—Seizure of Messrs. Mason and Slidell—Preparations for War in the Northern and Southern States.

WITHOUT any regular organization of forces, the ramifications of this conspiracy were most extensive, and able leaders were soon found to give it shape and direction. In the early part of 1861, popular agitation had reached a high degree of excitement, and even in some of the States that had not formally seceded—especially in Missouri and Kentucky—great efforts had been made by partisans and sympathisers to co-operate with the Confederates.[1] The Governor of the former State, Claiborne F. Jackson[2] was also in league with them. The political excitement had become intense in Missouri, when the Catholic Archbishop of St. Louis Most Rev. Peter Richard Kenrick[3] issued a pastoral to

[77] See Lieutenant-Colonel Fletcher's "History of the American War from 1861 to 1865," Vol. i., chap. iv.

[78] On the side of the Confederates, with whom he served, Lieutenant-Colonel Richard Taylor has written "Reminiscences of Secession: Destruction and Reconstruction, Personal Experiences of the late War in the United States." Published by Blackwood and Sons, Edinburgh, 8vo.

[1] See Lieutenant-Colonel Fletcher's "History of the American War from 1861 to 1864," Vol. i., chap. ii., p. 24.

[2] See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. iii., p. 335.

[3] This distinguished prelate was born in Dublin Ireland, 17th of August 1806. He came to the United States in 1833. In 1841, he became co adjutor to Bishop Rosati of St. Louis, and on his death succeeded, September 25th 1843. In 1847, his See was constitued a metropolitan seat, and he received the title of Arch-

his flock, on the 4th of March 1861; and in this he counselled them to beware of aggressive individuals or bodies, not recognised by the laws.[4] The bold and decisive action of Captain Nathaniel Lyon, U.S.A., also saved Missouri from joining the seceding States.[5] Hostile bands had collected and formed a camp outside St. Louis, with a design of seizing on the United States Arsenal within that city; but owing to his zeal and energy, the encampment was captured, and the insurgents were dispersed on the 10th of May.[6] In the western parts of Missouri, the General of Militia Sterling Price[7] raised the standard of rebellion, and began to form various bodies to aid his designs.[8] Then Captain Lyon moved westward, and took possession of Jefferson City, on the 15th of June. The Confederates had mustered a force under Colonel John S. Marmaduke.[9] At Boonville on the 17th of June, the insurgents were defeated by Lyon in a battle, where Colonel Philip Henry Sheridan greatly distinguished himself, and first gave earnest of those signal services he afterwards rendered to the Union.[10] After that defeat, Governor Jackson and several members of the State Legislature fled hastily to Lexington; while Sterling Price withdrew to the south-western parts of Missouri to gather recruits, and these were brought chiefly from Arkansas. Meantime, under the command of Captain Thomas William Sweeney,[11] about 2,500 men were sent forward from the Arsenal to Rolla, whence Colonel Franz Sigel[12] marched with about 1,500 men towards Springfield, and he reached Carthage on the 4th of July. The enemy, to the number of 4,000 or 5,000, were in a position some miles away; but, resolving to attack them without cavalry, Sigel was

bishop. See *ibid.*, pp. 519, 520. He died March 4th 1896.

[4] See John Gilmary Shea's "History of the Catholic Church within the Limits of the United States," Vol. iv., Book x., chap. i., p. 610.

[5] See James Peckham's "Life of General Nathaniel Lyon," pp. 147 to 160, New York, 1866.

[6] See "The Fight for Missouri," by Thomas L. Snead, New York, 1886.

[7] See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of Biography," Vol. v., pp. 118, 119.

[8] See "Histoire de la Guerre Civile en Amérique," par M. le Comte de Paris, Tome i., Liv. ii., chap. iv., pp. 280, 281.

[9] See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. iv., pp. 211, 212.

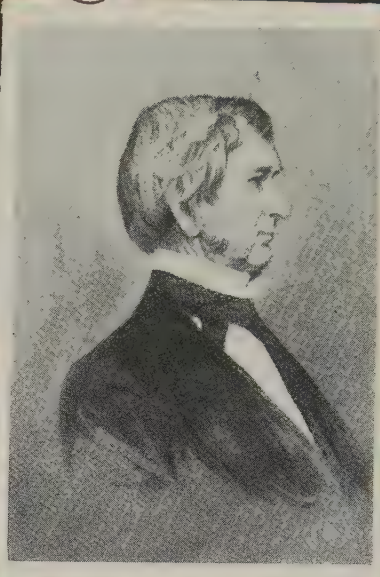
[10] His parents John and Mary Sheridan came from Cavan County Ireland in 1830, and settled in Albany N. Y., where he was born on the 6th of March 1831. He died in Nonquitt Mass. August 5th 1888. See "Personal Memoirs of P. H. Sheridan, General U. S. Army," Vol. i., chap. i., pp. 1, 2, and chap. ix., pp. 144 to 166. This most interesting Autobiography appeared in London 1888, in two volumes, 8vo. Chatto and Windus. It is written in a clear style and modest spirit; and it is the best authority for the many battles in which the author was personally engaged.

[11] He was born in Cork Ireland, and he had already served with distinction in the Mexican War. He fought bravely during the Confederate War, and he was appointed Brigadier-General of Volunteers on the 25th of May 1861. See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. vi., pp. 6, 7.

[12] This brave soldier was a native of Sinshein Baden, where he was born November 8th 1824. He served in various military capacities in Europe, but he became more particularly distinguished during the after course of this war. See *ibid.*, Vol. v., p. 524.



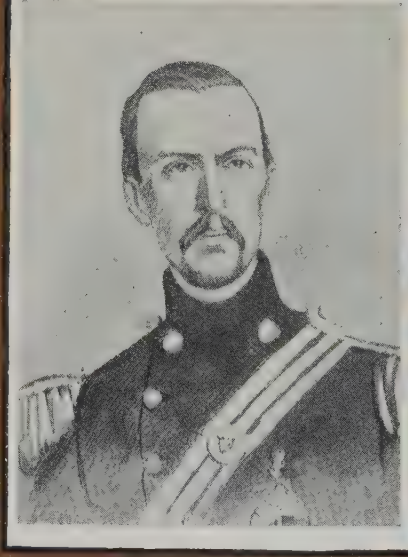
WINFIELD SCOTT,
Lieutenant-General of U.S. Army.



WILLIAM HENRY SEWARD,
Secretary of State.



BENJAMIN FRANKLIN BUTLER,
Major-General of U.S. Army.



MICHAEL CORCORAN,
Brigadier-General of U.S. Army.

obliged after a sharp conflict to retreat for Carthage. On the 6th of July the Federals under Sigel, and the Confederates under Price, fought an indecisive battle, in which the former lost 43 men and the latter 160. Meantime, gathering regulars and volunteers as he advanced, Lyon arrived at Springfield to the support of his lieutenant on the 13th of July, while the Confederates retired again to the south-western portions of the State. Moreover, Major General Fremont was placed as chief over the armies of the West, where he had the difficult task of organization and equipment to undertake. The position of Lyon, having only between 7,000 to 8,000 troops, was now found to be dangerous, as bands of Confederates began to swarm throughout all parts of Missouri; and soon Price menaced Springfield at the head of more than 12,000 men, half of them being cavalry, with fifteen pieces of cannon.[13]

When secession had been decreed, a provisional Congress of one House—each Confederated State having one vote—was appointed; while the mass of voters held no control whatever over the action of those State Conventions, which had been so rashly called into existence. A permanent Constitution having been adopted by the Provisional Congress March 11th 1861,[14] it was ratified by the State Conventions or Legislatures before April 29th. It then recognised a Senate[15] and a House of Representatives.[16] Even in its forms, the Southern Constitution much resembled that of the United States, but with the important changes, that State sovereignty was to be a cardinal principle; it lengthened the term of President and Vice-President to six years; the re-election of the former was prohibited; it gave the cabinet seats without votes in Congress; it allowed the President to veto single sections in appropriation bills; it forbade Congress to vote money for internal improvements, to pass protective tariffs or to grant bounties; it forbade removals from office, except for dishonesty, incapacity, inefficiency, misconduct or neglect of duty, and the reasons to be reported to the Senate; while it directed Congress to recognise and protect in the Territories "the institution of negro slavery as it now exists in the

[13] For the general events of the several campaigns, one of the most interesting of the works afterwards published is Benson John Lossing's "Pictorial History of the Civil War in the United States of America," illustrated, in three volumes. Philadelphia and Hartford, 1866 to 1869, imp. 8vo.

[14] See Jefferson Davis' "Rise and fall of the Confederate Government," Vol. i., Part iii., chap. x., pp. 258 to 264, also Appendix K., 640 to 675.

[15] The Senate of thirteen seceded States comprised 26, being two for each State.

[16] A full House consisted of 106 members as follows, viz., for Alabama, 9; for Arkansas, 4; for Florida, 2; for Georgia, 10; for Kentucky, 12; for Louisiana, 6; for Mississippi, 7; for Missouri, 7; for North Carolina, 10; for South Carolina, 6; for Tennessee, 11; for Texas, 6; and for Virginia, 16. The delegations from Kentucky and Missouri were fictitious, and only submitted as a basis for ulterior claims. They disappeared however in 1864. See "A Rebel War Clerk's Diary at the Confederate States Capital, 1861-1865," by John B. Jones. In two volumes, Philadelphia, 1866, 8vo.

Confederate States." The first presidential and congressional election under such Constitution took place, November 6th, 1861; while Jefferson Davis and Alexander Hamilton Stephens[17] were chosen for the respective offices of President and Vice-President afterwards held by them.[18]

During the party excitement which led to that unhappy rebellion in Maryland, a strong secessionist feeling had been aroused; and especially at Baltimore. When troops began to arrive there from the New England States in April, riots broke out which were calculated to obstruct their advance.[19] Conciliatory measures were adopted, however, to allay these alarming manifestations on the part of the citizens; when other reinforcements coming from the north were directed upon Washington, by a more circuitous route. Some stern repressive measures were necessary, moreover, to procure submission; but afterwards no serious difficulties were experienced by the Government, to keep that State within the Union.[20]

Although the people living in the eastern part of the State of Virginia had been drawn into the Rebellion, as sympathisers generally with the slave-holding interests, and as being mostly descendants from old families there long settled; yet, beyond the Blue Ridge Mountains to the west, the inhabitants were of a more mixed composition, and for the most part they pronounced against secession.[21] However, a great number favoured the Southern cause, and this led to some internal disorder. When Virginia had adopted the secessionist ordinance on the 17th of April, the western portion of that State beyond the Allegany Mountains resolved by an almost unanimous protest adhesion to the United States. In May a convention of delegates from twenty-five counties met at Wheeling. Soon the leaders of this movement were in communication with President Lincoln at Washington, and with Major-General McClellan[22] at Cincinnati Ohio. To suppress such manifestations,

[17] A. H. Stephens wrote a "History of the War between the States: tracing its Origin, Causes and Results;" while it especially refers to the preliminary constitutional questions contested. It appeared in Philadelphia, 1868, 8vo. Also, a "Constitutional View of the late War between the States," two vols., 8vo.

[18] They were inaugurated, February 22nd 1862, and appointed to serve until 1868. See the "Encyclopædia Americana," Vol. ii., *Art* Confederate States, pp. 349 to 353.

[19] See General B. F. Butler's "Autobiography and Personal Reminiscences," chap. iv., pp. 173 to 216.

[20] From the year 1861 to 1868, "The Rebellion Record," edited by Frank Moore appeared at New York, in twelve 8vo. volumes. This, and the Reports on the Conduct of the War, printed by Congress, furnish materials for consultation, on nearly all details of this great struggle between the Northern and the Southern States. However, it must be observed, those accounts generally present each particular statement with a bias in favour of the Federals.

[21] For a correct appreciation of the state of parties before and about this period, the reader should refer to Edward MacPherson's "Political History of the United States of America during the great Rebellion." Washington, 1865, 8vo.

[22] He was born in Philadelphia Pa., December 3rd 1826, and embracing a military career; he was distinguished as an engineer, with Generals Robert E. Lee and Beauregard,

Colonel G. A. Porterfield had been sent with a detachment from Richmond to Philippi, a village situated in a mountain valley. A provisional government was soon formed at Wheeling, and an organization was effected, likewise, to prevent West Virginia from falling under the Confederates' power.[23]

Meanwhile, Colonel Benjamin Franklin Kelly[24] took active measures to raise volunteers, and a regiment was formed of which he held command. At this time, Major-General McClellan had divisional command of Cincinnati and the west, at the head of 13,000 men. He directed two Ohio regiments to enter Western Virginia on the 26th of May, in order to support the Union cause.[25] On the morning of June 3rd, Colonel Kelly with the troops he had collected marched against Colonel G. A. Porterfield, who was attacked with vigour, and driven from his position at Philippi.[26]

Meantime, the Confederates sent a force under Brigadier-General Henry A. Wise[27] ex-Governor of Virginia to the Kanawha Valley, in order to repair the disaster at Philippi, while General Robert S. Garnett[28] was to prevent succour arriving from the direction of Washington. With a greatly superior army, General McClellan entered West Virginia, and with Brigadiers William Starke Rosecrans[29] and Thomas A. Morris,[30] serving under his command, forced the enemy to retreat in disorder during the month of July.[31] In the pursuit, General Garnett was killed, and during the remainder of that year, the Confederates were gradually manœuvred beyond the Allegany Mountains, nor could they make any permanent impression on West Virginia.[32]

At a place called Big Bethel, about fifteen miles from Fortress

in the Mexican war. As captain, he retired from the army in 1857; but he was commissioned as major-general of the Ohio Militia Volunteers April 23rd 1861. See the "Encyclopædia Americana," Vol. iii., pp. 649, 650.

[23] See Dr. John William Draper's "History of the American Civil War," Vol. ii., sect. ix., chap. xlviii., pp. 241 to 247.

[24] Of Irish descent, and born in New Hampton N. H., April 10th 1867, he served with distinction during this war. See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. iii., p. 504.

[25] Brigadier-General Robert Emmet Clary, born in 1805 of Irish parents in Ashfield Mass., served as chief quartermaster in the department of West Virginia and in various other useful capacities to the close of the war.

[26] The Scene of the Campaign in Western Virginia is shown on a map attached to Lieut.-Colonel Fletcher's "History of the American War from 1861 to 1865," Vol. i., chap. iv., p. 92.

[27] See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. vi., pp. 579, 580.

[28] See *ibid.* Vol. ii., p. 607.

[29] He was born in Kingston Ohio, Sept. 6th 1819, and he graduated at the U. S. Military Academy in 1842. He served with distinction from the beginning to the close of the war. See "Encyclopædia Americana." Vol. iv. p. 406.

[30] See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vo. iv., p. 419.

[31] See M. le Comte de Paris, "Histoire de la Guerre Civile en Amérique," Tome i., Liv. ii., chap. ii. pp. 401 to 408.

[32] See "Abraham Lincoln, a History," Vol. iv., chap. xix., pp. 327 to 340.

Monroe, a considerable number of Confederates had been posted, under the command of Colonel Daniel Harvey Hill,[33] in a strong position; while at Yorktown Va., Colonel John B. Magruder[34] had concentrated some forces. An expedition was planned, by General Benjamin Franklin Butler,[35] to capture that post; but, owing to mismanagement, the attack resulted in a defeat for the Federals on the 9th of June.[36]

Meanwhile General Pierre Gustave T. Beauregard[37] had been removed from Charleston at the beginning of June, to take command of the Confederate Army in Virginia. His head-quarters were established at Manassas Junction, about thirty miles south-west from the city of Washington. The United States Congress having assembled, in his message on the 5th of July President Lincoln required to be provided with 400,000 men, and with 400,000,000 of dollars, to carry on the war. Duly estimating the necessity for prompt and vigorous action, the Senate and House of Representatives passed a bill, which even authorised the rising of an army, amounting to 500,000 men and to a loan of 500,000,000 dollars. At that time, General Scott had command in Chief over the United States land forces; and he began to form dispositions for an advance.[38] The Confederate government resolved to fix their place for residence; and, on the 20th of that month, they assembled at Richmond in Virginia.[39] This was deemed to be a position the most suitable, for various political and strategic reasons.[40]

At this time, the head-quarters of the Federal army commanded by General Irvin McDowell[41] were at Centreville, about twenty miles south-west from Washington, and about eight miles north-east from the Confederate troops, who were concentrated on a plateau, and in an excellent position at Manassas railway junction.[42] Without a good knowledge of the forces opposed to him, McDowell resolved to advance. Meantime, the Confederates were hurrying up troops; and on both sides, it had been intended to commence the attack. The Union forces

[33] See the "Encyclopædia Americana," Vol. iii., p. 327. Also Dr. John William Draper's "History of the American Civil War," Vol. ii., sect. ix., chap. xlviii., pp. 248 to 253.

[34] See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. iv., p. 175.

[35] Born in Deerfield N. H., November 5th 1818, and he served with great distinction during the Confederate War. See *ibid.*, Vol. i., pp. 477, 478.

[36] See Lieut.-Colonel Fletcher's "History of the American War from 1861 to 1865," Vol. i., chap. iv., pp. 85 to 87.

[37] See Colonel Alfred Roman's "Military Operations of General Beauregard in the War between the States, 1861-65," etc., Vol. i., chap. vi., pp. 65 to 75. Two vols. New York 1884, 8vo.

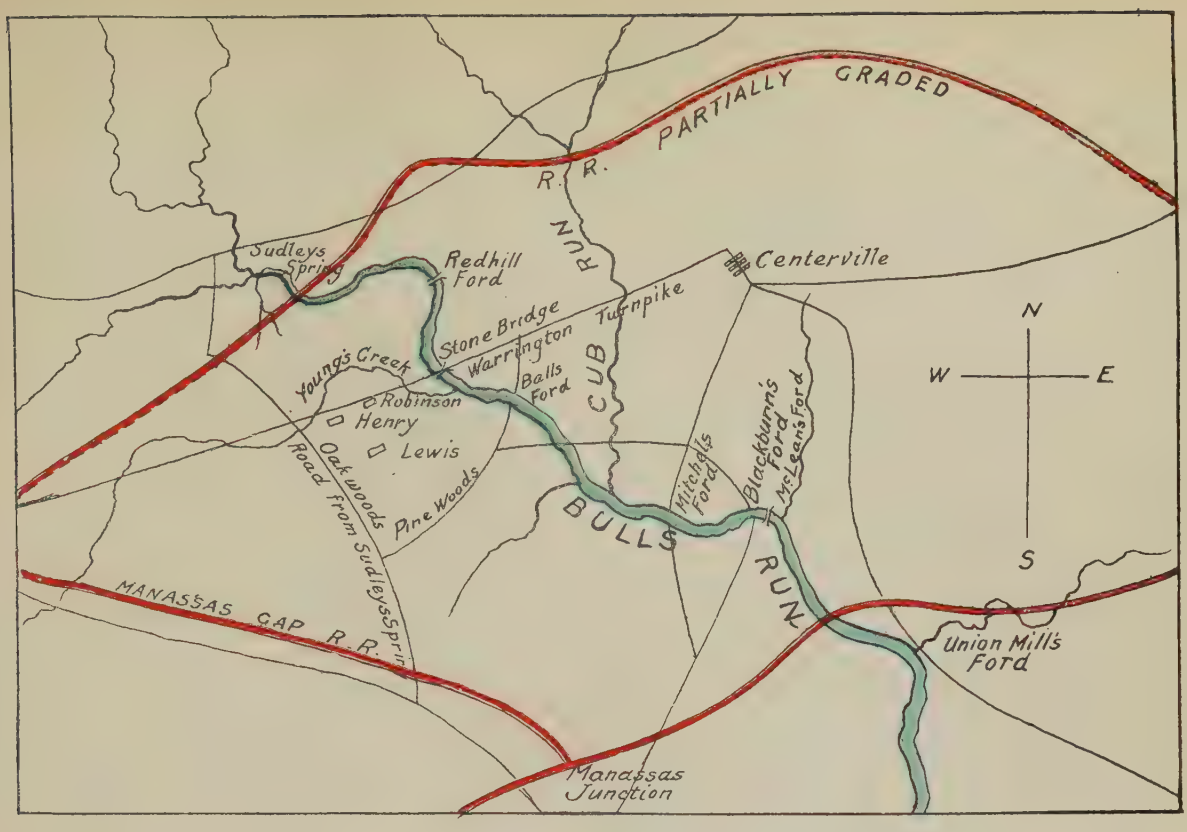
[38] See "Abraham Lincoln, a History," Vol. iv., chap. xviii., pp. 308 to 326.

[39] See George H. Townsend's "Manual of Dates," p. 863. London: 1862, 8vo.

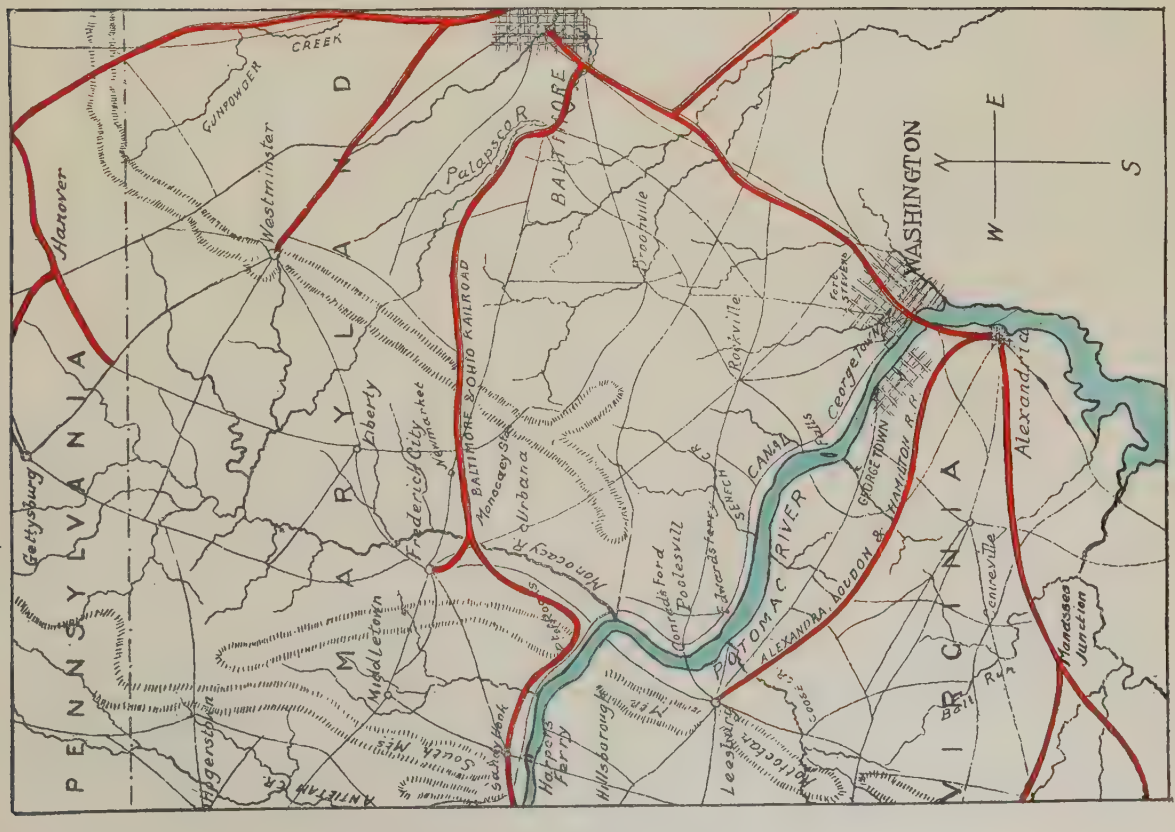
[40] See Dr. John William Draper's "History of the American Civil War," Vol. ii., sect. vii., chap. xl., pp. 108 to 114.

[41] See an account of him, in Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. iv., pp. 109 to 111.

[42] Their relative positions are well set out in an Outline Map of the first Battle fought at Bull Run, in "Abraham Lincoln, a History," Vol. iv., chap. xx., p. 350.




Battle-Field of Bull's Run.




Baltimore and Washington at Opening of the War.

anticipated their opponents, who were then thrown on the defensive On Sunday morning the 21st of July, the first battle of great importance between the two main armies was commenced by the Federals at about six o'clock, in the vicinity of a stream called Bull Run. However, Brigadier-General Joseph Eggleston Johnston[43] with 9,000 troops arrived in time to reinforce the Confederates. During that forenoon, the attacking army appeared to have the advantage. They pushed on bravely, and fought with great determination. About three o'clock in the afternoon, General Beauregard[44] unmasked certain concealed batteries, and Brigadier-General Thomas Jonathan Jackson[45] having formed his brigade in a strong position was able to withstand all M'Dowell's attempts to dislodge him. Seven fresh regiments arrived about four o'clock, and these were thrown against the extreme right, and partly in the rear of the Union lines.. The Federal troops then began to break and run, while the retreat soon became a rout, and finally a panic.[46] Then pursuit was continued eastwards towards Centreville, and northwards towards Leesburg. The flying army lost nearly all their artillery, a large portion of their small arms, with most of their ammunition, baggage and stores. Colonel Michael Corcoran,[47] commanding the 69th regiment of New York Militia, fought with surpassing bravery in this battle, where he was wounded and taken prisoner.[48] On the

[43] This able man, born in Virginia 1807, embraced a military career, and served with great distinction in Florida and Mexico. Long after the Confederate struggle ceased, he published a "Narrative of Military Operations directed during the late War between the States," New York, 1874, 8vo.

[44] Born near New Orleans La., May 28th 1818. See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. i., p. 210.

[45] He was of Irish descent, and had served with great bravery in the Mexican War. On this field he checked the Confederate retreat, and for his firmness obtained the sobriquet of "Stonewall," by which he was afterwards familiarly known. His Life written by Robert L. Dabney was published at New York, 1863, and by John Eston Cooke in 1866. Later still, his biography has been written by Lieutenant-Colonel G. F. R. Henderson, and published in London, in two volumes, 8vo., 1898.

[46] See "Histoire de la Guerre Civile en Amérique," par M. le Comte de Paris, Tome Premier, Liv. iii., chap. ii., pp. 394 to 454. Also, Charles C. Coffin's "Four Years of Fighting: a Volume of Personal Observations with the Army and Navy from the first Battle of Bull Run to the Fall of Richmond," Boston, 1866, 8vo.

[47] He was born in Carrowkeel, County of Sligo Ireland, September 21st 1827. In 1847 he emigrated to the United States and settled in New York City.

[48] He was sent to the South, and kept in close confinement, until he was released by exchange on the 15th of August 1862. He was commissioned Brigadier-General, dating from July 21st 1861. Afterwards, he organized the Corcoran Legion, which took part in the battles of Nansemond River and Suffolk, during April 1863. He held the advance of the enemy on Norfolk in check. That legion was attached to the Army of the Potomac. While riding in company with General Thomas Francis Meagher his horse fell near Fairfax Courthouse Virginia, and he died on the 22nd of December 1863. His portrait and a memoir are to be found, in Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," edited by James Grant Wilson and John Fiske, Vol. i., p. 737,

Federal side, 19 officers and 462 men were killed, with 64 officers and 947 men wounded.[49] The loss of the Confederates was considerably less; but, this included six superior officers, besides the men killed. The Confederate army was stated to have numbered 15,000 men, and the Federal army 18,000.[50] This opening battle of the campaign gave the former very great *prestige*, and the latter most serious discouragement.[51]

In July a brave Irish-American Colonel James A. Mulligan[52]—who had raised the 23rd Illinois Regiment nearly 1,200 strong in Chicago—left Jefferson city to operate against the rebels in the State of Missouri. This regiment was known as the Western Irish Brigade. On the 1st of August, Brigadier-General Lyon left Springfield, and advanced to meet the combined forces of Price, Benjamin MacCulloch,[53] Pearce and James Henry MacBride;[54] but, after routing their advanced guard, he was obliged to retreat before their greatly superior numbers. While the Confederates arrived at Wilson's Creek on the 9th, with great heroism but under-estimating their force, General Lyon thought to surprise them, by detaching Siegel towards their rear during the night. Although in the first instance Lyon threw the enemy into confusion, his plan miscarried; and the Confederates having rallied successively attacked Siegel—abandoned by a great number of his men—and then fell upon Lyon's forces in their front. For a long time the unequal fight continued. On the 11th August, Brigadier-General Lyon with 5,000 men had thus attacked 12,000 Confederates at Wilson's Creek.[55] There he was killed,[56] but his forces retreated in good order to Springfield.

[49] According to the official returns. See Dr. John William Draper's "History of the American Civil War," Vol. ii., sect. vii., chap. xl., pp. 115 to 126.

[50] See Joseph Irving's "Annals of our Time," p. 451.

[51] See Lieutenant-Colonel Fletcher's "History of the American War from 1861 to 1865," Vol. i., chap. v., pp. 107 to 140.

[52] Born in Utica N. Y., June 25th 1830, of Irish parents, he inherited along with a stalwart, physical constitution and cast in a heroic mould, an intense love of Ireland, and a true devotion to the Catholic faith. In 1836 his parents removed to Chicago, he became a lawyer, and he edited the *Western Tablet*. He fought bravely during the war. At length he fell mortally wounded in the battle at Kernstown Va., July 24th 1864. He died two days after, and his remains were brought to Chicago where they were interred in Calvary Cemetery. The State and citizens of Illinois erected a magnificent monument, surmounted by a Celtic Cross, to his memory. This was unveiled with solemn ceremonies May 30th 1885; the Hon. William J. Onahan, LL.D., delivering an eloquent and appropriate panegyric on the occasion.

[53] Born in Rutherford Co. Tenn., November 11th 1811. See Samuel Reid's "Scouting Expeditions of McCulloch's Rangers," Philadelphia, 1850, 8vo.

[54] Born in Kentucky about 1815. See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. iv., p. 74.

[55] See R. J. Holcombe's "Account of the Battle of Wilson's Creek," and Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. iv., pp. 67, 68.

[56] For the number of troops engaged, this was a most obstinate and sanguinary battle: the Federals had 208 killed and 701 wounded; the Confederates lost 411 killed and 1,317

Meanwhile, Colonel Mulligan had another task assigned to him. His directions were to occupy and defend Lexington with the force under his command. There he arrived on the 9th of September, and he commenced throwing up some earthworks ; but soon, General Sterling Price had an army of 22,000 or 23,000 men ready to invest it. No reinforcements arrived for Mulligan, and after a most heroic resistance, he was obliged to surrender on the 20th of that month. With 2,800 men, under great difficulties and for nine days, he held the town of Lexington against an overwhelming force of the enemy under the command of Price.[57]

During this year, also, a revolt of the Mormons was threatened in Utah, when Colonel Patrick Edward Connor[58] raised a Volunteer regiment of Californians, and marched there to check that movement. The Indians in the distant western territories were addicted to plunder the whites, and their bands were organized for that purpose.[59] Against these, likewise, he was obliged to operate, although that service was particularly harassing and dangerous.[60]

To provide for the construction of iron-clad ships and floating batteries, a bill was passed by the Federal Congress ; while President Lincoln issued a proclamation, prohibiting all commercial intercourse between the United States and the seceded States. It declared, that property seized in the possession of Confederates should be confiscated, as likewise all ships, under similar circumstances, captured on the high seas. Soon, owing to the energy and capacity of Gideon Welles Secretary of the Navy, war-vessels were built or purchased and hastily equipped for active service. Extemporized cruisers were fitted up from the merchant service, and sent on duty to the various blockade stations. [61]

The battle of Bull Run was not followed up by General Beauregard, but he occupied the ground won without further molestation for nine months succeeding. Meantime, General MacDowell was deposed from the chief command of the Federal troops. On the 25th of July, Major

wounded. See M. le Comte de Paris, "Histoire de la Guerre Civile en Amerique," Tome ii., Liv. i., chap. i., pp. 11 to 40.

[57] See "Abraham Lincoln, a History," Vol. iv., chap. xxiv., pp. 426 to 428.

[58] He was born in the south of Ireland March 17th 1820, and he emigrated to New York when a boy. At the age of nineteen, he served in the regular army during the Florida war, and afterwards as captain of Texas Volunteers, he fought in the chief Mexican battles, under Albert Sydney Johnston. See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. i., pp. 708, 709.

[59] On the 29th of January 1863 Connor destroyed over 300 warriors in their fortified camp at Bear Creek Washington Territory. Soon afterwards he was commissioned as Brigadier-General, and appointed to command in the Utah district. There he effectually established the authority of the government.

[60] At the closing of the civil war in 1864, he was brevetted as Major-General, and afterwards he served against the Sioux and Arapahoes Indians, who were troublesome on the great western routes.

[61] See "Abraham Lincoln, a History," Vol. v., chap. i., pp. 1 to 12.

General George B. McClellan commenced the organization and discipline of the Grand Army of the Potomac, he having been appointed to command the Department of Washington and north-eastern Virginia.[62] The task he undertook was a difficult one, but it was accomplished with great method and ability.[63] On the 31st of August, Lieutenant-Colonel Silas Casey[64] was appointed Brigadier-General of Volunteers. To him was assigned the task of organizing and of disciplining these newly enlisted men in and near the capital, which was strengthened and secured by lines of defensive works.[65] On the same day the Confederate Congress commissioned five superior generals,[66] and and in the following order—viz.: Samuel Cooper,[67] Albert Sydney Johnston,[68] Robert Edward Lee,[69] Joseph E. Johnston, and Pierre G. T. Beauregard.

Like many of the Slave States, Kentucky was divided in sentiment on the cause to be espoused, when the rebellion broke out. State Guards, commanded by General Simon B. Buckner,[70] with the Governor Beriah Magoffin,[71] favoured the Confederates; while Home Guards, favoured by a majority of the State Legislature, declared for the Union. The Confederate troops from Tennessee, under General Felix K. Zollicoffer,[72] were about to invade the State, when over 40,000 men were ordered to be called out by the Legislature. The Protestant

[62] This general had previously figured in the Mexican War, and he had been eminently successful in saving West Virginia from falling into the hands of the Confederates during that summer. See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. iv., pp. 79 to 84.

[63] See "Histoire de la Guerre Civile en Amérique," par M. le Comte de Paris, Tome Premier, Liv. iii., chap. iii., pp. 465 to 470.

[64] He was of Irish lineage and born at East Greenwich R.I., in 1807. He had formerly distinguished himself in the Mexican battles of 1847. Subsequently he commanded a division in General Keyes' corps of the Army of the Potomac, and having been greatly distinguished at the battle of Fair Oaks, 31st May 1862, he was brevetted Brigadier-General of the United States Army and Major-General of Volunteers. He wrote some prized military treatises. See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. i., pp. 550, 551.

[65] For the military organisation effected, two published works are full of useful information, "The Volunteer Quarter-Master," and Brackett's "History of the United States Cavalry."

[66] For an account of these, and written from a Confederate point of view, the reader is referred to a work intituled "The Southern Generals." Also, Heros Von Brocke's "Memoirs of the Confederate War," Two Vols., London, 1866, 8vo.

[67] He was born at Hackensack N. J., June 12th 1798. He served during the Florida and Mexican Wars. In March 1861, he retired from the United States service, and he was now appointed Adjutant and Inspector-General of the Confederate army. See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. i., p. 732.

[68] His son William Preston Johnston has written and published a "Life of General Albert Sydney Johnston," New York, 1878, 8vo.

[69] He was born in Stratford Va., January 19th 1807, and he was the ablest of all the Southern Generals. See General A. L. Long's "Memoirs of Robert E. Lee." New York, 1886, 8vo.

[70] See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. i., p. 440.

[71] See *ibid.*, Vol. iv., p. 174.

[72] See *ibid.*, Vol. vi., p. 662.

Episcopal Bishop Leonidas Polk,[73] now brevetted a Confederate General, took possession of Columbas, a strong position, on September 4th; while General Merriwether Jeff. Thompson [74] co-operated with him, by occupying positions on the Missouri side of the River Mississippi. A few days later, the Federal General Hiram Ulysses S. Grant[75] occupied Paducah, where the Cumberland enters the Ohio River, with a small force of United States troops.[76] Louisville was also occupied. Soon afterwards, General Albert Sydney Johnston, being sent by President Davis to command the Western department, issued a proclamation justifying this entry of the Confederate Army into Kentucky, owing to the threatening attitude of the Federal Government; affirming also, that he was willing to withdraw his army from Kentucky, whenever he had satisfactory evidence of a similar intention on the part of the United States. Hostilities then commenced between the rival forces; and the horrors of an irregular warfare were inflicted on the population, with much destruction of life and property.[77] General Johnston occupied Bowling Green Ky., with 4,000 troops under General Buckner. This place he strongly fortified, and then he asked for additional forces from President Davis. Lexington in Kentucky was surrendered to the Confederate forces, after three days' fighting, during the month of September.

Meanwhile, an expedition having been organised against the South, to seize and hold Bull's Bay S.C., and Ferdinanda Fla, for the use of the blockading fleet, General Thomas West Sherman[78] with a body of troops effected a landing on the coast of Port Royal Bay, in South Carolina, on the 21st of October. After a battle, which lasted about four hours, he compelled the Confederates to abandon their forts, of which he then took possession.

At the end of this month, on account of his age and infirmities, General Scott resigned the command in chief of the United States army; while Major-General M'Clellan was appointed to succeed him.[79] The new General busily occupied himself in organizing and drilling the troops placed under his direction. Towards the close of this year, Jefferson Davis was formally elected Southern President, and he was

[73] See "Encyclopædia Americana," Vol. iv., p. 222.

[74] See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. vii. p. 94.

[75] At a later period he was appointed Commander-in-Chief of the Army of the West. Subsequently, as Lieutenant-General over all the United States Army, he directed its operations until the close of the war.

[76] See Brigadier-General Adam Badeau's "Military History of Ulysses S. Grant, from April 1861, to April, 1865," Vol. i., chap. i, This very detailed and accurate work, illustrated with several Maps of Battles, was issued at London and New York, 1881, in three volumes, 8vo.

[77] See "History of the American War from 1861 to 1865," by Lieut-Colonel Fletcher, Vol. i., chap. viii., pp. 193 to 199.

[78] He was born in Newport, R.I., and he served with distinction in the Mexican War, as also afterwards in Kansas. See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. v., p. 502.

[79] See "Abraham Lincoln, a History," Vol. iv., chap. xxv., pp. 440 to 470.

entrusted with the general direction of affairs for the term of six years.[80]

The French Emperor, Napoleon III. and the British Government—then directed by the tortuous policy of Lord Palmerston—as also the Tories and most influential oligarchical party in Great Britain, were rejoiced at the prospect of ruin, which then seemed impending over the great Transatlantic Republic; while the Irish people, with the democracy of England, Scotland, and Wales, dreaded the possible results of the coming contest, on the cause of freedom and progress. Early in the threatened struggle, Queen Victoria was urged through her ministers to favour the Confederates, and to issue a proclamation of neutrality, which accorded to them the rights of a belligerent power. These friendly indications of favour towards the rebels soon ripened into an assurance that they might reckon on the sympathies—if not the assistance—of France and of England, once they had entered upon a general war.[81]

Accordingly, to open negotiations with these countries, Messrs. James M. Mason[82] and John Slidell[83] were selected as the Southern Commissioners and bearers of European despatches. A steamer called the Trent had been running as an English mail-packet between Vera Cruz and the island of St. Thomas. On the 7th of November, 1851, she left Havanna, where she had called, to take in additional mails and passengers. Thence she proceeded to St. Thomas, where the mails and passengers were to be trans-shipped for England. Among the persons taken on board at Havanna were Messrs. Mason and Slidell. The government at Washington had received intelligence regarding their purposes, and without formal instruction given, measures were arranged to procure their detention or arrest. The Trent was compelled to stop by the San Jacinto, a vessel of war belonging to the United States, and under the command of Captain Charles Wilkes.[84] His misinterpretation of national law caused this officer to believe he was justified in boarding the English steamer. A lieutenant with a guard of armed marines demanded that Messrs. Mason and Slidell, with their secretaries, should be delivered up to him as prisoners of war.[85] This was

[80] An account of his administration, and a statement of its proceedings, will be found in a work written by himself, "The Rise and Fall of the Confederate Government," in Two Vols., London, 1881, 8vo.

[81] See John Bigelow, 'France and the Confederate Navy," New York, 1888, 8vo.

[82] See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. iv. p. 243.

[83] See "Encyclopædia Americana," Vol. iv., p. 530,

[84] He was born in New York City 1801, and he is said to have been a nephew of the celebrated English John Wilkes. He was then renowned as an explorer. In 1862, for distinguished services, he was made a commodore, and he, during the Confederate War, was vigilant in enforcing the blockade and in capturing blockade runners. As rear-admiral he retired in 1866, and he died in Washington, February 8th 1877. See "Encyclopædia Americana," Vol. iv., pp. 778, 779.

[85] See Joseph Irving's 'Annals of Our Time," p. 457. Also, Dr. John William Draper's "History of the American Civil War," Vol. ii., sect., xiii., chap. lxii., pp. 531 to 538.

at length done, but under protest. The Confederate despatches and papers meanwhile, and before their capture, had been previously destroyed.[86]

When intelligence of those proceedings reached England on the 27th of November, a cabinet council was held, and the conduct of Captain Wilkes was carefully considered, but in a spirit of hostility to the United States. As a result, the Government resolved to demand the release of those four persons, who had been seized. Various opinions were then held, and gave rise to discussions regarding the circumstances and the principles involved. As a menace to the Americans, Lord Palmerston at once despatched the Guards and other British troops to Canada.[87] However, prudential motives operated at that time, on both sides, and urged a pacific solution. The seizure act was undoubtedly warranted by the British claim of right to search, which led to the war of 1812. But the United States resolved to yield their prisoners to the British authorities, urged by the Secretary of State Mr. Seward.[88] He argued, that Captain Wilkes' action was opposed to the American interpretation of international law. Happily for the respective governments, an anticipated war and at a critical juncture was thus prevented.[89]

Meantime, Napoleon III. had desired to establish an empire in Mexico,[90] and chose for the victim of his visionary political schemes the unfortunate Maximilian, brother to the Austrian Emperor Francis Joseph. He had engaged Spain and England also in that enterprise, in which their respective cabinets had the same self-seeking but divergent speculations ;[91] however, all three powers united in desiring a dismemberment of the United States, and the occasion [92] seemed to be opportune when the civil war broke out. According to a preconcerted agreement, Spain equipped a squadron having nearly 6,000 soldiers on board ; and parting from Cuba, these arrived before Vera Cruz on the 8th of December 1861, taking possession of the city, without even a declaration of war, on the 7th of January 1862. The French with 2,400 troops and the English with 1,000 disembarked in the same port. Nevertheless, the imperious conditions of the French stipulations

[86] See "Abraham Lincoln, a History," Vol. v., chap. ii., pp. 21 to 41.

[87] See "The Life of John Henry Temple, Viscount Palmerston: 1846-1865," &c., by the Hon. Evelyn Ashley, M.P., Vol. ii. chap. viii., pp. 219, 220.

[88] The official correspondence of William Henry Seward has been published by order of the Congress. His Life and an edition of his works have been edited by George E. Baker to 1853, in three vols. A fourth vol. was added in 1862 and a fifth in 1884. Seward died in Auburn N.Y., Oct. 10th 1872.

[89] See Spencer Walpole's "Life of Lord John Russell," Vol. ii., pp. 344, 345.

[90] See on this subject, the French account, in the work of General Regis de Trobriand, "Quatre Annees a l' Armee du Potomac," in two volumes, Paris, 1867.

[91] See Justin M'Carthy's "History of our own Times," Vol. iii., chap. xliv., pp. 165 to 167.

[92] On this subject, as on subsequent occurrences in relation to the Emperor's policy, the reader may consult Colonel F. Lecomte's "L' Histoire de la Secession."

caused a disagreement on the part of Spain and England. The honour and interests of both these nations had been already sufficiently compromised, by their respective ministers; and now, they resolved on withdrawing their troops, leaving to Napoleon III. the prosecution of this iniquitously provoked war.[93] These proceedings were in direct contravention of the Monroe doctrine, which had hitherto been accepted as the policy of all parties in the United States; but to engage in a European war, at that particular time, must have been attended with great risk and embarrassment to their Government.[94] The forms of diplomacy were adopted, to veil implied protests against the Mexican intervention by France; and the course of events rendered that intervention so complete a failure, that all occasion for future hostility was happily averted.[95]

Every effort was made by the President, the members of his Cabinet, the Senate, and House of Representatives, to equip and organise a vast army for that most serious civil war in which they were now engaged. In this endeavour, they were most zealously aided by the Northern people and by their Legislators.[96] The Congress of the Federal States met at Washington, on the 2nd of December. In his message which followed, President Lincoln stated the numbers of the Federal army to be over 20,000 regulars, and over 640,000 volunteers, the aggregate constituting 660,971 men.[97] In like manner, the utmost energies of the Secretary of the Navy were put forth fully to equip that arm of the service.[98]

To counteract these preparations, the Southerners had already a very complete armament, and of a superior quality, in the arsenals at Charleston, Fayetteville, Augusta, and Mount Vernon; besides the large supply of 115,000 muskets transported thither, through the agency of John Buchanan Floyd, Minister of War[99] under President Buchanan. Notwithstanding that blockade maintained by the northern vessels around the southern coasts, owing to the activity of President Davis' administration and the zeal of British sympathisers, warlike munitions were introduced from England, and from other countries in Europe, by swift steamers known as Blockade Runners. Numerous foundries and workshops for casting cannon and forming projectiles

[93] See "Histoire de France depuis, 1789 jusq 'a nos Jours," par Henri Martin, Tome vi., chap. viii., pp. 285 to 291.

[94] For the judicious policy taken by the President throughout the whole course of his administration, the reader is referred to Raymond's "Life and Public Services of Abraham Lincoln," New York, 1865, 8vo.

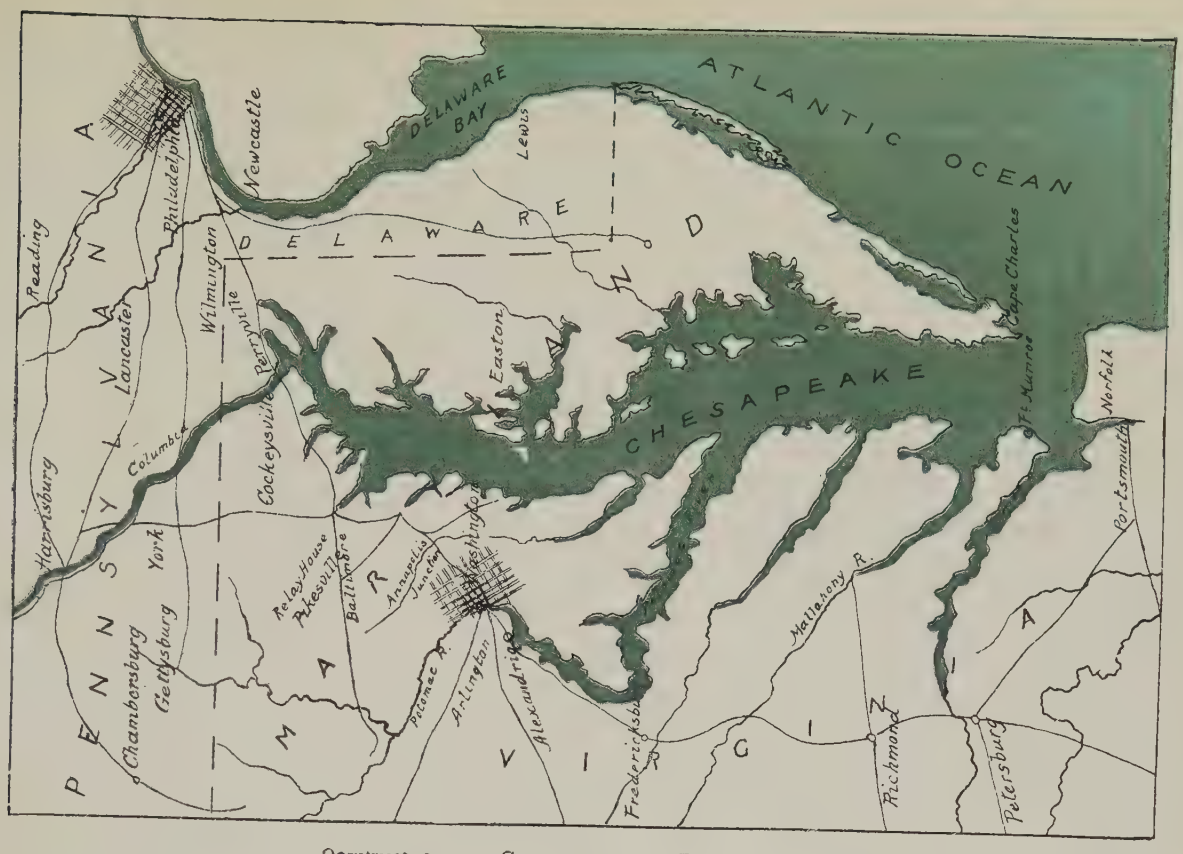
[95] See Justin M'Carthy's "History of Our Own Times," Vol. iii., chap. xliv., pp. 167 to 169.

[96] See "Histoire de la Guerre Civile en Amerique," par M. le Comte de Paris. Tome Premier, Liv. iii., chap. iii., pp. 474 to 519.

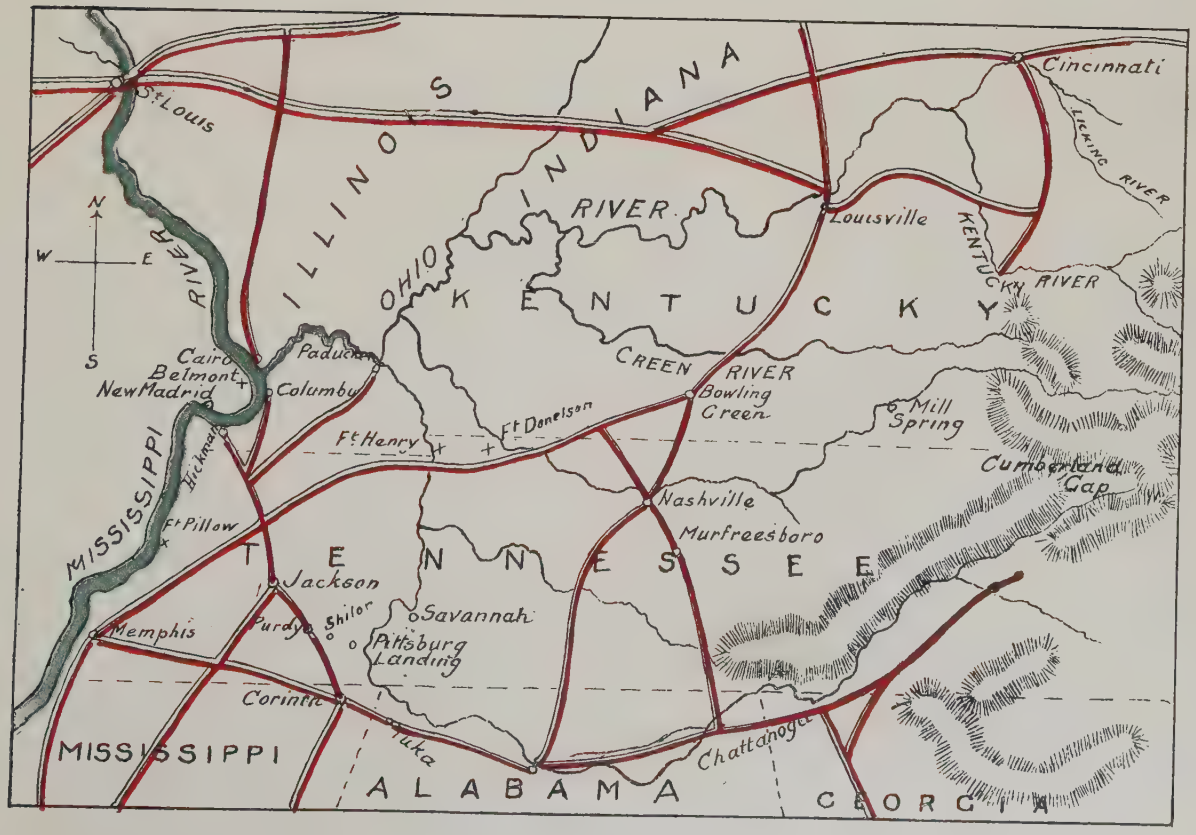
[97] See Dr. John William Draper's "History of the American Civil War," Vol. ii., sect. viii., chap. xliv., pp. 191 to 197.

[98] See *Ibid.*, chap. xlv., pp. 201 to 215.

[99] Born in Blacksburg Va., June 1807. He died at Abingdon Va., August 26th 1863. See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. ii., pp. 487, 488.




OPENINGS OF THE CHESAPEAKE AND POTOMAC RIVERS.




OPENING SCENES OF GRANT'S CAMPAIGN IN MISSOURI AND TENNESSEE

were established near Richmond, and in other places; while some of the most approved artillery at that time, invented or fashioned by Armstrong, Whitworth, Blakeley, Parrott, Dahlgren and Brooke, arrived in English vessels.[100] The chief generals and officers of the Confederate army had served with distinction in previous military capacities, while their volunteers and impressed soldiers were found to be both brave and capable for the requirements of a war, which was destined to be fought with such determination and obstinacy on both sides.

## CHAPTER XXVII.

**The United States Government prepare for the coming Campaign—In January 1862. General Burnside conducts an Expedition to Albemarle Sound—Major-General Halleck and General Buell appointed to direct military Operations in the West—Victorious Campaign in Kentucky and Tennessee—Generals Price and M'Culloch driven out of Missouri—Engagement between the Ironclads, Monitor and Merrimack—Preparations for an Advance of General McClellan against Richmond—The Shenandoah Valley—A new Plan of Operations designed by General McClellan—The Confederate Conscription Act—Movements of General Grant in the West—Battle of Shiloh or Pittsburg Landing—Expedition against New Orleans—Capture of Memphis by the Federals.**

VAST preparations had been made for the prosecution of the war in the beginning of 1862. While armies had been sent to open the Mississippi, and to disperse the Confederate forces assembled in the West, to General McClellan was assigned the charge of organizing an army of nearly 200,000 men, mustered and encamped near Washington.[1] Land and sea armaments were also directed to capture and close the harbours of the Confederates on the Atlantic coasts. These combinations and movements were intended to be nearly simultaneous.

For several months, rebel batteries planted at the opening of the Potomac River and at the inlets of Chesapeake Bay had seriously affected vessels seeking approach to the national capital. However, a coast division under General Ambrose E. Burnside[2] was organized, and this was destined to operate against those detachments formed to obstruct navigation. Meantime, wider designs having been matured by the Government, an expedition against the Southern coasts was planned, and Burnside was directed to assume command over the Department of North Carolina, which was then created.

Accordingly, under Commodore Louis M. Goldsborough[3] a fleet had

[100] See M. le Comte de Paris, "Histoire de la Guerre Civile en Amérique," Tome i., Liv. iii., chap. iv., pp. 529 to 573.

[1] See M. le Comte de Paris, "Histoire de la Guerre Civile en Amérique," Tome i., Liv. ii., chap. iii., pp. 465 to 527.

[2] See Benjamin Perley Poore's "Life and Public Services of Ambrose E. Burnside," Providence R.I., 1882.

[3] See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of

been drawn together and assembled at Fortress Monroe and at Annapolis. This flotilla was intended for operations along the lower Potomac and Chesapeake Bay; but afterwards, it was directed by General M'Clellan for Hatteras Inlet and Roanoake Island, off the coast of North Carolina, where it was thought in the Northern States, that a large proportion of its people were attached to the Union. With its twenty-six gunboats and transports, the fleet consisted of about sixty-five vessels. The United States General Burnside, with three brigades under his command,[4] sailed from Annapolis in the beginning of January 1862. On the 8th of February, Roanoake Island with its garrison and guns was captured by the Federals. This gave them command of Albemarle Sound. On the 14th of March, they advanced, and after a brisk engagement with a loss of 91 killed and 466 wounded, General Burnside took possession of Newbern. These reverses to the Confederates on that coast were severely felt, and rendered the blockade of the remaining ports more easy, while they tended to raise the spirits of people in the Northern States.[5]

For the conducting of operations in the West, two large armies had been mustered—one corps with head-quarters at St. Louis Mo., commanded by Major-General Henry W. Halleck,[6] the other under General Don Carlos Buell,[7] having his head-quarters at Louisville Ky. The former manifested great administrative and military abilities in restoring order, and in directing operations against the secessionists. Under the latter General, George H. Thomas[8] served. General Grant had taken possession of Paducah, at the junction of the Ohio and Tennessee rivers, and General Thomas marched to Lexington Ky. General William Tecumseh Sherman[9] was also appointed to assist their military movements, but a sufficiency of troops was still wanting, to begin operations on a large scale, during the remainder of the year 1861. However, General Grant was not idle. He conducted an expedition down the Mississippi river to Belmont on the Missouri shore, to break up a rebel camp. At

American Biography," Vol. ii., p. 673.

[4] These were commanded by Generals Foster, Reno, and Parke, besides a brigade under General Williams was stationed at Hatteras Inlet, but it took no very active part in these operations.

[5] See Lieutenant-Colonel Fletcher's "History of the American War from 1861 to 1865," Vol. i., chap. xii., pp. 284 to 298.

[6] He was born at Westernville N.Y., January 16th 1815, and graduated in the United States military academy. During the Mexican War he served with distinction in California. See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. iii., pp. 48 to 51.

[7] See *ibid.*, Vol. i., pp. 441, 442.

[8] The biography of this very able general has been written by Thomas B. Van Horne, and published at New York, in 1882.

[9] He was born in Lancaster Ohio, February 8th 1820. He graduated at West Point in 1840. He served in the Mexican War, and in the battle at Bull Run he commanded a brigade comprising the 13th, 69th, and 79th New York and the 2nd Wisconsin Regiments. He has published "Memoirs of General William T. Sherman," by himself. New York, 1875, 8vo. A new edition issued in 1885.

first successful, Confederate reinforcements arrived which converted his victory into a retreat.[10] General Zollicoffer had now a fortified camp on the north bank of Cumberland River; whence General Buell resolved to dislodge him, but he could only send General Thomas forward and with a less numerous force.

On the 10th of January 1862, with a greatly inferior force, Colonel James Abram Garfield[11] boldly attacked and defeated Humphrey Marshall[12] at Middle Creek, and this was followed up by other successes. At Mill Spring, on the 19th of January, General George H. Thomas fought George B. Crittenden[13] and Zollicoffer the Confederate leader, who advanced to crush him, before his few regiments could be collected. However, he accepted battle and completely defeated them. The former lost 246 men, and the latter 343. In this battle, the Confederate General Zollicoffer was killed, and his men retreated in great disorder beyond the Cumberland River.

On the 11th of January, the Secretary of War Simon Cameron[14] resigned his portfolio, and he was succeeded by Edwin M. Stanton.[15] The Governor of Tennessee Isham G. Harris[16] and its Legislature had secretly formed a military organization, which overawed the majority of the people, who were most reluctantly drawn into secession. This was especially the case in the eastern parts of that State, where the Union party took up arms and demanded aid from the Federal Government. This assistance was slow in coming, notwithstanding urgent messages sent to General Buell. Meanwhile, Governor Harris had procured troops from a distance, and gathering others for the march, these promptly moved against the unsupported loyalists who were speedily suppressed, and several were summarily executed.[17]

Meanwhile, General Albert Sydney Johnston in Kentucky held the Northern army in check until February. He then retired to Nashville.[18] The Confederates held two very strong positions in the State of Tennessee. One of these was Fort Henry on the Tennessee

[10] See Adam Badeau's "Military History of Ulysses S. Grant," Vol. i., chap. i., pp. 15 to 18.

[11] He was born in Orange, Cuyahoga County, Ohio, 19th of November 1831, and after a course of life displaying great energy of character and ability, he volunteered as a civilian in August 1861. His military services were so distinguished that he was created Major-General on the 19th of September 1863. Subsequently pursuing a political career, he became the twentieth President of the United States. His works in two volumes have been edited by Burke A. Hinsdale, and published in Boston, 1882. The most complete life of him is that written by James R. Gilmore, and published in New York, 1880.

[12] He was born in Frankfort, Ky., January 13th 1812. He died in Louisville, Ky., March 28th 1872.

[13] Born in Russellville Ky., March 20th 1812.

[14] See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. i., p. 509.

[15] He was born in Steubenville Ohio, December 19th 1884, and he died in Washington, D.C., December 24th 1869. See *ibid.*, Vol. v., pp. 648, 649.

[16] See *ibid.*, Vol. iii., p. 92.

[17] See "Abraham Lincoln, a History," Vol. v., chap. iv., pp. 58 to 80.

[18] See Chambers' "Encyclopædia, a Dictionary of Universal Knowledge," Vol. vi., p. 348. New edition.

River, and the other was Fort Donelson on the Cumberland River. A combined movement of General Grant's land forces and the gun-boats of Commodore Andrew H. Foote were designed for their reduction. The latter, having united his fleet of gunboats at the junction of the Rivers Mississippi and Ohio, left Cairo, and ascended the Tennessee River.[19]

Before the arrival of General Grant, Fort Henry, held by the Confederates under Brigadier-General Lloyd Tilghman,[20] was attacked by the gun-boats, and it surrendered to Commodore A. H. Foote on the 6th of February.[21] Most of the garrison escaped, nevertheless, and reached Fort Donelson. In order to operate against this stronghold, it was necessary to move the gun-boats down the Tennessee to the Ohio River; then it became requisite, to ascend a portion of this latter, and to move up the Cumberland. It was only on the 14th of that month, the combined forces were ready for such an attack; but, owing to the peculiar position of the fort, the gun-boats could effect very little; while in addition, exposed greatly to their enemy's batteries, the vessels were badly injured.[22] However, General Grant pressed the garrison of 22,000 men under Generals Simon B. Buckner[23] Gideon J. Pillow [24] and John B. Floyd.[25] The latter was chief in command. At first, it was resolved to attack the Federals, before the arrival of some fresh troops they expected. General Buckner's advanced division was successful for a time; but not being supported, it was obliged to retreat, and the Federals under General John E. Smith [26] took possession of some entrenched works. In this battle, the Federals lost upwards of 1,000 men. Early on the morning of the 16th, as the communication with Nashville had now been cut off, the three Confederate Generals resolved on the surrender of Fort Donelson, and the conducting of such a negotiation with the command was turned over to General Buckner. However, General Grant rejected all overtures, and insisted on an immediate submission. Thus pressed, the Confederates surrendered without conditions to the Federal army, who captured here 14,623 prisoners, including three generals, 65 cannon, 17,000 small arms, and a large quantity of war material. During these operations, over 2,000 in killed and wounded were numbered.[27] Generals Floyd and Pillow with 5,000 troops had escaped during the preceding night. Also, Colonel Nathan B. Forrest,[28] with the greater portion of

[19] See Alfred Roman's "Military Operations of General Beauregard," &c., Vol. i., chap. xv., pp. 218 to 231.

[20] See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography, Vol. vi., p. 117.

[21] See J. M. Hoppin's "Life of A. H. Foote," 1874, 8vo.

[22] According to Commodore Foote's Report.

[23] See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. i., p. 440.

[24] See the "Encyclopædia Americana," Vol. iv., pp. 208, 209.

[25] See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. ii., pp. 487, 488.

[26] See *ibid.*, Vol. v., p. 572.

[27] See "Histoire de la Guerre Civile en Amérique," par M. le Comte de Paris, Tome ii., Liv. ii., chap. i., pp. 299 to 327.

[28] See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. ii., pp. 505, 506.

his cavalry, escaped through a road then flooded and extending along the river bank.[29] In consequence of this surrender, the Confederates abandoned Columbus, Bowling Green and Nashville.[30] Giving up the whole of Kentucky, and most of Tennessee, they retreated southwards. Soon a strong Union party was formed in that district of country.[31]

In the latter State, Senator Andrew Johnson[32] a man of independent views on many public questions had resolutely announced his intention to stand by and act in and under the United States Constitution. So far being in accord with the administration at Washington, he was appointed Military Governor there,[33] with the rank of Brigadier-General, March 4th 1862. His opposition to secession had drawn upon him the most violent attacks in the South, and particularly from Jefferson Davis.[34]

In the meantime, having collected his forces, General John Pope[35] very actively scattered the guerilla bands of Missouri and protected the railway communications. On the 18th of December 1861, an engagement took place at Blackwater, where Price was signally defeated, with a loss besides of 1,300 prisoners, arms, ammunition and supplies. This victory obliged him to retreat below the Osage River, which he never again crossed. However, he was reported to have collected 30,000 men at Springfield, and General Earl Van Dorn[36] was thought to be approaching from Arkansas to aid him with 10,000 troops. Whereupon, General Samuel Ryan Curtis[37] advanced against Price, who retreated from Springfield on the 13th of February 1862. The Confederate forces of Missouri, commanded by Price and McCulloch, were at length driven out of the State, and vigourously pursued into Arkansas by General Curtis. There they united with troops raised by Van Dorn, and with a force of 16,000 men, they began to march against 10,500 Federal troops. In north-western Arkansas, Generals Curtis and Sigel occupied a strong position at Pea Ridge. There they were attacked by the Con-

[29] See Lieutenant-Colonel Fletcher's "History of the American War from 1861 to 1865," Vol. i., chap. xi., pp. 265 to 274.

[30] See Alfred Roman's "Military Operations of General Beauregard," &c., Vol. i., chap. xvii., p. 246.

[31] See Dr. John William Draper's "History of the American Civil War," Vol. ii., sect. x., chap. xlix., pp. 260 to 271.

[32] Afterwards, he became Vice-President, and succeeded Abraham Lincoln as seventeenth President of the United States. His "Speeches" were published with a biographical introduction, by Frank Moore, at Boston, in 1865.

[33] See Chambers's "Encyclopædia, a Dictionary of Universal Knowledge," Vol. vi., p. 345, New edition.

[34] See Pierre Larousse's "Grand Dictionnarie Universel du XIXe Siecle," Tome ix., p. 1001.

[35] He was born in Louisville Ky., March 16th 1822, and he participated in the Mexican War. He was also an able engineer, and surveyor of public routes in the United States service, until made Brigadier-General of Volunteers, May 17th 1861.

[36] See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. vi., pp. 244 to 248.

[37] Born in the State of New York, and of Irish lineage, February 3rd 1807. He served with distinction in the Mexican War. See *ibid.*, Vol. ii., p. 37.

federates, March 6th, with a greatly superior force. On the 7th was fought an obstinate engagement. Van Dorn made a flank movement during the night, and had gained the right and rear of Curtis' army. However, in perfect order, the Federal general changed line and gained a still stronger position. The rebels furiously attacked his right and centre, but in that onset, Generals Benjamin M'Culloch,[38] James M'Intosh[39] and other prominent officers fell; while throughout that whole day, the Union troops stubbornly maintained their position. On the morning of the 8th Curtis reformed his lines, and leading the attack, soon were the Confederates in retreat. This encounter lasted for three days. In leading an assault McCulloch was killed, and General Curtis at last beat off his opponents.[40] The losses in killed and wounded, on either side, amounted to about 1,000 men.[41]

One of the steam-frigates named the Merrimac, which had been sunk in Norfolk Harbour, was raised, repaired, plated with iron, having a slanted roof, and fitted with two iron beaks at the stem. This vessel was then named the Virginia. On the 8th of March, she came out from the Elizabeth River and attacked a Federal ship in Hampton Roads, at the mouth of the James River. The heaviest guns brought to bear on her were found to have no great effect, when shot and shell reached her iron-plated roof and sides. She sank the sloop-of-war Cumberland, by a stroke of her armoured ram; and soon after, she drove the frigate Congress ashore and burned her.[42] At night she returned to Norfolk harbour. Meanwhile, during the darkness arrived a small iron-clad vessel called the Monitor,[43] having a hull almost entirely under water, with a revolving shot-proof turret of iron, and two enormous guns inside. This newly designed iron-clad was commanded by Lieutenant Worden.[44] The very next day, the Merrimac appeared once more to encounter the Federal fleet. In a subsequent action, which lasted for five hours, the iron-clad steamer Monitor assailed and then obliged her to seek refuge in Norfolk harbour, after she had suffered considerable damage.[45]

[38] Born in Tennessee, November 11th 1811 he fought in Texas 1836, and afterwards in the Mexican War. See *ibid.*, Vol. iv., pp. 97, 98.

[39] Born in Florida in 1828. He entered the U S army, but resigned his commission in 1860, and afterwards became brigadier-General in the Confederate service. See *ibid.*, Vol. iv., pp. 124, 125.

[40] See M. le Comte de Paris, "Histoire de la Guerre Civile en Amérique," Tome ii., chap. i., pp. 336 to 356.

[41] See Lieutenant-Colonel Fletcher's "History of the American War from 1861 to 1865," Vol. i., chap. xiii., pp. 299 to 306. However, a more detailed account is to be found in the following statement:—"The Union loss was 203 killed, 980 wounded and 201 captured or missing; while the Confederate loss, not so accurately ascertained, was estimated to be between 1,000 and 1,300."—"Abraham Lincoln, a History," Vol. v., chap. xvii., p. 292.

[42] See Frank Moore's "Rebellion Record," p. 269.

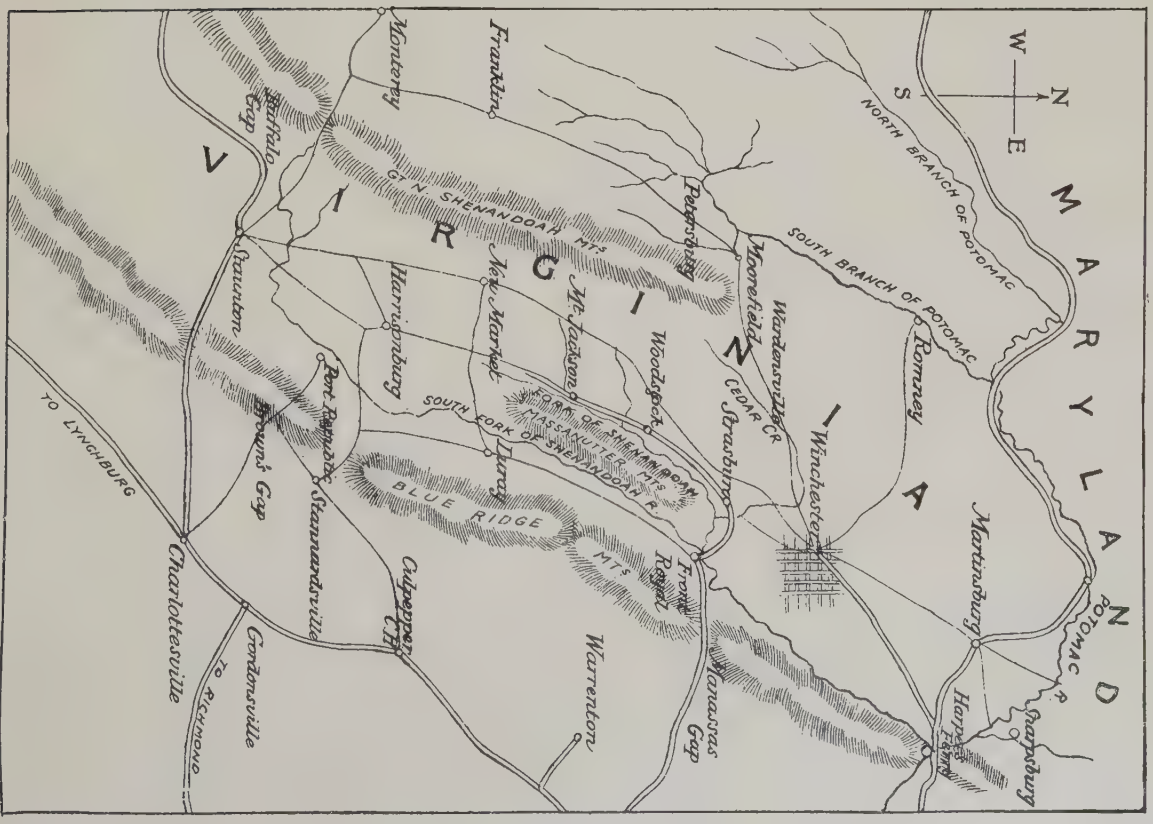
[43] Captain John Ericsson was the designer of this vessel. See an account of this celebrated Swedish engineer and inventor, in the "Encyclopædia Americana," Vol. ii., pp. 810, 811.

[44] See *ibid.*, Vol. vi., p. 614.

[45] See "Histoire de la Guerre Civile en Amérique," par M. le Comte de




NAVAL-BATTLE IN HAMPTON ROADS.




THE SHENANDOAH VALLEY.

Nearly two hundred miles higher up the Mississippi than Memphis, and not far above New Madrid in Missouri, the Confederates had taken possession of an Island denominated No. 10, and which lies in a curve of the Mississippi River. So soon as the evacuation of Columbus had been resolved on, all available rebel resources and skill were here concentrated. Meanwhile, earthworks had been thrown up around New Madrid by the Confederates, who had placed a garrison there, guarded by a fleet of eight gunboats on the river and under command of Commodore George N. Hollis.[46] On Island No. 10 they had erected formidable batteries, for the purpose of commanding the navigation; while these were supported from the Confederate headquarters, stationed on the Tennessee shore. To General John Pope[47] had been assigned command of an expedition to remove those obstacles; and accordingly, at the head of 20,000 troops, he appeared before New Madrid on the 3rd of March. Having surrounded the place with siege-works, he sent detachments to Point Pleasant on the river about nine miles below, to cut off the enemies' reinforcements and supplies. Ten days later the rebels evacuated New Madrid leaving everything behind them. The Confederate retreat from Island No. 10 was soon rendered difficult as Pope's forces held the Missouri shore, and he called upon Flag-officer Foote to bring his fleet of nine gunboats to co-operate in an intended attack. The latter objected, however, that the risk and difficulty should be too great with his insufficient armament. A most ingenious expedient was now devised.[48] To capture that island, the army of General Pope selected a bayou, running irregularly above it from the Mississippi and on to the west bank below it; then with incredible labour and skill the troops cut a canal across the marshy peninsula, which was formed by the river bend.[59] Through this canal twelve miles in length, several boats and barges passed. These were followed by other boats carrying a large body of troops, with guns and mortars, for the purpose of besieging the island. Meanwhile, the passage for boats having been found practicable from above and below on the river, two gunboats were necessary to protect the transports in crossing troops from the Missouri side.[50] This operation was successfully accomplished by the gunboats Carondelet and Pittsburg. Pope next embarked his troops on the boats, to intercept retreat from the island, on the 7th of April.[51] After a prolonged defence, its commander had

Paris, Tome ii., Liv. ii., chap. iv., pp. 515 to 521.

[46] See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. iii., p. 237.

[47] See the "Encyclopædia Americana," Vol. iv., p. 227.

[48] To Colonel J. W. Bissell of the Engineer Regiment is mainly due the conception and execution of those works afterwards undertaken, and which he describes in his "Battles and Leaders of the Civil War," Vol. i., p. 461.

[49] The various positions are shown on a Map of Military Operations about Island No. 10, in "Abraham Lincoln: a History," Vol. v., chap. xvii., p. 304.

[50] See Dr. John William Draper's "History of the American Civil War," Vol. ii. sect. x., chap. xlix., pp. 274 to 278.

[51] See Lieutenant-Colonel Fletcher's

already yielded to Commodore Foote. On that and on the following day, General Pope received the surrender of three general officers and of six or seven thousand Confederate troops.[52]

Meantime in the East, a vast army had been assembled and organized for an advance against Richmond, under the command of General McClellan. The public began to complain of its inaction in face of the enemy, when the President and Government suggested the necessity for its opening the campaign. But the commander of the Federal troops hesitated to adopt plans proposed for a forward movement, and greatly exaggerated the number of forces opposed to him.[53] He now advised an expedition, which was to land on that peninsula between the James and York Rivers Va., while a defensive force should be left to cover Washington. A majority of his generals in a Council of War also approved of his plan. With great reluctance the President and the leading men of his Government yielded consent, as they did not consider such a movement to be well designed, or to be the best that might be made; but they did not desire to assume responsibility by forcing their views on a general of established reputation, and one so popular among his soldiers.[54] At length, bringing his army into the proper condition and after very considerable delay, General McClellan—having sent General Nathaniel Prentiss Banks[55] before him to occupy the Shenandoah valley—advanced from Washington, with the main army.[56] The Ordnance Department, and especially General William F. Barry[57] the chief of artillery, had laboured with great energy to equip ninety-two batteries, consisting of 320 guns, 52,500 men, and 11,000 horses, to take the field in March. The artillery was assigned to divisions and not to brigades. The manufacture and purchase of arms had been effected,and a grand aggregate force of over 220,000 men was nominally under McClellan's command; although the executive in Washington often interfered regarding their distribution, nor did it always wholly approve of the General's plans and operations. Especially was it feared that the Capital might be left exposed to a sudden advance of the Confederates in force, and by a direct route, while the great body of the Federal troops was far removed from its support.

"History of the American War from 1861 to 1865," Vol. i., chap. xv., pp. 351 to 363.

[52] See "Abraham Lincoln: a History," Vol. v., chap. xvii., pp. 296 to 299. Also, Alfred Roman's "Military Operations of General Beauregard," &c., Vol. i., chap. xxiii., pp. 355 to 361.

[53] See the "Encyclopædia Americana," Vol. iii., p. 650.

[54] See "Abraham Lincoln: a History," Vol. v., chap. ix., pp. 148 to 172.

[55] Born in Waltham Mass., January 30th 1816 See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. i., pp. 158, 159.

[56] Regarding these particulars, the reader is referred to General McClellan's "Report on the Organisation and Campaign of the Army of the Potomac," p. 46.

[57] He was born in New York City, August 18th 1818, and he served in the Mexican War. In conjunction with General Barnard, he wrote "Reports of the Engineer and Artillery Operations of the Army of the Potomac from its Organization to the close of the Peninsular Campagn," New York, 1863.

Meanwhile, General Joseph E. Johnson had been placed in command of the Confederate consolidated forces, designated the Army of the Potomac; and he held the position at Manassas Junction, until the spring of 1862. Then finding McClellan about to advance, he withdrew to the more defensive line of the Rappahannock. Such a movement was deemed necessary, as the objective aim of the Federals was known to be Richmond; and for its defence, all the available troops of the South were requisite within supporting distances. On the 10th of March and as an overture, McClellan proceeded to attack the Confederates in their position at Manassas. On arriving there, however, he found that it had been deserted. On the 13th of March, General Robert E. Lee,[58] who had already served in Western Virginia, was charged with the conduct of military operations in the Army of the Confederacy, and especially in preparing for the defence of Richmond.[59]

While stationed at Manassas, the Confederates occupied Winchester with General Stonewall Jackson's division, and frequent reconnaissances had been pushed forward towards the Federal lines on the Upper Potomac. When he retired from that position, General Banks took possession of Winchester on March 12th. Having cleared the Shenandoah Valley of the enemy as he thought, the Federal General left the division of General Shields there to guard it. He then set out with his own corps, to join the army under McClellan. Afterwards, General Shields advanced so far as Strasburg; but finding General Jackson occupying a strong position in that neighbourhood, he retired to Winchester on the 20th.

Meanwhile, learning that a large force had been removed from the Valley, the Confederate General Jackson planned a surprise, and he hastened with a division to attack General Shields. About three and a half miles from Winchester, and on the Strasburg road, a position to cover it was selected for Colonel Kimball's brigade,[60] as Jackson advanced on the 23rd. During those preparatory movements, General Shields was severely wounded.[61] Then Colonel Sullivan[62] was pushed forward with his brigade on the left of Kimball, while Colonel Tyler's brigade was held in reserve.[63] The latter was ordered up to open the attack, and after an obstinate resistance, Johnson's left was driven

[58] This celebrated leader was son of the Revolutionary General Henry Lee, known as "Light-Horse Harry," and he was born in Stratford, Westmoreland County Va., January 19th 1807. He graduated at Westpoint in 1829, and he had already served with great distinction in the Mexican War. He became Colonel in the United States Army. He resigned that commission on the 20th of April 1861. During the following May, he was appointed General in the Confederate Army. See E. Lee Childe's "Life and Campaigns of Robert E. Lee," London, 1875.

[59] See Edward Albert Pollard's "Lee and his Lieutenants," 1867, 8vo.

[60] Nathyn Kimball was born in Indiana, and he commanded the infantry raised in that State.

[61] See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. v., p. 509.

[62] Jeremiah C. Sullivan was born in Madison Ind., October 1st 1830. See *ibid.*, p. 740.

[63] See *ibid.*, Vol. iv., p. 193.

back. The other brigades then advanced, when the Confederates to the number of 6,000[64] retreated, leaving two pieces of artillery, four caissons and about 300 prisoners, in the hands of the Federals. This desperate and well-fought battle took place at Kearnstown, near Winchester. When Jackson was thus driven from the field, collecting all his disposable forces, General Shields pursued him so far south as Harrisonburg. Soon afterwards, General Banks returned to occupy the valley with an augmented force, and Shields was then ordered to reinforce McDowell stationed at Fredericksburg. It was believed at Washington that the Confederates were still in great force, and capable of being considerably reinforced in the Shenandoah Valley; while the President and his Cabinet feared their advance, and resolved to withdraw 10,000 more of his troops from General McClellan, in order to strengthen the defences around the capital. In the meantime, Major-General M'Dowell[65] with a force of 30,000 men advanced towards Richmond, by the direct line through Fredericksburg on the Rappahannock River. That town was evacuated by the Confederates on the 17th of April, and on the 19th it was surrendered to Brigadier-General Augur.[66]

General McClellan now thought to adopt a new mode of operation. Between Washington and Manassas, he had concentrated the Army of the Potomac; thus hoping to deceive the enemy, who should regard it as designed to march against Richmond by the most direct route, and as threatening the reduction of Virginia. But, his intention was to advance gradually and in a far different manner towards Richmond. A number of ships and boats had been collected, for the transport of his men to Fortress Monroe. When sufficiently near, he intended to march up the peninsula between the James and York Rivers; while a number of gunboats were to force their way up the James River, and to co-operate with the army in assaulting that city. If properly carried out and with the sufficient force assigned to him, such a plan should probably have been successful. He intended to leave about 30,000 men behind to cover Washington, and he assembled about 80,000 men well equipped, with a formidable battering train, at the lower end of the peninsula, between the York River and James River, under protection of the guns in Fortress

[64] See Edward A. Pollard's "Southern History of the War." First Year of the War. This work, written in conjunction with B. M. De Witt, was published in Richmond, 1862. It was followed by The Second Year of the War, published in 1864, as also by the Third Year of the War, issued in the same year. A fourth volume on the same subject was published in New York, 1866. This work was republished in London. The same writer issued "The Life of Jefferson Davis, with the Secret History of the Southern Confederacy," in 1869.

[65] In March, he had been made Major-General of the Volunteers.

[66] Christopher Colon Augur was born in New York, in 1821. He had already served in the Mexican War, and afterwards against the Indians of Oregon, in 1856. See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. i., p. 119.

Monroe. There he arrived on the 2nd April, to begin the campaign against Richmond, and on that route chosen by himself.[67]

At this time, General Jackson, commanding his own division and that of General Richard S. Ewell[68] with the cavalry force of Colonel Turner Ashby,[69] was opposed to Generals Fremont and Banks, having an army inferior in numbers. Then Major-General Banks was moving up the valley of the Shenandoah, with a force of 4,000 or 5,000 men chiefly for the purpose of observation, and thinking also that Jackson was retiring before him. Since the withdrawal of General Shields' division, Banks had only Williams' troops under his immediate command. He left Colonel John R. Kenly[70] in the neighbourhood of Front Royal to guard Manassas Gap, an opening in the Blue Ridge Mountains. Between Colonel Kenly's force and Strasburg, there is a line of hills known as the Massanutten Mountains, and dividing the two forks of the Shenandoah River, which runs from south to north, and which joins the Potomac River at Harper's Ferry.[71] Banks had already marched beyond Strasburg, when two divisions of Confederates, effectually screened by the nature of the ground, and under Generals Ewell and Jackson, moved down the Shenandoah south fork. Then they seized Front Royal, and attacked Colonel Kenly who was severely wounded, and many of his troops were killed. Nearly all the rest were either wounded or captured. Having heard of this movement, Banks endeavoured by a forced march to retreat upon Winchester, where his stores were collected. However, this surprise cut off his communication with General McDowell; and now, ordering his baggage trains to Winchester, he covered the rear force with the greater portion of his troops. Having been molested by the enemy's pickets near Cedar Run, that town was reached, but in much confusion, on the evening of May 24th. When Banks arrived there, full confirmation of the total defeat of Kenly's force was received, and that the Confederates were fast approaching in great numbers. Whereupon a retreat was ordered, early on the morning of the 25th. Nevertheless, Banks took up a position to offer battle. There a contest took place, and it lasted for three hours on that day. The Confederates then drove General Banks with great loss through Winchester on to Martinsburg. Many of his men were taken prisoners. Nevertheless, the boats of the pontoon train having been saved, during the night of the 25th and on the morning of the 26th, his army crossed the Potomac closely pursued by the enemy's cavalry, yet without his sustaining any great molestation.[72]

[67] See "Abraham Lincoln, a History," Vol. v., chap. xx., p. 358.

[68] See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. ii., p. 392.

[69] See *ibid.*, Vol. i., p. 110.

[70] See *ibid.*, Vol. iii., p. 515.

[71] These positions are very clearly marked, on a Sketch Map of General Jackson's Campaign of the Shenandoah Valley, in Lieutenant-Colonel Fletcher's "History of the American War from 1861 to 1865," Vol. ii., chap. i., p. 6.

[72] His official Report states the entire loss at 38 killed, 157 wounded, and 711 missing.

During the year preceding, the President had decreed the creation of a new military district known as the Department of the Mountain, and over it he had placed as chief the commander, whom he had withdrawn from the Missouri.[73] About this time, General Fremont, who had been stationed at Franklin in the mountains of Western Virginia, was advancing with an army from the West, and he purposed joining General Banks near Staunton. However, Jackson resolved on preventing such a junction, and having a superior force under his command, that general succeeded in getting to the rear of the main body. Fremont had three divisions under his command. With these he advanced on the 26th of May to Petersburg, hoping to intercept General Jackson who now retreated on Strasburg. He had a long train, conveying the spoils of Banks' army with about 2,000 prisoners, and he marched rapidly forward on Woodstock and to Mount Jackson.[74]

Having entered the Shenandoah Valley with his forces in pursuit, General Fremont reached Harrisonburg on the 6th of June. Then marching beyond that town, the Federal advance was drawn into an ambuscade, and it suffered severely. In this encounter nevertheless the Confederate Brigadier-General Furner Ashby was killed while leading on his men. Meantime, General Shields had been advancing up the southern branch of the Shenandoah, with a view of cutting off Jackson's retreat through the passes of the Blue Ridge Mountains. Anticipating this advance, on the 8th of June and leaving Ewell in a strong position, about eight miles from Harrisonburg, to keep the Federals in check, General Jackson took post himself near Port Republic, while his long baggage train was crossing a bridge near that place. The advanced guard of Fremont was opposed and forced to retreat. At the hamlet of Cross Keys Ewell firmly held his ground, and the Federals lost 664 men in that battle. Meanwhile, the advanced brigade of Shields' Division commanded by Colonel Samuel S. Carroll[75] had come up, and it engaged in an artillery skirmish with Jackson's division; but the main body of Shields' force was still in the rear. On the morning of the 9th, Ewell's forces were withdrawn to operate against General Tyler, who had arrived on the evening previous to support Colonel Carroll. His troops were drawn up on the main road, and in an open plain. There he was attacked, and as his artillery rested on some wooded hills towards the left of that position, General Jackson sent a detachment round, while he occupied Tyler's attention by demonstrations in the plain. Then making a sudden charge, the greater proportion of the Federal artillery was captured, and their lines were broken. The Confederate cavalry pursued, and the rout was complete; nor could Fremont repair a bridge,

[73] See M. Le Comte de Paris, "Histoire de la Guerre Civile en Amérique," Tome ii., Liv. ii., chap. iv., p. 557.

[74] See Jefferson Davis' "Rise and Fall of the Confederate Government," Vol. ii., chap. xxi., pp. 109 to 111.

[75] See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. i. p. 539.

in order to cross a deep river which lay between both bodies of his troops. Afterwards, General Jackson withdrew leisurely through Brown's Gap in the Blue Ridge Mountains to Gordonsville, where he had direct railway communication to Richmond. Hearing that he was about to receive reinforcements, General Fremont ordered a retreat down the valley, having first sent a detachment of cavalry to apprise Shields about the reverses he had experienced.[76] This raid was designed to check the advance of General McDowell from sending any reinforcements to aid General McClellan in his operations against Richmond, and it proved to be effective for that purpose. His command had been detached from the main body of troops, and it was then designated the Army of the Rappahannock. Having been reinforced, Banks soon recrossed the Potomac to the Shenandoah Valley. He only arrived there however, when Ewell and Jackson had retreated.[77]

On the 5th of April, General McClellan's army was in front of the Yorktown defences; but, before he would attempt an assault reinforcements were expected. Heintzelman's corps encamped in front of Yorktown, supported by Sedgwick's division of Sumner's corps on the Warwick road, while Keyes' corps was on the left, facing Lee's Mills on the west bank of Warwick.[78] However, the Confederates held suspicions, and even had fully divined the true points of movement, regarding General McClellan's plan of operations. Having placed their army under the chief command of General Joseph E. Johnston, they accordingly made judicious arrangements to resist that approach. They held Yorktown, while drawing a line of entrenchments across the peninsula,[79] and these were defended by about 12,000 men commanded by General John B. Magruder.[80]

On the 4th of April, General McClellan had landed less than 100,000 men on the peninsula near Yorktown; but his plan was greatly disarranged by the withdrawal of McDowell's troops and those of General Wool, who commanded at Fortress Monroe. Moreover, he had been promised the co-operation of the navy, in his projected attack on the batteries of Yorktown and Gloucester; and soon every possible effort was made to give assistance to the land forces. However, when the fleet moved up the James River with several ironclads, the marines and sailors were killed in great numbers by swarms of sharpshooters, who lined either bank on towards Drury's Bluff. Nor were the Federals able to make any sensible impression on those batteries opposed to them. The ships were afterwards obliged to fall back towards Fortress

[76] See Lieutenant-Colonel Fletcher's "History of the American War from 1861 to 1865," Vol. ii., chap. iv., pp. 61 to 70.

[77] See Jefferson Davis' "Rise and Fall of the Confederate Government," Vol. ii., chap. xxi., pp. 111 to 119.

[78] See Captain D. P. Conyngham's "Irish Brigade and its Campaigns," &c., chap. vi., p. 62.

[79] For a very clear understanding of the military position and movements, the reader may consult a map of the Peninsular Campaign, in "Abraham Lincoln, a History," Vol. v., chap. xx., p. 368.

[80] See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. iv., p. 175.

Monroe. So early as April 1862, the Confederate Congress had passed a Conscription Act. In the South, a reign of military despotism prevailed, which made a soldier of every man and boy who was capable of bearing arms. Those who were exempt through age or other causes acted as provosts, for collecting deserters and returning them to the ranks. This state of conscription enabled the Southerners to bring almost their entire adult male population into the field.

Meantime the important victories gained in the West permitted General Grant to move up the Tennessee River. He encamped near a place called Shiloh or Pittsburg Landing. There he expected General Buell to unite with him for an attack on Corinth. After leaving Manassas on the 2nd of February to assume command,[81] General Beauregard proceeded to the West, and there he occupied a position. That small place, about one hundred miles east from Memphis, he immediately set about fortifying. There too, the army of General Albert Sydney Johnston was moved, and a junction had been formed by both of the Confederate leaders by the 23rd of March. Their united forces amounted to over 40,000 men.[82] On both sides, the arrival of reinforcements had been expected; but, having heard that Buell was advancing on Savannah, while Van Dorn had not yet arrived to their aid from Arkansas, the Confederate leaders resolved to precipitate an engagement, trusting to the strength of their assembled army.[83]

With less than 40,000 of the United States forces, General Grant occupied a post about twenty miles north from Corinth. Nevertheless, all of these were not concentrated. Another portion of his army was stationed at Savannah, on the right bank of the Tennessee, and a few miles lower down. Thinking to surprise him, General Beauregard advanced secretly with his army from Corinth.[84] The Confederates were much more numerous, and in full force at that time. Accordingly, General Albert Sidney Johnston suddenly attacked General Grant's army at Pittsburg Landing, on the morning of Sunday April 6th.[85] Advancing rapidly and unitedly, these leaders at first stormed the camp, and cutting off a detachment of 2,200 men took General Prentiss[86] prisoner. Here a desperate battle was fought, and it lasted the entire day. To General Beauregard had been entrusted the main direction of opening the battle by his superior, who took upon himself the task of bringing up supports. General Hardee's corps, in which General Patrick Roynane Cleburne[87] commanded a brigade chiefly composed of

[81] See Alfred Roman's "Military Operations of General Beauregard," Vol. i., chap. xv., p. 213.

[82] See the "Encyclopædia Americana," Vol. iv., p. 498.

[83] See M le Comte de Paris, "Histoire de la Guerre Civile en Amérique," Tome ii., Liv. ii., chap. ii., pp. 396, 397.

[84] See Alfred Roman's "Military Operations of General Beauregard," &c., Vol. i., chap. xix., pp. 265 to 282.

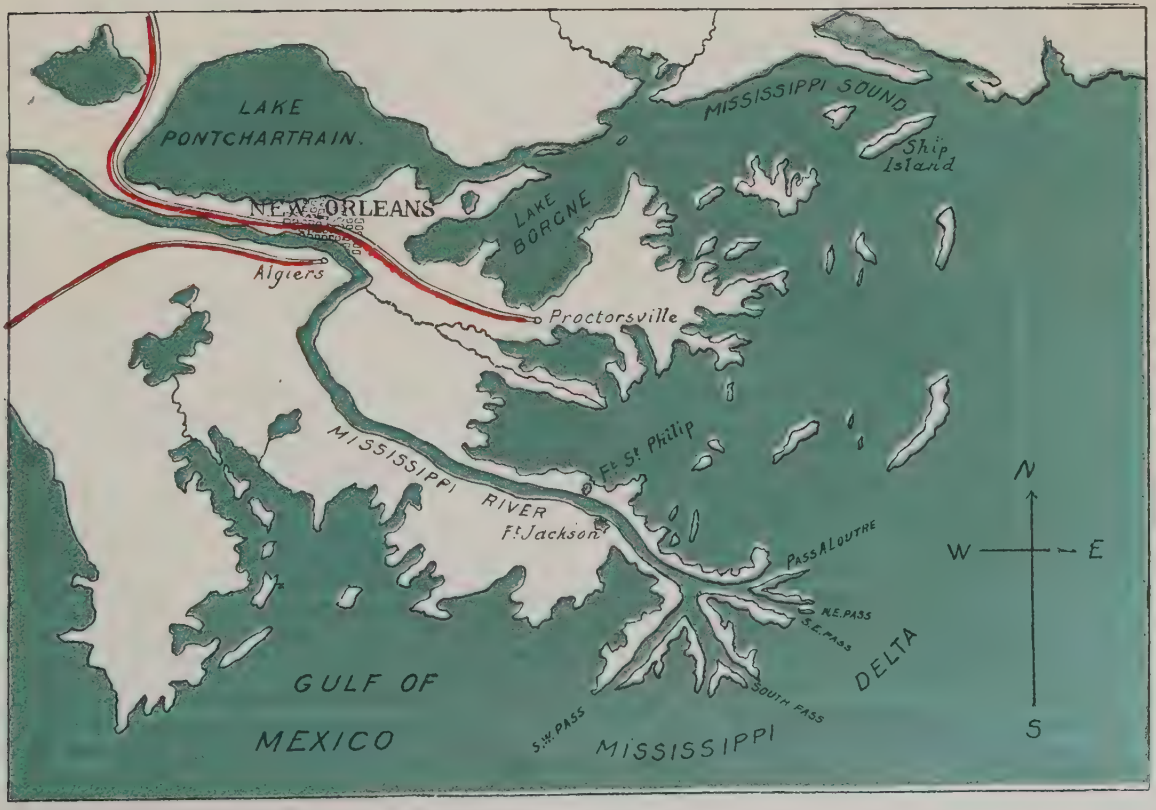
[85] See *ibid.*, chap. xx., pp 283 to 307.

[86] Benjamin Mayberry Prentiss was born in Belleville Va., November 23rd 1819. See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. v., p. 106.

[87] He was born in the County of Cork Ireland, March 17th 1828, and




BATTLE-FIELD AT PITTSBURG LANDING.




OPENING OF THE MISSISSIPPI RIVER.

Tennesseeans, was in the front firing line. While personally leading the charge of a brigade between two and three o'clock, General Johnston was killed, but this loss was carefully kept from a knowledge of the Confederate forces. These had hoped by various desperate efforts to assail that strong position near Pittsburg Landing.[88] With determined courage, however, the Federal troops stood the shock of the Confederates. At length, these were forced back to the very brink of the river. On this occasion, General William Tecumseh Sherman commanded a division under General Grant, and with great resolution he maintained the Federal position. Towards evening, Beauregard despaired of breaking their lines, and gave directions for a bivouac in their front, hoping that he should be able to renew and win that battle the following morning.[89]

During the night, however, General Grant was joined by the other portion of his army. General Buell had also arrived with a fresh army from Nashville.[90] On the morning of the 7th, Grant ordered an advance on the Confederate lines, and he renewed the attack.[91] The opposing armies are said to have numbered about 70,000 men on either side. For several hours, that battle lasted; but at length, the Confederates were obliged to yield the ground.[92] The Federals were assisted by two gunboats, which threw shells among the Confederate troops. The result was a failure of General Beauregard's attempt. After these two days' fighting, the losses on both sides were enormous; those of the Federals being estimated at 13,047 men, while those of the Confederates amounted to 10,697. During the following day, Beaure-

he became a student of medicine in Trinity College Dublin. But he ran away and enlisted as a private soldier in the English army, and when his connection with it ceased, he came to the United States. About the time of the breaking out of the war he was a practising lawyer in Helena Arkansas. He assisted in raising a regiment of Arkansas troops and became its colonel. His regiment united with the Army of Tennessee, was at Bowling Green Ky., in General Hardee's command, under General Albert Sydney Johnson, and went with it to Shiloh. He was from that time on identified with the Army of Tennessee in all its campaigns and battles. He was subsequently promoted to be Major-General in December 1862, and he commanded what was known as Cleburne's Division. He was an active and efficient factor in the Army of Tennessee, participating in the battle of Perryville, of Mumfreesboro' and of Chickmanga. After the Confederate defeat at Missionary Ridge, he was distinguished for his defence of Ringgold Gap. At Jonesboro' he covered the retreat of Hood's defeated army. Cleburne was called the "Stonewall of the West." In command of a corps, he was killed in the charge on the Federal breastworks at Franklin, November 30th 1864.

[88] "See Abraham Lincoln, a History," Vol. v., chap. xviii., pp. 303 to 333. To this is affixed a very intelligible diagram of the topography and position, in The Official, or Thom, Map of the Battle of Shiloh.

[89] See M. le Comte de Paris, "Histoire de la Guerre Civile en Amérique," Tome ii., Liv. ii., chap. ii., pp. 396 to 417.

[90] See the "Encyclopædia Americana," Vol. iv., p. 499.

[91] See Alfred Roman's "Military Operations of General Beauregard," &c., Vol. i., chap. xxi., pp. 308 to 325.

[92] See Dr. John William Draper's "History of the American Civil War," Vol. ii., sect. x., chap. i., pp. 288 to 302.

gard's army directed its retreat to Corinth, nor was an immediate attempt made to pursue.[93]

Towards the close of 1861, the Federal Government had resolved to have an effective blockade on the Gulf of Mexico; and finally, with the approval of Commander David Dixon Porter[94] and Captain David Glasgow Farragut,[95] the Navy Department planned an expedition for the capture of New Orleans, by running ships past two very strong fortifications Forts Philip and Jackson nearly opposite each other on either bank of the Mississippi, and about seventy-five miles below the city. A contingent of 10,000 land forces was designed to-co-operate, and these were to be under the command of General Benjamin F. Butler.[96] In January 1862, Farragut was appointed chief of the Western Gulf Blockading Squadron; and on the 3rd of February, he sailed from Hampton Roads. The fleet of Commodore Farragut consisted of over 30 vessels, carrying altogether about 300 guns, besides 20 mortar-boats, under the command of Captain Porter. The ships commissioned were chiefly wooden vessels. About the middle of April, they had been concentrated below the Forts, where it was found the river was obstructed by dismasted schooners anchored at intervals, and connected by strong chains with log-rafts attached. Besides, an improvised fleet of sixteen gun-boats was there, and these were armed with iron prows. The flotilla of Porter opened fire on Fort Jackson—the nearest of the forts—with a terrific bombardment of shells. On the night of the 20th, two of the gun-boats were sent to cut away the barrier of hulks and rafts stretched across the river. Those vessels succeeded in making an opening sufficient for the passage of ships. On the 24th at 2 o'clock a.m., dividing his fleet into two sections, Farragut gave the signal to advance, while Porter renewed the bombardment to its utmost rapidity. The column of the Red consisting of eight ships, commanded by Captain Theodore Baily,[97] sailed first, following the east bank to engage Fort St. Philip, and delivering a

[93] See "Abraham Lincoln, a History," Vol v., chap. xviii., pp. 333 to 335.

[94] He was born in Philadelphia, June 8th 1814. He attained to great distinction in the Mexican War, and among many other works he has written his own autobiography, as also a "History of the Navy in the War of the Rebellion," New York, 1887, 8vo.

[95] He was born near Knockville Tenn., July 5th 1801. He entered the navy at an early age, and he served during the war of 1813-15, and afterwards against the Mexicans. His son Loyall Farragut issued his life, including his journals and many of his letters. New York, 1878, 8vo

[96] He was the son of John Butler, a soldier who fought under General Jackson at New Orleans, and he boasts of Irish descent in that admirable work in which his character and career are so ably vindicated, "Autobiography and Personal Reminiscences of Major-General Benjamin F. Butler," with the sub-title "Butler's Book." See chap. i., Boston 1892, 8vo. General Butler zealously served the Union during the Confederate Wars, but he was unjustly dismissed from command by General Grant.

[97] See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. i., pp. 138, 139.

destructive broadside of grape and canister. When abreast of the forts, the ships ran above their line of fire. There they encountered the rebel gun-boat flotilla, but dispersed or captured it with very little loss. The column of the Blue under Farragut followed and passed both the forts. The combat had lasted about one hour and a half; while the total loss to the Federal fleet was only twenty-four men killed, and eighty-six wounded.[98] The ships and gun-boats having passed the forts anchored temporarily at quarantine station, about six miles above them. Nor was there much delay, for on the evening of that same day steaming up the river, New Orleans lay exposed to a fire from the Federal fleet. The Confederate General Mansfield Lovell had only 3,000 troops for its defence, and he now resolved to evacute that city, having first removed such arms and supplies as he could; the remaining war material and private property to a vast amount was destroyed.[99] When Admiral Farragut demanded surrender of New Orleans, the Mayor returned an equivocal answer; but. after a few days' hesitation, the rebel flags were taken down from the public buildings, and those of the United States were hoisted in their stead. All the Confederate gun-boats, steam-rams, iron-clad floating batteries, chains and other obstructions in the river, as also the land forts, were thus taken possession of or destroyed.

Meantime, General Benjamin F. Butler had landed in co-operation a considerable body of troops above the Forts. The Mayor of New Orleans, through his obstinate infatuation having excited popular turbulence and disorder, at last surrendered the city. General Lovell withdrew his small army without making any attempt to prolong the defence, and he retired to Camp Moore, about seventy-eight miles on the Jackson railroad.[100] Having placed detachments of troops on both sides of the Mississippi for protection, on the 1st of May General Butler occupied New Orleans. Cut off from all support, the lower forts also surrendered. The task of governing the city required both firmness and decision from General Butler; but his administration of affairs there was directed by tolerant and even liberal conduct, towards the well-disposed and orderly. He found the whole population of nearly 160,000 almost in a state bordering on starvation, yet with great difficulty he procured means for their subsistence. To prevent mob violence, however, he was obliged to proclaim martial law. Moreover, he armed the free-coloured men there and acted with great vigour in suppressing secessionist manifestations.[101] These acts undoubtedly made him unpopular, raising a storm of prejudice and calumny against him throughout the Southern States, and this was freely propagated among their partizans in Europe; but while he exacted rigorously obedience to the Federal Government, he was strenuously

[98] See "Abraham Lincoln, a History," Vol. v., chap. xv., pp. 252 to 266.

[99] See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. iv., p. 36.

[100] See Lieutenant-Colonel Fletcher's "History of the American War from 1861 to 1865," Vol. i., chap. xvi., pp. 397 to 410.

[101] See James Parton's "General Butler in New Orleans," New York, 1863, 8vo.

engaged in providing for the subsistence and in procuring health for the hostile citizens. He had only a force of 2,500 men to garrison New Orleans. These were subjected to studied insults or annoyance by the populace, and this conduct they endured with great patience, especially from females, who by word and act manifested disrespect and hatred towards the subjugating General, his officers and soldiers.[102] Meantime General Butler had been placed in command over the Department of the Mexican Gulf.[103]

In the west, having command over Generals Grant and Buell, and having directed General Pope to join his 20,000 troops then flushed with recent victory, General Halleck had collected a very large army at Pittsburg Landing.[104] It amounted to 100,000 men, and thither he arrived in person, on the 11th of April. He then resolved to organise his troops into divisions; the First Army Corps, named the Army of the Tennessee and constituting the right wing, was commanded by Grant; the Second Army Corps, called the Army of the Ohio and constituting the centre, was commanded by Buell; while the Third Army Corps, called the Army of the Mississippi and forming the left wing, was placed under the command of Pope. On the 30th of April, Halleck issued another order giving command of the right wing to General Thomas, whose division of the Army of the Ohio was added to it, while a reserved corps was assigned to General McClellan.[105] Major-General Grant was constituted second in command.[106] Slowly and cautiously notwithstanding his great superiority of force, General Halleck advanced towards Corinth; whereas Beauregard had less than 50,000 for its defence. However, he had skilfully disputed the advance, and deceived his antagonist into a belief that he commanded a much more numerous army. During the night of May 29th and early on the morning of May 30th, General Beauregard evacuated Corinth, retreating with the whole of his army and carrying with him everything valuable. General Halleck took possession of the empty entrenchments, and then he sent General Pope in pursuit of Beauregard. The latter, however, made good his retreat.[107]

In the month of June, some important operations were carried on in the West. Suffering much from a wound received at Fort Donelson, Commodore Foote resigned the command of his gun-boats on the 9th of May to Captain Charles Henry Davis,[108] who proceeded with them

[102] See "Abraham Lincoln, a History," Vol. v., chap. xvi., pp. 275 to 287.

[103] See an account of the foregoing transactions in the "Autobiography and Personal Reminiscences of Major-General Benjamin F. Butler," chap. vii., viii., ix., x., xi.

[104] See Dr John William Draper's "History of the American Civil War," Vol. ii., sect. x., chap. i., p. 305.

[105] See Appleton's "Cyclopædia of American Biography," Vol. iv., pp. 86, 87.

[106] See "Abraham Lincoln, a History," Vol. v., chap. xix., p. 337.

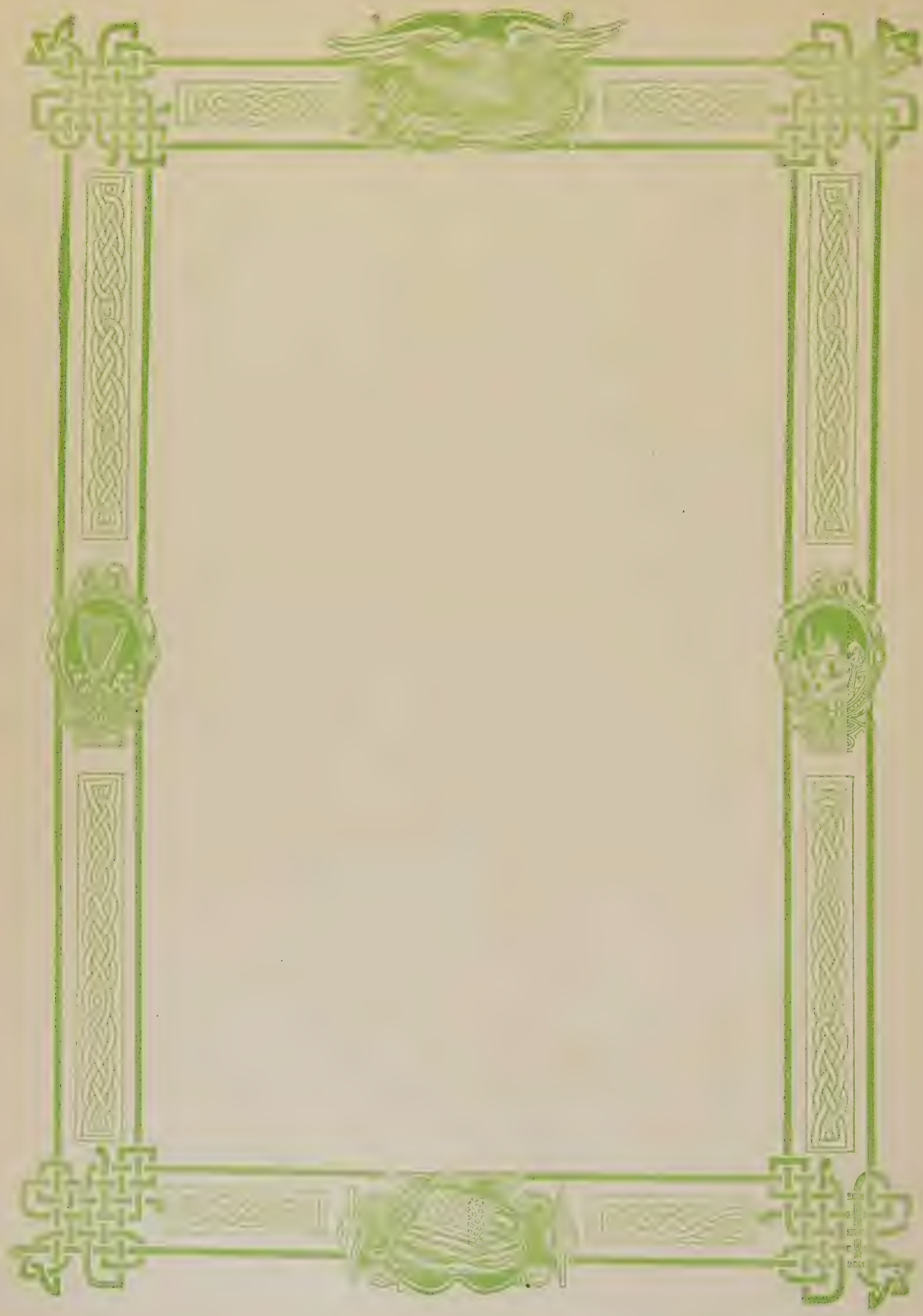
[107] See Alfred Roman's "Military Operations of General Beauregard," Vol. i., chap. xix., xx., xxi., xxii., xxiii., xxiv., pp. 265 to 399.

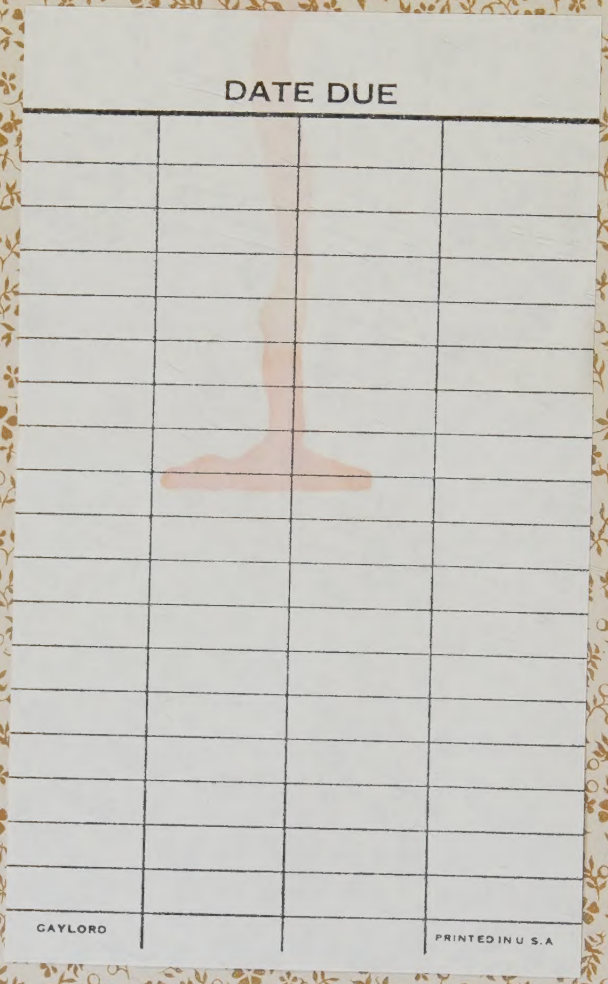
[108] This brave and accomplished officer was born in Boston Mass., January 16th 1807. See Appleton's

down the Mississippi River. Fort Pillow about 60 miles above Memphis, and a place of strength, had been garrisoned by the Confederates. For some time it was bombarded, and preparations had been made for an assault. It was evacuated, however, on the 4th of June, when the garrison had removed or destroyed the greater portion of the guns and stores. The Federals took possession, and moved their gun-boats further down the river without delay. On the 5th, they anchored off Island No. 45, near Memphis. On the 6th, a naval engagement took place on the Mississippi, near that town. It lasted for an hour and twenty minutes, and it was fought with great determination on both sides. This contest ended in the destruction of the Confederate fleet of eight gun-boats, under the command of Commodore Montgomery, by the Federal fleet of gun-boats, under Commodore Davis. On that day, the city of Memphis was surrendered, and with little loss to the Federals.[109]

"Cyclopaedia of American Biography," Vol. ii., pp. 94, 95.

[109] See Lieutenant-Colonel Fletcher's "History of the American War from 1961 to 1865," Vol. ii., chap. iii., pp. 34 to 43.




DATE DUE
GAYLORD
PRINTED IN U.S.A.

q973 : Ohl : v.1

O'Hanlon: Irish-American history
of the United States